

THE
HISTORY OF INDIA,
AS TOLD
BY ITS OWN HISTORIANS.

THE MUHAMMADAN PERIOD.

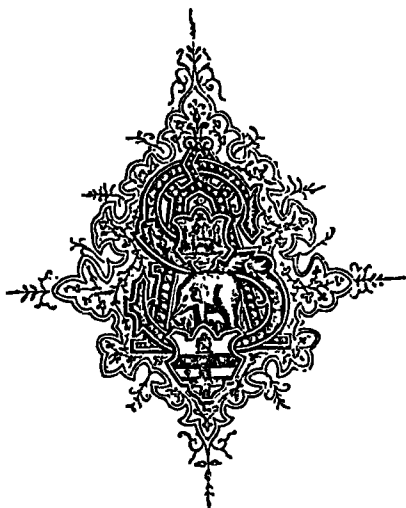
THE POSTHUMOUS PAPERS
OF THE LATE
SIR H. M. ELLIOT, K.C.B.,
EDITED AND CONTINUED
BY
PROFESSOR JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S.,
STAFF COLLEGE, SANDHURST.

VOL. VII.

LONDON:
TRÜBNER AND CO., 57 AND 59, LUDGATE HILL.
1877.

[*All rights reserved.*]

STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS,



PRINTERS, HERTFORD.

P R E F A C E.

THE present Volume contains the history of the reigns of Sháh-Jahán, Aurangzeb, Bahádur Sháh, Jahándár Sháh, and Farrukh-Siyar, of the little brief authority of Rafi'u-d Daula and Rafi'u-d Darajút, and of the early years of the reign of Muhammad Sháh.

Several works hitherto unknown to the European reader are here brought to notice. The history of the reign of Sháh Jahán is derived from the *Bádsháh-náma* of 'Abdu-l Hamíd and from other *Bádsháh-námas* and *Sháh-Jahán-námas*. The special works relating to the reign of Aurangzeb have been examined and the most interesting passages translated; but the history of his long rule, and of the subsequent times which appear in this Volume, has been derived from the great work of Kháfí Khán, a contemporary history of high and well-deserved repute. This important history is well known at second-hand. All European historians of the period which it covers have been greatly indebted, directly or indirectly, to its pages. Elphinstone and Grant Duff used it, and they refer to a MS. translation by "Major Gordon, of the Madras Army." It is not known what has become of this MS. trans-

lation, for the inquiries made after it have met with no success. Not a line of translation had been provided by Sir H. M. Elliot; so this heavy labour has fallen upon the Editor, who has provided the 330 pages of print which the work occupies, as well as the long translation from the *Bádsháh-náma*.

Ample and very diversified matter remains for the concluding volume.

The following is a list of the articles in this volume, with the names of their respective writers:—

- LXI.—*Pádsháh-náma* of Muhammad Kazwíní—Editor.
 LXII.—*Bádsháh-náma* of 'Abdu-l Hamíd—Editor.
 LXIII.—*Sháh Jahán-náma* of 'Ináyat Khán—Major Fuller.
 LXIV.—*Bádsháh-náma* of Muhammad Wáris—Editor.
 LXV.—'Amal-i Sálíh—Editor.
 LXVI.—*Sháh Jahán-náma* of Muhammad Sádík—Editor.
 LXVII.—*Majálisu-s Salátín*—Sir H. M. Elliot and *munshis*.
 LXXVIII.—*Tárikh-i Mufazzalí* " "
 LXXIX.—*Mir-át-i 'Álam* " "
 LXX.—*Zínatu-t Tawárfkh*—Sir H. M. Elliot.
 LXXI.—*Labbu-t Tawárfkh-i Hind* " "
 LXXII.—'Álamgír-náma—Sir H. M. Elliot and Editor.
 LXXIII.—*Ma-ásir-i 'Álamgír*—Sir H. M. Elliot and "Lt. Perkins."
 LXXIV.—*Futuhát-i 'Álamgír*—Sir H. M. Elliot and Editor.
 LXXV.—*Tárfkh-i Mulk-i Áshám* " "
 LXXVI.—*Wakáí' of Ni'amat Khán* " "
 LXXVII.—*Jang-náma of Ni'amat Khán* " "
 LXXVIII.—*Ruka'át-i 'Álamgír*—Sir H. M. Elliot.
 LXXIX.—*Muntakhabu-l Lubáb* of Kháfí Khán—Article by Sir H. M. Elliot—all the translation by the Editor.
 LXXX.—*Tárfkh* of Irádat Khán—Captain Jonathan Scott.
 LXXXI.—*Tárfkh-i Bahádur Sháh*—"Lieutenant Anderson."
 LXXXII.—*Tárfkh-i Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh*—Editor.
 LXXXIII.—*'Ibrat-náma*—Editor.

ERRATA IN VOL. VII.

- Page 31, *for* "1241 A.H." *read* "1041 A.H."
,, 32, *for* "1240 A.H." *read* "1040 A.H."
,, 33, *for* "1241 A.H." *read* "1041 A.H."
,, 463, *for* "Muhakkim Singh," *read* "Mohkam Singh."

out his design, having probably been prevented by his appointment to a busy office, for Muhammad Sálíh, in a short biography of the author, says that he was transferred to the Intelligence Department.

This history of Amínái Kazwíní has been the model upon which most of the histories of Sháh Jahán have been formed. 'Abdu-l Hamíd, the author of the *Bádsháh-náma*, follows its arrangement, and although he makes no acknowledgment of the fact, his work comprises the same matter, and differs from it only in style.

Sir H. M. Elliot's MS. is a small folio of 297 pages of twenty-one lines each. It is fairly written, but all the rubrics are omitted. There is a copy in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society, and three copies in the British Museum.]¹

¹ [This article has been taken almost exclusively from Mr. Morley's Catalogue of the MSS. of the Royal Asiatic Society.]

LXII.

BĀDShĀH-NĀMA

OF

'ABDU-L HAMĪD LĀHORĪ.

[THIS is a history of the first twenty years of the reign of Shāh Jahān, composed by 'Abdu-l Hamid Lāhorī. Little is known of the author, but Muhammad Sālīh, in his '*Amal-i Sālīh* (No. LXIV.), informs us that 'Abdu-l Hamid was celebrated for the beauty of his style, and that he died in 1065 A.H. (1654 A.D.). 'Abdu-l Hamid himself says in his preface, that the Emperor desired to find an author who could write the memoirs of his reign in the style of Abū-l Fazl's *Akbar-nāma*: and that he, 'Abdu-l Hamid, had studied and greatly admired Abū-l Fazl's style. He was recommended to the Emperor for the purpose, and was called from Panna, where he was living in retirement, to undertake the composition. His patron was the ~~eminent~~ minister 'Allāmi Sa'id-ullāh Khān

shaikhs, learned men, physicians and poets who flourished during the period embraced by the history.

The *Bádsháh-náma* is the great authority for the reign of Sháh Jahán. Muhammad Sálíh, a younger and rival writer, speaks of the author in the highest terms, and "Kháfi Khán, the author of the *Muntakhabu-l Lubáb*, has based his history of the first twenty years of Sháh Jahán's reign almost entirely on this work. The greatest objection to the work is the author's style, which is of that adulterated kind introduced into India apparently by the brothers Abú-l Fazl and Faizí."¹ 'Abdu-l Hamíd was, as he himself states, a professed admirer and imitator of Abú-l Fazl's style; and when he is dealing with a subject demanding his eloquence, his style is as verbose, turgid and fulsome as that of his master. Happily, however, he is not always in a magniloquent vein, but narrates simple facts in simple language, blurred only by occasional outbreaks of his laboured rhetoric.

The work is most voluminous, and forms two bulky volumes of the Bibliotheca Indica, containing 1662 pages. It enters into most minute details of all the transactions in which the Emperor was engaged, the pensions and dignities conferred upon the various members of the royal family, the titles granted to the nobles, their changes of office, the augmentations of their *mansabs*, and it gives lists of all the various presents given and received on public occasions, such as the vernal equinox, the royal birthday, the royal accession, etc. Thus the work contains a great amount of matter of no interest to any one but the nobles and courtiers of the time. But it would not be fair to say that it is filled with these trifles; there is far too much of them: but still there is a solid substratum of historical matter, from which the history of this reign has been drawn by later writers.

MSS. of the *Bádsháh-náma* are common, and some fine copies are extant. Mr. Morley describes one belonging to the Royal

¹ [Col. Lees, Jour. R.A. vol. iii. n.s.]

Asiatic Society as "a most excellent specimen of the Oriental art of caligraphy," and Col. Lees says: "The copy of the second part of the *Bādshāh-nāma* which has been used for this edition (Bibliotheca Indica) is the finest MS. I have ever seen. It is written by Muhammad Sālīh Kambū, the author of the '*Amal-i Sālīh*, and bears on the margin the autograph of the Emperor Shāh Jahān." The following Extracts have all been selected and translated by the Editor from the printed text.]¹

EXTRACTS.

[Text, vol. i. p. 69.] The Emperor Jahāngīr² died on the 28th Safar, A.H. 1037 (28th October, 1627), at the age of fifty-eight years and one month, solar reckoning. Prince Shahriyār, from his want of capacity and intelligence, had got the nickname of *Nā-shudānī*, "Good-for-nothing," and was commonly known by that appellation. He now cast aside all honour and shame, and before Shāh Jahān had started (from the Dakhin), he repudiated his allegiance, and went off in hot haste to Lahore to advance his own interests. Nūr Mahal, who had been the cause of much strife and contention, now clung to the vain idea of retaining the reins of government in her grasp, as she had held them during the reign of the late Emperor. She wrote to Nā-shudānī, advising him to collect as many men as he could, and hasten to her.

Yamīnu-d daula Āsaf Khān and Irādat Khān, who always acted together, determined that, as Shāh Jahān was far away from Āgra, it was necessary to take some steps to prevent disturbances in the city, and to get possession of the princes Muhammad Dārā Shukoh, Muhammad Shāh Shujā', and Muhammad Aurangzeb, who were in the female apartments with Nūr Mahal. They therefore resolved that for some few days

¹ [This article has been compiled by the Editor from 'Abdu-l Hamīd's preface, Sir H. M. Elliot's notes, Mr. Morley's notice in the Catalogue of the Royal Asiatic Society, and Col. Lees' article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. iii. n.s.]

² His title after death was "*Jannat-makānī*."

they would raise to the throne Bulákí, the son of Khusrú, who, by Núr Mahal's contrivance, had been placed with Ná-shudaní, but who had been put under the charge of Irádat Khán by Jahángír when Ná-shudaní returned to Lahore from Kashmír.

* * So they placed Bulákí on horseback, and, with a party of men in whom they had full confidence, they commenced their march, taking care to keep one day ahead of Núr Mahal. * * As the young princes were not safe with Núr Mahal, they removed her from the royal palace, and took the young princes under their own charge; but when Bulákí had been raised to the throne, they were placed in charge of Sádik Khán.

Accession of Sháh Jahán.

[Text, vol. i. p. 82.] Sháh Jahán ascended the throne at Ágra on the 18th Jumáda-s sání, 1037 A.H. (6th Feb. 1628), with the title of Abú-l Muzaffar Shahábu-d dín Muhammad Sáhíb Kirán-i sání.

Rebellion of Jajhár Singh.

[Text, vol. i. p. 238.] Jajhár Singh was son of Rájá Nar Singh Deo Bundela, who rose into notice by killing Shaikh Abú-l Fazl, the celebrated author of the *Akbar-náma*, when Jahángír was heir apparent. * In obedience to orders from the Emperor Akbar, the Shaikh was hastening to Court from the Dakhin with a small escort. Jahángír was jealous of the Shaikh's devotion to his father, and was apprehensive that his arrival would interfere with his own plans. * * So he incited Nar Singh Deo to kill him as he passed through his territory. This evil-minded man, from lust of gold, placed a large force of horse and foot in ambush, and fell upon the Shaikh. The followers of the Shaikh advised him to fly and escape, but he refused, and fell in the year 1011 A.H. (1602 A.D.). After the accession of Jahángír to the throne, Nar Singh Deo rose into favour and distinction through this wicked deed. But his evil nature was unable to

bear his prosperity, and towards the end of the reign of Jahángír he became disaffected, and oppressed all the *zamíndárs* in his neighbourhood. * * He died three or four months before Jahángír, and was succeeded by his son Jajhár Singh. The wealth and property which Nar Singh Deo had amassed without labour and without trouble unsettled the mind of his worthless successor Jajhár, and at the accession of Sháh Jahán, * * he left the capital Ágra, and proceeded to U'ndeha, his stronghold, where he set about raising forces, strengthening the forts, providing munitions of war and closing the roads. A force was accordingly sent against him, under the command of Mahábat Khán Khán-khánán. [*The Imperial forces converged upon U'ndeha, and*] Jajhár Singh, having no hope of escape, waited upon Khán-khánán and made his submission. Just at this time intelligence arrived that 'Abdu-lla Khán had taken the fortress of Írich,¹ which had been in the possession of Jajhár Singh.

SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1038 A.H. (20TH DECEMBER, 1628 A.D.).

[Text, vol. i. p. 272.] The anniversary of the accession was on the 1st of Jumáda-s sání. After the death of Jahángír, and before the accession of Sháh Jahán, Khán-Jahán Lodí entered upon a dangerous and disloyal course. * * He formed an alliance with Nizámu-l Mulk, and gave up to him the Bálághát in the Dakhín,² the revenue of which amounted to fifty-five *krors* of *dáms*. But Sipahdár Khán, who held Ahmadnagar, bravely and loyally refused to surrender that city. Khán-Jahán summoned to his presence all the Imperial servants who were in those parts. He left a small force at Burhánpúr under the command of Sikandar Dotání, who was related to him, while he himself marched with a large force to Mándú, with the intention of taking possession of

¹ 65 miles S.E. of Gwálíor.

² Kháfi Khán says the temptation was six *lacs* of *pagodas*.—*Muntakhabu-l Lubáb*, p. 411; but see *anté* Vol. VI. p. 433.

Málwa, which province was then under the government of Mír 'Abdu-r Razzák, who had received the title of Muzaffar Khán. Sháh Jahán proceeded from Ahmadábád by way of Ajmír to Ágra, and there ascended the throne. * * The news of this event awakened Khán-Jahán and brought him to a sense of his folly and wickedness. Rájá Gaj Singh, Rájá Jái Singh, and other distinguished Rájputs who had accompanied him to Mándú, parted from him when they heard of Sháh Jahán having arrived at Ajmír. Thereupon Khán-Jahán wrote a letter of contrition and obedience, in the hope of obtaining forgiveness.

A royal *farmán* was sent in answer, informing him that he was confirmed in the governorship of the Dakhin, and directing him to return at once to Burhánpúr. He then retired from Málwa to Burháupúr, and engaged in the duties of his office. But when it was reported to the Emperor that the country of Bálághát, which Khán-Jahán had given to Nizámu-l Mulk, still remained in his possession, and had not been recovered, the Emperor appointed Mahábat Khán to the governorship of the Dakhin. Khán-Jahán then returned to Court. The Emperor paid little heed to the reports and observations about his improper conduct, and for eight months passed no rebuke upon him. He still continued moody and discontented, and ready to listen to the incitements and suggestions of mischievous men. * * One night Lashkarí, son of Mukhlis Khán, in a malicious, mischief-making spirit, told the son of Khán-Jahán that he and his father were to be made prisoners on the following day or the next. * * The son told his father, whose apprehensions were instantly aroused by this malicious report, and he kept close to his quarters with two thousand Afghán followers. His Majesty asked Yamínu-d daula Ásaf Khán the reason why Khán-Jahán did not attend the *darbár*, and after inquiry had been made, it was ascertained that he had fears and suspicions, and he begged for a letter under the Emperor's signature, forgiving him all his offences, and relieving him from all his fears. * * The

Emperor graciously acceded to his request, and sent him a kind letter under his own hand. He then came to Court and paid his respects. But Fortune was aggrieved with him, and so his perverse temper prevented him from appreciating the Emperor's kindness.

On the night of Safar 26, the men of Yamínu-d daula brought in the intelligence that Khán-Jahán meditated flight, and he sent to inform the Emperor. * * After the first watch of the night, Khán-Jahán, with his nephew Bahádur and other relations and adherents, began his flight. As soon as the Emperor was informed of it, he sent Khwája Abú-l Hasan and * * in pursuit of the fugitive. Unmindful of the smallness of their own force and the numbers of the Afgháns, they followed them and overtook them in the vicinity of Dholpúr.¹ The fugitives saw their road of escape was closed; for the waters of the Chambal were before them and the fire of the avenging sword behind. So they posted themselves in the rugged and difficult ground on the bank of the river, and, fearing to perish in the waters, they resolved upon battle. * * [*After many were killed and wounded*], Khán-Jahán, with his two sons and several followers, resolved to hazard the passage of the Chambal, although the water was running high. He and his followers, wounded and unwounded, in great peril and with great exertion, succeeded in crossing over, thus escaping from the fire of battle and the waters of the stream. Many horses and much baggage fell into the hands of the royal forces. * * A party gathered to follow up the fugitives, but on reaching the bank of the river, it was found that it could not be crossed without boats, and an endeavour was made to collect some. Khwája Abú-l Hasan came up when one *pahar* of the day remained, and after consultation it was resolved to stay there for the night, and rest the horses, which had made a long and fatiguing march. Boats were collected, and the whole force passed over before noon next day, and recommenced

¹ Dholpúr is about thirty-five miles from Agra near the left bank of the Chambal.

the chase. But the fugitives pressed forward with all haste, and threw themselves into the jungles of Jajhár Singh Bundela.

When the traitor (Khán-Jahán) entered the territory of Jajhár Singh Bundela, that chieftain was absent in the Dakhin; but his eldest son Bikramájít was at home, and sent the rebel out of the territory by unfrequented roads. If Birkramájít had not thus favoured his escape, he would have been either taken prisoner or killed. He proceeded to Gondwána, and after staying there some time in disappointment and obscurity, he proceeded by way of Birár to the country of Burhán Nizámu-l Mulk.

THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1039 A.H. (1629 A.D.).

[Text, vol. i. p. 300.] On the 21st Ramazán Khwája Abú-l Hasan and * * * altogether about 8000 horse, were sent to effect the conquest of Násik and Trimbak¹ and Sangamnír. It was settled that the Khwája was to stay at some suitable position near the fort of Alang² during the rainy season until he was joined by Sher Khán from the province of Gujarát with his provincial levies. After the end of the rains he was to march by way of Baglána, and, taking with him some of the *samindárs* of the country, make his way to Násik. The Khwája marched from Burhánpúr, and in eight days reached the village of Dholiya,³ near the fort of Alang, and there halted until the rains should cease. * * Sher Khán, Súbadár of Gujarát, joined with 26,000 men, and the Khwája sent him to attack the fort of Bátorá, in the vicinity of Chándor, near Násik and Trimbak. Sher Khán ravaged the country, and returned with great spoil.

Murder of Jádú Rái.

[Text, vol. i. p. 308.] Jádú Rái, with his sons, grandsons,

¹ This name is here written ترنبك, but afterwards ترنبك. The real name is Tirambak or Trimbak. It is a little west of Násik.

² The text here has "Lalang," but afterwards "Alang."

³ About half way between Burhánpúr and Násik.

and other relations, held altogether from the Imperial Government *mansabs* amounting to 24,000 (personal), and 15,000 horse. He also had sundry *jágírs* in the Dakhin as *tankhráh*, so that he lived in wealth and comfort. But he was fickle and unfaithful, and went with his sons and relations to join the Nizám. But the Nizám well knew his perfidy, and resolved to put him in confinement. For this purpose the Nizám arranged with some of his servants to seize Jádú Rái, and he summoned him to his presence. Accordingly Jádú attended the Court with his family. The armed men who were in concealment suddenly attacked them, and killed him, his two sons Ujlā and Raghu, and his grandson Baswant. His brother Jagdeo Rái, with Bahádur-jí his son, his wife and the others who escaped, fled from Daulatábád to Sindghar, near Jálnapúr,¹ in their native country.

Campaign against Nizám Sháh and Khán-Jahán.

[Text, vol. i. p. 316.] 7th Rabí'u-l awwal. When the rains were over, 'Azam Khán and the great nobles who were with him left Dewalgánw,² where they had rested during the rainy season, and marched against the rebel Afgháns. * *

At the conclusion of the rains, Khwája Abú-l Hasan also, according to orders, marched from the vicinity of the fort of Alang by way of Baglána towards Násik and Trimbak. When he reached Baglána, the *samindár* of that country, by name Bahar-jí, met him with four hundred horse. * * The Khwája entered the enemy's country by way of the ghát of Jaráhlí. He found that the revenue officers and *raiýats* had left their villages, and had retired into the jungles and hills. So the country was desolate, corn was dear, and the soldiers of the royal army were in want of necessaries. The Khwája then sent detached forces into the hills, and also into the inhabited country, and they returned from each raid with abundance of corn and other necessaries, having killed or taken prisoners many of the enemy. The

¹ Or Jálná, east of Aurangábád.

² About 60 miles S. of Burhánpúr.

Be-Nizám¹ now appointed Mahaldár Khán with a party of horse and foot to vex the royal army at night with rockets. He was also directed to attack the parties sent out to gather fuel and fodder, and to carry off their camels and bullocks whenever he could get a chance. Sháh-nawáz Khán was sent against these assailants, and he, making a forced march of twenty *kos*, attacked them and put them to flight, and returned with great plunder. The Khwája next sent Khán-zamán to attack the enemy's camp at Sangamnir. This force made forced marches, and reached the camp of the enemy, who dispersed and fled to the fort of Chándor. * *

At the close of the rains, the royal army left its quarters in Dewalgánw, and marched forth against the Nizám-Sháhis and the Afgháns. On hearing of this, Mukarrab Khán and the other rebels left Jálnapúr, where they had passed the rainy season, and retreated towards Páthrí.² 'Azam Khán, being informed of their retreat, followed them march by march. When he reached the village of Rámbhúrí, on the Bán-ganga river, he learnt that the Nizám-Sháhis had ascended the Bálághát at Dhárúr,³ and had taken refuge in the fort of that place, while Khán-Jahán had not yet left his quarters at Bír.³ Khán-Jahán, having been informed of the movements of the Imperial army, called in a detachment which he had sent to collect the revenues in the dependencies of Bír, and awaited the arrival of reinforcements from Mukarrab Khán, who was at Dhárúr. 'Azam Khán conceived the design of attacking the forces of the rebel Khán before the reinforcements could reach him ; so he marched from Rámbhúrí to Mahgánw. Here he received a message from Saf-shikan Khán Razwí, commandant of the fort of Bír, informing him that Khán-Jahán was at Rájaurí, twenty-four *kos* from Machhlí-gánw, employed in dividing the spoil which his predatory followers had obtained by plundering the merchants at Kehún and Kiorái.

¹ "No ruler." This is the nickname which the author invariably uses in referring to Nizám Sháh.

² Between the Purna and Godávarí rivers, about thirty miles from their junction.

³ Bír and Dhárúr both lie on the road east of Ahmadnagar.

Several detachments which had been sent out to make collections had rejoined him, and as he had heard of the arrival of the Imperial army at Páthrí, he had made up his mind to move off as soon as it came nearer to Bír.

'Azam Khán left a detachment in charge of his camp at Machhlí-gánw to follow him quietly while he marched off after night-fall to attack the rebels. Four *gharis* of night remained when he reached Pípalnír, six *kos* from Bír, when he directed Saf-shikan Khán to make a demonstration with his force on Khán-Jahán's flank, so that he might think this small force to be the whole of the royal army, and refrain from moving away. Saf-shikan Khán accordingly drew out his force upon a ridge about a *kos* in front of the rebel army, which had taken post at the foot of the hills about four *kos* from Bír. 'Aziz, son of Khán-Jahán, advanced to attack Saf-shikan with a body of his father's troops, and at this juncture 'Azam Khán came up with the main body of the royal army, and 'Aziz was compelled to fall back in disorder to his father, whom he informed that the force which had first shown itself was Saf-shikan Khán's division, and that the whole of the royal army was coming up with all possible haste.

Khán-Jahán, when he found that his retreat was cut off, determined to fight it out. * * But the royal troops forced their way to the top of the hill. Khán-Jahán sent away the elephant litter with his women to Síú-gánw,¹ and then rallied his troops for a struggle. He sent his nephew Bahádur, in whose courage and daring he had great confidence, against Bahádur Khán and some others of the royal army, who, being few in number, were very hard pressed. They dismounted, and, resolving to sell their lives dearly, they kept up a desperate struggle, and slew many of the enemy. Bahádur Khán received two wounds from arrows, one in his face, the other in his side, and several of his comrades were slain.² Narhar Dás and

¹ About 40 miles N.E. of Ahmednagar.

² Or as the author grandiloquently expresses it: "The field of battle having been made dark as night by the clouds of dust, his companions cast themselves the number upon the flames of the fire-fighting swords."

many Rájputís fell. Sipahdár Khán and others, who had mounted the hill on the right, seeing the state of the battle, took shelter behind a stone wall, and kept up a discharge of arrows. Rájá Bihár Singh Bundela now came up from the right wing to support Bahádur Khán. He joined valiantly in the struggle, and many of his men were killed. Rájá Jái Singh and other rájás who were on another part of the hill, also joined in the fight. 'Azam Khán next came up in haste, and ordered a part of the left wing to advance. At this time, when many of the Imperial officers had fallen, and the result seemed doubtful, the favour of Heaven fell upon the royal forces. The ill-starred Bahádur, observing the successive arrivals of reinforcements for his adversaries, lost heart, and turned to flee with his Afgháns. His father also fled. As the discomfited rebels hurried down the hill, they were harassed by showers of arrows and bullets. A ball struck Bahádur Khán, and he was unable to continue his flight. Paras Rám, a servant of Rájá Bihár Singh's, came up and despatched him with his dagger; then he cut off his head, and sent it with his ring, horse and weapons, to Rájá Bihár Singh, who forwarded them to 'Azam Khán. The Khán gave the horse to the man who had slain Bahádur, the ring he sent to the Emperor, and the head he caused to be set up as a warning over the gate of Bír.

The royal forces pursued the fugitives for three *kos*, and put many of them to the sword. But as the victors had been in the saddle from the first watch in the evening of one day to the third watch of the next day, and had marched more than thirty *kos*, men and beasts were both worn out, and were unable to go further. 'Azam Khán then called a halt, to allow of a little rest, and to give stragglers time to come up.

Khán-Jahán and his followers, whose horses were fresh, took advantage of this to improve their distance; but 'Azam Khán sent Muhammad Dakhni and the forces that were in Bír to maintain the pursuit, and he himself, after a brief interval, followed with the main force. When Khán-Jahán learnt that the victors were in full pursuit, he removed his ladies from the

howda in which they had been carried by a female elephant, and mounting them on horses rode away with them. Darwesh Muhammad, with a party of pursuers, captured the elephant and *howda*, and made a number of Afghāns and their women prisoners. Most of Khān-Jahān's men who escaped were wounded, and in their panic they were able to carry off nothing but the clothes they wore and the horses they rode. Khān-Jahān, with a few faithful followers, escaped into the hill-country. * * 'Azam Khān halted at Bīr, to give his army a little rest. * * Khān-Jahān then proceeded from Sīu-gānw to Bīzāpūr¹ and Bhonsla, in the Nizām-Shāhi territory, with the design of going to Daulatābād. On hearing of this movement, 'Azam Khān marched from Bīr towards Sīu-gānw with 20,000 horse.

of Daulatábád, and around which his adherents had built various houses and edifices, and entered into the fort itself. Khán-Jahán and Daryá Khán, no longer deeming it safe to remain at Lásúr, went to Ír-Kahtala, half a *kos* from Daulatábád, and a few days later Khán-Jahán removed his family to Aubásh-darra, a place within cover of Daulatábád. Daryá Khán, with a thousand Afgháns, separated from Khán-Jahán, marched towards Chándor, and the ghát of Chális-gánw,¹ with the intention of attacking Andol and Dharan-gánw.

This movement being reported to the Emperor, * * he appointed 'Abdu-lla Khán, whom he had summoned from the Bálághát, to act against Daryá Khán, and sent him off on the 10th Jumáda-l awwal. Daryá Khán had ravaged Andol, Dharan-gánw, and sundry other places of the Páyin-ghát of Chális-gánw; but on hearing of the approach of 'Abdu-lla Khán, he turned back to the Bálághát. Want of rain and the ravages of the Nizám-Sháhis and Afgháns, had made provisions very scarce about Daulatábád; so 'Azam Khán did not deem it prudent to advance in that direction, but thought it preferable to march against Mukarrab Khán and Bahlol, who were at Dhárúr and Ambajogái, in which plan of operations he was confirmed by a letter from Yamínu-d daula, who was at Ojhar. So he marched towards the ghát by way of Mánik-dúdh. (*After some fighting*) the royal forces ascended the ghát and took the village of Dáman-gánw, twenty *kos* from Ahmadnagar. Next day they marched to Jamkhír,² in the Nizám-Sháhi territories. * * Leaving a force there, he next day proceeded to Tilangí. The garrison of the fort there had set it in order, and opened fire upon him. * * But in the course of one watch he took it by assault, put many of the defenders to the sword, took nearly five hundred prisoners, and captured all the munitions of the fort. When the royal forces reached the banks of the Wanjara,³ twelve *kos* from the fort of

¹ About 25 miles E. of Chándor, and the same N.W. of Aurangábád.

² About 30 miles S.E. of Aurangábád.

³ Called in the maps "Manjira."

Dhárúr, they found that Mukarrab Khán and his confederates had passed down the pass of Anjan-dúdh, and had gone to the neighbourhood of Bír. 'Azam Khán then sent Sáhú-jí Bhonsla to take possession of the districts around Junír and Sangamnír, whilst he himself, with the main force, went through the pass of Ailam to the town of Bír, and proceeded from thence to Partúr, on the bank of the river Dúdna. The enemy then fled towards Daulatábád. But 'Azam Khán learnt that scarcity of provisions prevented them from remaining in that vicinity, and that they had moved off towards the Bálághát, by way of Dhárúr. He then determined to intercept and attack them. But he found that the enemy, having placed their elephants and baggage in the fort of Dhárúr, had the design of descending the Páyín-ghát. So he went through the pass of Anjan-dúdh, and encamped three *kos* from Dhárúr.

Capture of the Fort of Mansúr-garh.

[Text, vol. i. p. 332.] In the course of the past year, Bákir Khán had proceeded to the pass of Kherá-pára, two *kos* from Chhatar-dawár. This is a very narrow pass, between the territories of Kutbu-l Mulk and Orissa, and a small force of musketeers and archers might hold it in security. He ravaged the country round, but when the rains set in, he retired without making any attempt upon the fort of Mansúr-garh, which a slave of Kutbu-l Mulk's, named Mansúr, had built about four *kos* from Kherá-pára. After the rains, under the royal orders, he again marched to Kherá-pára. Sher Muhammad, and other officers of Kutbu-l Mulk, had collected about 3000 horse and 10,000 foot, and having strengthened the fort with guns, muskets, and other implements of warfare, they made ready for battle. * * On the 8th Jumáda-l awwal, Bákir Khán arrived in the vicinity of Mansúr-garh, and found the enemy drawn up in a plain north-east of the fort. * * The enemy were unable to withstand the assault of the royal forces, but broke and fled. Flushed with victory, Bákir Khán

resolved to attack the fort. Notwithstanding a heavy fire of cannons and muskets, he advanced to the base of the walls, planted his scaling-ladders, and began to ascend. The garrison being dismayed, took grass between their teeth, as is the manner of that country, and begged for quarter. Bákír Khán allowed them to march out in safety, and then placed a garrison of his own in the fort.

Flight of Khán-Jahán.

[Text, vol. i. p. 334.] The territories of Nizámu-l Mulk, had suffered severely from the inroads of the Imperial forces in pursuit of Khán-Jahán, and mistrust and differences had arisen between the Nizám and Khán-Jahán; so the latter, in concert with Daryá Khán, his chief adherents, and his remaining sons, resolved to retire to the Panjáb, in order to seek the means of carrying on his insurrection among the disaffected Afgháns of that country. So he left Daulatábád and proceeded towards Málwa. The Emperor, by his sagacity and foresight, had anticipated such a movement, and had sent 'Abdu-alla Khán to Málwa, in order to chastise Daryá Khán. After Daryá had returned to the Bálághát, 'Abdu-lla Khán was directed to wait at the Páyín-ghát, and to hasten after Daryá Khán, wherever he might hear of him. Having got intelligence of his movements, 'Abdu-lla Khán went after him, and reported the facts to Court.

On the 24th Jumáda-l awwal, the Emperor * * appointed Saiyid Muzaffar Khán to support 'Abdu-lla Khán, * * * and on the 25th Rabí'u-l awwal, he marched towards Málwa. He was directed to proceed by way of Bijágarh, and to cross the Nerbadda near Mándú. * * If he found 'Abdu-lla Khán there, he was directed to join him. He marched with all speed, and crossed the Nerbadda at Akbarpúr. 'Abdu-lla Khán having heard that Khán-Jahán had crossed at Dharampúr,¹ he crossed the river at the same ford, and encamped at Loníhara. There he ascertained that on the 28th Jumáda-l awwal, Khán-Jahán had

¹ S.W. of Mándú.

moved off. He then proceeded to Dīpālpūr,¹ where he learnt that the rebels were plundering the neighbourhood of Ujjain, and he marched to Núlāhī² in search of them.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1040 A.H. (1630 A.D.).

Flight of Khán-Jahán.

[Text, vol. i. p. 338.] On the 4th, 'Abdu-lla Khán reached Núlāhī, and Saiyid Muzaffar Khán, having left Dīpālpūr, reached Mankod on the 5th, on his way to Mandisor, when he learnt that the rebels had turned off to the right. On the 6th, he again marched, and came to Tál-gánw, and on that day 'Abdu-lla Khán came up from the rear and joined him. There they heard that the rebels were ten *kos* distant the day before, and had moved off that very morning. So they hastened off in pursuit. On the 10th they encamped at Khiljīpūr, and ascertained that the rebels were moving towards Sironj. The royal forces reached Sironj on the 14th, and found that the rebels had come there two days previously. Khwāja Bábú-e Aftáb got into the city just before their arrival, and joining Khwāja 'Abdu-l Hádī, who was in the place, beat off the rebels, who only succeeded in carrying off fifty of the royal elephants.

Khán-Jahán and Daryá Khán now found the roads closed on all sides against them. Every day that came they looked upon as their last, so in their despair they proceeded on the right from Sironj, and entered the country of the Bundela, intending to push on to Kálpí. Jajhár Singh Bundela had incurred the royal censure because his son Bikramájít had allowed Khán-Jahán on his flight from Ágra to pass through his territory and so reach the Dakhin. Bikramájít, to atone for his fault, and to remove the disgrace of his father, went in pursuit of the fugitives, and on the 17th came up with the rear-guard under Daryá Khán, and attacked it with great vigour. That doomed one, under the intoxication of temerity or of wine, disdained to fly, and in his

¹ Between Mándú and Ujjain.

² "Noulái" or "Nowlye," 60 miles N. of Mándú.

turn attacked. A musket-ball pierced his brainless skull, and his son was also killed. The Bundelas attacked him under the impression that he was Khán-Jahán, but that crafty one hastened from the field in another direction. Bikramájít cut off the head of Daryá Khán, and also of his son, and sent them to Court, thus atoning for his former fault. Nearly four hundred Afgháns and two hundred Bundelas were slain in the fight. For this service Bikramájít received the title of Jag-ráj, and was advanced to the dignity of 2000 personal and 2000 horse.

Capture of the Fort of Dhárúr.

[Text, vol. i. p. 339.] 'Azam Khán, having ascended the pass of Anjan-dúdh, encamped three *kos* from Dhárúr. He then directed Multafit Khán and others to make an attack upon the town of Dhárúr and its *petta*, where once a week people from all parts, far and near, were accustomed to meet for buying and selling. The fort of Dhárúr was celebrated throughout the Dakhin for its strength and munitions of war. It was built upon the top of a ridge, and deep rivers of difficult passage ran on two sides of it. It was so secure that any effort upon it by the royal army was likely to prove unsuccessful; so Marhamat Khán was directed to plunder the town and *petta*, but not to make any attempt upon the fortress. * * * The garrison became disheartened, and remiss in their duty. * * On the 23rd Jumáda-s sání Marhamat Khán made his way in with a party of men, and opened the wicket. 'Azam Khán then entered with all his officers, and nearly two thousand men scaled the walls and got into the fort. All the vast munitions, the jewels, etc., became spoil of war.

Death of Khán-Jahán Lodi.

[p. 348.] The unhappy Khán-Jahán was greatly distressed and dismayed by the death of Daryá Khán. Having no hope except in evasion, he fled and sought obscurity; but the royal forces pursued him closely. On the 28th Jumáda-s sání, on arriving at

the village of Nímí, in the country of Bhándér,¹ the royal army learned that Khán-Jahán was about eight *kos* from that place. The long march they had made, and the company of many men who had been wounded in Jag-ráj's action, prevented the royal forces from marching very early, but they drew near to the rebel.

Khán-Jahán, on hearing of their approach, sent off some of his Afgháns, whose horses were knocked up, with the little baggage that was left; while he himself, with nearly a thousand horse, prepared to encounter Muzaffar Khán. The fight was sharp, great valour was exhibited, and many fell on both sides. * * Khán-Jahán was wounded, his son Mahmúd was killed with many of his followers, and further resistance was useless; so he again fled. Being hard pressed, he was every now and then obliged to abandon an elephant, so that before reaching Kálinjar twenty elephants had fallen into the hands of the pursuers, and some were caught by Rájá Amar Singh of Bándher. When Khán-Jahán approached Kálinjar, Saiyid Ahmad, the commandant of that fortress, came out to attack him. He killed several men, and took some prisoners. Hasan, another son of Khán-Jahán, was made prisoner; with him were captured twenty-two of the royal elephants, which Khán-Jahán had taken at Sironj. Khán-Jahán lost his *tugh* and banner, and fled with a handful of followers. By great exertion he travelled twenty *kos* that day, and reached the borders of Sahenda,² where he was to end his mortal life. 'Abdu-lla Khán Bahádur and Saiyid Muzaffar Khán pursued him closely with their forces in array.

Khán-Jahán was much afflicted at the loss of his sons and faithful followers. All hope of escape was cut off; so he told his followers that he was weary of life, that he had reached the end of his career, and there was no longer any means

¹ The text has Bándhú. Kháfi Khán (vol. i. p. 40) calls it "Bhándúr," but a MS. has Bhándér, which is right. It lies N.E. of Jhānsi.—*Ain-i Akbari*, vol. i. p. 505.

² "The tank of Sindraha."—*Kháfi Khán*, vol. i. p. 44. Blochmann gives the name as "Sehonda." It lies north of Kálinjar on the Ken.—*Ain-i Akbari*, vol. i. p. 505.

of deliverance for him; he desired, therefore, that every man should make off as best he could. A few determined to stand by him to the last, but many fled. The advanced forces of the royal army under Mádhú Singh now came up. Khán-Jahán, with his son 'Azíz, who was the dearest of all, and Aimal, and the Afgháns who remained constant, placed their two remaining elephants in front, and advanced to meet Muzaffar Khán. They made their charge, and when Khán-Jahán found that they were determined to take him, he alighted from his horse and fought desperately. In the midst of the struggle Mádhú Singh pierced him with a spear, and before Muzaffar Khán could come up the brave fellows cut Khán-Jahán, his dear son 'Azíz and Aimal, to pieces. About a hundred of his adherents fell, and their heads were cut off, but a party escaped. A grandson of Saiyid Muzaffar Khán and twenty-seven other royalists were slain. The heads of Khán-Jahán, 'Azíz, and Aimal were sent to the Imperial Court. Farid, a son of Khán-Jahán, was taken and placed in confinement. Another son, named Ján-i Jahán, had fled and taken refuge in Sahenda with the mother of Bahádur Khán. 'Abdu-lla Khán sent for him, and then despatched him in custody to Court. * * * The heads of the rebels were placed over the gate of the fort. After their victory, 'Abdu-lla Khán and Saiyid Muzaffar Khán came to Court, and received many marks of favour. The former was advanced to a *mansab* of 6000 and 6000 horse, and he received the title Fíroz-Jang. Saiyid Muzaffar Khán was promoted to a *mansab* of 5000 and 5000 horse. He received the title Khán-Jahán.

Attack on Parenda.

[Text, vol. i. p. 356.] 'Azam Khán was in the neighbourhood of Parenda,¹ intent upon the reduction of that fortress, and the capture of the elephants and stores which had been sent there.

* * He sent Rájá Jái Singh with a detachment to ravage the town

¹ Near the Sina river on the route from Ahmadnagar to Sholapur. It is about sixty miles S.W. of Dhárur.

and *petta*. The Rájá first plundered the *petta*, which was about a *kos* distant on the left of the fortress. He then attacked the town, which was surrounded by a mud (*khám*) wall five *gaz* high and three *gaz* thick, and by a ditch of three cubits (*sih sará'*) broad (?). He broke through the walls by means of his elephants, and the musketeers of the garrison then fled into the ditch of the fort. The town was plundered. 'Azam Khán then arrived, * * * and entered the town, to secure the elephants belonging to the enemy, which had been taken into the ditch of the fortress. Seven elephants were seized and brought out, and much other booty was secured. * * 'Azam Khán pressed the siege, and the troops drove zigzags¹ up to the edge of the ditch in three places, and began to fill it up. He raised a battery exactly opposite the gate of the fortress, at the distance of an arrow-shot from the moat. He then pushed his zigzags to the very edge of the moat, and there raised a battery, to which the men in the Sher-Hájí² found it very difficult to reply.

It now became evident that 'Ádil Khán, through his tender years, had no real power, but that the reins of government were in the hands of a slave named Daulat, who had been originally a minstrel (*kuláwant*), and whom the King's father, Ibráhím 'Ádil, had ennobled with the title of Daulat Khán, and had placed in command of the fortress of Bijápúr. This ungrateful infamous fellow, after the death of Ibráhím, assumed the title "Khawáss Khán," and delivered the government over to a mischievous turbulent *bráhma*n, named Murárí Pandit. This same Daulat put out the eyes of Darwesh Muhammad, the eldest son of Ibráhím 'Ádil Khán by the daughter of Kutbu-l Mulk, and demanded his daughter in marriage, thus bringing to infamy the name and honour of his indulgent patron. The 'Ádil-Khánís and the Nizám-Sháhís had now made common cause and were united.

¹ "*Kúcha-e salámat*," ways of safety.

² This is not a proper name. There was a Sher-Hájí also at Kandahár (see post p. 26), and at many other places. It is apparently an advanced work, and probably bears the name of its inventor.

The siege of Parenda had gone on for a month. Provender had throughout been difficult to procure, and now no grass was to be found within twenty *kos*. So 'Azam Khán was obliged to raise the siege, and to go to Dhárúr. * * * The 'Ádil-Khánis retreated before 'Azam Khán, and he encamped on the banks of the Wanjira. Next day he captured the town and fort of Bální, which the inhabitants defended in the hope of receiving assistance. After plundering the place, he marched to Mándú,¹ and from Mándú to Dhárúr.

Famine in the Dakhin and Gujarát.

[Text, vol. i. p. 362.] During the past year no rain had fallen in the territories of the Bálághát, and the drought had been especially severe about Daulatábád. In the present year also there had been a deficiency in the bordering countries, and a total want in the Dakhin and Gujarát. The inhabitants of these two countries were reduced to the direst extremity. Life was offered for a loaf,² but none would buy; rank was to be sold for a cake, but none cared for it; the ever-bounteous hand was now stretched out to beg for food; and the feet which had always trodden the way of contentment walked about only in search of sustenance. For a long time dog's flesh was sold for goat's flesh, and the pounded bones of the dead were mixed with flour and sold. When this was discovered, the sellers were brought to justice. Destitution at length reached such a pitch that men began to devour each other, and the flesh of a son was preferred to his love. The numbers of the dying caused obstructions in the roads, and every man whose dire sufferings did not terminate in death and who retained the power to move wandered off to the towns and villages of other countries. Those lands which had been famous for their fertility and plenty now retained no trace of productiveness. * * * The Emperor in his gracious kindness and bounty directed the officials of Burhánpúr, Ahmadábád, and the

¹ So in the text; but the maps give no such name between Parenda and Dhárúr.

² " *Jdne ba ndne*."

country of Súrat, to establish soup kitchens, or alms-houses, such as are called *langar* in the language of Hindústán, for the benefit of the poor and destitute. Every day sufficient soup and bread was prepared to satisfy the wants of the hungry. It was further ordered that so long as His Majesty remained at Burhánpúr 5000 rupees should be distributed among the deserving poor every Monday, that day being distinguished above all others as the day of the Emperor's accession to the throne. Thus, on twenty Mondays one *lac* of rupees was given away in charity. Ahmadábád had suffered more severely than any other place, and so His Majesty ordered the officials to distribute 50,000 rupees among the famine-stricken people. Want of rain and dearness of grain had caused great distress in many other countries. So under the directions of the wise and generous Emperor taxes amounting to nearly seventy *lacs* of rupees were remitted by the revenue officers—a sum amounting to nearly eighty *krors* of *dáms*, and amounting to one-eleventh part of the whole revenue. When such remissions were made from the exchequer, it may be conceived how great were the reductions made by the nobles who held *jágrs* and *mansabs*.

Capture of the Fort of Sitúnda.

[Text, vol. i. p. 370.] Sipahdúr Khán, after obtaining possession of the fort of Taltam (by the treachery of the garrison), laid siege to Sitúnda¹ by command of the Emperor, and pressed the place very hard. Sídí Jamál, the governor, offered to surrender on terms which were agreed to; so he and his family came out, and the fort passed into the possession of the Imperialists.

Capture of Kandahár.

[p. 374.] Nasírí Khán had been placed in command of a force, with instructions to conquer the kingdom of Telingána. He resolved upon reducing the fort of Kandahár,² which was exceedingly

¹ About fifty miles N.E. from Aurangábád.

² About seventy-five miles E. of Dhárúr, and twenty-five S.W. of Nander.

strong, and the most famous one of that country. It was under the command of Sádik, the son of Yákút Khudáwánd Khán, and was in full state of preparation. On the 23rd Jumáda-l-awwal he encamped one *kos* from the fortress. Next day he prepared to attack the town of Kandahár; but before reaching the place he was opposed by Sarfaráz Khán, the general commanding in that country, who had taken up a position between the fort and the town, and having covered his front with artillery, awaited the attack. He was protected also by the guns and muskets of the fortress. The royal army attacked with great vigour, and killed a great many of the enemy. Sarfaráz Khán with a few followers fled to the Nizám-Sháhís. After this Nasírí Khán pushed on the siege. * * * Randaula, Mukarrab Khán, and others, with a united force of 'Ádil-Khánís and Nizám-Sháhís, came up to attack him in his trenches. Undismayed by this fresh enemy, he boldly faced his assailants; and although he had also to bear the fire of the guns and muskets of the fortress, he defeated them with considerable loss, and compelled them to fall back a distance of three *kos*.

Out of twenty-one mines which had been opened, six were complete; three were charged with powder, and three were kept in reserve. 'Azam Khán, who had marched to support Nasírí Khán, now approached, and Nasírí Khán went forth to meet him, and to bring him to see the springing of the mines and the assault upon the fortress. The match was applied to the three mines; one failed, but the other two brought down the wall of the Sher-Hájí with half a bastion. The garrison kept up a discharge of rockets, mortars, stones and grenades, but the storming parties pressed on. The conflict raged from mid-day till sunset, but the wall of the fortress was not sufficiently levelled, and the defenders kept up such a heavy fire that the assailants were forced to retire. At night the trenches were carried forward, and preparations were made for firing the other mines. The garrison saw that the place must fall, and * * * made offers of surrender, which were accepted, and the

Imperial troops took possession of the fortress. * * The siege had lasted four months and nineteen days, and the place fell on the 15th Shawwál.

Death of the Queen 'Aliyá Begam.

[Text, vol. i. p. 384.] On the 17th Zí-l ka'da, 1040, died Nawab 'Aliyá Begam,¹ in the fortieth year of her age, to the great grief of her husband the Emperor. * * * She had borne him eight sons and six daughters. The third child and eldest son was Muhammad Dará Shukoh, the fourth Muḥammad Sháh Shujá', the sixth Muhammad Aurangzeb, the tenth Murád Bakhsh.

Nizám Sháh.

[p. 395.] A letter from Sipahdár Khán informed the Emperor how Fath Khán, feeling that his release from confinement by Nizám Sháh had been a matter of necessity, and that he would be imprisoned again as soon as his master's mind was at ease, he had resolved to be beforehand with him, and had placed Nizám Sháh in confinement, as his father Malik 'Ambar had done before. * * * Fath Khán then addressed a letter to Yamínu-d daula Ásaf Khán, informing him that he had placed Nizám Sháh in confinement on account of his evil character and his enmity to the Imperial throne, for which act he hoped to receive some mark of favour. In answer he was told that if he wished to prove his sincerity, he should rid the world of such a worthless and wicked being. On receiving this direction, Fath Khán secretly made away with Nizám Sháh, but gave out that he had died a natural death. He placed Nizám Sháh's son Husain, a lad of ten years old, on the throne as his successor. He reported these facts to the Imperial Court, and was directed to send the jewels and valuables of the late king, and his own eldest son as a hostage.

¹ Otherwise called "Mumtáz Mahal." She died in childbirth.—*Khaṣī Khán*, vol. i. p. 459.

Operations against 'Adil Khán.

[Text, vol. i. p. 404.] Muhammad 'Adil Khán (of Bijápúr), through youth, inexperience, and evil counsellors, especially a slave named Daulat (who had assumed the title of Khawáss Khán), had shown himself unfaithful to the Imperial throne, and regardless of the allegiance paid by his father. The Emperor commissioned Yamínu-d daula Ásaf Khán to arouse him from his negligence and disregard of his duty. Ásaf Khán was empowered to demand from him a return to obedience and the payment of tribute.¹ If he agreed to these terms, he was to be left alone; if not, as much as possible of his territory was to be conquered, and the rest laid waste.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1041 A.H. (1631 A.D.).

Campaign against Bijápúr.

[p. 411.] Ásaf Khán proceeded on his expedition, and arrived at Nánder, where he remained two days. There he left the main part of his army, and proceeded express to the fort of Kandahár, which he inspected. One stage further on he came to the fort of Bhálkí.² * * * Orders were given for the reduction of the place, and entrenchments were commenced, but it was resolved to attempt the capture of the place by escalade at night. The garrison got notice of this, and evacuated the place under cover of darkness. * * * Ásaf Khán then marched towards Kalánor, a flourishing place belonging to 'Adil Khán. When he arrived at Sultánpúr, near the city of Kulbarga, the general in command had taken the principal inhabitants into the fort of Kulbarga, which was well armed with guns, muskets, and other instruments of war. Next day 'Azam Khán, under the directions of Ásaf Khán, made an attack upon the town, and carried it, notwithstanding a heavy fire from the fort.

¹ The *Sháh-Jahán-náma* says that the surrender of the fort of Parenda was to be also required.

² Twenty-fives miles N.W. of Bidr.

The victors plundered whatever they could lay their hands on, and captured many horses in the ditch of the fortress. Ásaf Khán did not deem it expedient to attempt the reduction of the fortress, as it would have been a difficult undertaking and a cause of delay; so he retired, and encamped near the river Nahnúra. Then he advanced to the vicinity of Bijápúr, and encamped on the borders of a tank between Nauras-púr¹ and Sháh-púr. The enemy every day came out of the ditch into the plain, and there was a warm interchange of rockets, arrows, and musketry. But although the enemy kept up also a heavy fire from the fortifications, they were regularly driven back to the shelter of the walls.

Ásaf Khán used to take every precaution for the safety of the detachments which went out every day to collect fodder, but the army was large and the animals numerous, so this was no easy matter.

The enemy were constantly on the alert, and struck whenever they got an opportunity. * * * At the beginning a man named Shaikh Dabír, one of the confidants of Khawáss Khán, came out with overtures of peace and offers of tribute; but as they were not worthy of trust, they were rejected. Afterwards Mustafá Khán, son-in-law of Mullá Muhammad Lahorí, kept up a secret correspondence with Ásaf Khán, expressing his devotion and proposing to admit the Imperial troops into the fortress. * * * After much negociation, it was agreed that Mustafá Khán and Khairiyat Khán Habshí, uncle of Randaula, should come to Ásaf Khán and arrange for the transmission of tribute and the settlement of the terms of peace. Accordingly both came out of Bijápúr, * * * and it was finally agreed that 'Ádil Khán should send tribute to the value of forty *lacs* of rupees in jewels, valuables, elephants, and money, and that he should ever after remain faithful to his allegiance. A treaty in these terms was accordingly drawn up. * * * The two negociators returned to Bijápúr, and Shaikh 'Abdu-r Rahím

¹ The text has "Núr-siyúr," but the Index of Names corrects it.

Khairábádí went in with them to obtain 'Ádil Khán's signature to the treaty.

On the third day the Shaikh was sent back with a message that they would send out their own *akils* with the treaty. Next day they came out with certain propositions that 'Asaf Khán considered reasonable, and he accepted them. It was agreed that the treaty should be sent out next day. As they were about to depart, one of the *akils*, who was a confidant of Mustafá Khán, dropped a letter of his before 'Asaf Khán, without the knowledge of his companion. The letter said that Khawáss Khán was well aware that provender was very scarce in the Imperial army; that the fetching of grass and fuel from long distances was a work of great toil to man and beast; and that in consequence it would be impossible for the Imperial army to maintain its position more than a few days longer. Khawáss Khán had therefore resolved to have recourse to artifice and procrastination, in the expectation that 'Asaf Khán would be obliged to raise the siege and retire baffled.

The siege had lasted twenty days, and during that time no corn had reached the army, and before its arrival the enemy had laid waste all the country round, and carried off the grain to distant places. The provisions which the army had brought with it were all exhausted, and grain had risen to the price of one rupee per *shr*. Men and beasts were sinking. So it was resolved, after consultation, that the royal army should remove from Bijápúr into some better supplied part of the enemy's country, that the Imperial army might be recruited, and the territory of the enemy be wasted at the same time. With this intention the royal army marched along the bank of the Kishan Gang¹ to Rai-bágh and Míraj,² two of the richest places in that country. Wherever they found supplies they rested, and parties were sent out to plunder in all directions. On whatever road they

¹ The Kistna or Krishna.

² Míraj is on the left bank of the Kistna, about thirty miles E. of Kolapúr. Rái-bágh is about twenty-five miles lower to the S.E., and on the other side of the river.

went they killed and made prisoners, and ravaged and laid waste on both sides. From the time of their entering the territories to the time of their departure they kept up this devastation and plunder. The best part of the country was trodden under, and so, as the forces had recovered strength and the rains were near, the royal army passed by the fort of Sholapúr, and descended by the passes into the Imperial territories. 15,000 men of the enemy, who had followed them to Sholapúr, then turned back to Bījápúr.

Return of the Court from Burhánpúr to Agra.

[Text, vol. i. p. 421.] The Emperor being tired of his residence at Burhánpúr, resolved to return to the capital; so he set out on the 24th Ramazán, * * and arrived there on the 1st Zí-l hijja, 1241 A.H.

Affairs in the Dakhín had not been managed so well as they ought to have been by 'Azam Khán: so a mandate was sent to Mahábat Khán Khán-khánán, informing him that the government of Khúndesh and the Dakhín had been conferred upon him, and he was directed to make the necessary preparations as quickly as possible, and start from Delhi to meet the Emperor and receive instructions. Yamína-Jánsá 'Asaf Khán, with 'Azam Khán and other nobles under his command, were directed to return to Court.

Capture of the Port of Hugli.

[p. 434.] Under the rule of the Bengális (*dar 'ald i Bangálí-yán*) a party of Frisk merchants, who are inhabitants of Súdúp, came trading to Ságáw. One *Lo* above that place, they occupied some ground close back of the estuary.¹ Under the pretence that a building was necessary for their transactions in buying and selling, they erected several houses in the Bengali style. In course of time, through the ignorance and negligence of the rulers of Bengal, these Europeans increased in number, and erected large substantial buildings, which they fortified with

¹ The word used in H.E., "an estuary," here apparently meaning a tidal river.

cannons, muskets, and other implements of war. In due course, a considerable place grew up, which was known by the name of the Port of Húglí. On one side of it was the river, and on the other three sides was a ditch filled from the river. European ships used to go up to the port, and a trade was established there. The markets of Sâtgánw declined and lost their prosperity. The villages and districts of Húglí were on both sides of the river, and these the Europeans got possession of at a low rent. Some of the inhabitants by force, and more by hopes of gain, they infected with their Nazarene teaching, and sent them off in ships to Europe. In the hope of an everlasting reward, but in reality of an exquisite torture, they consoled themselves with the profits of their trade for the loss of rent which arose from the removal of the cultivators. These hateful practices were not confined to the lands they occupied, but they seized and carried off every one they could lay their hands upon along the sides of the river.

These proceedings had come under the notice of the Emperor before his accession, * * and he resolved to put an end to them if ever he ascended the throne, that the coinage might always bear the stamp of the glorious dynasty, and the pulpit might be graced with its *khutba*. After his accession, he appointed Kásim Khán to the government of Bengal, and * * impressed upon him the duty of overthrowing these mischievous people. He was ordered, as soon as he attended to the necessary duties of his extensive province, to set about the extermination of the pernicious intruders. Troops were to be sent both by water and land, so that this difficult enterprise might be quickly and easily accomplished.

Kásim Khán set about making his preparations, and at the close of the cold season, in Sha'bán, 1240 A.H., he sent his son 'Ináyatu-ulla with Alláh Yár Khán, who was to be the real commander of the army, and several other nobles, to effect the conquest of Húglí. He also sent Bahádur Kambú, an active and intelligent servant of his, with the force under his command, under the pretence of taking possession of the *Khálisa* lands at Makhsús-

ábád, but really to join Alláh Yár Khán at the proper time. Under the apprehension that the infidels, upon getting intelligence of the march of the armies, would put their families on board ships, and so escape from destruction to the disappointment of the warriors of Islám, it was given out that the forces were marching to attack Hijlí. Accordingly it was arranged that Alláh Yár Khán should halt at Bardwán, which lies in the direction of Hijlí, until he received intelligence of Khwája Sher and others, who had been ordered to proceed in boats from Srípúr¹ to cut off the retreat of the Firingís. When the flotilla arrived at Mohána, which is a *dahna*² of the Húglí, Alláh Yár Khán was to march with all expedition from Bardwán to Húglí, and fall upon the infidels. Upon being informed that Khwája Sher and his companions had arrived at the *dahna*, Alláh Yár Khán made a forced march from Bardwán, and in a night and day reached the village of Haldipúr, between Sátgánw and Húglí. At the same time he was joined by Bahádur Kambú, who arrived from Makhsús-ábád, with 500 horse and a large force of infantry. Then he hastened to the place where Khwája Sher had brought the boats, and between Húglí and the sea, in a narrow part of the river, he formed a bridge of boats, so that ships could not get down to the sea; thus the flight of the enemy was prevented.

On the 2nd Zí-l hijja, 1241, the attack was made on the Firingís by the boatmen on the river, and by the forces on land. An inhabited place outside of the ditch was taken and plundered, and the occupants were slain. Detachments were then ordered to the villages and places on both sides of the river, so that all the Christians found there might be sent to hell. Having killed or captured all the infidels, the warriors carried off the families of their boatmen, who were all Bengalís. Four thousand boatmen, whom the Bengalís called *ghrábí*, then left the Firingís and joined the victorious army. This was a great discouragement to the Christians.

The royal army was engaged for three months and a half in

¹ Serampore.

² Qy. Bengali *dahra*, a lake.

the siege of this strong place. Sometimes the infidels fought, sometimes they made overtures of peace, protracting the time in hopes of succour from their countrymen. With base treachery they pretended to make proposals of peace, and sent nearly a *luc* of rupees as tribute, while at the same time they ordered 7000 musketeers who were in their service to open fire. So heavy was it that many of the trees of a grove in which a large force of the besiegers was posted were stripped of their branches and leaves.

At length the besiegers sent their pioneers to work upon the ditch, just by the church, where it was not so broad and deep as elsewhere. There they dug channels and drew off the water. Mines were then driven on from the trenches, but two of these were discovered by the enemy and counteracted. The centre mine was carried under an edifice which was loftier and stronger than all the other buildings, and where a large number of Firingís were stationed. This was charged and tamped. On the 14th Rabí'u-l awwal the besieger's forces were drawn up in front of this building, in order to allure the enemy to that part. When a large number were assembled, a heavy fire was opened, and the mine was fired. The building was blown up, and the many infidels who had collected around it were sent flying into the air. The warriors of Islám rushed to the assault. Some of the infidels found their way to hell by the water, but some thousands succeeded in making their way to the ships. At this juncture Khwája Sher came up with the boats, and killed many of the fugitives.

These foes of the faith were afraid lest one large ship, which had nearly two thousand men and women and much property on board, should fall into the hands of the Muhammadans; so they fired the magazine and blew her up. Many others who were on board the *ghrábs* set fire to their vessels, and turned their faces towards hell. Out of the sixty-four large *díngas*, fifty-seven *ghrábs* and 200 *jaliyas*, one *ghráb* and two *jaliyas* escaped, in consequence of some fire from the burning ships having fallen

upon some boats laden with oil, which burnt a way through (the bridge of boats). Whoever escaped from the water and fire became a prisoner. From the beginning of the siege to the conclusion, men and women, old and young, altogether nearly 10,000 of the enemy were killed, being either blown up with powder, drowned in water, or burnt by fire. Nearly 1000 brave warriors of the Imperial army obtained the glory of martyrdom. 4400 Christians of both sexes were taken prisoners, and nearly 10,000 inhabitants of the neighbouring country who had been kept in confinement by these tyrants were set at liberty.

Surrender of the Fort of Gálna.

[Text, vol. i. p. 442.] After Fath Khán, son of Malik 'Ambar, had put Nízám Sháh to death, Mahmúd Khán, the commandant of the fort of Gálna, repudiated his authority, and put the fortress in a state of defence, intending to deliver it over to Sáhú-jí Bhonsla, who, unmindful of the favours he had received from the Imperial throne, had strayed from the path of obedience, and had possessed himself of Násik, Trimbak, Sangamnér and Junér, as far as the country of the Kokan. He had got into his power one of the relatives of the late Nízám Sháh, who had been confined in one of the strongest fortresses in the kingdom, and raised the banner of independence. He (Mahmud Khán)¹ wished to deliver the fort over to him. Khán-zamán, who was acting as deputy of his father in the government of the Dakhin, Birár and Khándesh, when he was informed of Mahmúd Khán's proceedings, wrote to Mír Kásim Khán Harawí, commandant of the fort of Alang, which is near to Gálna. He directed him to endeavour by promises of Imperial favour to win him over, and prevent the surrender of the fortress to Sáhú-jí Bhonsla. Mír Kásim communicated with Mahmúd Khán on the subject, and the latter invited the Mír to come to him. After a good deal of talk, Mahmúd Khán assented to the pro-

¹ This seems to be the sense of the passage, but it is obscure.

position, and in the hope of a great reward delivered over the fort to the representatives of the Emperor.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1042 A.H. (1632 A.D.).

[Text, vol. i. p. 449.] Bhágírat Bhíl, chief of the disaffected in the province of Málwa, relying on the number of his followers and the strength of his fort of Khátákhíri,¹ had refused obedience to the governors of Málwa. He ventured to show his disaffection to Nusrat Khán, when he was governor, and the Khán marched from Sárangpúr to chastise him. The Khán's fame as a soldier had its effect. The rebel gave up all hope of resistance, and, seeking an introduction to Nusrat Khán through Sangráma, Zamíndár of Kanúr, he surrendered his fortress.

Destruction of Hindu Temples.

[p. 449.] It had been brought to the notice of His Majesty that during the late reign many idol temples had been begun, but remained unfinished, at Benares, the great stronghold of infidelity. The infidels were now desirous of completing them. His Majesty, the defender of the faith, gave orders that at Benares, and throughout all his dominions in every place, all temples that had been begun should be cast down. It was now reported from the province of Allahábád that seventy-six temples had been destroyed in the district of Benares.

Conquest of Daulatábád.

[p. 496.] Fath Khán, son of 'Ambar Habshí, conceiving his interest to lie in making submission to the Emperor, had sent his son, 'Abdu-r Rusúl, with a suitable offering to the foot of the Imperial throne, professing obedience and praying for favour. The Emperor graciously bestowed upon him some districts which had formerly belonged to him, but had been since given to Sáhú-jí Bhonsla. Now, in compliance with the request of Fath Khán,

¹ "Kuntharkera," in Malcolm's Map of Central India, on the Kali Sind, about thirty miles N. of Ujjain.

they were restored to him. This gave great offence to the turbulent Sáhú-jí, who went and joined the Bijápúris, and induced 'Adil Khán to place him in command of a force for wresting the fortress of Daulatábád from the hands of Fath Khán. The latter was much incensed against the Nizám-Sháhís, and had no faith in them; so he wrote to Khán-khánán Mahábat Khán, informing him that Sáhú-jí Bhonsla was preparing to bring a force from Bijápúr against him, and that, as the fortress was ill provisioned, there was great probability of its being taken, unless Mahábat Khán came to his assistance. If the Khán came quickly, he would surrender the fortress, and would himself proceed to the Imperial Court. The Khán-khánán accordingly sent forward his son, Khán-zamán, with an advanced force, and he himself followed on the 9th Jumáda-s sání. [*Khán-zamán defeats a cowering army of Bijápúr.*]

The Bijápúris were discouraged by the chastisement they had received from the Imperial army, so they made offers of an arrangement to Fath Khán. They offered to leave the fortress in his possession, to give him three *lacs* of *pagodas* in cash, and to throw provisions into the fort. That ill-starred foolish fellow, allured by these promises, broke his former engagement, and entered into an alliance with them. Most of the animals in the fortress had died from want of provender, and the Bijápúris now, at the instance of Fath Khán, exerted themselves in getting provisions. When Khán-khánán, who was at Zafarnagar, was informed of these proceedings, he wrote to Khán-zamán directing him to make every exertion for the reduction of the fortress, and for the punishment of the traitor and the Bijápúris. [*Skirmishes in the vicinity.*]

Khán-khánán, on being informed of the state of affairs, marched from Zafarnagar to Daulatábád, and reached there on the last day of Sha'bán. Next morning he rode out with his son, Khán-zamán, to reconnoitre the fortress, and took up his residence in a house belonging to Nizám Sháh at Nizámpúr, near the fortress. [*Disposition of his forces.*] He placed the artillery

and siege material under the direction of (his son) Luhrasp, and ordered that a constant fire should be kept up from a high hill which governs the fortress, and upon which Kághziwára stands. He also ordered Khán-zamán to be constantly on the alert with 5000 cavalry, and ready to render assistance wherever it might be required in the trenches. The Imperial army having thus invested the place, and formed trenches, pushed on the siege, running zigzags, forming mines and preparing scaling ladders.

Fath Khán placed the son of Nizám Sháh in the Kálá-kot (black fort), which was considered impregnable. He himself took post in the Mahá-kot (great fort), and the body of the forces were stationed in the outer works called 'Ambar-kot, because they had been raised by Malik 'Ambar to protect the place against the advance of the Imperial power. [*Defeat of many attempts to victual and relieve the fortress from without, and of sorties from within.*]

On the 9th Shawwál a mine which had been formed from the trenches of Khán-zamán was charged, and the forces having been named for the assault, were ordered to assemble in the trenches before break of day. The mine was to be fired at the first appearance of dawn, and upon the walls being blown down, the stormers were to rush into the fort. By mistake the mine was fired an hour before dawn, and before the storming parties were ready. Twenty-eight *gas* of the walls and twelve *gas* of the bastion was blown away, and a wide breach was made. But the troops not having arrived, no entry was effected. The defenders rushed to the breach, and kept up such a rain of arrows, bullets, and rockets, that the storming party was obliged to take refuge in the trenches. Then they exerted themselves to stop the breach with palisades and planks. The commander of the Imperial army desired to dismount and lead the assault, but Nasíri Khán urged that it was against all the rules of warfare for the commander-in-chief to act in such a way. He himself would lead the storming party, trusting in God and hoping for the favour of the Emperor. Khán-khánán directed Mahes Dás

Ráthor and others to support him. The Imperial troops rushed to the breach, and the defenders made a desperate resistance ; but Nasíri Khán, although wounded, forced his way in upon the right, and Rájá Bihár Singh and other Hindus upon the left. They were fiercely encountered by Khairiyat Khán Bijápúri and others with sword and dagger, but they at length prevailed, and drove the defenders into the ditch of the Mahá-kot for shelter. Great numbers of the garrison fell under the swords of the victors. Thus fell the celebrated works of Malik 'Ambar, which were fourteen *gaz* in height and ten *gaz* in thickness, and well furnished with guns and all kinds of defences. The Imperial commander having thus achieved a great success, proceeded with Nasíri Khán to inspect the works, and immediately took steps for attacking the Mahá-kot. [*Diversion made by the enemy in the direction of Birdr. Another attempt by Randaula and Sáhú-jí to relieve the fortress.*]

With great perseverance the besiegers pushed a mine under the Mahá-kot, and Fath Khán was so much alarmed that he sent his wives and family into the Kálá-kot. He himself, with Khairiyat Khán, uncle of Randaula, and some other Bijápúris, remained in the Mahá-kot. The Bijápúris being greatly depressed by the scarcity of food and the progress of the Imperial arms, sought permission through Málú-jí to be allowed to escape secretly, and to go to their master. Khán-khánán sent a written consent, and by kind words encouraged their drooping spirits. Nearly two hundred of them after night-fall descended by a ladder fastened to the battlements. Khán-khánán sent for them, and consoled them with kind words and presents. [*Several more attempts to relieve the fortress.*]

On the 25th Zí-l ka'da, the commander-in-chief visited the trenches. He went to Saiyid 'Aláwal, whose post was near the mine of the Sher-Hájí of the Mahá-kot, and determined that the mine should be blown up. Fath Khán got notice of this, and in the extremity of his fear he sent his *wakil* to Khán-khánán, and with great humility represented that he had bound himself

to the 'Adil-Khánís by the most solemn compact not to make peace without their approval. He therefore wished to send one of his followers to Murári Pandit, to let him know how destitute the fort was of provisions, and how hard it was pressed by the besiegers. He also wanted the Pandit to send *wakils* to settle with him the terms of peace and the surrender of the fort. He therefore begged that the explosion of the mine might be deferred for that day, so that there might be time for an answer to come from Murári Pandit. Khán-khánán knew very well that there was no sincerity in his proposal, and that he only wanted to gain a day by artifice; so he replied that if Fath Khán wished to delay the explosion for a day, he must immediately send out his son as a hostage.

When it had become evident that Fath Khán did not intend to send his son out, the mine was exploded. A bastion and fifteen yards of the wall were blown up. The brave men who awaited the explosion rushed forward, and heedless of the fire from all sorts of arms which fell upon them from the top of the Mahá-kot, they made their way in. The commander-in-chief now directed that Saiyid 'Aláwal and others who held the trenches on the outside of the ditch, opposite the Sher-Hájí, should go inside and bravely cast up trenches in the interior. [*Defeat of a demonstration made by Murári Pandit. Surrender of the fort of Nabátl near Gálua.*]

Fath Khán now woke up from his sleep of heedlessness and security. He saw that Daulatábád could not resist the Imperial arms and the vigour of the Imperial commander. To save the honour of his own and Nizám Sháh's women, he sent his eldest son 'Abdu-r Rusúl to Khán-khánán [*laying the blame of his conduct on Sühü-jí and the 'Adil-Khánís*]. He begged for forgiveness and for a week's delay, to enable him to remove his and Nizám Sháh's family from the fortress, while his son remained as a hostage in Khán-khánán's power. Khán-khánán had compassion on his fallen condition, granted him safety, and kept his son as a hostage. Fath Khán asked to be supplied

with the means of carrying out his family and property, and with money for expenses. Khán-khánán sent him his own elephants and camels and several litters, also ten *lacs* and fifty thousand rupees in cash, belonging to the State, and demanded the surrender of the fortress. Fath Khán sent the keys to Khán-khánán, and set about preparing for his own departure. Khán-khánán then placed trusty guards over the gates.

On the 19th Zí-l hijja Fath Khán came out of the fortress and delivered it up. The fortress consisted of nine different works, five upon the low ground, and four upon the top of the hill. These with the guns and all the munitions of war were surrendered. * * * Khán-khánán went into the fortress, and had the *khutba* read in the Emperor's name.

The old name of the fortress of Daulatábád was Deo-gír, or Dhárágar. It stands upon a rock which towers to the sky. In circumference it measures 5000 legal *gas*, and the rock all round is scarped so carefully, from the base of the fort to the level of the water, that a snake or an ant would ascend it with difficulty. Around it there is a moat forty legal yards (*sara'*) in width, and thirty in depth, cut into the solid rock. In the heart of the rock there is a dark and tortuous passage, like the ascent of a minaret, and a light is required there in broad daylight. The steps are cut in the rock itself, and the bottom is closed by an iron gate. It is by this road and way that the fortress is entered. By the passage a large iron brazier had been constructed, which, when necessary, could be placed in the middle of it, and a fire being kindled in this brazier, its heat would effectually prevent all progress. The ordinary means of besieging a fort by mines, *sábáts*, etc., are of no avail against it. * * *

Khán-khánán desired to leave a garrison in the captured fortress, and to go to Burhánpúr, taking Nizám Sháh and Fath Khán with him. The Imperial army had endured many hardships and privations during the siege. They had continually to contend against 20,000 horse of Bījápúr and Nizámu-l Mulk, and to struggle hard for supplies. Nasírí Khán (who had been

created Khán-daurán) was always ready for service, and he offered to take the command of the fortress. So Khán-khánán left him and some other officers in charge, and marched with his army to Zafarnagar. * * * After reaching that place, Murári Pandit and the Bijápúris sent Farhád, the father of Randaula, to treat for peace; but Khán-khánán knew their artfulness and perfidy, and sent him back again. The Bijápúris, in despair and recklessness, now turned back to Daulatábád. They knew that provisions were very scarce and the garrison small. The entrenchments which the besiegers had raised were not thrown down, so the Bijápúris took possession of them, invested the fortress and fought against it. Khán-daurán, without waiting for reinforcements, boldly sallied out and attacked them repeatedly. By kind treatment he had conciliated the *raiyats* of the neighbourhood, and they supplied him with provisions, so that he was in no want. As soon as Khán-khánán heard of these proceedings, he marched for Daulatábád. The enemy finding that they could accomplish nothing, abandoned the siege as soon as they heard of the approach of Khán-khánán, and then retreated by Násik and Trimbak.

Christian Prisoners.

[Text, vol. i. p. 534.] On the 11th Muharram, [1043 A.H.], Kásim Khán and Bahádur Kambú brought * * * 400 Christian prisoners, male and female, young and old, with the idols of their worship, to the presence of the faith-defending Emperor. He ordered that the principles of the Muhammadan religion should be explained to them, and that they should be called upon to adopt it. A few appreciated the honour offered to them and embraced the faith: they experienced the kindness of the Emperor. But the majority in perversity and wilfulness rejected the proposal. These were distributed among the *amirs*, who were directed to keep these despicable wretches in rigorous confinement. When any one of them accepted the true faith, a report was to be made to the Emperor, so that provision might be made for him. Those

who refused were to be kept in continual confinement. So it came to pass that many of them passed from prison to hell. Such of their idols as were likenesses of the prophets were thrown into the Jumna, the rest were broken to pieces.

Last of the Nizám Sháhs.

[Text, vol. i. p. 540.] Islám Khán returned to Court, bringing with him the captive Nizám Sháh and Fath Khán, whom Khán-khánán Mahábat Khán had sent together with the plunder taken at Daulatábád. Nizám Sháh was placed in the custody of Khán-Jahan, in the fort of Gwálior. * * * The crimes of Fath Khán were mercifully pardoned; he was admitted into the Imperial service, and received a *khi'at* and a grant of two *lacs* of rupees per annum. His property also was relinquished to him, but that of Nizám Sháh was confiscated..

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1043 A.H. (1633 A.D.).

[p. 545.] The Emperor had never visited Lahore, one of his chief cities, since his accession. He now determined to proceed thither, and also to pay a visit to the peerless vale of Kashmír. Accordingly he set out from Ágra on the 3rd Sha'bán, 1043 H. * * * His Majesty's sense of justice and consideration for his subjects induced him to order that the *Bakhshi* of the *ahadis* with his archers should take charge of one side of the road, and the *Mir-átish* with his matchlock-men should guard the other, so that the growing crops should not be trampled under foot by the followers of the royal train. As, however, damage might be caused, *dároghas*, *mushrif*s and *amíns* were appointed to examine and report on the extent of the mischief, so that *rai'yats*, and *jágir-dárs* under 1000, might be compensated for the individual loss they had sustained.

March of Prince Sháh Shujá' against Parenda.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 33.] The fortress of Parenda, belonging to Nizám Sháh, was formerly besieged by 'Azam Khán, but, as before

related, certain obstacles compelled him to raise the siege. 'Adil Khán [*by cajolery and bribery*] got the fort into his possession. * * * The reduction of this fortress had long been a favourite object with Khán-khánán, and, when Prince Sháh Shujá' came near to Burhánpúr with a fine army, * * * Khán-khánán waited upon him, and advised him to undertake the reduction of Paranda. So the Prince, without entering Burhánpúr, turned off and marched against that fortress. * * * On arriving at Paranda, he encamped on a stream about a *kos* distant, which is the only water to be found in the vicinity. Then he allotted the work of constructing the trenches, and placed the general direction of the siege works in the hands of Alla Vardí Khán. [*Many conflicts and skirmishes in the neighbourhood.*]

The efforts of the besiegers in the construction of mines were not attended with much success. The enemy broke into some and destroyed them, and water burst into others. One, constructed by Alla Vardí, in front of the Sher-Hájí, was fired by the Prince himself, who went to it by the covered way. It blew up a bastion, but did not make a practicable breach. Moreover, great ill feeling had sprung up between Khán-khánán and Khán-daurán, because the latter was continually repeating that he had saved Khán-khánán's life [*in one of the engagements*]. All the nobles and officers also were aggrieved at the petulance and discourtesy of Khán-khánán. Through this the enemy got information about Khán-khánán's plans, and were able to foil them, so that he made no progress in the reduction of the place. He therefore represented to the Prince that, although provisions were abundant, there was no grass or fuel within ten or twelve *kos* of the camp, so that every foraging party had to travel more than twenty *kos*. This was very distressing to the army. The rainy season also was at hand. So he advised a retreat to Burhánpúr. As the Prince had been ordered to act upon the advice of Khán-khánán, the army retreated on the 3rd Zí-l hijja.

Death of Khán-khánán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 59.] On the 14th Jumáda-l awwal intelligence arrived of the death of Mahábat Khán Khán-khánán, who died of fistula, with which he had long been afflicted.

EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1044 A.H. (1634 A.D.).

The Peacock Throne.

[p. 62.] In the course of years many valuable gems had come into the Imperial jewel-house, each one of which might serve as an ear-drop for Venus, or would adorn the girdle of the Sun. Upon the accession of the Emperor, it occurred to his mind that, in the opinion of far-seeing men, the acquisition of such rare jewels and the keeping of such wonderful brilliants can only render one service, that of adorning the throne of empire. They ought therefore, to be put to such a use, that beholders might share in and benefit by their splendour, and that Majesty might shine with increased brilliancy. It was accordingly ordered that, in addition to the jewels in the Imperial jewel-house, rubies, garnets, diamonds, rich pearls and emeralds, to the value of 200 *lacs* of rupees, should be brought for the inspection of the Emperor, and that they, with some exquisite jewels of great weight, exceeding 50,000 *miskáls*, and worth eighty-six *lacs* of rupees, having been carefully selected, should be handed over to Be-badal Khán, the superintendent of the goldsmith's department. There was also to be given to him one *lac* of *tolas* of pure gold, equal to 250,000 *miskáls* in weight and fourteen *lacs* of rupees in value. The throne was to be three *gas* in length, two and a half in breadth, and five in height, and was to be set with the above-mentioned jewels. The outside of the canopy was to be of enamel work with occasional gems, the inside was to be thickly set with rubies, garnets, and other jewels, and it was to be supported by twelve emerald columns. On the top

each pillar there were to be two peacocks thick set with gems, and between each two peacocks a tree set with rubies and diamonds, emeralds and pearls. The ascent was to consist of three steps set with jewels of fine water. This throne was completed in the course of seven years at a cost of 100 *lacs* of rupees. Of the eleven jewelled recesses (*takhta*) formed around it for cushions, the middle one, intended for the seat of the Emperor, cost ten *lacs* of rupees. Among the jewels set in this recess was a ruby worth a *lac* of rupees, which Sháh 'Abbás, the King of Írán, had presented to the late Emperor Jahángír, who sent it to his present Majesty, the Sáhíb Kirán-i sání, when he accomplished the conquest of the Dakhin. On it were engraved the names of Sáhíb-kirán (Tímúr), Mír Sháh Rukh, and Mirzá Ulugh Beg. When in course of time it came into the possession of Sháh 'Abbás, his name was added; and when Jahángír obtained it, he added the name of himself and of his father.¹ Now it received the addition of the name of his most gracious Majesty Sháh Jahán. By command of the Emperor, the following *masnawí*, by Hájí Muhammad Ján, the final verse of which contains the date, was placed upon the inside of the canopy in letters of green enamel. * * *

On his return to Ágra, the Emperor held a court, and sat for the first time on his throne. * * Yamínu-d daula Ásaf Khán was promoted to the dignity of Khán-khánán. [*Conquest by Najábat Khán of several forts belonging to the samíndárs of Srinagar, and his subsequent enforced retreat.*]

¹ The following is the account given of the throne in the *Sháh-Jahán-náma* of 'Ináyat Khán: "The *Nau-roz* of the year 1044 fell on the 'Íd-i fitr, when His Majesty was to take his seat on the new jewelled throne. This gorgeous structure, with a canopy supported on twelve pillars, measured three yards and a half in length, two and a half in breadth, and five in height, from the flight of steps to the overhanging dome. On His Majesty's accession to the throne, he had commanded that eighty-six *lacs* worth of gems and precious stones, and a diamond worth fourteen *lacs*, which together make a *crore* of rupees as money is reckoned in Hindústán, should be used in its decoration. It was completed in seven years, and among the precious stones was a ruby worth a *lac* of rupees that Sháh 'Abbás Safavi had sent to the late Emperor, on which were inscribed the names of the great Tímúr Sáhíb-Kirán, etc."

Rebellion of Jajhár Singh Bundela and his son Bikramájít.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 94.] His Majesty in the second year of his reign pardoned the misdeeds of this turbulent man, and sent him on service to the Dakhin. After a while he took leave of Mahábat Khán Khán-khánán, the ruler of the Dakhin, and retired to his own country, leaving behind him his son Bikramájít, entitled Jag-ráj, and his contingent of men. On reaching home, he attacked Bím Naráín, Zamíndár of Garha, and induced him by a treaty and promise to surrender the fort of Chaurágarh.¹ Afterwards, in violation of his engagement, he put Bím Naráín and a number of his followers to death, and took possession of the fort, with all the money and valuables it contained. Bím Naráín's son accompanied Khán-daurán to Court from Málwa, taking with him an offering, and he made known to the Emperor what had happened. A *farmán* was then sent to Jajhár Singh, charging him with having killed Bím Naráín, and taking possession of Garha, without the authority of the Emperor, and directing him to surrender the territory to the officers of the Crown, or else to give up the *jágrs* he held in his own country, and to send to Court ten *lacs* of rupees in cash out of the money which had belonged to Bím Naráín. He got notice of this *farmán* from his *wakils* before it arrived, and being resolved to resist, he directed his son Bikramájít to escape with his troops from the Bálághát, whither he had gone with Khán-daurán, and to make the best of his way home. The son acted accordingly, * * but he was attacked at Ashta² in Málwa by Khán-zamán, *Názim* of the Páyín-ghát, when many of his men were killed, and he himself was wounded, and narrowly escaped; * * but he made his way by difficult and unknown roads through the jungles and hills, and joined his father in the *pargana* of Dhámání.³ [20,000 men sent against the rebel under the nominal command of Prince Aurangzeb.]

The different divisions of the Imperial army united at Bhandar,

¹ Seventy miles W. of Jabalpur.—*Ain-i Akbari*, vol. i. p. 367.

² Sixty miles S.W. of Bhopal.

³ In Bundelkhand near lat. 79°, long. 24°.

and prepared for the reduction of the fortress of U'ndeha. On arriving within three *kos* of U'ndeha, where the forest territory of Jajhár commences, the forces were constantly occupied in cutting down trees and forming roads. Every day they made a little advance. Jajhár had with him in U'ndeha nearly 5000 horse and 10,000 foot, and was resolved to contest the passage through the woods. Every day he sent out cavalry and infantry to keep under the cover of the trees, and to annoy the royal forces with muskets and arrows. But the Imperial army killed some of them every day, and forced its way to the neighbourhood of Kahmar-wálí, one *kos* from U'ndeha, where the rebels were determined to fight.

Rájá Dobi Singh, with the advanced guard of Khán-daurán, pressed forward and took the little hill of Kahmar-wálí from Jajhár's men. Notwithstanding the density and strength of his forests, Jajhár was alarmed at the advance of the Imperial forces, and removed his family, his cattle and money, from U'ndeha to the fort of Dhámúní, which his father had built. On the east, north and south of this fort there are deep ravines, which prevent the digging of mines or the running of zigzags. On the west side a deep ditch had been dug twenty imperial yards wide, stretching from ravine to ravine. Leaving a force to garrison U'ndeha, he himself, with Bikramájít, and all their connexions, went off to Dhámúní. This flight encouraged the royal forces, and on the 2nd Jumáda-s sání [*they took U'ndeha by escalade*], and the garrison fled.

After resting one day at U'ndeha, the royal army crossed the river Satdhára, on which the town stands, and went in pursuit of the rebels. On the 14th it was three *kos* from Dhámúní, when intelligence came in that Jajhár had fled with his family and property to the fort of Chaurágarh, on the security of which he had great reliance. * * Before leaving he blew up the buildings round the fort of Dhámúní, and left one of his officers and a body of faithful adherents to garrison the fort. * * The Imperial army was engaged two days in felling trees and clearing a passago, and then reached the fortress. They pushed their trenches to

the edge of the ditch, and pressed the garrison hard. The fort kept up a heavy fire till midnight, when, alarmed at the progress of the besiegers, they sent to propose a capitulation. Favoured by the darkness, the men of the garrison made their way out, and hid in the jungles. * * The Imperial forces then entered the place, and began to sack it. * * A cry arose that a party of the enemy still held possession of a bastion. * * 'Alí Asghar and the men under him carried the tower; but while they were engaged in plundering, a spark from a torch fell upon a heap of gunpowder, which blew up the bastion with eighty yards of the wall on both sides, although it was ten yards thick. 'Alí Asghar and his followers all perished. * * Nearly 300 men and 200 horses who were near the entrance of the fort were killed. * *

Jajhár, on hearing of the approach of the Imperial forces, destroyed the guns of the fortress (of Chaurágarh), burnt all the property he had there, blew up the dwellings which Bím Naráín had built within the fort, and then went off with his family and such goods as he could carry to the Dakhin. * * The Imperial army then took possession of the fortress. A *chaudharí* brought in information that Jajhár had with him nearly 2000 horse and 4000 foot. He had also sixty elephants, some of which were loaded with gold and silver money and gold and silver vessels, others carried the members of his family. He travelled at the rate of four Gondi *kos*, that is, nearly eight ordinary *kos* per diem. Although he had got fifteen days' start, the Imperial army set out in pursuit, and for fear the rebel should escape with his family and wealth, the pursuers hurried on at the rate of ten Gondi *kos* a day. [*Long and exciting chase.*] When pressed hard by the pursuers, Jajhár and Bikramájít put to death several women whose horses were worn out, and then turned upon their pursuers. * * Although they fought desperately, they were beaten, and fled into the woods. * * Intelligence afterwards was brought that Jajhár had sent off his family and treasure towards Golkonda, intending to follow them himself. * * The royal forces consequently steadily pursued their course to Golkonda. * *

At length the pursuers came in sight of the rebels. Khán-daurán then sent his eldest son, Saiyid Muhammad, and some other officers with 500 horse, to advance with all speed against them. The hot pursuit allowed the rebels no time to perform the rite of *Jauhar*, which is one of the benighted practices of Hindústán. In their despair they inflicted two wounds with a dagger on Rání Párbatí, the chief wife of Rájá Nar Singh Deo, and having stabbed the other women and children with swords and daggers, they were about to make off, when the pursuers came up and put many of them to the sword. Khán-daurán then arrived, and slew many who were endeavouring to escape. Durgbahán, son of Jajhár, and Durjan Sál, son of Bikramájít, were made prisoners. Udbahán, and his brother Siyám Dawá, sons of Jajhár, who had fled towards Golkonda, were soon afterwards taken. Under the direction of Khán-daurán, Rání Párbatí and the other wounded women were raised from the ground and carried to Fíroz Jang. The royal army then encamped on the edge of a tank. * * While they rested there, information was brought that Jajhár and Bikramájít, * * after escaping from the bloody conflict, had fled to hide themselves in the wilds, where they were killed with great cruelty by the Gonds who inhabit that country. * * Khán-daurán rode forth to seek their bodies, and having found them, cut off their heads and sent them to Court. * * When they arrived, the Emperor ordered them to be hung up over the gate of Sehúr.

On arriving at Chándá, the Imperial commanders resolved to take tribute from Kípá, chief *zamindár* of Gondwáná, * * and he consented to pay five *lacs* of rupees as tribute to the government, and one *lac* of rupees in cash and goods to the Imperial commanders. * *

On the 13th Jumáda-s sání the Emperor proceeded on his journey to U'ndcha, and on the 21st intelligence arrived of the capture of the fort of Jhánsí, one of the strongest in the Bundela country.

NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1045 A.H. (1635 A.D.).

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 125.] An officer was sent to Bījápúr to 'Ádil Khán, with a *khi'at*, etc., and he was directed to require that 'Ádil Khán should be faithful in his allegiance and regular in the payment of his tribute, that he should surrender to the Imperial officers the territories he had taken from Nizámu-l Mulk, and that he should expel the evil-minded Sáhú and other adherents of the Nizámu-l Mulk from his dominions. [*Text of the farmán.*]

Farmán to Kutbu-l Mulk (of Golkonda).

[*It stipulates for the allegiance of Kutbu-l Mulk to the Imperial throne, for the khutba being read in the name of the Emperor, and for the payment of tribute, etc.*]

[p. 133.] On the 15th Sha'bán Khán-daurán came from Chándá to wait upon the Emperor. He presented * * the wives of the wretched Jajhár, Durgbahán his son, and Darjān Sál, his grandson. By the Emperor's order they were made Musalmáns by the names of Islám Kulí, and 'Alí Káfi, and they were both placed in the charge of Fíroz Khán Náir. Rání Párbatí, being severely wounded, was passed over; the other women were sent to attend upon the ladies of the Imperial palace.

Despatch of the Imperial army against Sáhú and other Nizám-Sháhís.

punish these rebels, and in the event of 'Ādil Khān failing to co-operate with them, they were ordered to attack and ravage his territories. * * Khān-daurān's force consisted of about 20,000 horse, and he was sent towards Kandahār and Nānder, which join the territories of Golkonda and Bījápūr, with directions to ravage the country and to besiege the forts of Ūdgīr¹ and Ū'sa, two of the strongest forts in those parts. * * Khān-zamān's force also consisted of about 20,000 men. He was directed to proceed to Ahmadnagar, and subdue the native territory of Sāhū, which lies in Chamār-gonda² and Ashtī near to Ahmadnagar. After that he was to release the Kokan from the grasp of Sāhū, and upon receipt of instructions he was to attack and lay waste the country of 'Ādil Khān. * * The force under Sháyista Khān consisted of about 8000 horse, and was sent against the forts of Junír, Sangamnír, Násik and Trimbak. On the 8th Ramazán they were sent on their respective expeditions. * * On the 5th Shawwāl Sháyista Khān reported the capture of the fort of Masīj.

Udbihān, the son of Jajhār, and his younger brother, Siyām Dawá,³ who had fled to Golkonda, were made prisoners by Kutbu-l Mulk, and were sent in custody to the Emperor. They arrived on the 7th Shawwāl. The young boy was ordered to be made a Musulmán, and to be placed in charge of Fíroz Khān Názir, along with the son of Bikramájít. Udbihān and Siyām Dawá, who were of full age, were offered the alternative of Islām or death. They chose the latter, and were sent to hell.

It now became known that 'Ādil Khān, misled by evil counsels, and unmindful of his allegiance, had secretly sent money to the commandant of forts Ūdgīr and Ū'sa. He had also sent Khairiyat Khān with a force to protect those two forts, and had commissioned Randaula to support Sāhū. Incensed with these acts, the Emperor sent a force of about 10,000 men under Saiyid Khān-jahān, * * to chastise him. Orders were given that

¹ About fifty miles S. of Nānder on the road to Bidar.

² About fifty miles S. of Ahmadnagar. The "Chambargoondes" of the Bombay Route Map.

³ These names are here spelt "Udbihān" and "Siyām Dúdā."

he and Khân-daurân and Khân-zamân should march into the Bijápûr territories in three different directions, to prevent Randaula from joining Sâhû, and to ravage the country from end to end. If 'Adil Khân should awake from his heedless stupidity, and should pay proper obedience, they were to hold their hands; if not, they were to make every exertion to crush him. On the 11th a letter arrived from Shâyista Khân, reporting that Sâlih Beg, the Nizâmu-l Mulki commander of the fort of Kheradarak, had confined all Sâhû's men who were in the fort, and had surrendered it and its dependencies to the Imperial commanders.

[*Sháyista Khán takes Sangamnir and the town of Junir from Sáhú. Sáhú's son attempts the recovery of Junir.*]

Campaign against Bijápúr.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 151.] On the 8th Shawwál, a royal order reached Khán-daurán near U'dgír, informing him that 'Ádil Khán had been remiss in his obedience and payment of tribute; that Khán-jahán had been directed to invade his territory by way of Sholapúr, Khán-zamán by way of Índápúr;¹ and that he, Khán-daurán, must march against him by way of Bidar, and lay waste his country. Khán-daurán accordingly left his baggage on the banks of the Wanjira, in charge of a party of men whose horses were ineffective. In the beginning of New Year's night he set forth, and at five o'clock reached Kalyán, the most flourishing place in that country. The inhabitants were quite unprepared, and near 2000 of them fell under his attack. Many were taken prisoners, and great booty was secured. [*Naránpúr, Bhálki, and Maknáth,² taken in succession and plundered. 2000 of the enemy defeated near Bidar.*]

From Bhálki Khán-daurán marched to Deoní, three *kos* from U'dgír, and from thence towards Bijápúr, plundering and laying waste all the country. He then attacked and sacked the two great towns of Sultánpúr and Hírápúr. From Hírápúr he advanced to the river Bhúnrá.³ A party of the enemy then drew near and threatened him, * * but was defeated. After this, Khán-daurán marched to Fírozábád, twelve *kos* from Bijápúr. A letter then arrived from Mukarramat Khán, informing him that the Bijápúris had broken down the tank of Sháhpúr, and had taken all the inhabitants of the country round Bijápúr into that city, and that no water or food was to be found in the country. * * * A letter from the Emperor then reached him, to the effect that

¹ Between Púna and Sholapúr, eighty-four miles from the former.

² Náránpúr is "one *kos* and a half from Kalyán." Bhálki or Bálki is about equi-distant N. of Kalyán and Bidar. Maknáth is "ten *kos* from Bhálki, and two from Bidar."

³ This name often occurs, and is evidently used for the Bhíma.

'Ādil Khān had sent two envoys to make some representations about the forts of Ū'sa and Ūdgír; but as these belonged to Nizāmu-l Mulk, the Emperor would not present them to him. A report received subsequently from Mukarramat Khān stated that 'Ādil Khān had abandoned his claim to these forts, and had returned to his obedience. Khān-daurān was therefore directed to desist from ravaging the Bijápúr territories, and to lay siege to Ū'sa and Ūdgír. On the 23rd Muharram Khān-daurān marched against Ūdgír.

Campaign of Khān-Jahān.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 155.] [*Capture of Sarádhún, Dhárásíyún, Kánti six kos from Sholápur, and the town of Deogánw. Victories over the Bijápúris, commanded by Randaula.*] Water and provisions were now difficult to obtain, so the royal army fell back to Dhárásíyún,¹ intending to leave their baggage at Sarádhún, and passing between Ū'sa and Naldrug, to make a raid into the flourishing country about Kulbarga, to plunder and lay waste. On the 1st Zí-l hijja, the enemy made his appearance while the Imperial army was encamped about two kos from Ū'sa, and began to throw in rockets. The royal forces issued from their entrenchments and repulsed their assailants. Next day they attacked the Imperial army as it was about to march, * * but were defeated and driven back. After returning from the battle-field, Saiyid Khān-jahān, considering that the country was devastated, and the rains were at hand, determined to fall back to Bír, * * and await the Imperial directions as to where the rainy season should be passed. On the 11th Zí-l hijja, about eight kos from Sarádhún, the enemy again appeared in the rear [*and after a hard fight fell back defeated*]. The royal army then continued its march to Sarádhún, and along the banks of the Wanjira to Dhárúr.

¹ "Deraseo," fifty miles north-east of Sholápur.

Campaign of Khán-zamán.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 160.] After receiving his orders, Khán-zamán marched to Ahmadnagar, and, after provisioning his force, * * he went on towards Junír. Six *kos* from Ahmadnagar, he learnt that the villain Sáhú had made terms with Mírají Bhonsla, and had obtained from him the fort of Máhúlí. Having taken Mírají along with him to Junír, Sáhú was about to proceed by way of Párgánw to Parenda. Khán-zamán marched after him, * * but Sáhú passed the river Bhúnrá, and proceeded to Lohgánw, a dependency of Púna in the Bijápúr territories. Hero Khán-zamán halted, because his orders were not to follow Sáhú into 'Adil Khán's country. [*Capture of the fort of Chamár-gonda by a detachment.*] On receiving orders from Court, he entered the Bijápúr territories, and plundered and destroyed every inhabited place he came to. On the 27th Shawwál he reached the pass of Dúlbái, where he halted. * * Next morning he ascended the pass. In eight days he arrived at Kolapúr, and invested the fortress and town. Notwithstanding a brave defence, he quickly took the place. [*Successful skirmishes with Sáhú and the Bijápúris.*] Khán-zamán next marched to Miraj, one of the principal towns in the Bijápúr dominions, and plundered it. From thence he made six days' march to Rai-bágh, a very ancient town in that country, where he obtained great booty. After remaining there ten days, he fell back, and the enemy had the audacity to hang upon his rear and harass him with rockets. Eight days' march from Miraj the army encamped on the bank of a river. A party was sent out to forage, and a force was ordered to support it. The enemy attacked this force, and a sharp fight ensued; but the assailants were repulsed and pursued for two *kos*. While the army was resting on the banks of the river Bhúnrá, an Imperial *farmán* arrived, directing Khán-zamán to return to the royal presence, to receive instructions for the reduction of the fort of Junír and the punishment of Sáhú. The reason for this was

that 'Ādil Khān had submitted, had agreed to pay a tribute equivalent to twenty *lacs* in jewels, elephants, etc., and engaged that if Sāhū returned and surrendered Junír and the other forts in the Nizām-Shāhí territory to the Imperial officers, he would take him into his service; but if Sāhū did not do so, he would assist the Imperial forces in reducing the forts and punishing Sāhū.

[*Capture by Khān-khānān of the forts of Anki and Tanki, Alka and Pālka, eighteen kos from Daulatābād.*]

[*Farmān containing the terms of peace with 'Ādil Khān, and letter of the latter in acknowledgment. Letter of homage from Kutbu-l Mulk. Summary of Shāh Jahān's two expeditions to the Dakhīn, the first in his father's lifetime, the second after his own accession.*]

'Ādil Khān of Bijāpūr.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 202.] While the Emperor was still thinking about the reduction of the forts of the Dakhīn, 'Ādil Khān, being disturbed by the prolonged stay of the Imperial Court, wrote a letter to the Emperor, representing that the affairs of that country were now all settled, and that he would be answerable for the surrender of the forts held by Sāhū and others. There was therefore no reason for the Emperor's staying any longer, and it would be a great favour if he would proceed to the capital, so that the *raiyats* and people of Bijāpūr might return peacefully to their avocations. The Emperor graciously consented, and resolved to go and spend the rainy season at Mándú. 'Ādil Khān's tribute, consisting of * *, arrived, and was accepted. The Emperor confirmed to him the territory of Bijāpūr and the fortress of Parenda, which had formerly belonged to Nizāmu-l Mulk, but which the commandant had surrendered to 'Ādil Khān for a bribe. He also confirmed to him all the country of Kokan on the sea-shore, which had been formerly held half by him and half by Nizāmu-l Mulk. [*Copy of the treaty.*]

Prince Aurangzeb, Governor of the Dakhin.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 205.] On the 3rd Zil-hijja the Emperor appointed Prince Aurangzeb to the government of the Dakhin. This country contains sixty-four forts, fifty-three of which are situated on hills, the remaining eleven are in the plain. It is divided into four *súbas*. 1. Daulatábád, with Ahmadnagar and other districts, which they call the *súba* of the Dakhin. The capital of this province, which belonged to Nizámu-l Mulk, was formerly Ahmadnagar, and afterwards Daulatábád. 2. Telingána. This is situated in the *súba* of the Bálághát.¹ 3. Khándes. The fortress of this province is Asír, and the capital is Burhánpúr, situated four *kos* from Asír. 4. Birár. The capital of this province is Elichpúr, and its famous fortress is called Gáwíl. It is built on the top of a hill, and is noted above all the fortresses in that country for strength and security. The whole of the third province and a part of the fourth is in the Páyín-ghát. The *jama'*, or total revenue of the four provinces is two *arbs* of *dáms*, equivalent to five crores of rupees.

[*Treaty with Kutbu-l Mulk. Letter from the latter.*]

[*Khán-daurán besieges Udgir and Úsa, and both forts are eventually surrendered.*]

TENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1046 A.H. (1636 A.D.).

Conquest of the Fort of Junir and Settlement of the Dakhin.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 225.] When Khán-zamán returned from the Emperor to his army, he learnt that Sáhú had declined entering into the service of 'Ádil Khán, and refused to surrender Junir and the other fortresses to the Imperial officers. 'Ádil Khán therefore sent his forces, under the command of Randaula, to co-operate with the Imperial army in the destruction of Sáhú,

¹ The *Sháh Jahán-náma* adds, "The capital of which is called Nánder and the fortress Kandahár."

and the reduction of his fortresses. Khán-zamán hastened to Junír, * * * and invested the fortress. Being satisfied with the arrangements for the siege, he determined to march against Sáhú, who was in the neighbourhood of Púna. When he reached the Khorandi, he was detained on its banks for a month by the heavy rains and the inundations. As soon as the waters abated, he crossed the river, and encamped on the banks of the Índán, near Lohgánw, and Sáhú, who was seventeen kos distant, then made into the mountains of Gondhána and Núrand. There were three large swollen rivers, the Índán, the Mol, and the Mota,¹ between Khán-zamán and Sáhú. * * The Khán therefore sent an officer to consult with Randaula. The opinion of that commander coincided with Khán-zamán's in favour of the pursuit, and the latter began his march. * * Sáhú then fled with great haste by the pass of Kombha,² and entered the Kokan. * * Finding no support there, he returned by the pass of Kombha. The Imperial forces then entered the Kokan by the same pass, and Randaula also was closing up. Sáhú then went off to Máhúlí, * * and from thence to the fort of Múranjan,³ situated between the hills and the jungle. Khán-zamán followed. * * On discovering the approach of his pursuers, Sáhú hastily sent off a portion of his baggage, and abandoned the rest. * * The pursuers having come up, put many of the rebels to the sword. * * Being still pursued, Sáhú went again to Máhúlí, hoping to get away by Trimbak and Tringalwári;⁴ but, fearing lest he should encounter the royal forces, he halted at Máhúlí. He retained a party of his adherents, who had long followed him, and the rest of his men he disbanded, and allowed them to go where they would. Then, with his son and a portion of his baggage, he went into the fort, resolved to stand a siege.

¹ The Indiranee, Moola, and Moota of the Maps, near Púna.

² In the Ghats, Lat. 18°20.

³ Or "Múroranjan" in the Ghats, Lat. 18°50.

⁴ A little N. of the Tal Ghát.

Khán-zamán got intelligence of this when he was twelve *kos* from Máhúlí, and, notwithstanding the difficulties of the road, he reached the fort in one day. * * He immediately opened his trenches and made approaches. * * A few days after, Randaula came up, and joined in the siege. * * When the place was hard pressed, Sáhú wrote repeatedly to Khán-zamán, offering to surrender the fortress on condition of being received into the Imperial service. He was informed that if he wished to save his life, he must come to terms with 'Adil Khán, for such was the Emperor's command. He was also advised to be quick in doing so, if he wished to escape from the swords of the besiegers. So he was compelled to make his submission to 'Adil Khán, and he besought that a treaty might be made with him. After the arrival of the treaty, he made some absurd inadmissible demands, and withdrew from the agreement he had made. But the siege was pressed on, and the final attack drew near, when Sáhú came out of the fort and met Randaula half way down the hill, and surrendered himself with the young Nizám. He agreed to enter the service of 'Adil Khán, and to surrender the fortress of Junír and the other forts to the Imperial generals. * * * Accordingly the forts of Junír, Trimbak, Tringalwári, Harís, Júdhan, Júnd, and Harsirá, were delivered over to Khán-zamán. * * Randaula, under the orders of 'Adil Khán, placed the young 'Nizám in the hands of Khán-zamán, and then went to Bijápúr, accompanied by Sáhú.

[*Khán-daurán takes possession of the forts of Kataljahr, and Ashta, and besieges and storms the fort of Nágpúr.*]

Nizámu-l Mulk.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 256.] On the 1st Zí-l hijja, 1046 A.H., Prince Murád Bakhsh, Yamínu-d daula Khán-daurán Bahádur Nusrat Jang,¹ and others went forth to meet Prince Aurangzeb, who had returned to Court from the Dakhin. * * He brought

¹ He had been honoured with this title for his late victories.

with him the member of Nizámu-l Mulk's family¹ whom the disaffected of the Dakhin had made use of for their rebellious purposes, and to whom they had given the title of Nizámu-l Mulk. He was placed under the charge of Saiyid Khán-Jahán, to be kept in the fort of Gwálíor, where there were two other of the Nizáms—one of whom was made prisoner at the capture of Ahmadnagar in the reign of Jahángír, and the other at the downfall of Daulatábád in the present reign. * * On the 4th, the news came that Khán-zamán had died at Daulatábád from a complication of diseases of long standing. * * Sháyista Khán was appointed to succeed him in his command.

The Bundelas.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 270.] The Bundelas are a turbulent troublesome race. Notwithstanding that Jajhár, their chief, had been slain, the rebellious spirits of the tribe had taken no warning, but had set up a child of his named Pirthí Ráj, who had been carried off alive from the field of battle, and they had again broken out in rebellion. * * Khán-daurán Bahádur Nusrat Jang was ordered to suppress this insurrection, and then to proceed to his government in Málwá.

Storm at Thatta.

[p. 276.] On the 23rd Rabí'u-l awwal letters were received from Thatta, reporting that rain had fallen incessantly for thirty-six hours in all the towns and places near the sea-shore. Many houses and buildings were destroyed, and great numbers of men and beasts of all kinds were drowned. The wind blew so furiously that huge trees were torn up by their roots, and the waves of the sea cast numbers of fishes on to the shore. Nearly a thousand ships, laden and unladen, went down from the violence of the sea, and heavy losses fell upon the ship-owners. The land also, over which the waves were driven, became impregnated with salt, and unfit for cultivation.

¹ This individual, like all the others, is sarcastically called "Be-Nizám."

Conquest of Tibet.

[Text, vol. i. part 2, p. 281.] The late Emperor Jahángír long entertained the design of conquering Tibet, and in the course of his reign Hâshim Khán, son of Kâsim Khán *Mír-bahr*, governor of Kashmír, under the orders of the Emperor, invaded the country with a large force of horse and foot and local *zambudâra*. But although he entered the country, and did his best, he met with no success, and was obliged to retreat with great loss and with much difficulty. * * The Imperial order was now given that Zafar Khán, governor of Kashmír, should assemble the forces under his command, and effect the conquest of that country. Accordingly he collected nearly eight thousand horse and foot, composed of Imperial forces, men of his own, and retainers of the *marzbâns* of his province. He marched by the difficult route of Karcha-barh, and in the course of one month he reached the district of Shikardú, the first place of importance in Tibet, and on this side of the Níláb (Indus). 'Alí Râi, father of Abdál, the present *Marzbân* of Tibet, had built upon the summits of two high mountains two strong forts—the higher of which was called Kaharphúcha, and the other Kahchana. Each of them had a road of access "like the neck of a reed, and the curve of a talon." The road of communication between the two was on the top of the mountain. Abdál shut himself up in the fort of Kaharphúcha. He placed his minister and general manager in the fort of Kahchana, and he sent his family and property to the fort of Shakar, which stands upon a high mountain on the other side of the Níláb.

Zafar Khán, after examining the height and strength of the fortresses, was of opinion that it was inexpedient to invest and attack them; but he saw that the military and the peasantry of Tibet were much distressed by the harsh rule of Abdál, and he resolved to win them over by kindness. Then he sent a detachment to subdue the fort of Shakar, and to make prisoners of the family of Abdál. The whole time which the army could keep

the field in this country was two months ; for if it remained longer, it would be snowed up. It was for this reason that he sent Mír Fakhru-d dín, * * with four thousand men, against the fort of Shakar, while he himself watched the fort in which Abdál was. He next sent Hasan, nephew of Abdál, with some other men of Tibet, who had entered into the Imperial service, and some *samindárs* of Kashmír, who had friendly relations with the people of the country, to endeavour by persuasion and promises to gain over the people. * * Mír Fakhr passed over the river Níláb, and laid siege to the fort. Daulat, son of Abdál, of about fifteen years of age, was in charge of the fort. He sallied out to attack the besiegers, * * but was driven back with loss. * * The besiegers then advanced, and opened their trenches against the gate on the Shkardú side. The son of Abdál was so frightened by these proceedings, that, regardless of his father's family (in the fort), he packed up the gold, silver, and what was portable, and escaped in the night by the Káshghar gate. Mír Fakhru-d dín, being apprised of his flight, entered the fort. He could not restrain his followers from plundering ; but he took charge of Abdál's family. A force was sent in pursuit of the son, which could not overtake him, but returned with some gold and silver he had thrown away on the road.

On hearing of this victory, Zafar Khán pressed on the siege of Kaharphúcha and Kahchana. * * The governor and garrison of the latter surrendered. * * Abdál, in despair at the progress made by the invaders, and at the loss of his wives and children, opened negociations and surrendered the fort of Kaharphúcha. * * Zafar Khán was apprehensive that the snow would fall and close the passes, and that, at the instigation of Abdál, he might be attacked from the side of Kashmír. So, without making any settlement of the country, and without searching after Abdál's property, he set out on his return, taking with him Abdál, his family, and some of the leading men of the enemy. He left Muhammad Murád, Abdál's *vakil*, in charge of the country.

ELEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1047 A.H. (1637 A.D.).

*Capture of Kandahár and other forts.*¹

[Text, vol. ii. p. 24.] The strong fortress of Kandahár was annexed to the Imperial dominions in the fortieth year of the Emperor Akbar. * * Sháh Safí of Persia, was desirous of recovering it. In the fifteenth year of the reign of Jahángír, Prince Sháh Jahán was sent to arrange the affairs of the Dakhin, * * and the Sháh of Persia seized the opportunity to make an attempt to recover the place. He invested it, and after a siege of forty-five days reduced the fortress in the seventeenth year of Jahángír. * * After a time, 'Alí Mardán Khán was appointed governor of Kandahár, * * * and Sháh Jahán, being desirous of recovering the place, directed his governor of Kábul to send an able emissary to 'Alí Mardán Khán, who was to learn what he could about the fortress and its garrison, and to make overtures to 'Alí Mardán Khán. * * The envoy was received very graciously, * * and friendly relations were established between 'Alí Mardán Khán and the governor of Kábul, * * so that the Khán at length wrote, expressing his desire to surrender the place to Sháh Jahán. * * On the approach of the Imperial forces, 'Alí Mardán Khán conducted them into the fortress, and gave it up to them. * * The governor of Kábul was directed to proceed to Kandahár, and to present a *lac* of rupees to 'Alí Mardán Khán. He was then to take the Khán to Kábul, and to send him under escort to the Imperial Court, with all his family and dependents. * * The Emperor sent 'Alí Mardán Khán a *khi'at* [*and many other fine presents. Engagement between Sa'id Khán, governor of Kábul, and the Persians, and defeat of the latter. Capture by siege of the forts of Bust, Zamindáwar, and Girishk.*] All the country of Kandahár with its fortresses [*enumerated in detail*] were re-annexed to the Imperial dominions.

¹ The account of this siege is told in great detail.

Rebellion in Kúch-Hájú.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 64.] On the north of the country of Bengal there are two countries: Kúch-Hájú, a cultivated country, which lies on the banks of the Brahmaputra, a large river, two *kos* in width, which flows from the country of Ashám (Assam) into Bengal. From thence to Jahángir-nagar (Dacca) is one month's journey. The other country is Kúch-Bihár, which is far away from the river, and is twenty days' journey from Jahángir-nagar. These two countries belonged to local rulers *Amirsháh*, and at the beginning of the reign of the Emperor Jahángir, the country of Kúch-Hájú was under the rule of Parichhit, and Kúch-Bihár under Lachmí Naráin, brother of the grandfather of Parichhit. In the eighth year of the reign, Sháh Jahán gave the government of Bengal to Shaikh 'Aláud-dín Pathpúri, who had received the title of Islám Khán. Baglanáth, Zamindár of Susang, came to him, complaining that Parichhit had tyrannically and violently placed his wives and children in prison. His allegations appeared to be true. At the same time, Lachmí Naráin repeatedly represented his devotion to the Imperial government, and incited Islám Khán to effect the conquest of Kúch-Hájú. He accordingly sent a force to punish Parichhit, and to subjugate the country. [*Long details of the operations.*] When the victorious army reached the river Kajlí, some men were sent over first in boats, who in a short time defeated and put to flight the guard of the place. The whole force then crossed and destroyed some old forts. A strong fort was then constructed on each side of the Kajlí, and * * garrisons were placed in them to check and keep down the turbulent landholders. The army then proceeded to Koh-hatah, towards Utarkol, between Sri-ghát and the Kajlí, there to pass the rains.

Conquest of Baglána.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 105.] The territory of Baglána contains nine forts, thirty-four *parganas*, and one thousand and one

villages. It has been a separate jurisdiction (*marzbání*) for one thousand four hundred years, and its present ruler is named Bharjī. It is famous for its temperate climate, its numerous streams and the abundance of its trees and fruits. In length it is a hundred *kos*, and in breadth eighty. On the east is Chándor, a dependency of Daulatábád; on the west the port of Surat and the sea; on the north Sultánpúr and Nandurbár; and on the south Násik and Trimbak. * * The strongest of its forts are Sálhír and Múlhír.¹ Sálhír is placed upon a hill. * * Múlhír also stands upon a hill. * * When Prince Aurangzeb was sent to the government of the Dakhín, he was directed to subjugate this country. On the 8th Sha'bán, 1047 H. (Dec. 1637), he sent an army against it, * * which advanced and laid siege to Múlhír. The trenches were opened and the garrison was pressed so hard that, on the 10th Shawwál, Bharjī sent out his mother and his *rakíl* with the keys of his eight forts, offering to enrol himself among the servants of the Imperial throne, on condition of receiving the *pargana* of Sultánpúr. * * When this proposal reached the Emperor, he granted Bharjī a *mansab* of three thousand personal and 2500 horse, and Sultánpúr was conferred upon him for his home.

TWELFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1048 A.H. (1638 A.D.).

[*Submission of Manik Rát, the Mag Rájá of Chátgám.*]

[Text, vol. ii. p. 123.] On the 13th Rajab, the Imperial train reached Lahore, * * and 'Alí Mardán Khán, who had come from Kandahár, was received with great ceremony. He was presented with [*numerous rich gifts*], and his *mansab* was increased from 5000 to 6000 personal and 6000 horse. * * Before the end of the month he was appointed governor of Kashmír, * * and shortly afterwards he was presented with five *lacs* of rupees and ten parcels of the choice fabrics of the

¹ "Mooleer" lies about half way, a little west, of a line drawn from Chándor to Nandurbár.

looms of Bengal. The Emperor afterwards did him the honour of paying him a visit at his house. [*The Imperial progress from Lahore to Kábul and back again.*]

Little Tibet.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 159.] The conquest of Little Tibet, the captivity of its ruler Abdál, and the appointment of Ádam Khán to be governor, have been previously mentioned. Ádam Khán now wrote to 'Alí Mardán Khán, the new governor of Kashmír, informing him that Sangí Bamkhal, the holder of Great Tibet, * * had seized upon Búrag in Little Tibet, and meditated further aggression. 'Alí Mardán Khán sent a force against him under the command of Husain Beg. * * On the meeting of the two forces, Sangí's men were put to flight. * * He then sued for forgiveness, and offered to pay tribute.

THIRTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1049 A.H. (1639 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 163.] On the 21st Jumáda-s sání, the Emperor arrived at Lahore. * * 'Alí Mardán Khán came down from Kashmír. * * His *mansab* was increased to 7000 personal and 7000 horse, * * and the government of the Panjáb was given to him in addition to that of Kashmír. * * On the 6th Rajab, Islám Khán came according to summons from Bengal, and was appointed to the office of Financial Minister (*dhicáni-kull*).

'Alí Mardán's Lahore Canal.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 168.] 'Alí Mardán Khán represented to His Majesty that one of his followers was an adept in the forming of canals, and would undertake to construct a canal from the place where the river Ráví descends from the hills into the plains, and to conduct the waters to Lahore, benefiting the cultivation of the country through which it should pass. The Emperor

* * gave to the Khán one *lac* of rupees, a sum at which experts estimated the expense, and the Khán then entrusted its formation to one of his trusted servants.

[*Advance of an army from Sistán against Kandahár.—Occupation and abandonment of the fort of Khansht, near Bust.*]

[*Great fire at the residence of Prince Shujá in A'gra.—Royal visit to Kashmtr.*]

In the month of Muharram intelligence came in that Pirthi Ráj, son of Jajhár Bundela, had been taken prisoner. * * Orders were given for his confinement in the fort of Gwálior.

FOURTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1050 A.H. (1640 A.D.).

[*Chastisement of the Kolis and Káthis in Gujarát.—Payment of tribute by the Jám of Káthiwár.*]

[*Rebellion of Jagat Singh, son of Rájá Básu of Kángra.*]

FIFTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1051 A.H. (1641 A.D.).

Death of A'saf Khán Khán-khánán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 257.] On the 17th Sha'bán Yamínu-d daula Ásaf Khán Khán-khánán, commander-in-chief, departed this life; * * and on receiving the intelligence, His Majesty was much affected, and gave orders that he should be buried on the west side of the tomb of the late Emperor Jahángír, and that a lofty dome should be raised over his grave. * * He had risen to a rank and dignity which no servant of the State had ever before attained. By the munificent favour of the Emperor, his *mansab* was nine thousand personal and nine thousand horse, *do-aspah* and *sih-aspah*, the pay of which amounted to sixteen *krors* and twenty *lacs* of *dáms*. When these had all received their pay, a sum of fifty *lacs* of rupees was left for himself. * * Besides the mansion which he had built in Lahore, and on which he expended twenty *lacs* of rupees, he left money and valuables to the amount of two *krors* and fifty *lacs* of

rupees. There were 30 *lacs* of rupees in jewels, three *lacs* of *ashrafs* equal to 42 *lacs* of rupees, one *kror* and 25 *lacs* in rupees, 30 *lacs* in gold and silver utensils, and 23 *lacs* in miscellaneous articles.

[*Campaign in Jagat Singh's territory. Capture of Mú, Núrpur, and other forts. Surrender of Tárágarh, and submission of Jagat Singh.*]

SIXTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1052 A.H. (1642 A.D.).

SEVENTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1053 A.H. (1643 A.D.).

[*Reduction of Pálámún, and submission of its Rájá.*]

[Text, vol. ii. p. 376.] At the beginning of Rabí'u-s sání, it was made known to the Emperor that Prince Aurangzeb, under the influence of ill-advised, short-sighted companions, had determined to withdraw from worldly occupations, and to pass his days in retirement. His Majesty disapproved of this, and took from the Prince his *mansab* and his *jágir*, and dismissed him from the office of Governor-General of the Dakhin. Khán-daurán Bahádur Nusrat Jang was appointed to succeed him.

EIGHTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1054 A.H. (1644 A.D.).

[*'Alí Mardán Khán Amíru-l Umará sent to chastise Tardí 'Alí Katghán of Balkh.—Successful result.*]

[p. 385.] On the 29th Zí-l hijja, Prince Aurangzeb was appointed Governor of Gujarát. * *

NINETEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1055 A.H. (1645 A.D.).

[*Affairs of Nazar Muhammad Khán of Balkh—Operations in Kábul.*]

[p. 411.] On the 29th Shawwál, 1055, died Núr Jahán Begam, widow of the late Emperor Jahángír. After her marriage with the Emperor, she obtained such an ascendancy over him, and exercised such absolute control over civil and

revenue matters, that it would be unseemly to dilate upon it here. After the accession of the Emperor Sháh Jahán, he settled an annual allowance of two *lacs* of rupees upon her.¹

Campaign against Balkh and Badakhshán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 482.] Ever since the beginning of his reign, the Emperor's heart had been set upon the conquest of Balkh and Badakhshán, which were hereditary territories of his house, and were the keys to the acquisition of Samarkand, the home and capital of his great ancestor Tímúr Sáhib-Kiráń. He was more especially intent on this because Nazar Muhammad Khán had had the presumption to attack Kábul, from whence he had been driven back in disgrace. The prosecution of the Emperor's cherished enterprise had been hitherto prevented by various obstacles; * * but now the foundations of the authority of Nazar Muhammad were shaken, and his authority in Balkh was precarious. * * So the Emperor determined to send his son Murád Bakhsh with fifty thousand horse, and ten thousand musketeers, rocket-men and gunners, to effect the conquest of that country. * * On the last day of Zí-l hijja, 1055 H., the Emperor gave his farewell to Prince Murád Bakhsh, to Amíru-l Umará ('Alí Mardán Khán),² and the other officers sent on this service. [*Plan of campaign. * * Progress of the Emperor to Kábul.—Details of the campaign.—Capture of the fort of Kahmard and the stronghold of Ghorí.—Conquest of Kunduz and Balkh, and flight of Nazar Muhammad.—Revenues of Nazar Muhammad.*]

TWENTIETH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1056 A.H. (1646 A.D.).

[*Prince Murád Bakhsh desires to retire from Balkh.—Displeasure of the Emperor expressed in a despatch.—The Prince*

¹ Kháfi Khán says that after Jahángir's death she wore only white clothes, she never went to parties of amusement of her own accord, but lived in private and in sorrow. She was buried at Lahore in a tomb she had built for herself by the side of Jahángir.

² Who was of course the real commander.

persists.] Many of the *amirs* and *mansabdárs* who were with the prince concurred in this unreasonable desire. Natural love of home, a preference for the ways and customs of Hindustán, a dislike of the people and the manners of Balkh, and the rigours of the climate, all conduced to this desire. This resolution became a cause of distress among the *raiyats*, of despondency among the soldiery, and of hesitation among the men who were coming into Balkh from all quarters. The soldiers, seeing this vacillation, began to plunder and oppress the people. So, when the Prince's desire was repeatedly expressed, the Emperor's anger was increased. He deprived the prince of his *mansab*, and took from him his *tuyúl* of Multán. Under these circumstances, to settle the confusion in Balkh, the Emperor found it necessary to send there a trustworthy and able manager; so he selected Sa'du-lla Khán, his prime minister. [*Fighting in Badakhshán.—Settlement of Balkh.*] Sa'du-lla Khán returned on the 5th Sha'bán, 1056 H., having settled the affairs of Balkh, and restored order and tranquillity among the soldiers and people, and rescued the country from wretchedness. He had most effectually carried out the orders of the Emperor, and was rewarded with a *khi'at*, and a thousand increase to his *mansab*. [*Prince Murád Bakhsh restored to his mansab of 12,000.—Much fighting near Balkh and Shaburghán.*]¹

Aurangzeb sent to Balkh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 627.] On the 24th Zí-l hijja, 1056, the Emperor bestowed the countries of Balkh and Badakhshán on Aurangzeb, and increased his *mansab* to 15,000 personal and ten thousand horse, eight thousand being *do-aspahs* or *sih-aspahs*. * * He was directed to proceed to Pesháwar, and on the arrival of spring to march to Balkh, in company with Amíru-l Umará 'Alí Mardán Khán, and a body of Rájpúts, who had left Balkh and Badakhshán in disgust, and had come to Pesháwar, where they

¹ See *suprà*, Vol. II. p. 478.

were stopped by an Imperial order directing the officers at Atak not to allow them to cross the Indus.

The Emperor proceeds to Kábul.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 637.] By the reports of the commanders in Balkh and Badakhshán, the Emperor was informed that 'Abdu-l 'Aziz Khán, governor of Turán, * * intended to invade Balkh at the beginning of spring. On the 15th Muharram Prince Aurangzeb was sent on to Balkh with a body of Imperial soldiers, and the Emperor himself determined to leave Lahore and go to Kábul for the third time.

[*Long details of fighting in Balkh and Badakhshán, ending abruptly with a statement of the errors made on the Imperial side.*]

LXIII.

SHÁH JAHÁN-NÁMA

or

'INÁYAT KHÁN.

[MUHAMMAD TÁHIR, who received the title of 'Ináyat Khán, and was poetically named 'Ashná, was son of Zafar Khán bin Khwája Abú-l Hasan.

Zafar Khán, the author's father, was *wazir* of Jahángír. In the reign of Sháh Jahán, he was at one time ruler of Kábul, and afterwards of Kashmír, during which latter government he effected the conquest of Tibet recorded in the foregoing pages (p. 62). At a later period he was appointed to the administration of Thatta. "He was celebrated as a poet, as a patron of letters, and as a just and moderate ruler."

'Inayat Khán's maternal grandfather, Saif Khán, was governor of Ágra, and when Prince Shujá' was appointed ruler of Bengal, Saif Khán was sent thither to conduct the administration until the arrival of the prince.

The author, it appears, was born in the year that Sháh Jahán came to the throne. In the seventh year of his age he received, as he informs us, "a suitable *mansab*." He was sent to join his father in Kashmír while he was governor there. He was afterwards *daroghá-i dágh*, and subsequently employed in a more congenial office in the Imperial Library. "He inherited his father's talents and good qualities, and is said even to have surpassed him in ability. He was witty and of agreeable manners, and was one of the intimate friends of Sháh Jahán. Latterly he

retired from office, and settled in Kashmír, where he died in A.H. 1077 (A.D. 1666). In addition to the history of Sháh Jahán's reign, he was author of a *Dirán* and three *Masnavís*." ¹

The sources of the first part of this *Sháh Jahán-náma* are plainly acknowledged by the author. The first twenty years are in entire agreement with the *Bádsháh-náma*, but are written in a more simple style. The history comes down to 1068 A.H. (1657-8 A.D.), the year in which Aurangzeb was declared Emperor, but of this event he takes no notice. The author does not inform us whether he used any other work after the *Bádsháh-náma* as the basis of his own, or whether the history of the last ten years is his own independent work.

The following is the author's own account of his work translated from his Preface:

"The writer of these wretched lines, Muhammad Táhir, commonly known as Ashná, but bearing the title of 'Ináyat Khán bin Muzaáfar Khán bin Khwája Abú-l Hasan, represents to the attention of men of intelligence, and acumen that in Rabí'u-l awwal, in the 31st year of the reign of the Emperor Sháh Jahán [*six lines of titles and phrases*], corresponding to 1068 H., he was appointed superintendent of the Royal Library, and there he found three series of the *Bádsháh-náma*, written by Shaikh 'Abdu-l Hamíd Láhorí and others, each series of which comprised the history of ten years of the illustrious reign. The whole of these memoirs completed one *karn*, which is an expression signifying thirty years. Memoirs of the remaining four years were written after his death by others. The author desires to observe that the style of these volumes seemed difficult and diffuse to his simple mind, and so he reflected that, although Shaikh Abú-l Fazl was ordered by the Emperor Akbar to write the history of his reign, yet Khwája Nizámu-d dín Ahmad Bakhshí wrote a distinct history of that reign, which he called the *Tabakát-i Akbar-sháhi*. Jannat-makání Nuru-d dín Muhammad Jahángír, imitating the example of his ancestor the Emperor Zahíru-d dín

¹ Morley's Catalogue.

Muhammad Bábar, himself wrote a history of his own reign; yet Mu'tamad Khán Bakhshí wrote a history of that reign, to which he gave the title of *Ikbál-náma-i Jahángirí*. Ghairat Khán Nakshabandí also brought together the chief events of that reign in a book which he called *Ma-ásir-i Jahángirí*. (With these examples before him), it seemed to the writer of these pages that, as he and his ancestors had been devoted servants of the Imperial dynasty, it would be well for him to write the history of the reign of Sháh Jahán in a simple and clear style, and to reproduce the contents of the three volumes of Shaikh 'Abdu-l Hamíd in plain language and in a condensed form. Such a work (he thought) would not be superfluous, but rather a gain. So he set about his work, and the Almighty gave him leisure, so that in a short time he completed it. The history from the fourth to the tenth year is based on the *Pádsháh-náma* of Muhammad Amín Kazwíní, commonly known as Amínái Munshí, which is written in a more simple style. And as only a selection has been made of the events recorded, this work is styled *Mulakhkhas*."

The title *Mulakhkhas* "Abridgment," which the author gave to his work, was too indefinite to last, and it is commonly known as *Sháh Jahán-náma*.

MSS. of this work seem to be common. Sir H. M. Elliot has three borrowed copies. There are three in the British Museum, and one in the Library of the Asiatic Society. A copy belonging to the Rájá of Benares is a handsome quarto of 12 inches \times 8 $\frac{1}{2}$, and contains 360 leaves of 19 lines to the page. The whole of this work, from the beginning of the third year of the reign to the accession of Aurangzeb, with which it closes, was translated by the late Major Fuller. It fills 561 folio pages of close writing, and is in Sir H. M. Elliot's Library. The following Extracts are taken from that translation.]

EXTRACTS.

TWENTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1057 A.H. (1647 A.D.).

In the news from Balkh, which reached the ear of royalty about this time, through the representations of the victorious Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur, was the following:—Nazar Muhammad Khán, who, after abandoning the siege of fort Maimanah, had stood fast at Nílchirágh,¹ continued watching, both day and night, the efforts of 'Abdu-l 'Azíz Khán and his other sons, who were gone to oppose the royal army with all the Uzbek forces of Máwaráu-n Nahr, Balkh and Badakhshán, anxious to see what would be the result. As soon as he heard that they also had, like himself, become wanderers in the desert of failure, owing to the superior prowess and vigour of the royalists, finding his hopes everywhere shattered, he despatched an apologizing letter to the illustrious Prince, expressive of his contrition for past misdeeds, and ardent longing for an interview with His Royal Highness, stating that he was desirous of retrieving his fallen fortunes, through the intercessions of that ornament of the throne of royalty. The illustrious Prince having kept the envoy in attendance till the receipt of an answer, waited in expectation of the *farmán's* arrival, and the Khán's letter, which His Royal Highness had forwarded to Court in the original, with some remarks of his own, was duly submitted to the auspicious perusal. As it happened, from the commencement of his invasion of Balkh, this very design had been buried in the depths of his comprehensive mind, viz. that after clearing the kingdoms of Balkh and Badakhshán from the thorny briers of turbulence and anarchy, he should restore them in safety to Nazar Muhammad Khán. The latter, however, scorning the dictates of prudence, hastened to Írán; but finding his affairs did not progress there to his satisfaction, he turned back, and at the suggestion of the Kalmáks and other associates, came and besieged the fort of Maimanah, in order that he might seek

¹ [Also written Pulchirágh or Bilechirágh.]

shelter within its walls, and so set his mind at rest. In the end, however, after infinite toil and labour, seeing the capture of the stronghold in question to be beyond his reach, he departed without effecting his object, and moved to Nílchirágh, all which occurrences have been already fully detailed in their proper place. From the letters of reporters in those dominions, it was further made known to his world-adorning understanding, that notwithstanding the servants of the crown had manifested the most laudable zeal and anxiety to console the hearts of the peasantry in Balkh and Badakhshán by giving them seed, and assisting them to plough and till their fields: yet, owing to the inroads of the Almáns, most of the grain and crops had been destroyed, and the populous places desolated; and that the commanders of the army, and the chiefs of the soldiery, owing to the dearth of provisions and the scarcity of grain, were extremely disgusted, and averse to remaining any longer in the country. From the contents of the Prince's letter, moreover, his unwillingness to stay at that capital was also discerned. Taking all this into consideration therefore, an edict was issued, directing His Royal Highness to deliver up Balkh and Badakhshán to Nazar Muhammad Khán, provided the latter would come and have an interview with him, and then set out with all the victorious forces for Hindustán, the type of Paradise.

*Cession of Balkh and Badakhshán to Nazar Muhammad Khán,
and Retreat of Aurangzeb.*

* * * On the 4th of the month of Ramazán, early in the morning, which was the time selected for Nazar Muhammad Khán's interview, news came in that he had sent his grandson Muhammad Kásim, son of Khusrú Sultán, in company with Kafsh Kalmák and several chiefs, and that they had all advanced two *kos* beyond the bridge of Khatab. The Prince, appreciating the gradations of rank, deputed his son, Muhammad Sultán, along with Bahádur Khán and some other

nobles, to go and meet him; and that early fruit of the orchard of royalty having dutifully obeyed the command, brought the individual in question into his noble father's presence. The Prince, well versed in etiquette, then folded Muhammad Kásim in a fond embrace, and placed him in an adjoining seat; after which, Kafsh Kalmák delivered the Khán's letter, full of apologies for not having come in consequence of an attack of indisposition, and represented that the Khán, being obliged to forego the pleasure of an interview, had sent Muhammad Kásim as his representative, with a view to remove all suspicion of his having wilfully broken his promise.

After dismissing Muhammad Kásim, the Prince addressed the commanders of the army in that country, viz. * * saying, his instructions were, to deliver over Balkh and Badakhshán to Nazar Muhammad Khán, after the interview; but now that the latter had only sent his grandson, excusing himself on the pretended plea of sickness, he could not carry out this measure without a distinct order. He told them to take into consideration, however, that the country was desolated, winter close at hand, grain scarce, and time short; so that there would be great difficulty in making arrangements for the winter, and remaining in the kingdom during that inclement season, and asked them what was their opinion on the subject. The principal chiefs replied, that the passes of the Hindú Koh were just about to be covered by snow, when the road would be blocked up; so that, if he reported the matter, and waited the arrival of instructions, the opportunity would slip through his hands. They therefore came to the unanimous conclusion, that His Royal Highness should recall all the governors of forts and persons in charge of places around Balkh.

As a vast number of mercenary soldiers, consisting of Uzbeks and Almáns, had crossed the river Jílún, and spread themselves over those regions, and wherever they saw a concourse of people, took the first opportunity of assailing them, Rájá

Jai Singh was despatched to Turmuz to fetch Sa'adat Khán. The Prince was also on the point of starting off Bahádur Khán to bring back Rustam Khán from Andkhod, and Shád Khán from Maimanah, so that they might rejoin the army in safety. In the interim, however, a letter arrived from Rustam Khán, saying, that as he had ascertained that the country was to be delivered up to Nazar Muhammad Khán, he had set out from Andkhod to Maimanah, with the intention of taking Shád Khán from thence in company with him, and proceeding towards Kábul by way of San-charík. The Prince then marched with all the royal forces from the neighbourhood of Faizábád, and encamped at Chalkai, which lies contiguous to the city of Balkh; where, having ceded the country to Nazar Muhammad Khán, he delivered up the town and citadel of Balkh to Muhammad Kásim and Kafsh Kalmák. He presented the former of these, on bidding him farewell, with a jewelled dagger, a horse caparisoned with golden trappings, and 50,000 rupees out of the royal treasury. He also committed to his charge, among the stores contained in the fort and city, 50,000 *mans* of grain belonging to His Majesty, which, estimated by the rate ruling at that time, was worth five *lacs* of rupees; and besides this, all the granaries of the other forts. At this stage, Mirzá Rájá Jai Singh returned from Turmuz, accompanied by Sa'adat Khán, and joined the army. From the beginning of the invasion of Balkh and Badakhshán till the end, when those conquered territories were ceded to Nazar Muhammad Khán, there was expended out of the State exchequer, in the progress of this undertaking, the sum of two *krors* of rupees, which is equivalent to seven *lacs* of the *tímáns* current in Irák.

To be brief. On the 14th of the aforesaid month of Ramazán, the Prince started from Chalkai with all the royal forces for Kábul. He appointed Amíru-l Umará with a party to form the left wing; Mirzá Rájá Jai Singh with his, the right; and Bahádur Khán the rear-guard; whilst he sent on Mu'tamad

of those marauders a prey to the sword of vengeance, put the remainder to flight; whilst out of the royal troops some few were wounded. On the third day of the halt, whilst the rest of the army were crossing the pass of 'Arbing, a body of Almáns made their appearance; whereupon Nazar Bahádur Khán, Kheshjí Ratan son of Muhesh Dás, and some others, charged them on one side, and on the other Mu'tamad Khán with the artillerymen, and a number of the Prince's retainers. The enemy, unable to withstand the shock, turned and fled, closely pursued by the royalists, who killed and wounded a few of them.

The day they had to march from Ghorí by way of Khwája Zaid, as the road to the next stage, which had been selected on the banks of the Surkháb, was extremely difficult, and there

was a great likelihood of an attack from the Uzbeks and Hazáras, the Prince left Amíru-l Umará at the top of the aforesaid pass, to protect the men who used to follow in rear of the army. As there was an interval of two *kos* between Amíru-l Umará, Bahádur Khán, and the left wing of the army, a portion of the baggage, whilst threading the road, was plundered by the Hazáras. A vast body of them also fell upon the treasure; but Zú-l Kadar Khán, and the rest who were with it, firmly held their ground, and the battle was warmly contested till some part of the night was spent. Amíru-l Umará, having been informed of the circumstance, sent a detachment of his own men to their assistance; whereupon the enemy retreated in confusion. After the camp had advanced beyond Shaburghán, during the march to Nek Bihár and to Chár-chashma, some injury accrued to the troops, in consequence of the narrowness and steepness of the road, and the rolling over of several laden beasts of burden, which were accidentally led along the top of the hill off the path by some of the people who had lost their way. When they started from Chár-chashma for the foot of the Hindú Koh range, it was resolved, for the greater convenience of the troops, that the Prince should first cross the pass, and at the expiration of a day Amíru-l Umará should follow; that after him should come the royal treasure, *kár-khána* (wardrobe) and artillery, with all His Royal Highness's establishment; and in this way, a party having gradually crossed every day, Bahádur Khán, who occupied the rear of the victorious army, should follow last of all. The illustrious Prince, having reached the foot of the pass that day, passed over the Hindú Koh on the next, and though the weather was not intensely cold, yet as snow had fallen previously, and there was a hard frost, the men got over with considerable difficulty.

On the morrow, the Prince reached Ghorband, whence he marched during the night into Kábul. When Amíru-l Umará, who followed one day's march in rear, was encamped at the foot

of the pass, at midnight it began to snow, and continued doing so without intermission till morning; after which the weather became fair, and the Amír having got through the pass with his force, entered Kábul two days after His Royal Highness. As for Rájá Jái Singh, who, the day the camp marched from Surkháb, had stayed behind by the Prince's orders at that place, on account of the narrowness of the road, and the difficulty of the defiles that occurred further on, as soon as he passed Chár-chashma, the snow commenced falling, and never once ceased all that day and the next, during which he halted on the road. After arriving at the pass of the Hindú Koh, till crossing over it, the snow kept falling for three more days and nights; and Zú-l Kadar Khán, whose duty it was to guard the treasure, seeing, when four kos distant from the Hindú Koh, that a snow-storm was coming on, started at once in the hope of getting the treasure through the pass, before it could have time to stop up the road. It chanced, however, that the snow gradually accumulated to such a depth, that most of the camels tumbled down, and nearly half of them were rendered quite unserviceable, so that the Khán in question, despite his utmost exertions, was unable to cross that day. In consequence of the intense cold, his comrades, both horse and foot, got dispersed, and saving a few servants of the crown, no one remained with him; nevertheless he stayed on the summit of the ridge, to guard the treasure, notwithstanding the snow-storm. In the morning, having laden a portion of it on such of the camels as were capable of travelling, he started it off in advance to Ghorband, escorted by some of the horsemen; whilst he himself with a few others occupied themselves in guarding the remainder, and spent seven days and nights on the top of the Hindú Koh in the midst of snow and intense cold, and with but a scanty supply of provisions, waiting for Bahádur Khán's arrival, who was behind. The fortunes of the latter were as follows. As soon as he reached the pass of Nek Bihár, which is two marches from the Hindú Koh, and has a very precipitous descent, the

snow began to fall, and continued coming down all night till twelve o'clock next day. Owing to the difficulties of the pass, which were greatly enhanced by the heavy fall of snow, he only got the rest of the camp and army through with immense labour. At this juncture, the malicious Hazáras, in their eager desire for plunder, assaulted the camp followers more desperately than ever; but Bahádur Khán each time inflicted summary chastisement on the freebooters, and drove them off. After reaching the foot of the Hindú Koh pass, and halting there for a day, he sent on all those who had lagged in the rear, and as soon as they were across, set out himself. As most of the people spent the night on the summit of the pass, on account of the difficult roads, and the intense coldness of a mountain climate, heightened by the deep snow and chilling blasts, some of the men and cattle that were worn out and infirm perished. Accordingly, from the first commencement of the army's crossing to the end, about 5000 men, and a similar number of animals, such as horses, elephants, camels, oxen, etc., were destroyed, and a vast deal of property remained buried in the snow. When Bahádur Khán came to the top of the pass, and Zú-l Kadar Khán explained the state of affairs to him, he halted there, and in company with Ikhlas Khán, and some other nobles and *mansabdárs* who still stood by him, spent the night on the spot. In the morning, having thrown the baggage off all such of his own camels as he could find, he loaded them with the treasure, and distributed the rest among the horses and camels belonging to the troops. Just as he was on the point of starting, a body of Hazáras came up in the rear, and seeing the paucity of his detachment, resolved upon making an assault, for the sake of carrying off the treasure. Bahádur Khán, however, faced about, and made some of the doomed wretches a prey to (the crocodile of) his bloodthirsty sword, and routed the remainder. He then set out with the treasure, and reached Balkh along with his comrades, after an interval of fourteen days from the time of the Prince's arrival there.

Despatch of a Candlestick to the Glorious City.

Among the events of this year was the despatch of a candlestick studded with gems to the revered tomb of the Prophet (on whom be the greatest favours, and blessings!) an account of which is here given. Some time previous to this it was represented that a wonderfully large diamond from a mine in the territory of Golkonda had fallen into the hands of Kutbu-l Mulk; whereupon an order was issued, directing him to forward the same to Court; when its estimated value would be taken into account, as part of the two *lacs* of *huns* (pagodas), which was the stipulated amount of his annual tribute. He accordingly sent the diamond in question, which weighed in its rough state 180 *ratīs*, to Court; and after His Majesty's own lapidaries had cut away as much of the outer surface as was requisite to disclose all its beauties, there remained a rare gem of 100 *ratīs* weight, valued by the jewellers at one *lac* and 50,000 rupees. As such a valuable diamond as this had never been brought to the threshold, resembling the Elysian abode, since his accession to the throne, the pious monarch, the bulwark of religion, with the best intention, and the utmost sincerity of purpose, made a vow to send it to the pure sepulchre of the last of the Prophets (on whom be peace!). Having therefore selected out of the amber candlesticks that he had amongst his private property the largest of them all, which weighed 700 *tolas*, and was worth 10,000 rupees, he commanded that it should be covered with a network of gold, ornamented on all sides with flowers, and studded with gems, among which that valuable diamond should also be included.

In short, that incomparable candlestick cost two *lacs* and 50,000 rupees, of which one *lac* and 50,000 was the price of the diamond, and the remaining *lac* the worth of all the gems and gold, together with the original candlestick. Mīr Saiyid Ahmad Sa'id Bahārī, who had once before conveyed charitable presents to the two sacred cities, was then deputed to take charge of this

precious offering; and an edict was promulgated to the effect, that the revenue collectors of the province of Gujarát should purchase a *lac* and 60,000 rupees worth of goods for the sacred fane, and deliver it over to him, so that he might take it along with him from thence. Out of this, he was directed to present 50,000 rupees worth to the Sharif of Mecca; to sell 60,000 rupees worth, and distribute the proceeds, together with any profit that might accrue, amongst the indigent of that sacred city; and the remaining 50,000, in like manner, amongst those of the glorious Medina. The above-named Saiyid, who was only in receipt of a daily stipend, was promoted to a suitable *mansab*, and having been munificently presented with a dress of honour and a donation of 12,000 rupees, received his dismissal.

*Account of the founding of the fort at the Metropolis of
Sháh-Jahánábád.*

The following is an exact account of the founding of the splendid fort in the above-named metropolis, with its edifices resembling Paradise, which was constructed in the environs of the city of Dehli, on the banks of the river Jumna. It first occurred to the omniscient mind that he should select on the banks of the afore-said river some pleasant site, distinguished by its genial climate, where he might found a splendid fort and delightful edifices, agreeably to the promptings of his generous heart, through which streams of water should be made to flow, and the terraces of which should overlook the river. When, after a long search, a piece of ground outside of the city of Dehli, lying between the most distant suburbs and Núrgarh, commonly called Salíngarh, was fixed upon for this purpose, by the royal command, on the night of Friday, the 25th of Zí-l hijja, in the twelfth year of his auspicious reign, corresponding to 1048 A.H., being the time appointed by the astrologers, the foundations were marked out with the usual ceremonies, according to the plan devised, in the august presence. Active labourers were then employed in

digging the foundations, and on the night of Friday, the 9th of Muharram, of the year coinciding with 1049 A.H. (1639 A.D.), the foundation-stone of that noble structure was laid. Throughout the Imperial dominions, wherever artificers could be found, whether plain stone-cutters, ornamental sculptors, masons, or carpenters, by the mandate worthy of implicit obedience, they were all collected together, and multitudes of common labourers were employed in the work. It was ultimately completed on the 24th of Rabí'u-l awwal, in the twenty-first year of his reign, corresponding to 1058 A.H., at an outlay of 60 *lacs* of rupees, after taking nine years three months and some days in building.

Fíroz Sháh's Canal.

The canal that Sultán Fíroz Sháh Khiljí, during the time he reigned at Dehlí, had made to branch off from the river Jumna, in the vicinity of *pargana* Khizrábád, whence he brought it in a channel 30 Imperial *kos* long to the confines of *pargana* Safidún, which was his hunting-seat, and had only a scanty supply of water, had, after the Sultán's death, become in the course of time ruinous. Whilst Shahábu-d dín Ahmad Khán held the government of Dehlí, during the reign of the Emperor Akbar, he put it in repair and set it flowing again, with a view to fertilize the places in his *jáگیر*, and hence it was called Nahr-i Shaháb; but for want of repairs, however, it again stopped flowing. At the time when the sublime attention was turned to the building of this fort and palace, it was commanded that the aforesaid canal from Khizrábád to Safidún should be repaired, and a new channel excavated from the latter spot to the regal residence, which also is a distance of 30 Imperial *kos*. After it was thus prolonged, it was designated the Nahr-i Bihisht.

TWENTY-SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1058 A.H. (1648 A.D.).

Advance of the Persians against Kandahár.—Despatch of an army thither.

On the 22nd of the month of Ramazán, when the standards of prosperity, after their return from Safidún, were planted at His Majesty's private hunting-seat, it reached the ear of royalty, through the representations of Daulat Khán, ruler of Kandahár, and Purdil Khán, governor of fort Bust,¹ that Sháh 'Abbás the Second, having come to the sacred city of Tús² (Mashhad-i Mukaddas), with intent to rescue the kingdom of Kandahár, had proceeded towards the confines of Khurásán, with all his matchlockmen³ and pioneers. It was, besides, reported that he had despatched men to Faráh, Sístán, and other places, to collect supplies of grain, and having sent on a party in advance to Hirát, was doing his utmost to block up the road on this side; being well aware that, during the winter, owing to the quantity of snow on the ground, the arrival of reinforcements from Hindústán by way of Kábul and Multán was impracticable, he proposed advancing in this direction during that inclement season, and had despatched Sháh Kulí Beg, son of Maksúd Beg, his *razár*, as expeditiously as possible, with a letter to Court, and further that the individual in question had reached Kandahár, and, without halting more than three days, had resumed his journey to the august presence.

His Majesty, after hearing this intelligence, having summoned 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán from the metropolis, commanded him to write *farmáns* to all the nobles and *mansabdárs* who were at their respective estates, *jágirs*, and homes, directing them to set out with all speed for Court. It was likewise ordered that the

¹ [See *supra*, Vol. II. p. 575.]

² [*Ib.* 578.]

³ [The word which Major Fuller so translates is *tufangchí*.]

astrologers should determine the proper moment for the departure of the world-traversing camp from the metropolis to the capitals Lahore and Kábul.

Appointment of Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur, 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán, etc., to lead the army against Kandahár.

As soon as it reached the royal car, through Daulat Khán's representations, that on the 10th of Zí-l hijja, the Sháh had arrived outside the fortress of Kandahár, and besieged it, the ever-successful Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur was appointed to proceed thither with 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán, and some of the chief officers of State, such as Bahádur Khán, Mirzá Rájá Jai Singh, Rustam Khán, Rájá Bithaldás, and Kalich Khán. Besides these, there were upwards of fifty individuals from amongst the nobles, and a vast number of *mansabdárs*, *ahadí* archers, and matchlockmen—the whole number of whom, under the regulation requiring them to bring one-fifth of their respective tallies of fighting men into the field, would amount to 50,000 horsemen, and according to the rule enforcing a fourth, to 60,000—as well as 10,000 infantry, matchlock and rocket men, etc. It was ordered that subsidiary grants of money out of the State exchequer should be made to the nobles and *mansabdárs* holding *jágirs*, who were appointed to serve in this expedition, at the rate of 100 rupees for every individual horseman, which would be a *lac* for every hundred; that to those who drew pecuniary stipends in place of holding *jágirs*, three months' pay in advance should be disbursed; and in like manner also to the *ahadis* and matchlockmen, who numbered 5000 horse, should a similar advance be made; so that they might not suffer any privations during the campaign from want of funds to meet their current expenses.

On the 18th of the month of Muharram, it being a fortunate moment, 'Allámí was dismissed along with the nobles who were present in His Majesty's fortunate train, and

farmáns were issued to those who were staying in the province of Kábul and other places, to join the royal forces at once. Various marks of favour and regard were manifested towards 'Allámí and his associates, on their taking leave, by the bestowal of *khi'l'ats*, jewelled daggers, and swords, horses, and elephants on them, according to their different grades of rank. He also forwarded by the hands of 'Allámí for the gallant Prince—to whom an order had been issued previous to this, directing him to start instantly from Multán and overtake the royal forces at Bhimbhar—a handsome *khi'l'at*. * * * It was further commanded that the ever-victorious army should hasten to Kábul *viâ* Bangash-i bálá and Bangash-i páyín, as they were the shortest routes, and thence proceed by way of Ghazní towards Kandahár.

Loss of Kandahár.

On the 8th of Rabi'ul-awwal, when the victorious camp started from Jahángírábád, intelligence reached the Court that the servants of the crown had lost possession of the fortresses of Kandahár and Bust, and all the rest in that country; a detailed account of which events is here given. When Sháh 'Abbás came from Tús to Hirát, he proceeded from thence to Faráh; where, having halted some days, he marched upon Kandahár, having, however, first despatched Mihráb Khán with some of his nobles, and an additional number of matchlockmen, etc., amounting altogether to about 8000 horsemen, to besiege the fortress of Bust, and Sáz Khán Baligh with five or six thousand composed of Kazalbáshís and the troops of Karkí and Naksarí,¹ to subdue Zamíndáwar. On reaching that place, he fixed his head-quarters in the garden of Ganj Kulí Khán, whilst Daulat Khán, who had shut himself up in the fortress, having committed the interior of the stronghold to the charge of trusty persons, appointed a party of the royal matchlockmen and a portion of his own men to occupy the summit of

¹ [Variously written and doubtful.]

the Kambúl Hill. The defence of the towers he left to the care of Kákar Khán, to whom he also sent some of the matchlockmen; and the protection of the intrenchments below the Báshúrí and Khwája Khizr gates he entrusted to Núru-l-Hasan, *bakhshi* of *ahadis*, with a body of the latter who were serving under him. He also appointed some of the household troops, and a number of matchlockmen belonging to the Kandahár levies, to garrison the fortifications of Daulatábád and Mandaví, and having consigned the superintendence of them to Mírak Husain, *bakhshi* of Kandahár, came himself from the citadel to the former of these two forts, for the purpose of looking after the intrenchments. With a wanton disregard to the dictates of prudence, however, he did not attend to the defence of the towers, that Kalích Khán, in the days of his administration, had constructed expressly for such an occasion, on the top of the hill of Chihal-Zínah (forty steps), whence guns and matchlocks could be fired with effect into the forts of Daulatábád and Mandaví. The Kazalbáshís, therefore, seeing those towers devoid of protection, despatched a number of matchlockmen to take post in them, and open a destructive fire. They also laid out intrenchments in two different quarters. * * *

At length a number of the garrison, from want of spirit, lost the little courage they possessed, and Shádí Uzbek having entered into a conspiracy with the Kazalbáshís, seduced Kipchák Khán from his duty. Though the latter was not naturally inclined at heart to this course of behaviour, yet as his companions had their families with them, through dread of losing their wealth, their lives, and their good repute, they would not let him follow the bent of his own disposition, so he was necessarily compelled to ally himself with those unfortunates. Some of the Mughal *mansabdárs*, *ahadis*, and matchlockmen too, having sprinkled the dust of treason on the heads of loyalty, entered into a league with them, and having come in front of the fort, declared that, in consequence of all the roads being closed, from the vast quantity of snow on the ground, there was no hope of

the early arrival of succour, and that it was evident from the untiring efforts of the Kazalbáshís, that they would very shortly capture the fort, and after its reduction by force and violence, neither would there be any chance of their own lives being spared, nor of their offspring being saved from captivity. The wretched Daulat Khán, who ought instantly to have extinguished the flames of this sedition with the water of the sword, showed an utter want of spirit, by contenting himself with offering advice in reply. This, however, made no impression on the individuals in question, who got up, and departed to their respective homes, so that nought but a scanty force being left in the intrenchments, the Kazalbáshís entered the Sher-Hájí in several places. As for the party that forced an entrance on the side of the Bábáwalí gate, some of the household troops and Daulat Khán's followers, who occupied that quarter, rushed upon them, whereupon several were killed on both sides.

Meanwhile, the traitor Shádí sent a message to the governor of the fort, who was stationed at the above gate, to say that Muhammad Beg Báki had come, bearing a letter and message from the Sháh, and accompanied by Sharafu-d dín Husain, a *mansabdár* who was *dárogha* of the buildings and magazines in the fort of Bust. Daulat Khán, on this, despatched Mírak Husain Bakhshí, for the purpose of sending away Muhammad Beg from the gate; but as soon as the *bakhshí* reached the gate of Veskaran, he noticed Kipchák Khán, Shádí, and a number of the Mughal *mansabdárs*, sitting in the gateway, and perceived that they had brought Muhammad Beg inside, and seated him in front of them, and that he had brought four letters, one addressed to Daulat Khán, and the other three to Shádí, Núru-l Hasan and Mírak Husain, and was saying that he had besides some verbal messages to deliver. Mírak Husain therefore turned back, and related the circumstances to Daulat Khán; whereupon that worthless wretch deputed his *Lashkar-navis* (paymaster of the forces) to detain Muhammad Beg there, and send Kipchák Khán and Shádí to him. As soon as these ungrateful wretches

came, acting in conformity with their advice, he adopted the contemptible resolution of proceeding to an interview with Muhammad Beg, and receiving and keeping the letters he brought. The Sháh also sent a message to the effect, that he should take warning from what had already befallen Purdil Khán, the governor of the fort of Bust, and his comrades, and neither prolong hostilities any further, nor strive to shed the blood and sully the fair fame of himself and his comrades; and with a view to acquaint the inmates of the fort with the condition of the garrison of Bust, he despatched along with Muhammad Beg the aforesaid Sharafu-d dîn Husain, whom Mihráb Khán had started off loaded with chains in advance of himself. To this Daulat Khán replied, that he would return an answer five days hence; and it having been stipulated that during this interval hostilities should not be engaged in on either side, Muhammad Beg received his dismissal, and returned to his own camp.

On the 5th day 'Alí Kulí Khán, brother of Rustam Khán, the former commander-in-chief, having come to Shádí's intrenchment, and delivered a message, saying that the Sháh had commissioned him to ascertain their final decision, the pusillanimous Daulat Khán, with most of the servants of the crown, went to the gate, and invited him in. The latter, after being introduced, stated, that as they had already offered as gallant and stubborn a resistance as it was possible to make, it was now proper that they should refrain from fighting, and, applying themselves to the preservation of their lives and property, should send an individual along with him to deliver their reply. The worthless Daulat Khán accordingly despatched 'Abdu-l Latíf, *dirán* of Kandahár, for the purpose of procuring a safe conduct, in company with the above individual, and on the following day he returned with the written agreement.

The villain Shádí, however, without waiting for the governor's evacuating the fort, surrendered the Veskaran gate, which was in his charge, during the night to the Kazalbáshís, and hastened

along with Kipchák Khán to the Sháh's camp. However much the miserable Daulat Khán exhorted his men to repair to the fort on the top of the hill, it was of no avail; though had he but taken shelter there with a detachment, he could have held out till the arrival of succour without suffering any harm. On the morrow, when the *mansabdárs*, *ahadís*, and matchlockmen, who were engaged in the defence of the gates of the new and old forts, marched out, after obtaining a safe conduct, with the exception of the citadel where the helpless Daulat Khán was left with Kákar Khán, the base Rájá Amar Singh, and some other *mansabdárs*, as well as a party of his own adherents, every spot was in the possession of the Kazalbáshís.

On the 9th of Safar, this year, 'Alí Kulí Khán came and said that any longer delay could not be permitted; whereupon the disloyal Daulat Khán delivered up a place of refuge of that description, and having marched out with his goods and comrades, encamped at a distance of a *kos*. During the period of the siege, which extended over two months, nearly 2000 of the Kazalbásh army and 400 of the garrison were slain.

Summarily, on the third day after Daulat Khán's dastardly evacuation of the fort, 'Alí Kulí Khán, 'Ísa' Khán, and his brother Jamshíd Khán, came to him, and intimated that the Sháh had sent for him, as well as for some of his chief officers and associates. The latter replied that it would be better for them to excuse him from this trouble, or, if they were resolved upon taking him there, to manage so that there should be no delay in his getting his dismissal, and to give him a dress of honour, both of which requests were guaranteed by 'Alí Kulí Khán. The ill-fated Daulat Khán accordingly proceeded with Kákar Khán and Núru-l Hasan, in company with the above-named nobles, to wait upon the Sháh, and having received his dismissal after a few moments, returned to his own camp, and on the 18th of the month of Safar set out with a world of shame and ignominy for Hindústán.

The Sháh, in consequence of the horses with his army having

mostly perished for want of forage, in addition to which a scarcity of grain was experienced, appointed Mihráb Khán, with about 10,000 Kazalbáshís and slaves, armed with matchlocks, to garrison Kandahár; and Dóst 'Alí Uzbek with a detachment to guard the fortress of Bust, and returned himself to Khurásán on the 24th of this month. The account of the fortress of Bust is as follows. * *

Surrender of Bust.

From the beginning of the siege, the flames of war and strife raged furiously for 54 days, and many were killed and wounded on both sides; insomuch that during this period close upon 600 of the Kazalbáshís, and nearly half that number of Purdil Khán's followers, met their death. On the 14th Muharram, this year, the governor having begged for quarter, after entering into a strict agreement, had an interview with Mihráb Khán. The latter, having broken his engagement, put to death out of the 600 men, who had stood by the governor to the last, several persons, who, being averse to the surrender, had protracted the struggle; and having made that individual himself a prisoner, together with the rest of his adherents, and his family and children, brought them all to the Sháh at Kandahár.

In Zamíndáwar the war was carried on as follows. As soon as Sáz Khán Báligh besieged the fort, Saiyid Asadu-lla, and Saiyid Bákar, sons of Saiyid Báyzid Bukhári, who were engaged in its defence, sent him a message, saying that the fort was a dependency of Kandahár, and without reducing the latter, its capture would be of no use; and it would therefore be better to suspend hostilities until the fate of Kandahár was ascertained, so that blood might not be shed fruitlessly. Sáz Khán, concurring in the reasonableness of this proposition, refrained from prosecuting siege operations, and having written to inform the Sháh of the fact, sat down to await intelligence. A messenger from the Sháh at length brought to the Saiyids a letter, detailing the capture of the fortresses of Bust and Kandahár; whereupon they surrendered the fort.

Advance of the Imperial Army to Kandahár.

The exploits of the royal army were as follows. The day that 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán crossed the Niláb with the royal forces, Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur having arrived from Multán, also effected his passage over that river; and the whole of the forces set out at once in His Royal Highness's train for Kohát. On reaching that place, he halted to await the receipt of intelligence regarding the snow; and presently a letter arrived from Khalíl Beg, who had been sent on in advance to level the road and construct bridges, to the effect that on the road through the hill-country along the Kohistán route the snow was lying so deep that even, if no more fell the road would not probably be passable for at least a month. The ever-victorious Prince consequently relinquished his design of proceeding by that route, but started in the direction of Pesháwar, by way of the pass of Sendh-Basta, which is an extremely rugged and difficult road, and without entering that city, pursued his journey by the regular stages to Kábul. * * *

TWENTY-THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1059 A.H. (1649 A.D.).

As it was represented that during the progress of the victorious forces towards Kandahár a great deal of the cultivation of Ghazni and its dependencies had been trodden under foot by the army, the merciful monarch, the cherisher of his people, despatched the sum of 2000 gold *mohurs*, in charge of a trusty individual, with directions to inquire into the loss sustained by the agriculturists, and distribute it amongst them accordingly.

After the fortress of Kandahár had been besieged for three months and a half, so that grain and fodder were beginning to get scarce, notwithstanding the praiseworthy exertions of the faithful servants of the crown, owing to their having with them neither a siege train of battering guns, nor skilful artillerymen, the capture of the fortress seemed as distant as ever. For these reasons, and as the winter also was close at hand, a *farmán* was issued to the illustrious Prince, to the effect that, as the reduction of the fortress without the aid of heavy guns was impracticable, and there was not now sufficient time remaining for them to arrive in, he should defer its capture till a more convenient opportunity, and start for Hindústán with the victorious troops. The Prince Buland Ikbál Dará Shukoh was also ordered to tarry some time at Kábul, and directly he heard the news of the Kandahár army's arrival at Ghazní, to set out for the presence. * *

As the winter was now close at hand, and forage had become unattainable, notwithstanding hearing of the death of Mihráb Khán, the *kiladár*, from a number of persons, who came out of the fortress, the Prince did not deem it expedient to delay any longer, but, in obedience to the mandate worthy of all attention, set out with the victorious forces from Kandahár on the 8th of the month of Ramazán this year for Hindústán. * *

TWENTY-FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1060 A.H. (1650 A.D.).

The Emperor excused the Fast.

As his most gracious Majesty had this year advanced in joy and prosperity beyond the age of sixty, and the divine precepts sanctioning the non-observance of the fast came into force, the learned doctors and *mufflis*, according to the glorious ordinances of the Kurán, by way of fulfilling the commandments of the law, decreed that it would be lawful for His Majesty, whose blessed person is the source of the administration of the world, to expend funds in charity in lieu of observing the fast. The monarch, the lover of religion, and worshipper of the divine law, therefore, lavished 60,000 rupees on the deserving poor; and at his command, every night during the sacred month divers viands and all sorts of sweetmeats were laid out in the Chihal-sitún in front of the balcony of public audience, with which famishing and destitute people appeased their hunger. It was further resolved that henceforward a similar plan should be pursued during every month of Ramazán.

TWENTY-FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1061 A.H. (1650-1 A.D.).

Subjugation of Tibet.

On the 23rd Jumáda-s sání, which was the time fixed for entering Kashmír, the Emperor alighted in safety at the royal apartments of the fort.

On the 4th of Rajab His Majesty paid a visit to the Mosque, which had been erected in the most exquisite style of art, for the asylum of learning, Mullá Sháh Badakhshání, at a cost of 40,000 rupees, the requisite funds having been provided by Nawáb 'Aliya, and was surrounded by buildings to serve as habitations for the poor, which were constructed at a further outlay of 20,000 rupees.

On the 12th of this month, Ádam Khán's *munshí* and his nephew Muhammad Murád, as well as the sons of Salím Beg Káshgharí, who ranked amongst the auxiliaries serving in the province of Kashmír, and had stood security for the two former individuals, were appointed to proceed to Tibet, with a number of *samíndárs*, to exterminate a rebel named Mirzá Ján, and subdue the fort of Shkardú, together with the territory of Tibet, which had escaped out of the possession of the servants of the crown.

On the 27th of Sha'bán it reached the ear replete with all good, through Ádam Khán's representations, that the rebel Mirzá Ján had no sooner heard of the arrival of the royalists, than he evacuated the fort of Shkardú, and became a wanderer in the desert of adversity; whereupon the fort in question, together with the territory of Tibet, came anew into the possession of the servants of the crown. The gracious monarch rewarded the aforesaid Khán with an addition to his *mansab*, and conferred the country of Tibet in *jágir* on the above-named Muhammad Murád, as his fixed abode.

Towards the close of the spring, on account of the heavy rain and tremendous floods, all the verdant islands in the middle of the Dal, as well as the gardens along its borders, and those in the suburbs of the city, were shorn of their grace and loveliness. The waters of the Dal rose to such a height, that they even poured into the garden below the balcony of public audience, which became one sheet of water from the rush of the foaming tide, and most of its trees were swamped. Just about this time, too, a violent hurricane of wind arose, which tore up many trees, principally poplars and planes, by the roots, in all the gardens, and hurled down from on high all the blooming foliage of Kashmír. A longer sojourn in that region was consequently distasteful to the gracious mind; so, notwithstanding that the sky was lowering, he quitted Kashmír on the 1st of Ramazán, and set out for the capital by way of Sháhábád.

Progress to Kábul, and despatch of 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán with an immense army for the subjugation of Kandahár.

On the night of Monday, the 18th of Rabí'u-l awwal, being the moment that had been fixed for the auspicious departure to Kábul, the royal train moved from the capital of Lahore in that direction. At the same chosen period, too, His Majesty despatched 'Allámí with the multitudinous forces (resembling the waves of the sea), amounting together with the army serving in Kábul to 50,000 cavalry and 10,000 infantry, including musketeers, gunners, bombardiers, and rocketmen, for the purpose of conquering the country and fortress of Kandahár, Bust and Zamíndáwar. He was further accompanied by ten large and ferocious war-elephants, eight heavy and twenty light guns; the latter of which carried two and two and a half *sír* (four and five lbs.) shot, and during an engagement used to be advanced in front of the army; twenty elephants carrying *hathnáls*, and 100 camels with *shuturnáls*, besides a well-replenished treasury, and other suitable equipments. He was instructed to repair by way of Kábul and Ghazní to Kandahár, and about 3000 camels were employed in the transport of artillery stores, such as lead, powder and iron shot. * * *

TWENTY-SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1062 A.H. (1651-2 A.D.).

Arrival of Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur and Jamdatu-l Mulk Sa'du-lla Khán at Kandahár, and siege of the fortress.

On the 3rd of Jumáda-s sání, the first month this year, the victorious Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur, who had set out from Multán for Kandahár, reached his destination. 'Allámí, who had hastened thither by way of K. bul, having joined His Royal Highness on the above date, delivered the kind and indulgent *fárman*. As it had been determined that the siege of the fortress should be commenced simultaneously with the

arrival at Kandahár, the fortunate Prince, having finished marking out the positions that the royal forces were to occupy, invested the stronghold that very day. * * *

In short, for two months and eight days the flames of war burned fiercely, and on both sides numerous casualties occurred. On one occasion, when Muhammad Beg *Topchi-báshí* (Commandant of the Artillery), and five or six others of the garrison, had been destroyed by a shot from the gun named *Fath Lashkar*, the Kazalbáshís sallied out of the fort and poured down upon the trenches; whereupon a desperate struggle ensued between the adverse hosts. Another time they fell on 'Allámí's trenches; but a party of his retainers firmly held their ground, and after putting a few of their antagonists to the sword, and wounding some others, manfully laid down their lives; and on the arrival of succour, the enemy retired precipitately within the fortifications.

To be brief, the royalists used the most strenuous exertions, and laboured with unremitting zeal and assiduity in carrying forward the parallels and zigzags of attack, and demolishing the crest of the parapet and the bastions. Nevertheless, as the fortress possessed immense strength, and was filled with all the military weapons and stores required for an effective defence, their utmost efforts produced no impression, and, owing to the storm of shot and shell that poured on them like a shower of rain from the fort, they were unable to advance their trenches beyond the spot they had already brought them to. In the interim, out of the seven guns which had accompanied the royal army, and were the most effectual implements of attack, two that were mounted in the Prince's trenches had cracked from constant firing, and had become quite unserviceable. As for the other five, which were in the trenches conducted by 'Allámí and Kásim Khán *Mir-i átish*, although they continued to be discharged, yet as they were not served by scientific artillerymen, their fire was not so effective as could be wished.

As soon as these particulars became known to His Majesty's

world-adorning understanding, and he was informed that the capture of the fortress was at that period impracticable; and it also reached the royal ear that the Uzbeks and Almáns had come into the neighbourhood of Ghazní, and excited tumults, as already described, a *farmán* was issued to the illustrious Prince on the 4th of Sha'bán, to withdraw his forces from around the fortress, and, deferring its capture till some other period, to take his siege train along with him and set out for Court. * *

Departure of the Prince Buland Ikbál Dārā Shukoh from Lahore to Kandahár, and organization of forces with artillery, etc.

As the Prince Buland Ikbál, after the return of the army from Kandahár, had guaranteed to conquer that territory, and with this view the provinces of Kábul and Multán had been bestowed upon him, His Royal Highness, on reaching the capital, applied himself to the task of making the requisite arrangements for the campaign. In the course of three months and some days that he remained at Lahore, he used such profuse exertions, that what could not have been otherwise accomplished in a year was effected in this short period. Among the siege train was a gun called *Kishwar-kushá* (clime-conquering), and another *Garh-bhanjan* (fort-shattering), each of which carried an iron shot one *man* and eight *sirs* in weight (96 lbs.); and they were worked by the gunners under the direction of Kásim Khán.

There was also another large piece of ordnance that carried a shot of a *man* and sixteen *sirs* (1 cwt.), and was plied under the management of His Royal Highness's *Mir-i átish*, as well as 30,000 cannon-balls, small and great. He also got ready 5000 *mans* of gunpowder, and 2500 of lead, measuring by Imperial weight, and 14,000 rockets. Having likewise collected as many grain dealers as were procurable, he made arrangements for the army commissariat, and the safe arrival of supplies. He then despatched a letter to Court, representing that as the moment of starting was fixed for the 23rd of Rabi'u-l awwal, and the

liminary arrangements for the campaign had been completed, if the royal forces appointed to this enterprise received their dismissal, he would set out for Kandahár. A mandate in the auspicious handwriting was therefore issued, directing His Royal Highness to start off at the predetermined moment by way of Multán, on which road provisions and forage were abundant. [*Long details of the siege.*]

TWENTY-SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1063 A.H. (1652-3 A.D.).

Reduction of the Fortress of Bust.

Among the stirring incidents that occurred during the siege of Kandahár was the subjugation of the fortress of Bust by the laudable exertions of the servants of the crown, a concise account of which is as follows. * *

Siege of Kandahár raised.

Ultimately the duration of the siege extended beyond five months, the winter began to set in, all the lead, powder, and cannon-balls were expended, and neither was there any forage left in the meadows, nor provisions with the army. A *farmán* likewise was issued to this effect, that as the winter was close at hand, and they had already been long detained in Kandahár, if the reduction of the fortress could not be effected just at once, they might stay if necessary some short time longer; or otherwise return immediately. Rustam Khán, who had been recalled from Bust for the purpose of sharing in the assault, having dismantled that fortress, distributed the provisions among his men, and reached Kandahár with his comrades, bringing all the artillery stores, and property in the *Kár-khána*, that was there, along with him. With an eye therefore to the safety of the property mentioned above, he deemed it expedient to return, and not one of the royalist commanders proposed staying any longer. The Prince Buland Ikbál consequently, on the 15th Zí-l ka'da this year, set out from Kandahár for Hindústán.

TWENTY-EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1064 A.H. (1653-4 A.D.). ✓

Appointment of 'Allámí to the task of demolishing the Fort of Chitor, and chastising the Ráná.

On the 22nd Zi-l ka'da, at a chosen moment, the royal departure from the metropolis of Sháhjahánábád to the blessed city of Ajmír took place. On the same date, the Emperor despatched 'Allámí, with a large number of nobles and *mansabdárs* and 1500 musketeers, amounting altogether to 30,000, for the purpose of hurrying on in that direction, and demolishing the fort of Chitor, which was one of the gifts (*'atáyá*) that had been made by this Imperial dynasty. From the time of the late Emperor Jahángír, it had been settled that no one of the Ráná's posterity should ever fortify it; but Ráná Jagat Singh, the father of Rájá Jai Singh, having set about repairing it, had pulled down every part that was damaged, and built it up very strongly anew. He also directed him, if perchance the Ráná did not tender his obedience, to overrun his territory with the royal forces, and inflict suitable chastisement on him. The triumphant standards then moved on by the regular marches in the rear of the ever-victorious troops. On the 2nd of Zi-l hijja, when the world-subduing banners were planted at Khalílpúr, the Ráná's confidential *rakils* waited on the Prince Buland Ikbál, and begged His Royal Highness to act as their intercessor. When, by his mediation, the penitence and humility expressed by the Ráná was reported at the threshold of might and majesty, an order was issued that His Royal Highness should send his *Mír-i buyutát* to wait upon the Ráná, and deliver the following message, viz. that if, with judicious forethought, he would despatch his eldest son, the *Sáhib-i-tika*, to the presence, and a detachment of his people under the command of one of his relatives were stationed in the Dakhín, the same as formerly, to be employed in the royal service, he should be left in security, or otherwise he should be overwhelmed in adversity.

As the Ráná had again in these days humbly forwarded an address to the Prince Buland Ikbál, requesting him to send his *dhucán*, in order that he might start off his sons to Court in company with that individual, His Royal Highness obtained permission from the Imperial threshold, and despatched Shaikh 'Abdu-l Karím, his own *dhucán*, to the Ráná. * *

The exploits of the army that accompanied 'Allámí were as follows. On his arriving within twelve *kos* of Chitor, which is the frontier of the Ráná's territory, inasmuch as the latter's negotiations had not yet been satisfactorily terminated, he commenced plundering and devastating, and depasturing his cattle on the crops. On the 5th of Zí-l hijja, this year, having reached the environs of Chitor, he directed working parties with pickaxes and spades to overthrow that powerful stronghold. Accordingly, in the course of fourteen or fifteen days, they laid its towers and battlements in ruins, and having dug up and subverted both the old and the new walls, levelled the whole to the ground. The Ráná having awoke from his sleep of heedlessness at the advent of the prosperous banners at Ajmír, the irresistible force of the royal arms, the dispersion of the peasantry, and the ruin of his territory, sent off a letter containing the humblest apologies to Court, along with his eldest son, who was in his sixth year, and a number of his principal retainers, in company with Shaikh 'Abdu-l Karím, the Prince Buland Ikbál's *Mír-i buyutát*. A *farmán* was then issued to Jamdatu-l Mulk ('Allámí), that since the fort had been demolished, and the Ráná had sent off his son to Court, the pen of forgiveness had been drawn through the register of his delinquencies at the Prince Buland Ikbál's solicitation, and that he should set out himself with the whole of the victorious army to the royal presence.

Marks of distinction bestowed on Prince Dárá Shukoh.

On the 8th of Rabí'u-s sání this year, being the expiration of the sixty-fifth lunar year of His Majesty's age, a festival was

celebrated with exceeding splendour, and was attended with the usual ceremonies. In this sublime assembly the Emperor kindly conferred on the Prince Buland Ikbál a handsome *khi'at* with a gold-embroidered vest, studded with valuable diamonds round the collar; on both sleeves, and the skirts, pearls had been sewn, and it was worth 50,000 rupees; also a *sarband* composed of a single ruby of the purest water, and two magnificent pearls, of the value of a *lac* and 70,000 rupees, and a donation of thirty *lacs* besides. He also distinguished His Royal Highness by the lofty title of Sháh Buland Ikbál, which had been applied exclusively to himself during his late Majesty's reign; and since in the days of his Princehood a chair had been placed at that Emperor's suggestion opposite to the throne for him to sit on, he now in like manner directed His Royal Highness to seat himself on a golden chair, that had been placed near the sublime throne.

TWENTY-NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1065 A.H. (1654-5 A.D.).

Campaign in Sirmor.

Among the incidents of the past year, the appointment and despatch of Khalilu-lla Khán during the return from Ajmír, with 8000 men, for the purpose of coercing the Zamíndár of Srínagar, and capturing the Dún, have been already detailed by the historic pen. The particulars of his advance and return are as follows. When the Khán in question set out with the royal forces, the Zamíndár of Sirmor, who had never felt disposed to ally himself with the servants of the crown, came under the guidance of good fortune and joined them. He was then rendered conspicuous among his compeers by the promulgation of an edict from the threshold of empire and sovereignty, investing him with the title of Rájá Sabhák Prakás.

Sirmor is a mountainous tract to the north of the new metropolis, measuring thirty *kos* in length, and twenty-five in b

in which ice-houses had been established for His Majesty's private use; whence, from the beginning of the month of Isfandiár (February) till the end of Mihr (September), an abundant supply of ice was constantly reaching the metropolis during the time that the royal standards were planted there. From these emporia porters used to carry loads of snow and ice on their backs as far as Dhamrás, the name of a place situated on the bank of the river Jumna at a distance of sixteen *kos*, but the road to which is extremely difficult. There it was packed in boxes, and sent down the stream on rafts to Daryápúr, one of the dependencies of *pargana* Khizrábád, which is also sixteen *kos* off from Dhamrás. From that point it was transported to the metropolis on board of boats in the course of three days and nights.

Khalílu-lla Khán, in company with the aforesaid Rájá and some other *samindárs* of those parts, having reached the Dún, which is a strip of country lying outside of Srínagar, twenty *kos* long and five broad, one extremity of its length being bounded by the river Jumna, and the other by the Ganges, which possesses many flourishing towns in various quarters, laid the foundation of a fieldwork close to Kílággar, and completed it in the course of a week. He then deputed one of the *mansabdárs* to keep guard there with 200 matchlockmen, and set out in advance with the whole of his comrades. On reaching Bahádur Khánpúr, which is a place belonging to the Dún, and lies between the rivers Jumna and Ganges, in consequence of the peasantry that dwelt in that neighbourhood having taken refuge in the hills and forests and defiles, and obstinately refusing to return, he despatched the ever-triumphant troops from every side to coerce them, who succeeded in inflicting suitable chastisement. A number of the rebels therefore fell by the sword of vengeance, and many more were taken prisoners; after which the remainder tendered their allegiance, and innumerable herds of cattle fell into the hands of the soldiery. Here, likewise, he threw up a fortified post, and left a confidential person with some

Mir Jumla seeks protection.

Another incident was the flying for refuge of Mír Muhammad Sa'íd Ardastání, surnamed Mír Jumla,¹ to the Court, the asylum of mankind, an account of which event is as follows. The above individual, in whose hands was the entire administration of Kutbu-l Mulk's kingdom, had, after a severe struggle with the Karnátikís, brought under subjection, in addition to a powerful fort, a tract of country measuring 150 *kos* in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth, and yielding a revenue of forty *lacs* of rupees. It also contained mines teeming with diamonds, and no one of Kutbu-l Mulk's ancestors had ever been able to gain possession of any portion of it. Having destroyed several strong forts built by the Karnátikís, he had brought this country into his power; and in spite of long-standing usages, he had collected a considerable force, so that he had 5000 horse in his service. For these reasons, a faction who were at enmity with him caused Kutbu-l Mulk to be displeased with him, and strove to effect his ruin. He had been active in performing such meritorious services, and after contending against the *samindárs* of the Karnátik, had subdued so fine a territory, but he did not gain the object he sought; but, on the contrary, reaped disappointment. So, using Prince Mahammad Aurangzeb Bahádur as an intercessor, he sought refuge at the Court, the asylum of the world. After this circumstance had been disclosed to the world-adorning understanding through the representations of the illustrious Prince, a handsome *khi'at* was forwarded to him by the hand of one of the courtiers in the middle of this month, together with an indulgent *farmán* sanctioning the bestowal of a *mansab* of 5000 on him, and one of 2000 on his son, Mír Muhammad Amín; as well as a mandate accompanied by a superb dress of honour for Kutbu-l Mulk, regarding the not prohibiting him and his relations from coming.

¹ [Afterwards entitled Mu'azzam Khán.]

Account of Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb's March to Golkonda.¹

Among the important events that took place towards the close of this year was the march of the over-successful Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur to the territory of Golkonda, for the sake of coercing Kutbu-l Mulk, his exaction of a superb tributary offering on behalf of His Majesty's private exchequer, and his uniting in marriage of the latter's daughter with his own eldest son, Muhammad Sultán, an abridged narrative of which is as follows. When Mír Jumla sought to ally himself to the Imperial throne, Kutbu-l Mulk, the instant he gained intelligence of the matter, imprisoned Mír Jumla's son, Mír Muhammad Amin, together with his connexions, and having confiscated whatever he possessed, both in live stock and goods, forwarded him and his relatives to Golkonda. This circumstance having soon reached the ear of the fortunate Prince, through the intervention of news-writers, His Royal Highness despatched a quiet letter to Kutbu-l Mulk regarding the release of the prisoners, and the restoration of Mír Muhammad Amin's goods and chattels. Having likewise reported the state of the case to the Imperial presence, he solicited authority, that in case Kutbu-l Mulk persisted in keeping Mír Jumla's son in confinement, he might be permitted to march against him in person, and endeavour to liberate the captives; as supineness in resorting to arms would be a source of additional lethargy to the opulent lords of the Dakhin. On the receipt of his report, a *farmán* was likewise forwarded with the utmost expedition to Kutbu-l Mulk, by the hands of some mace-bearers, respecting the surrender of Mír Jumla's son along with his relatives, and the infliction of the consequences of disobedience. A mandate was also addressed to the victorious Prince, instructing him to set out for his destination with the triumphant troops; and the ever-obeyed commands were issued to the governor of Málwa, and the *mansabdárs* serving in

¹ [Both Muhammad Wáris and Muhammad Sálilí agree in placing these affairs of Golkonda in the thirtieth year of the reign.]

that province, to proceed and join His Royal Highness as quickly as possible.

In short, as Kutbu-l Mulk, under the influence of the fumes of arrogance, would not heed the contents of the letter, the Prince despatched his eldest son, Muhammad Sultán, thither on the 8th of Rabi'ü-l awwal this year, along with a host of nobles and *mansabdárs* and his own followers. It was further determined that the army that was returning from Deogarh should halt in that vicinity, and unite itself to the illustrious Sultán; and that he himself should set out afterwards in the course of another month. About this time, the *mansabdárs* in whose charge the *khi'ats* and *farmáns* had been despatched for Kutbu-l Mulk and Mír Jumla from the brilliant presence, as has been related in its proper place, came and waited on that ward of the divine vigilance. Although it was the realm-subduing Prince's opinion that Kutbu-l Mulk would release Mír Jumla's son from confinement previous to the arrival of Muhammad Sultán, "the tender sapling in the garden of prosperity and success," at the frontier of the Golkonda territory, and that the campaign would not consequently be prolonged to any great extent, yet Kutbu-l Mulk, from excessive negligence and extreme pride, had not the good sense to adopt this measure, and hold the *farmán* in dread and fear. After the last communication the Prince gave orders,¹ directing Muhammad Sultán to enter his territory with the Imperial troops. On receiving the above *farmán* with the alarming intelligence of Muhammad Sultán's approach at the head of the royal forces, Kutbu-l Mulk awoke from his deep sleep of arrogance and conceit, and sent off Mír Jumla's son, along with his mother and connexions. He also forwarded a letter to Court, intimating this fact, and avowing his fealty and subservience, in charge of the mace-bearers who had brought the *farmán*. Mír Jumla's son having joined Muhammad Sultán twelve *kos* from Haidarábád, reposed in the cradle of peace and safety. Nevertheless as Kutbu-l Mulk, with grasping avarice, still

¹ [The text here is vague and of doubtful meaning.]

retained the goods and property belonging to Mír Jumla and his son, and would not deliver them up, the illustrious Sultán set out for the city of Haidarábád. Kutbu-l Mulk, on learning this news, started off his children to Golkonda, which is situated at a distance of three *kos* from Haidarábád, and where, owing to the impregnability of the position, he was in the habit of depositing his secret hoards of treasure; and he followed them shortly after himself. Whatever gems and jewelry, gold and silver articles, and cash he possessed, he likewise removed to the fort of Golkonda; and other property, such as various kinds of carpets, porcelain, etc., he made over to the chief of his confidential servants, and deputed him to contend with the royal forces.

Next morning, corresponding to the 5th of Rabí'u-s sání this year, when Muhammad Sultán, having arrived at the environs of Haidarábád, was just about to encamp on the banks of the Husain Sájar lake, one of Kutbu-l Mulk's confidential retainers came and waited on him with a casket full of jewels that his master had forwarded by his hands. Meanwhile, Kutbu-l Mulk's forces made their appearance, and assumed a menacing attitude; but the ever-triumphant troops, having engaged in the deadly strife from right and left, enveloped the enemy with speed and promptitude in the midst of a galling fire, and by the aid of His Majesty's daily-increasing good fortune, having gained the superiority, chased the routed fugitives up to the city walls. Many of the enemy were accordingly killed and wounded, and the survivors, from dread of the royalists' assaults, did not stay within the city walls, but fled into the fort. In short, as such an audacious act had been perpetrated by Kutbu-l Mulk, and the bearer of the casket of jewels was indicated as the originator of this hostile movement, Muhammad Sultán gave the order for his execution.

Arrival of Muhammad Sultán at Golkonda, and Subjugation of Haidarábád.

On the morrow, Muhammad Sultán took possession of the city of Haidarábád, and having encamped outside the walls,

prohibited the soldiery from entering it, for fear of having Kutbu-l Mulk's property plundered, and the effects of the inhabitants carried off. He also despatched a confidential servant of his noble father to conciliate the residents of that city, so as to dissuade them from dispersing, and to endeavour to protect their wealth and property. This day Kutbu-l Mulk sent 200 more caskets full of gems and jewelled trinkets, two elephants with silver housings, and four horses with gold trappings, to the Sultán; and that fruitful plant of the gardens of prosperity and good fortune detained the bearer of these articles in his camp, as a hostage for the restoration of Mír Jumla's goods, which Kutbu-l Mulk still persisted in withholding. Five or six days afterwards, he sent eleven elephants, sixty horses, and other things belonging to Mír Jumla; and though, apparently having entered into amicable relations, he used to send numbers of people to Muhammad Sultán, and make professions of loyal obedience, yet he continued strengthening his fortifications, using tremendous exertions to complete the requisite preparations for standing a siege, and forwarded repeated letters to 'Ádil Khán by the hands of trusty individuals soliciting aid.

Arrival of the fortunate Prince at Golkonda.

The particulars regarding the ever-triumphant Prince's retinue are as follows. His Royal Highness having reached Golkonda from Aurangábád in eighteen days, pitched his camp on the 20th of the aforesaid Rabí'u-s sání a kos from the fort. He then went off the road for the purpose of marking out the intrenchments, and reconnoitring the defences of the place, and having gained intelligence of Kutbu-l Mulk's approach, commanded Muhammad Sultán to take post on the left-hand side with his force. At this juncture, five or six thousand cavalry and ten or twelve thousand infantry came opposite to the army, and kindled the flame of war by discharging rockets and matchlocks, whilst the garrison likewise fired off numerous cannons and rockets from the top of the

ramparts. The lion-hearted Prince, however, with his habitual intrepidity, allowed no apprehensions to enter his mind, but urged on his riding elephant to the front; and the heroes of the arena of strife, having charged at full gallop in successive squadrons, and sapped the foundations of their foolish opponents' stability by their irresistible assaults, victory declared in favour of the servants of the crown. The ever-triumphant Prince, after returning to camp, crowned with glory and success, despatched the royalists to besiege the fort, and the prosecution of the attack against each front was committed to the vigilant superintendence of some trusty individual.

In short, the friends of Government began constructing intrenchments, and carrying forward the approaches; and as Kutbu-l Mulk, from weakness of intellect, had been guilty of such highly improper behaviour, notwithstanding that he had again sent four more caskets of gems, three elephants with silver housings, and five horses with gold and silver trappings, in charge of an intimate friend, begging that he might be allowed to send his mother to wait upon His Royal Highness, for the purpose of asking pardon for his offences; the Prince, in token of his deep displeasure, would not listen to his request, nor grant his messenger an audience, but exhorted the besiegers to lavish still greater exertions in carrying on the attack with gallantry and vigour. After two or three days had elapsed in this manner, a vast force of the Kutbu-l Mulkís made their appearance on the northern side of the fort, and were about to pour down upon the intrenchment of Mirzá Khán, who was engaged in the defence of that quarter; when the latter, becoming aware of their hostile intention, made an application for reinforcements. The renowned and successful Prince immediately despatched some nobles with his own artillery to his support; and these reinforcements having arrived at full speed, took part at once in the affray. Under the magic influence of His Majesty's never-failing good fortune, the enemy took to flight; whereupon the ever-triumphant troops began putting the miscreants to the

Next day, at Muhammad Sultán's solicitation, he gave Kutbul Mulk's son-in-law permission to pay his respects, who had come two days before with some petitions and a slight tributary offering, but had not gained admittance. Having refused the jewelry that the latter had brought for him, he

deferred its acceptance till the conclusion of negotiations. About this time Sháyista Khán joined the army with the nobles of Málwá, whereupon the Prince altered the previous position of the trenches, and directed that they should throw up four, opposite each front of the fortifications. In these very days, too, an Imperial edict arrived, intimating the despatch of a handsome *khi'at*, and a jewelled dagger with *phúl-katár*, for the illustrious Prince, and a present of a fine dress of honour, and a *mansab* of 7000, with 2000 horse, for Muhammad Sultán, as well as a benevolent *farmán* to Kutbu-l Mulk's address, granting him a free pardon. By the untiring efforts of the servants of the Crown, however, affairs had come to such a pass, that Kutbu-l Mulk was all but annihilated, and every day a number of his followers used to turn the countenance of hope towards this prosperous threshold, and attain the honour of paying their respects. Alarmed at the irresistible superiority of the royal troops, moreover, he had sent two of his confidential servants with a tributary offering, and tendered his allegiance, consenting to pay all the stipulated tribute, due for several years up to Isfandiár of the 29th year of this reign, and begging that the amount of that for the present twelvemonth might be settled in addition to the former. The subject of his daughter's marriage with Muhammad Sultán had likewise been broached; and the illustrious Prince, consequently, deeming it inexpedient to forward him the warrant of pardon just now, kept it to himself. After a lapse of two or three days, Kutbu-l Mulk despatched, agreeably to orders, ten elephants and some jewelry, as an instalment of the tribute in arrears, together with two more elephants and other articles belonging to Mír Jumla's son. For the noble Muhammad Sultán, too, he sent a letter congratulating him on his *mansab*, two elephants, one of which bore silver housings, and a horse with gold saddle and jewelled trappings. The Prince then directed that they should mount two heavy guns that had been brought from fort Ú'sa, on the top of a mound situated in Kátalabí Khán's intrenchment, and point them against the fortress.

As Kutbu-l Mulk had repeatedly begged permission to send his mother for the purpose of asking pardon for his offences, and solicited a safe conduct, it was ordered that Muhammad Sultán and Sháyista Khán should despatch the customary passport. As soon as he received that warrant and security, he sent off his mother in the hope of gaining his other objects. Accordingly, on the 22nd of Jumáda-l awwal, several of His Royal Highness's intimate companions went out, at his suggestion, to meet her, and brought her from the road to Sháyista Khán's camp. The latter, having treated her with the deepest respect and attention, conducted her next day, agreeably to orders, into the illustrious presence; where she enjoyed an interview with Muhammad Sultán, and presented two horses. * * As Muhammad Sultán represented that she was anxious to be admitted to a personal audience, in order to detail her propositions, the Prince summoned her into his presence. That chaste matron then presented a thousand gold *mohurs* as *nisár* to His Royal Highness as well as * * .

That ward of divine providence affirmed in reply, that Kutbu-l Mulk must pay down a *kror* of rupees in cash, jewelry, elephants, etc., and she having consented to obey this mandate, returned to the fortress for the purpose of collecting the above sum.

As a vast number of Kutbu-l Mulk's partisans, under the command of his *kotwál*, who had no intimation as yet of the armistice, had collected together about two *kos* from the fortress with hostile intentions, the Prince despatched several nobles and *mansabdárs*, with 200 mounted musketeers, and 500 cavalry out of Sháyista Khán's retainers, amounting altogether to 6,000 horse, and a host of matchlockmen, to coerce them. The royal troops repaired with the utmost celerity to the menaced point, and encamped that day close to the enemy's position. On the succeeding one, the miscreants sent off their heavy baggage and property to a distance, and having formed up in line themselves, stood prepared for action. Although the royalists several times drove them off and dispersed them, yet the shameless wretches kept constantly

rallying and renewing their assaults, in which they suffered numerous casualties, until night supervened ; when the ill-fated villains, being incapable of further resistance, took to a precipitate flight. A few out of the victorious army were also killed and wounded ; and the ever-successful troops, after spending the night on the ground where the enemy's tents had stood, returned in triumph on the morrow.

*Mir Jumla's coming to wait upon the Prince Muhammad
Aurangzeb Bahádur.*

At this time, the news of Mir Jumla's arrival in the vicinity of Golkonda was made known ; so the Prince forwarded to him the *farmán* and *khil'at* that had come for him from Court, by the hands of the bearer of it. The latter having been apprised of the fact, came out to meet the messenger, from his camp, which was pitched four *kos* the other side of the Husain Ságar lake, and after observing the usual marks of respect, received the *farmán* and *khil'at* from him on the banks of the above-named lake. As two days were wanting to the time fixed for his introduction to the victorious Prince, he returned for the present to his own camp. On the appointed day, the Prince sent out some nobles to fetch him, and he having set out with great pomp and splendour, enjoyed at a chosen moment the honour of paying his respects, and presented 3,000 *Ibráhmíts* as *nisár*. That descendant of nobles was recompensed from the munificent threshold by the receipt of a superb dress of honour, a jewelled *tarrah* and dagger, two horses, one with a gold, the other with a silver saddle, and an elephant with silver housings, accompanied by a female one ; and obtained permission to be seated in the presence. As peace had now been established on a firm basis, the fortunate and successful Prince evacuated the trenches encircling the fortress, on the last day of the aforesaid month, and summoned the party engaged in the siege to his presence.

THIRTIETH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1066 A.H. (1655-6 A.D.).

Painful Death of Sa'du-lla Khán.

On the 22nd Jumáda-s sání 'Allámí Sa'du-lla Khán, conformably to the sacred text, "When your time of death has arrived, see that ye defer not a moment, nor procrastinate," returned the response of *Labaiká* to the herald of God, and migrated from this transitory sphere to the realms of immortality. For nearly four months he had been labouring under a severe and painful attack of cholic; during the first two months of which period, when he was not confined to his bed, he used to attend daily in the auspicious presence, and uttered no exclamation of pain. In fact, he was then trying to dispel the disease by attending to Takarrub Khán's medical treatment; but after he became confined to his house from the acute agony he was suffering, the matter was disclosed to the royal ear; whereupon the skilful physicians in attendance at the foot of the sublime throne were commanded to effect his cure. As his appointed time of death, however, had come, all their remedies produced no effect, and the disease gradually gaining ground, put an end to his sufferings. The monarch, the appreciator of worth, expressed intense regret at the demise of that deserving object of kindness and consideration, and showered favours on his children and all his connexions.

Marriage of Muhammad Sultán with Kutbu-l Mulk's daughter.

The sequel to the narrative of Golkonda affairs is as follows. As the moment for the celebration of Muhammad Sultán's nuptials had been fixed for the morning of the 18th of Jumáda-s sání in this happy-omened year, Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahádur sent his *diván*, Muhammad Táhir, one day previously to Kutbu-l Mulk, together with the ecclesiastics, and

forwarded a *khi'at*. * * Next day, the marriage service was read in a fortunate moment, and the hymeneal rites were duly observed. After a week's interval, the illustrious Prince again despatched his own *diwán* and the royal *bakhshi* into the fortress, with a view of fetching that chaste and fortunate damsel; and commanded several nobles to wait outside the fortifications, and accompany her from thence. These obedient vassals accordingly acted in conformity with his injunctions, and conducted her along with Kutbu-l Mulk's mother, who had accompanied her, to a pavilion that had been erected near His Royal Highness's. Kutbu-l Mulk sent about ten *lacs* of rupees in gems and other articles by way of dowry. Next day the Prince forwarded the *farmán* and a superb *khi'at*, the delivery of which he had deferred, as has been alluded to in its proper place, to Kutbu-l Mulk, who went out to meet them, and received them with the deepest reverence.

[Return of Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb from Golkonda, investiture of Mir Jumla with the title of Mu'azzam Khán, and bestowal of that of Khán-Jahán on Sháyista Khán.]

Appointment of Prince Muhammad Aurangzeb to conduct the campaign of Bijápúr, and dismissal of Mu'azzam Khán [Mir Jumla], etc., from the presence.

Among the events of this year was the appointment of the victorious Prince Aurangzeb Bahádur to conduct the campaign of Bijápúr, and the dismissal of Mu'azzam Khán and the other nobles and *mansabdárs* from the sublime presence to share in the above campaign; a concise version of which is as follows. As it had been reported at the threshold of royalty, through the representations of the above-named Prince, that 'Adil Khán had bid adieu to existence by a natural death and his servants had constituted Majhúl Illáhi his successor, who professed to be his offspring, it was ordered, on the 18th of ~~Sept~~

that His Royal Highness should hasten thither with the Dakhin forces, and bring the campaign to a conclusion, in such a way as he should deem expedient. An ever-obeyed mandate was also issued to Khán-Jahán, to repair expeditiously to Daulatábád, and remain in that city until the ever-successful Prince's return. Jamdatu-l Mulk Mu'azzam Khán, Sháh Nawáz Khán Safví, Mahábat Khán, Nijábat Khán, Rájá Rái Singh, and a number more nobles and *mansabdárs*, whose total strength amounted to 20,000 horse, were appointed to serve under that ward of divine providence; some being despatched from the auspicious presence, and others from their respective homes and *jágirs*, along with a great many musketeers both horse and foot, and rocketmen. Among those who received their dismissal from the presence, Jamdatu-l Mulk was presented with a handsome *khi'at*, etc. * *

As Mu'azzam Khán had reported that he had sent several led horses, adorned with diamonds, rubies, and precious stones, and some other articles, that he had taken from the *Zamindár* of the Karnátik, to 'Ádil Khán, the Sháh Buland Ikbál despatched by the hands of two confidential slaves a mándate, agreeably to orders, to the latter, respecting the forwarding of the aforesaid articles. As 'Ádil Khán, however, departed this life very shortly after the receipt of the mandate, his servants forwarded to Court four out of the whole number of led horses, together with an epistle from his successor, in charge of the above-mentioned slaves. They were accordingly presented on the 1st of Rabí'u-s sání this year, and their value was almost a *lac* of rupees.

LXIV.

BĀDŠĀH-NĀMA

OF

MUHAMMAD WĀRIS.

[THIS work is also called *Shāh Jahān-nāma*. It is the completion of the *Bādshāh-nāma* of 'Abdu-l Hamīd by his pupil and assistant Muhammad Wāris, who was appointed to carry on the work when his friend and master had become incapacitated by age. It embraces the last ten years of Shāh Jahān's reign, from the beginning of the twenty-first to the thirtieth year, in which his actual reign closed. The work was submitted for revision to 'Alāu-l Mulk Tūnī, entitled Fāzil Khān, who became *wazir* in Aurangzeb's days, and the part of the work subsequent to the death of 'Allāmī Sa'du-lla Khān was written by Fāzil Khān, under the command of the Emperor himself. Little is known of Muhammad Wāris, but the author of the *Ma'āz-i 'Alamgiri* records that "On the 10th Rabī'u-l awwal, 1091 (1680 A.D.), Wāris Khān, news reader, the graceful author of the third volume of the *Bādshāh-nāma*, was killed by a blow of a pen-knife from a mad student, whom he had taken under his protection, and who used to sleep at night near his patron."

The work is composed in a style similar to that of 'Abdu-l Hamīd, and is of considerable length. It closes with a list of the *shaiḥs*, learned men and poets who flourished during its decade.

The history of this period of Shāh Jahān's reign has been so fully supplied by the Extracts from the *Shāh Jahān-nāma* of 'Ināyat Khān, that only one short Extract has been taken from this work.

Sir H. M. Elliot's MS. is a poor one. It is an *Extract*

inches by six and a half, and contains 357 leaves, of nineteen lines to the page. There is a copy in the British Museum, and one in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society.]

EXTRACT.

Twenty-second Year of the Reign.

[¹ When the Emperor set off from Sháhjahánábád to chastise the Persians, it was his intention to march on and make no stay until he reached Kábul. * * But afterwards it appeared clear to his far-reaching judgment, that it was very improbable that the Sháh of Persia would enter upon a campaign in the winter season, when grain and forage are very difficult to procure in that country (of Kandahár). The Emperor's counsellors also represented that the Sháh of Persia had resolved upon this evil enterprise in that infatuation which arises from youth and inexperience. During the winter he would be busy making preparations in Khurásán, and in the spring he would commence operations. In this way the late Sháh 'Abbás came up against Kandahár in the reign of the Emperor Jahángír. The severe cold and the heavy snow and rain, together with scarcity of provender for the horses, would be sources of great suffering to the Imperial army; so under all circumstances it was desirable to postpone the march until the Nau-roz. * * So it was resolved to wait the arrival of news from Kandahár. On the 12th Muharram a despatch arrived from the commandant of the fortress, to the effect that on the 10th Zí-l hijja the Sháh of Persia had invested the fortress, his evident object being to accomplish this, the first enterprise of his reign, before the spring, when the roads would be open for the advance of the Imperial army.]

¹ See *suprà*, p. 87.

LXV.

'AMAL-I SÁLIH

OF

MUHAMMAD SÁLIH KAMBU'.

[THIS, like the other histories of the reign of Sháh Jahán, is sometimes called *Sháh Jahán-náma*. It is a history of the reign of that Emperor from his birth to his death in 1076 A.H. (1665 A.D.).

Muhammad Sálíh was a fine scribe,¹ so there can be little doubt that he is the Muhammad Sálíh he himself mentions in his list of the noted caligraphists of his time. Mír Muhammad Sálíh and Mír Muhammad Múman were, he says, sons of Mír 'Abdu-lla, *Mushkín kalam*, whose title shows him to have also been a fine writer. Muhammad Sálíh was known as a poet by the Persian title *Kashfí* and the Hindí *Subhán*. Both brothers were not only fine writers, but accomplished Hindí singers. In the list of *mansabdárs*, Muhammad Sálíh is put down as commander of five hundred.

The '*Amal-i Sálíh*' is a valuable history, and has a good reputation in the East. It is not so long as the *Bádsháh-náma* of 'Abdu-l Hamíd and Muhammad Wáris, and it does not enter into the same petty details. The latter part of it, devoted to the life of Sháh Jahán after his deposition, is very brief, and notices only the tragic deaths of his sons and his own peaceful decease. The style is polished, and often highly wrought and rhetorical. At the end of the work the author has added biographical notices of the *saiyids*, *shaikhs*, learned men, physicians, poets, and fine writers who were contemporary with Sháh Jahán. Also a list of princes, nobles, and commanders, arranged according to their respective ranks. A borrowed MS., belonging to a native gentleman, is a folio 13 in. x 9, containing about 1000 to 1200 pages.]

¹ See *suprà*, p. 5.

EXTRACTS.

THIRTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN.

Death of 'Alí Mardán Khán.

[¹ Amíru-l Umará 'Alí Mardán Khán, being ill with dysentery, started for Kashmír, the air of which country suited his constitution, but he died on his way on the 12th Rajab. * * His sons, Ibráhím Khán and the others, brought his corpse to Lahore, and buried it in the tomb of his mother. He was a noble of the highest dignity; he held a *mansab* of 7000 with 7000 horse, 5000 *do-aspas* and *sih-aspas*. He had an *in'ám* of one *kror* of *dáms*. Altogether his emoluments amounted to thirty *lacs* of rupees. His death caused the Emperor great grief.]

² *Mu'azzam Khán joins Aurangzeb. Capture of several fortresses belonging to Bijápur. Defeat of 'Ádil Khán's army.*

[Mu'azzam Khán departed from Court, and marched with the army under his command to Prince Aurangzeb, whom he joined on the 12th Rabí'u-s sání. On the same day the Prince, making no delay, marched on his enterprise with all the Imperial forces and his own followers. In the course of fourteen days he reached Ohándor. There he left Walí Mahaldár Khán with a force of matchlockmen, etc., to keep open the communications and provide supplies. Next day he encamped under the fort of Bidar. This fortress was held by Sídí Marján, an old servant of Ibráhím 'Ádil Khán. He had been commander of the fortress for thirty years, and had kept it fully armed and ready. He had under him nearly 1000 horse and 4000 infantry, consisting of musketeers, rocketmen and gunners. The bastions and walls and works were carefully looked after, and he made every preparation for sustaining a siege. As soon as Prince Aurangzeb

¹ See *supra*, pp. 64, 67.

² See *supra*, p. 117.

reached the place, he resolved to reduce it. This strong fortress was 4500 yards (*dará'*) in circumference, and twelve yards high; and it had three deep ditches twenty-five yards (*gaz*) wide, and fifteen yards deep cut in the stone. The Prince went out with Mu'azzam Khán and reconnoitered the fort on all sides. He settled the places for the lines of approach, and named the forces which were to maintain them. Notwithstanding the heavy fire kept up from the bastions and the citadel, in the course of ten days Mu'azzam Khán and the other brave commanders pushed their guns up to the very edge of the ditch and began to fill it up. Several times the garrison sallied forth and made fierce attacks upon the trenches, but each time they were driven back with a great loss in killed and wounded. The besiegers by the fire of their guns destroyed two bastions and battered down the battlements of the wall.

On the 23rd Jumáda-s sání, in the thirty-first year of the reign, Muhammad Murád, with a body of musketeers and other forces, sallied from his trenches to make the assault. As soon as he reached the bastion opposite the trench of Mu'azzam Khán, he planted scaling ladders in several places, and ascended the wall. Marján, the commandant, had dug a great hole in the rear of this bastion, and had filled it with gunpowder, rockets and grenades (*hukka*). With his eight sons and all his personal followers he stood near this bastion, and with the greatest courage and determination endeavoured to resist the assault. Just then, through the good fortune which at all times attends the royal arms, * * a rocket directed against the besiegers fell into the above-mentioned hole, and ignited the gunpowder. A tremendous explosion followed, which destroyed many of the enemy. Still Marján and two of his sons were severely hurt. Those who escaped the explosion bore him and his sons back from the ditch. The brave assailants took advantage of this accident and getting into the fortress on all sides, they killed or bore down all who resisted, and raised the flag of victory. * * The commandant of the fortress, with great humanity, sent for the women and all the

mortally wounded and unable to move, he sent his sons with the keys of the fortress. They were graciously received by the Prince, who presented them with *khi'ats*, and promised them the Imperial favour. On the day after the giving up the keys, the Prince entered the city, and proceeding to a mosque which had been built two hundred years before, in the reign of the Bahmaní Sultáns, he caused the *khutba* to be read in the name of the Emperor. * * This strong fortress was thus taken in twenty-seven days. Twelve *lacs* of rupees in money, and eight *lacs* of rupees in lead, gunpowder, stores, and other munitions of a fortress, were obtained, besides two hundred and thirty guns.

Bidar is a pleasant, well-built city, and stands on the borders of Telingána. It is related in the histories of Hindústán, that Bidar was the seat of government of the Ráis of the Dakhin, and that the Ráis of the Karnátik, Mahratta (country), and Telingána were subject to the Rái of Bidar. Daman, the beloved of King Nala of Málwá, whose story Shaikh Faizí has told in the poem entitled *Nal o Daman*, was daughter of Bhím Sen, the *marzbán* of Bidar. Sultán Muhammad, son of Sultán Tughlik, first subdued the place. After that, it passed into the hands of the Bahmanís, and subsequently into the possession of the Kings of Bījápúr. By the favour of God, it now forms part of the Imperial dominions.

Intelligence reached the Prince that large bodies of the forces of 'Ádil Khán were collecting at Kulbarga, and preparing for war. He consequently sent Mahábat Khán with fifteen thousand well-mounted veteran cavalry to chastise these forces, and not to leave one trace of cultivation in that country. Every building and habitation was to be thrown down, and the land was to be made a dwelling for the owls and kites. The Khán had not got far from Bidar, when, in the middle of the next day, two thousand of the enemy's horse, at about three *kos* from the Imperial army, seized a number of bullocks, belonging to the Banjáras, while they were grazing, and were driving them off to their quarters. Mu'azzam Khán and * * led a detachment of the

Imperial forces after them, to inflict chastisement upon them, and release the cattle. Pressing forward with all speed, they overtook the enemy, killed a great many of them, and rescued all the cattle. Such of the enemy as escaped made off with great difficulty, and the royal forces returned. The wretched Afzal, who had advanced very boldly, when he heard of this disaster, was paralyzed, and fled in consternation from Kalyání, without even waiting for the fugitives to come in, and fell back upon his other forces. Mahábat Khán then ravaged Kalyání, and continued his march. Every day the black-coated masses of the enemy appeared in the distance, but they continued to retreat. * *

On the 8th Rajab, Ján Muhammad and Afzal and Rustam, the son of Randaula, and others of the enemy, with about 20,000 horse, made their appearance near the royal army, and were very bold and insolent. * * Mahábat Khán left his camp in charge of Subhán Singh, and marched out against them. The enemy began to discharge rockets upon the right wing under the command of Diler Khán, and a battle followed. * * Mahábat Khán was a good soldier; and when reports were brought to him from all parts of the field, he saw that Ikhlás Khán and Diler Khán were hard pressed. * * So he charged the enemy with such impetuosity that they were filled with dismay and fled. The victors followed in close pursuit, and many of the fugitives fell by their swords.

Aurangzeb, having left Mu'azzam Khán and Ikbál Khán in charge of Bidar, on the 23rd Rajab marched against Kalyání. On the 29th he reached that place, and on the same day he reconnoitered the fortress and invested it. * * On the 8th Sha'bán the approaches were advanced to the edge of the ditch, and the besieged were hard pressed. [*Several actions with and victories over the enemy. The country ravaged. Kulbarga occupied.*] When the ditch was filled with stones and earth, and the bastions and ramparts had been well battered, on the 27th assailants placed their ladders and mounted a bastion which been much damaged, and began to undermine and throw d

the wall. The besieged made a gallant resistance, and kept up a heavy discharge of rockets, arrows, and muskets. Grenades, naphtha-balls, and trusses of burning straw were thrown from the top of the walls. But the assailants pressed bravely on, and victory was not far off. At this juncture Diláwar Habshí, who with 2500 men held the place for 'Adil Khán, felt himself in great danger of destruction, and on the 29th wrote a letter begging for forgiveness and offering to surrender. Most of the garrison were Musulmáns, so the commandant and all his men were allowed to march out with their property and their wives and families. On the 1st Zí-l ka'da, 1068, the keys of the fortress were given up, and the Prince entered and had the *khutba* read. The commandant sought and obtained permission to go to Bijápúr.]

Illness of the Emperor.

[Suddenly, on the 1st Zí-l ka'da, 1067 A.H., the Emperor was attacked with serious illness in the form of strangury, constipation and other sympathetic affections, so that he was unable to attend to worldly affairs. Physicians tried all the remedies of their art, but in vain, for the disorder increased. * * In Safar, 1068, the health of the Emperor had so improved that he was convalescent, * * and great rejoicings followed.]

THIRTY-SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN.

[In the eyes of his father the Emperor, Prince Dárá Shukoh was superior to his brothers both in merit and age. When his other sons departed to their respective governments, the Emperor, from excessive love and partiality, would not allow Dárá Shukoh to go away from him. He also evinced the greatest partiality and affection for the Prince, providing for his honour and dignity. * *

Sháh Buland Ikbál (Dárá Shukoh) took upon himself to

interfere in the direction of affairs of State, and induced His Majesty to do many unwise things which tended to create disturbances. He urged that Murád Bakhsh had diverged from the path of rectitude, and had not ceased to act improperly. It was therefore advisable to remove him from the *súba* of Ahmad-ábád, and to settle upon him the *jágir* of Birár. If he obeyed the Emperor's order and proceeded to Birár, his offences might be forgiven and clemency be extended to him. But if, from want of foresight and intelligence, he should prove refractory and disobey the orders, he should be suitably chastised and be brought to Court under restraint. Dará Shukoh then spoke of Prince Aurangzeb, and represented that a party of intriguers had artfully led him astray, and *volens volens* had persuaded him that he had been worsted by the malice and revenge of his brother (Dará Shukoh), and that he should get the assistance of his brother (Murád Bakhsh), who had resolved upon rebellion.¹ He should then march with the splendid army under his command to the capital, under the pretence of paying a visit to his father, and wherever he passed he should subvert the authority of the Government. To carry out his aims Aurangzeb had set himself to win over to his side the great nobles of the State, some of whom he had made his own, and that he was endeavouring to effect his object by secret communications before his designs should become public. The money which he had received as tribute from Kutbu-l Mulk he had spent without permission in the raising of forces, and it would not be long before he would cast off his obedience and commence a war. It was to be hoped that the army which had been sent by the Emperor for the reduction of Bijápúr, and was now with Aurangzeb, might not be won over by the money which he had received as tribute; for assuredly, if this were so, it would be a great danger to the State, which it would be almost impossible to avert. The first thing to be done was to send *farmáns* recalling all the nobles and their forces from the Dakhin. Then a strenuous effort should be made

¹ Here the MSS. differ, and the meaning is not certain.

to get possession of the treasure. By these means the strength and greatness of the Prince would be diminished, and the friends and allies, the strength of his cause, would fall away. * *

Although the Emperor showed no haste in adopting these views, he was quite willing to send the letters. He could not resist the influence Prince Dárá had obtained over him. So letters of the unpleasant purport above described were sent off by the hands of some of the Imperial messengers. The messengers reached Prince Aurangzeb as he was engaged in directing the operations against Bijápúr, and he had the place closely invested. The arrival of the messengers disturbed the minds of the soldiers, and greatly incensed the Prince; so, much confusion arose. Some of the nobles, Mahábat Khán, Ráo Sattar Sál, and others, went off to Ágra without leave or notice. Mu'azzam Khán also, who was the head and director of this campaign, acted in a very ungenerous and foolish way, and wanted to go off to Ágra, quite regardless of the duty and respect he owed to the Prince.

This want of support from his followers, and the anxiety he felt about the Emperor, led the Prince to accept the proposals of the people of Bijápúr. Having settled this difficult matter, he marched towards Aurangábád; and as soon as he arrived there, he sent messengers in a courteous way¹ to Mu'azzam Khán, desiring him to come and have an interview. The Khán would not listen to the invitation, and acted in a manner unworthy of a great noble. So the Prince ordered Prince Sultán Muhammad to set forth with all speed and use every expedient to bring the Khán to his presence. When the directions were carried out, and the Khán arrived, Aurangzeb immediately provided for his punishment, and sent him prisoner to the fort of Daulatábád. He seized all his treasure, elephants and other property, and gave them into the charge of the State treasurers.]

¹ [*As ráh i madárd*, which may mean either "by way of courtesy" or "by way of dissimulation."]

Rájá Jaswant.

[After the defeat of Sháh Shujá', and the return of Aurangzeb to Ágra, the Emperor sent a force * * to inflict salutary punishment upon Rájá Jaswant. The Rájá feeling himself unable to resist, in his great perplexity and alarm, sent some of his servants to Dára Shukoh, who, previous to the Rájá's flight, had arrived at Ahmadábád, and, without waiting to recover from his toilsome journey through the sandy desert, was busily occupied in gathering forces. * * Dára Shukoh, having satisfied himself by taking from the promise-breaking Rájá a covenant which the Rájá confirmed with the most solemn Hindu pledges, marched towards his country. The Emperor was meanwhile moving towards Rájá Jaswant's territory, and he wrote the Rájá a letter, in which expostulations and threats were mingled with kindness. This letter greatly alarmed the Rájá, so that he departed from Dára and returned to his own country. Making use of Mírzá Rájá Jai Singh, he wrote a penitent and submissive letter to the Emperor, begging forgiveness for his offences; and the Emperor in his clemency forgave him, granted him the *súbadári* of Ahmadábád, and sent him a *farmán*, bestowing honours and promising favours.]

Fate of the Princes Sulaimán Shukoh, Sultán Muhammad and Murád Bakhsh.

[The *samindár* of Srínagar, having consented to surrender Prince Sulaimán Shukoh, sent him to Court in the custody of his son. Two days after his arrival, the Prince was brought into the Emperor's presence, who directed that on the morrow he, along with Prince Sultán Muhammad, should be sent to the fort of Gwálíor, and that both should be fed with *kokná*.¹ * * The sons of 'Alí Nakí, who had a charge against Murád Bakhsh for the murder of their father, were sent to Gwálíor, with directions, that after a lawful judgment had been given, the retaliation for

¹ [Otherwise called *pústa*, a slow poison prepared from poppies.]

blood should be exacted from the Prince. When they arrived at Gwālior, an inquiry was made by the Kāzī. The Prince was resigned to his fate, and said, "If the Emperor will accept my pledges and spare my life, no harm will happen to his throne; but if he is resolved to take my life, there is no good in listening to such low fellows as these. He has the power, and can do what he likes." On the 21st Rabī'u-s sání, 1072, under the orders of the Kāzī, two slaves killed the Prince with two blows of their swords. He was buried in the fort of Gwālior. In the month of Shawwal Prince Sulaimán Shukoh died from the treatment of his jailors, in the thirtieth year of his age, and was buried beside Murád Bakhsh.]

SHĀH-JAHĀN-NĀMAS.

[Besides the *Shāh-Jahān-nāmas* noticed at length, there are among the MSS. borrowed by Sir H. M. Elliot, several others bearing the same title. 1. "An abstract of the lengthy *Shāh-Jahān-nāma*" (the *Bdāshāh-nāma*) of 'Abdu-l Hamid Jahori. This was written in 1225 A.H. (A.D. 1810), by Muhammad Zāhid. 2. A fragment of another and lengthy *Shāh-Jahān-nāma*, by Mirzá Jalālu-d dīn Tabātabā. 3. A short work by Bhagwān Dās, which gives brief notices of the ancestors of Shāh Jahān, beginning with Adam. 4. A poem by Mirzá Muhammad Jān Mashhadī. This is called *Shāh-Jahān-nāma*, but the title given to it by the author would rather appear to be *Zafar-nāma*. 5. Another *Shāh-Jahān-nāma* in verse, by Mīr Muhammad Yahya Kāshī.]

LXVI.

SHÁH JAHÁN-NÁMA

or

MUHAMMAD SÁDIK KHÁN.

[THE author of this history of Sháh Jahán was Muhammad Sádik, who was *Wáki'-naris* in attendance upon Prince Sháh Jahán in his campaign against the Ráná during the life of Jahángír. He afterwards received the title of Sádik Khán. The work embraces the reign of Sháh Jahán "from his accession to the throne unto the termination of the confinement into which he fell through the stupidity of Dára Shukoh." A copy of the work in the British Museum ends with the deposition of Sháh Jahán, but the author adds that the deposed monarch lived eight years in captivity. Sir H. Elliot's MS. goes on without any break to the end of the reign of Aurangzeb; but to have written all this, Sádik Khán must have lived over a century. The history of the reign of Aurangzeb turns out to be the same as that of the *Muntakhabu-l Lubáb* of Kháfí Khán, with some slight variations, not greater perhaps than Col. Lees found in various MSS. of that work.¹

The history is of moderate extent, and is written in a simple style. Similarity or identity in many passages shows that Kháfí Khán used the work for his history of the reign of Sháh Jahán. There is also among Sir H. M. Elliot's MSS. one called *Tabakát-i Sháh-Jahání*, written by the same author. This consists of notices of the great and distinguished men of the reign of Sháh Jahán. The names are numerous, but the notices are short.]

¹ Journal Royal Asiatic Society, N.S. vol. iii. p. 473.

LXVII.

MAJÁLISU-S SALÁTÍN

or

MUHAMMAD SHARÍF HANAFÍ.

THE *Majálistu-s Salátín*, or "Assemblies of the Sultáns," was written by Muhammad Sharíf Hanafí. The reason he assigns for writing it is, that no one had courage enough in his time to wade through long histories, especially mentioning those of Zíá Barní, Kází 'Ajáz Bádsháhí, and 'Abdu-l Kádir, which are each works of considerable size, and he therefore determined, notwithstanding his constant avocations, to write an abridged history of India. In the midst of a hundred interruptions, he set himself to the work, but, short as it is, he was nearly failing in his resolution to complete it, and "a wind arose occasionally which was nearly making his pen fly away like an arrow from a bow, and converting his paper into a flying kite." At last he asked his spiritual teachers for their aid and countenance, and through their encouragement he brought it to a completion.

The same irresolution and want of leisure seem to have deprived us of the account of his travels, which, as will be seen from one of the following extracts, extended to a distance quite unusual in his days. He had travelled from Madura in Southern India to Kashmír, and had dwelt for some time in the intermediate countries; and he tells us that if he had recorded all the wonderful things he had seen, he might have filled a thousand volumes. He was employed in some public capacity during the whole time that he was making these tours, for he signifies that he was a person of no mean consideration.

The work was composed in the early part of Sháh Jahán's reign, in the year 1038 A.H. (1628 A.D.), according to a chronogram at the close of the work in which the date is recorded.

The *Majálisu-s Salátin* is not divided into chapters, but the following abstract will show the pages where the principal dynasties and reigns commence and end.

CONTENTS.

Preface, pp. 1 to 3.

The Ghaznívides, pp. 4 to 11.

The Ghorians and subsequent Dehlí dynasties, pp. 11 to 121.

Bábar, pp. 121 to 123.

Humáyún, Sher Khán, etc., pp. 124 to 193.

Akbar, pp. 193 to 200.

Jahángír, pp. 200 to 206.

Kingdoms of the Dakhín, Kashmír, etc., pp. 207 to 258.

Size—12mo. containing 258 pages, each of 9 lines.

The copy from which the following Extracts are taken is in one of the Royal Libraries at Lucknow. I know of no other.

[The Extracts were translated by a *munshi* and corrected by Sir H. M. Elliot.]

EXTRACTS.

Anecdotes of Muhammad Tughlik.

¹ After some time, intelligence was brought that Malik Bahrám Abiya, the adopted brother of Sultán Tughlik Sháh, had revolted in Multán, and put 'Alí Akhtí to death, whom Sultán Muhammad 'Adil had sent with orders to summon the rebel. The Sultán, with a view to subdue the rebellion, marched from Daulatábád towards Dehlí, and thence reached Multán by successive marches. Malik Bahrám came out to oppose him, but was defeated and slain. His head was brought to the Sultán, who was about to order a general massacre of the inhabitants of Multán, and make streams of blood flow, when the staff of the

¹ See *suprà*, Vol. III. p. 242.

world, the most religious Shaikhul Haqq, came bare-headed to the King's court, and stood before him soliciting pardon for the people. The Sultán forgave them for the sake of that holy man. In short, this King called himself just, and generally before executing persons he certainly did refer the case for the decree of the expounders of the law.

It is said of him, that one day, having put on his shoes, he went on foot to the court of Kází Kamálu-d dín, the Chief Justice, and told him that Shaikh-záda Jám had called him unjust; he demanded that he should be summoned and required to prove the injustice of which he accused him, and that if he could not prove it, he should be punished according to the injunctions of the law. Shaikh-záda Jám, when he arrived, confessed that he had made the assertion. The Sultán inquired his reason, to which he replied, "When a criminal is brought before you, it is entirely at your royal option to punish him, justly or unjustly; but you go further than this, and give his wife and children to the executioners that they may do what they like with them. In what religion is this practice lawful? If this is not injustice, what is it?" The Sultán remained silent; and when he left the court of the Kází, he ordered the Shaikh-záda to be imprisoned in an iron cage, and on his journey to Daulat-ábád he took the prisoner with him on the back of an elephant. When he returned to Dehlí, on passing before the court of the Kází, he ordered the Shaikh-záda to be brought out of the cage¹ and cut to pieces. Hence it may be learnt that he possessed very opposite qualities. He was called by the common people "the unjust." There are many similar stories of the atrocities he committed. Tyranny took the place of justice, and infidelity that of Islám. At last he was seized with fever, and departed to the next world, when he was in the vicinity of Thatta, on the 21st Muharram, A.H. 752 (20th March, 1351 A.D.). The period of his reign was twenty-seven years.

¹ A few years later we find the Rájá of Golkonda imprisoned in an iron cage by Sultán Kulf Kutb Sháh.—Briggs' *Firishta*, vol. iii. p. 374.

Accession of Sháh Jahán.¹

When Núru-d dín Muhammad Jahángír died, the second Lord of the Conjunction, the rightful heir, Sháh Khurram, who was entitled Sháh Jahán, was in the Dakhín at a distance of three months' journey from the place where the Emperor Jahángír had died. It is well known to politicians that the throne of royalty cannot remain vacant for a moment, and therefore the ministers of the government and the principal officers of the Court considered it expedient to place Sultán Dáwar Bakhsh, the grandson of the Emperor Jahángír, upon the throne for some days; and thus to guard against mutinies and disturbances which might otherwise arise. They defeated Sháhriyár, who, through his vain ambition, had proclaimed himself King in Lahore. The Emperor Shahábu-d dín Muhammad Sháh Jahán (may his dominions and reign increase, and may the world be benefited by his bounty and munificence !) also came with a powerful army *riá* Gujarát and Ajmír, and soon arrived at Agra, which was the seat of his and his forefathers' government. He mounted the throne of sovereignty in the fort of Agra on Monday the 7th of Jumáda-l ákhir, corresponding with the 25th of Bahman; and distributed largesses and rewards among his subjects. May the Almighty keep this generous and world-conquering King under His protection and care !

Revenues of Hindústán and the Dakhín.

It also entered into the mind of this "most humble slave of God" to write a short account of the different provinces of Hindústán, and make it a portion of this small work, detailing how much of this country was in possession of the Emperor Jalálu-d dín Muhammad Akbar and his son Núru-d dín Jahángír, and into how many *súbas* it is now divided.

Be it not concealed that the whole country of Hindústán, which is known to form one-fourth of the inhabited world, and

¹ See *suprà*, Vol. VI. p. 435.

reckoned as the largest of all the countries, is divided into fourteen *súbas*, or provinces.

First, the Province of Dehlí; revenue upwards of 65,61,00,000 *dáms*. Second, the Province of Ágra, which is the seat of government; revenue 82,25,00,000 *dáms*. Third, the Province of the Panjáb, or Lahore; present revenue, 82,50,00,000 *dáms*. Fourth, the Province of Kábul, including Kashmír, etc.; revenue 25,00,00,000 *dáms*. Fifth, the Province of the Dakhin, or Ahmadnagar; revenue 28,35,00,000 *dáms*. Sixth, the Province of Khándesh and Birár; revenue 87,32,00,000 *dáms*. Seventh, the Province of Málwá; revenue 28,00,00,000 *dáms*. Eighth, the Province of Gujarát; revenue 50,64,00,000 *dáms*. Ninth, the Province of Bihár, including Patná and Jaunpúr; revenue 31,27,00,000 *dáms*. Tenth, the Province of Oudh with its dependencies; revenue 23,22,00,000 *dáms*. Eleventh, the Province of Ajmír with its dependencies; revenue 42,05,00,000 *dáms*. Twelfth, the Province of Allahábád; revenue 30,70,00,000 *dáms*. Thirteenth, the Province of Sind, including Multán, Thatta and Bhakkar; revenue 40,00,00,000 *dáms*. Fourteenth, the Province of Bengal, which is equal to two or three kingdoms; revenue 50,00,00,000 *dáms*.

The revenue of all the territories under the Emperors of Dehli amounts, according to the Royal registers, to six *arbs* and thirty *krors* of *dáms*. One *arb* is equal to a hundred *krors* (a *kror* being ten millions), and a hundred *krors* of *dáms* are equivalent to two *krors* and fifty *lacs* of rupees. Each of the fourteen provinces above mentioned formed the territory of a powerful king, and was conquered by the sword of the servants of the Chaghataís. Nine of these fourteen provinces have been visited by the poor compiler of this book, and the following is a detail of them.

The Author's Travels.

He was born in the province of the Dakhin, and lived five years there. Though it is mentioned as one province, yet the

whole territory of the Dakhin, through which he travelled with his father, consists of five provinces. Ahmadnagar is one province, Bijápúr is another, Golkonda is a third; the Karnátik, which is a large territory extending as far as Setband Rám-eshwar, forms a separate province. Khándesh and Birár, which are in reality two provinces, though rated above only as one, were visited throughout every space of their whole extent by the writer, who has also travelled over the provinces of Gujarát, Málwá, Ajmír, Dehlí, and Ágra, as well as those of the Panjáb or Lahore, and Sind, which includes Thatta, Bhakkar and Multán. By the favour of God, he possessed authority in all these provinces, and visited them as a person of consideration. If he were to note down the wonders and curiosities of all the places he has seen, he would require to blacken paper equal to one thousand volumes. He has therefore avoided enlarging his work.

He may, however, as well mention, that when in the territory of the Karnátik, he arrived in company with his father at the city of Southern Mathurá (Madura), where, after a few days, the ruler died and went to the lowest hell. This chief had 700 wives, and they all threw themselves at the same time into the fire. This event was related by the compiler of this book at Burhánpúr, in the presence of the Nawáb Khán-khánan, son of Bairám Khán; but the Nawáb did not believe it. The *vakil* of the Rájá of the Karnátik, whose name was Kaner Rái, was also present at the court of the Nawáb; and when inquiries were made of him respecting the truth of my assertion, he related the event exactly as the writer had done. So the Nawáb entered it in his note-book.

All the people of this territory are idolators, and eat all the wild animals of the forest. There is not a single Musulmán there. Occasionally a Musulmán may visit the country, deputed by Nizám Sháh, 'Ádil Sháh or Kutb Sháh, but the natives are all infidels. The *Madari malangs* and *jogis* go by this road to Sarandíp and the hill-fort of Ceylon, which is the place where the impression of Adam's footstep is preserved.

In A.H. 1031 the writer of this book visited the delightful land of Kashmír, when he accompanied the victorious camp of the Emperor who had an army as numerous as the stars, viz. Núru-d dín Muhammad Jahángír, and was in the immediate service of the most exalted and noble Nawáb, the Great Khán, the best of all the descendants of the chosen prophet, the chief of the house of 'Alí, a nobleman of high rank and dignity, viz. Kásim Khán, may God preserve him !

LXVIII.

TĀRIKH-I MUFAZZALĪ

OF

MUFAZZAL KHĀN.

[THIS is a general history of considerable length, written by Saiyid Mufazzal Khān. It begins with the Creation, and comes down to 1077 A.H. (1666 A.D.), the tenth year of the reign of Aurangzeb. A copy of the Table of Contents from another MS. brings the work down to the time of Farrukh Siyar. The work is divided into seven *makālas* or sections, the sixth and seventh of which are devoted to India. In the account of Nāsiru-d dīn Kubācha it gives an epitome of the *Chach-nāma*, which was translated into Persian under his patronage.¹ It is an extensive work of nearly a thousand pages, seventeen lines to the page. The following Extracts, apparently translated by a *munshi*, have been revised by Sir H. M. Elliot.]

EXTRACTS.

² When Shāh Jahān mounted the throne at Agra, all the officers of State came to pay their respects to him, but Khān-Jahān Lodī, who was one of the greatest officers under the late Emperor Nūru-d dīn Muhammad Jahāngīr, did not attend the Court on the plea of illness. This was very displeasing to His Majesty, and when at last he did attend the Court, he spoke in a very disrespectful tone, which greatly excited His Majesty's anger. As a punishment for his insolence, an order was given to level his house with the ground. Being informed of it, he fled imme-

¹ Suprà, Vol. I. page 131.

² See suprà, page 7.

diately with his whole family and property, and attempted to cross the Chambal, but was pursued by Rájá Bahádur with a large force. Ismat Khán, the son of Khán-Jahán Lodí, a boy only twelve years of age, came to an engagement with this officer and killed him with his own hand. The royalists, on the death of their general, made a vigorous attack upon the enemy. Ismat Khán was slain, but Khán-Jahán himself escaped and crossed the river.

In A.H. 1040 (1630 A.D.) the Emperor proceeded to the Dakhin, and conquered many places there. The fort of Daulatábád, which was the capital of the neighbouring territory, was taken by Khán-khánán Muhammad Khán.

Such a magnificent and beautiful fort of red stone was built on the banks of the Jumná, that no building like it was ever constructed by any of the kings who had ruled in India. Besides other magnificent works, the Peacock throne was made by this monarch, which was set with all kinds of precious stones. It was prepared at the expense of nine *krors* nine *lacs* and one thousand rupees.

Sa'du-lla Khán and Mudabbir Khán, who were both good scholars, were deservedly appointed ministers to the throne.

Prince Dára Shukoh was married to the grand-daughter of Sultán Parwez, and the nuptial ceremonies were performed with such pomp and splendour as was never witnessed before.

The Mosque of Jáma' Jahán-numá was built near the fort under the superintendence of Sa'du-lla Khán, at the expense of ten *lacs* of rupees.

Prince Muhammad Murád Bakhsh was appointed to the Governorship of Ahmađábád in Gujarát, with the grant of an honorary dress and some jewels to the value of five *lacs* of rupees; and Prince Aurangzeb Bahádur to that of the Province of the Dakhin, and a *khi'at* with a *sarpech*, a horse, and jewels to the value of five *lacs* of rupees, was granted to him. They were all ordered to go to their respective provinces, and the Emperor himself came to Ágra, where he remained nine months,

and then returned to Dehlí. As he proceeded on his journey, he amused himself on the way with all kinds of sports.

His Majesty had been pleased to assure his mother-in-law, the wife of Ásaf Khán, in the days of her pregnancy, that if she brought forth a son, he would make him a *mansabdár* of 5000 horse; and accordingly, when a son was born to her, the rank was conferred on the child under the title of Sháyista Khán Bahádur.

About the same time Muhammad Dará Shukoh was declared to be the successor to the throne, and the entire management of the Government was placed in his hands. The charge was accordingly undertaken by the Prince, but Providence had determined otherwise. The country was destined to be ruled by a juster and better prince, and every circumstance which occurred in those days combined to assist him in obtaining the throne.

On the 7th Zí-l hijja, 1067 A.H. (Sept. 1657 A.D.), the Emperor Sháh Jahán, who shall henceforth be called 'Álá Hazrat, fell sick in Dehlí, and was unable to attend the duties of the State. Dará Shukoh, the eldest Prince, intending to avail himself of the circumstance, so managed that no news regarding the public affairs could transpire. This gave rise to great disturbances in the country. Murád Bakhsh, the fourth son of the Emperor, who was the Governor of Gujarát, seated himself on the throne and declared himself independent. Sháh Shujá', the second Prince, also followed the same course in Bengal and prepared an army. Dará Shukoh, being afraid of his brother Aurangzeb, prevailed upon the Emperor during his sickness to recall the forces which were with that Prince. His object in taking this measure was first to despatch the two rebel princes, Shujá' and Murád Bakhsh, out of his way, and then to proceed to the Dakhin against Aurangzeb. He took His Majesty to Ágra in the very height of his illness, and sent Rájá Jai Singh with a royal army, and his own force under the command of his eldest son Sulaimán Shukoh, against Sháh Shujá'. He also ordered Rájá Jaswant Singh to march with a large army towards Málwá, the threshold of the Dakhin, to prevent the enemy from advancing. This Hindí

chief was one of the greatest Rájás of Hindústán, and as he was very nearly related to the Emperor, he had gained his confidence in a considerable degree, and had obtained a few days before the title of Mahárájá. * * *

Towards the end of the year 1067 A.H., when, in consequence of the Emperor's sickness, disturbances arose in all parts of the country, Bim Narain, *Zamindár* of Kúch Bihár, took possession of the territory of Kám-rúp, which belonged to the empire of Delhí. It was also at the same time encroached upon by Jai Bijai Singh, Rájá of Ásám, who always considered his dominions secure from the depredations of the royal army. To protect Kám-rúp, a large army was despatched by land under the command of Khán-khánán, who, considering the service very important, obtained leave of the Emperor to depart immediately, and left Khizr-púr on the 13th of Rabi' u-l awwal, in the 4th year after His Majesty's accession to the throne, and conquered the city of Kúch Bihár on the 27th of the same month. After the conquest he changed the name of the city to 'Álamgírnagar, and on the 28th proceeded to invade Ásám by way of Ghorá-ghát. After five months' exertions, the city of Karkálu, which the chief residence of the ruler of Ásám, was taken on the 6th of Sha'bán. An account of the immense booty, both in property and cash, which fell into the hands of the victors, as also of the number of men killed on both sides in these battles, and of the rarities and wonders of Kúch Bihár and Ásám, together with a description of the vegetable and mineral products of the country, the manners and customs of the people, and their forts and buildings, is fully given in the '*Álamgír-náma*. When the Emperor received the report of these important conquests from the Khán-khánán, the general of the royal army, he showed great favour to his son, Muhammad Amín Khán, and honoured him with the grant of a *khil'at* in his own presence. The Khán also received a *farmán* in approbation of his services, and was rewarded with an honorary dress, one *kror* of *dáms*, and the insignia of the *farmán* and *tugh*.

LXIX.

MIR-ÁT-I 'ÁLAM,

MIR-ÁT-I JAHÁN-NUMÁ,

or

BAKHTÁWAR KHÁN.

THESE two histories, though circulating under different names, may be considered as essentially one and the same.

Dr. Bernhard Dorn, at p. xv. of the Preface to his "History of the Afgháns," describes the *Mir-át-i 'Álam* as a most valuable universal history, written in Persian, by Bakhtáwar Khán, who by travel and assiduous study had qualified himself for the task of an historian. Dr. Dorn mentions also that the history of the Afgháns by Nī'āmatu-lla, which he translated, frequently corresponds, word for word, with that found in the *Mir-át-i 'Álam*.

He gives the following abstract of a copy in the British Museum :

"Section I.—History of the Patriarchs ; of the Israelite Kings ; of Lukmán and Daniel ; of the Hebrew Prophets ; of Jesus and the Apostles ; of the Seven Sleepers ; of some Saints, as Georgius, Barscesa, Samson, etc. ; of the ancient Sages, as Solon, Pythagoras, Socrates, Diogenes, Plato, Aristotle, Pliny, Homer, Zeno, Ptolemy, Thales, Euclid : after that follows the history of the Persian Monarchs and of the Yemen Kings.

Section II.—History of Muhammad.

III.—History of the Khalífs of other Dynasties, as the Saffárides, etc.

IV.—History of the Roman and the Turkish Emperors, etc.

Section V.—History of the Sharífs of Mecca and Medína.

VI.—History of the Turkish Kháns, etc.

VII.—History of Changíz Khán and his successors.

VIII.—History of different Dynasties in Írán, etc., after Sultán Abú Sa'íd Bahádur Khán. After that, a history of India follows, in which there is the History of the Kings of Dehlí, from Shahábu-d dín to Ibráhím Lodí; of the Kings of the Dakhin, of Humáyún, Sher Sháh, Islám Sháh, and 'Ádil Sháh; of the Kings of Bengal, etc.; of Jaunpúr, Kashmír, etc.; Humáyún's conquest of Kábul."

Dow also quotes the work as one of his authorities in his Continuation of Firishta, and in the Preface to his third volume speaks of it as being composed by Názir Bakhtáwar Khán, a man of letters, who led a private life near Farídábád, within a few miles of Ágra, and states that it contains the history of the first ten years of Aurangzeb.

This latter description corresponds with the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá* usually met with in this country; and though the name of the author is the same in both instances, it is evident that Dr. Dorn's and Colonel Dow's descriptions of the portions devoted to Indian history can scarcely refer to the same work. The contents also of the several books differ in many respects, as will be seen from the following abstract of the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, which is found in India; but as there can be no doubt that the two works are the same in substance, there is reason to apprehend that Dr. Dorn's description is defective in some particulars.

The *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá* is divided into a Preface, seven Books (*A'ráish*), and a Conclusion. These are subdivided into several Sections (*namáish* and *pairáish*) and Sub-sections (*namúd*), of all which the following is a full detail:

CONTENTS.

Preface.

Introduction—Gives an account of the creation of the heaven and earth, their inhabitants—the Jinns, Iblis, etc.

Book I.—History of the patriarchs, philosophers and kings who flourished before the dawn of Muhammadanism. In four Chapters. — Chapter 1. On the Patriarchs. — 2. On the Ancient Philosophers. — 3. On the Kings of Persia. In five Sections. — Section i. The Peshdádians. — ii. The Kafánians. — iii. The Mulúku-t Tawáif. — iv. The Sásánians. — v. The Akásirás. — Chapter 4. History of the dependencies of Yaman.

Book II.—An account of Muhammad, his exploits, his character and miracles, his descendants and wives, his successors and Imáms, some of his friends and dependents, the learned men who expounded the religion, the Súfías and Masháikhs. In thirteen Chapters. — Chapter 1. An account of Muhammad and his exploits. — 2. His character and miracles. — 3. His wives. — 4. His descendants. — 5. The first four Khalífás. — 6. The Imáms. — 7. The ten disciples. — 8. Friends of Muhammad whose names are given in alphabetical order. — 9. The followers of Muhammad and their dependents. — 10. The four great Imáms. — 11. The seven persons who were appointed to read the Kurán. — 12. The great expounders of the Kurán, the descent of the holy mantle, the different orders of the sects of the Shaikhs. In three Sections. — Section i. The great expounders of the Kurán. — ii. The preservation of the holy mantle. — iii. The different orders and sects of the Shaikhs. — Chapter 13. The holy men of Arabia and Persia, the celebrated saints of Hindústán, and the Muhammadan doctors. In three Sections. — Section i. On the Shaikhs and the holy men of Arabia and Persia. — ii. The celebrated Saints of Hindústán. — iii. The Muhammadan doctors.

Book III.—The 'Umayyides, 'Abbásides, and those kings who were contemporary with the 'Abbásides; the Cæsars of Rúm; the Sharífs of Mecca and Medína; the Kháns of the Turks; Mulúku-t Tawáif. In eight Chapters. — 1. The 'Umayyides. — 2. The 'Abbáside Khalífás. — 3. The kings who were contemporary with the 'Abbásides. In eleven Sections. — i. The Táhirians. — ii. The Saffárians. — iii. The Sámánians. — iv. The

Ghaznívides. — v. The Ghorians. — vi. The Buwaihides or Dailamis. — vii. The Saljúkians. — viii. The Khwárizm-sháhís. — ix. The Atábaks. — x. The Isma'ílians. — xi. The Karákhitáís of Kirmán. — Chapter 4. On the Kings of Rúm. In eight Sections. — Section i. The Kaiásarás. — ii. The Saljúkians who ruled in Rúm. — iii. The Dánishmandias. — iv. The Salíkíá Kings who governed in Ázurbáiján and Rúm. — v. The Salíkíá or Mankúchakia Kings who ruled in Ázurbáiján and Kamákh. — vi. The Karámáns. — vii. The rulers of Malátiya and Abulistán. — viii. The Ottomans who are called out of respect Khwándgárs. — Chapter 5. The Sharífs of Mecca and Medína. — 6. The Kháns of the Turks. In four Sections. — Section i. History of Turk, son of Yafis (Japhot), son of Núh, and his descendants. — ii. Tátár and his descendants. — iii. Moghúl and his descendants. — iv. Lánjar Ká-an and his descendants. — Chapter 7. Changíz Khán and his descendants. In seven Sections. — Section i. Changíz Khán. — ii. Descendants of Changíz Khán who ruled in Ulugh-yúrat, which was the seat of his government. — iii. His descendants who obtained the rank of Khán in the desert of Kipchák. — iv. His descendants who obtained the same rank in the country of Írán. — v. The Kháns of Túrán who were the descendants of Chaghatái Khán, son of Changíz Khán. — vi. The Shaibánia Kings. — vii. The Kháns of Káshghar who were the descendants of Chaghatái Khán, son of Changíz Khán. — Chapter 8. Mulúku-t Tawáif, who reigned in Írán after Sultán Abú Sa'íd Bahádur Khán. In five Sections. — Section i. The Chúbáníans. — ii. The Ílkáníans. — iii. Amír Shaikh Abú-l Ishák Injú and the Muzaffarides. — iv. The Kurt Kings. — v. The Sarabdárians.

Book IV. — Tímúr and his descendants who ruled in Írán and Túrán; the Kára-kúinlú and Ák-kúinlú rulers; ¹ the Safawíya Kings. In four Chapters. — Chapter 1. Tímúr and his descendants who governed in Írán and Túrán. — 2. The Gúrgánian rulers who ruled in Írán and Khurásán. — 3. The Kára-kúinlú

¹ See *suprà*, Vol. IV. p. 299.

Kings.—4. The Safawiyá Kings who still occupy the throne of the country of Írán.

Book V.—An account of Hindústán; religious notions of the Hindús; Sultáns of Dehlí and other parts of Hindústán, where at present the *khutba* is read and coin struck in the name of the Emperor. An Introduction and nine Chapters.—Introduction. On the religious notions of the Hindús, history of some of the Ráís of Hindústán, and the dawn of Muhammadanism in this country.—Chapter 1. Kings of Dehlí from Shahábu-d dín Ghorí to Sultán Ibráhím Lodí.—2. Rulers of the Dakhin. In six Sections.—Section i. The Bahmanís.—ii. The Baridís.—iii. The 'Imád-Sháhís.—iv. The Nizámu-l Mulkís.—v. The 'Adil-Khánís.—vi. Kutbu-l Mulkís.—Chapter 3. The Rulers of Gujarát.—4. Chiefs of Sind. In two Sections.—Section i. Kings of Thatta.—ii. Rulers of Multán.—Chapter 5. Princes of Bengal.—6. Chiefs of Málwá.—7. The Fárúkís of Khándesh.—8. The Eastern Kings of Jaunpúr.—9. Rulers of Kashmír.

Book VI.—The Gúrgánians who ruled in Hindústán from the time of Zahíru-d dín Muhammad Bábar to the reign of the Emperor Sháh Jahán. In five Chapters.—Chapter 1. History of Bábar.—2. Humáyún.—3. Akbar.—4. Jahángír.—5. Sháh-jahán.

Book VII.—Account of Aurangzeb 'Álamgír. In three Chapters.—Chapter 1. His history from the time of his minority to the period ten years subsequent to his accession.—2. His qualities and character; his descendants; the extent of his empire; his contemporary rulers, in five Sections.—Section i. His character.—ii. His descendants.—iii. The extent of his empire with a detail of the Provinces.—iv. His contemporary rulers.—v. The ancient ministers.—Chapter 3. Contains four Sections.—Section i. An account of the learned men of the author's time.—ii. The celebrated caligraphers.—iii. Some wonderful and marvellous occurrences.—iv. An account of the author's ancestors.

Conclusion.—On the Poets, including the Author.

SIZE—Small folio, comprising 1540 pages, each page containing an average of 20 lines.

It will be seen that both Dr. Dorn and Colonel Dow ascribe the *Mir-át-i 'A'lam* exclusively to Bakhtáwar Khán; but it may be doubted if he had really anything to do with its composition. There is in fact very great confusion attending the authorship of this work, which ought, I believe, to be attributed almost entirely to Muhammad Baká of Saháranpúr, an intimate friend of Bakhtáwar Khán. It may be as well to consider the claims of these two, as well as of others, to the authorship.

I.—BAKHTÁWAR KHÁN. He was a nobleman of Aurangzeb's Court. In the tenth year of the reign he was appointed to the rank of one thousand, and in the thirteenth he was made superintendent of the eunuchs. He was a favourite eunuch of the Emperor, who followed his bier for some paces towards the grave.¹ The *Mir-át-i 'A'lam*, of which he is the presumed author, and which certainly bears his name, was comprised in a Preface, seven *A'ráish*, two *Af'záish*, and a Conclusion, and was written in the year 1078 A.H., the date being represented by the words *A'ina-i bakht*, "the mirror of fortune," which also seems to confirm the title of Bakhtáwar Khán to the authorship of the work. He died in 1095 A.H. (1684 A.D.). The Preface states how fond the author was of historical studies, and how he had long determined upon writing such a work as this. Towards the end of the work, he shows how many works he had written and abridged; amongst others, which are all ascribed by Muhammad Shaff' to Muhammad Baká, we find an abridgment of the *Tárikh-i Alfi* and the *Akhháru-l Akhyár*. There can be no mistake about the person to whom it is meant to ascribe these works in this passage, because the same Chapter mentions the buildings founded by the person alluded to as the compiler, and amongst them are mentioned the villages of Bakhtáwarpúr and Bakhtáwarnagar.

II.—MUHAMMAD BAKÁ. His name does not appear in the

¹ Kewal Khán, in the *Tazkiratu-l Umara*.

Preface to the *Mir-ât-i 'A'lam*, but in the biography of him, written by Muhammad Shafi', it is distinctly stated that he wrote the work at the request, and in the name, of his intimate friend Bakhtâwar Khân, but left it incomplete.

III.—MUHAMMAD SHAFI'. He was the son of the sister of Muhammad Bakâ, and he tells us in the Preface to the *Mir-ât-i Jahân-numâ* that Muhammad Bakâ had left several sheets of an historical work incomplete, ill-arranged, and requiring revision, and that he was thinking of putting them into shape and rendering them fit for publication, when he was warned in a dream that it was a sacred duty he should fulfil towards his uncle's memory, that he readily obeyed this injunction, and after supplying what was defective in the work, especially on the subject of the Prophets, completed his labours in 1095 A.H., the year of Bakhtâwar Khân's death; but after it, because he speaks of him under a title used only after death, and called his work *Mir-ât-i Jahân-numâ*. This is the history of which the detailed contents are given above. The loose sheets he alludes to are evidently the *Mir-ât-i 'A'lam*, though he does not expressly say so, even when he mentions that work as one of those composed by Muhammad Bakâ; nevertheless, as the very words of the *Mir-ât-i 'A'lam* and the *Mir-ât-i Jahân-numâ* are identical in the chapters which relate to the same subjects, there can be no doubt that "the loose sheets" and the *Mir-ât-i 'A'lam* are also the same; but why the credit of the *Mir-ât-i 'A'lam* should be so depreciated it is not easy to say, except it was done for the purpose of enhancing the merit of the nephew's labours.

IV.—MUHAMMAD RIZÂ. He was younger brother of Muhammad Bakâ. His concern in the work is very incomprehensible, unless on the understanding that, according to the usual Indian foible, he had a quarrel with his nephew; for he also edited the *Jahân-numâ* from "the loose leaves" left by Muhammad Bakâ, without any allusion to the labours of his nephew. The precise date of his compilation is not mentioned, but that he succeeded Muhammad Shafi' in the work, and must have been

aware of what he had done, is evident ; for at the close of the work, where he gives an account of his ancestors and relations, he mentions the death of Fathu-lla in 1100 A.H., a date five years subsequent to that in which Muhammad Shafi' had stated that Fathu-lla was still living. Muhammad Rizá does not say he had the sanction of a dream for his undertaking, but that he had long wished to arrange the dispersed sheets of his brother's history, and had only waited for the time appointed by destiny to do so, which at last, notwithstanding the avocations of his official duties, made its appearance, and the result is the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, a name which he gave to the work, in consequence of the implied wishes of his brother to that effect ; but as the imperfect work written in his brother's lifetime was called *Mir-át-i 'A'lam*, it does not appear why the name was changed into *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, a title chosen with some reason by his nephew, because it represents the chronogram of 1095 A.H. The author says his additions comprise an account of the Prophets from Núh to Muhammad, of the Philosophers, of the Imáms, of the Khalifs, of the Saints of Persia, Arabia and Hindústán, and of the Poets. He says he will mention more about his own additions in the Conclusion ; but the two copies which I have consulted, one in the Motí Mahal Library at Lucknow, and the other in the possession of Khádim Husain *Sadru-s Sudúr* of Cawnpore, are deficient at the end. He designates the history which Muhammad Baká wrote at the request of Bakhtáwar Khán, as *Tárikh-i 'A'lamgiri*, and not *Mir-át-i 'A'lam* ; but it is evident that in this case also the "dispersed leaves" are those included in the *Mir-át-i 'A'lam*. He divides his *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá* into a Preface, eleven *A'râish*, and a Conclusion, and has subdivided the work in other respects a little more minutely than his predecessor. For instance, he has devoted fourteen *namáish* to an account of the *vazirs*, which by his predecessor is included in one, and he has adopted some other minute differences, in order to give an air of originality to his work, and give him a title to independent authorship ; but the

two works called *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá* may be considered in all material respects the same. Neither of the editors has added anything to the history of Aurangzeb's reign by Muhammad Baká, though he carries it down only to 1078 A.H.

It will be seen, therefore, that the real author of these various works is Muhammad Baká, though he is the person to whom they are least ascribed, in consequence not only of his attributing his own labours to others, but from the prominence which his editors have endeavoured to give to their own names.

His real name was Shaikh Muhammad, and his poetical title was Baká. He was born in A.H. 1037. In his early youth he applied himself to the study of the Kurán, and in a short space of time learnt the whole of it by heart. Having read a few books with his father, he went to Sirhind, where he studied several branches of knowledge under Shaikh 'Abdu-llah, surnamed Míán, and other learned men. He acquired acquaintance with Muhammadan traditions under the tuition of Shaikh Núru-l Hakk, son of Shaikh 'Abdu-l Hakk of Delhí, and having obtained his permission to teach this branch of learning, he returned to his native city of Saháranpúr, and devoted his time to imparting his knowledge to others. Afterwards, by desire of his father, he forswore worldly concerns, and directed his whole attention to worship and devotion.

When his father died, he enrolled himself among the disciples of Shaikh Muhammad of Sirhind, and made in a short time very considerable progress in spiritual knowledge. On again returning to his native place, he led, like his ancestors, a retired life. Soon after, Iftikhár Khán (Bakhtáwar Khán)—who from early youth had been an intimate friend of Muhammad Baká, and had attained the rank of three thousand horse and the office of steward (*mir-sámán*) to the Emperor Aurangzeb—invited him to Court, and secured for him a respectable rank, which he accepted, but with much reluctance, and owing only to the importunities of his friends. This appears to have been in the fourth year of Aurangzeb's reign. Although he held a high rank, and had

public duties to attend to, yet he always led a life of retirement ; notwithstanding which, we are told that the Emperor was very favourably disposed towards him.

Besides writing the *Mir-át-i A'lam*, he made extracts from the works of Hakím Sanái, the *Mantiku-t Tair* of Farídu-d dín Attár, and the celebrated *masnawí* of Mauláná Rúmi, "the most eminent writers on Divine subjects, who unanimously agree in their religious tenets."

He also abridged the *Diván* of Saib and the *Sáki-náma*, and composed a *Riyázu-l Auliya*, or history of Saints, and a *Taskiratu-s Shu'ará*, or biography of Poets, with extracts. It is probable that much of these two works is comprised in the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, notwithstanding that Muhammad Rizá states the loose sheets left by Muhammad Baká to have been deficient in these particulars. The *Riyázu-l Auliya* is an exceedingly useful but rare work, comprised in 380 pages of 15 lines, and its value is greatly enhanced by being arranged alphabetically. In the preface to this work the author distinctly states, that in the *Mir-át-i A'lam* he had devoted a *namásh* to an account of the Saints, but thought proper to write, at a subsequent period, this more copious work upon the same subject.

He was also an original poet, and his poetical talents are highly praised in the *Farhatu-n Názirín*, at the close of Aurangzeb's reign.

Towards the close of his life, he was appointed *sarkár* of Saháranpúr, where he erected some useful buildings. At the instance of his relations and friends he constructed some houses on the banks of the tank of Ráiwála in the suburbs of Saháranpúr. He also founded the quarter known as Bakápúra, besides constructing several mosques and public wells. He died in 1094 A.H. (1683 A.D.).

Muhammad Baká was descended from a distinguished family. His ancestor, who first came to Hindústán from Hírát, was Khwája Zíáu-d dín. He arrived during the reign of Fíroz Sháh in 754 A.H. (1353-4 A.D.). He was received kindly by that

King, was promoted to be *Sibadār* of Multán, and received the title of Malik Mardán Daulat. He was the adoptive father of Saiyid Khizr Khán, who afterwards became King of Dehlí. His own lineal descendants were all men of distinction, in their successive generations, until we come to the subject of this article.

The *Mir-át-i 'A'lam*, or the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, is a monument of his industry and ability, and though there is little of novelty, except the account of the first ten years of Aurangzeb's reign, yet the compilation must be considered useful and comprehensive. The accounts of the Poets and Saints are very copious, and among the best to which reference can be made. It is doubtful how far these portions are to be attributed to his pen. They form, certainly, no portion of the *Mir-át-i 'A'lam*.

Several works have been formed on the same model as the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*, and continuations of the work are occasionally met with, which add to the confusion attending the inquiry respecting the original authorship. There is, for instance, in the Library of Nawáb Siráju-l Mulk, ex-minister of Haidarábád, a large volume styled the *Tárikh-i 'A'lamgir-náma*, continued down to the reign of Muhammad Sháh, subdivided in the same way into *A'ráish* and *Namáish*, etc., all taken from the *Mir-át-i Jahán-numá*. The continuation is extracted from the *Tárikh-i Chaghatái*.

This work is not common in India, at least in a perfect form. That of Muhammad Shafí is the least rare, and the best copy I have seen is in the possession of Saiyid Muhammad Rizá, *Sadru-s Sudúr* of 'Aligarh, though it is not uniformly written. It is enriched by some marginal notes written in A.H. 1216 by a person who calls himself Muhammad bin 'Abdu-llah. In Europe, besides the copy in the British Museum mentioned above, there is the copy in the Bibliothèque Nationale, *fonds Gentil*, No. 48, and the copy of Sir W. Ouseley numbered 305 and 306 in his Catalogue. He observes that he never saw another copy.

[There is also a copy in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society,¹ of which Mr. Morley has given a full account.]

The cleanest copy I have seen of this work is in the Library of Muzaffar Husain Khán, a landed proprietor in the Lower Doáb. There is a very good copy of the work in the possession of Fakír Núru-d dín of Lahore, and a good copy of the first half of the work is in the Library of Nawáb 'Ali Muhammad Khán of Jhajjar.

EXTRACTS.

Aurangzeb's Charity.

When it was reported to His Majesty Aurangzeb, that in the reign of his father every year a sum of seventy-nine thousand *rupees* was distributed through the *Sadru-s Sudúr* amongst the poor during five months of the year,—viz. twelve thousand *rupees* in each of the months of Muharram and Rabi' u-l awwal, ten thousand in Rajab, fifteen thousand in Sha'bán, and thirty thousand in the sacred month of Ramazán,—and that during the remaining seven months no sum was distributed in charity,—His Majesty ordered the *Sadru-s Sudúr* and other accountants of the household expenses, that with regard to those five months they should observe the same rule, and in each of the other months also they should give ten thousand *rupees* to be distributed among the poor; so that the annual sum expended in charity, including the increase which was now made, amounted to one *lac* and forty-nine thousand *rupees*.

The Habits and Manners of the Emperor Aurangzeb.

Be it known to the readers of this work that this humble slave of the Almighty is going to describe in a correct manner the excellent character, the worthy habits and the refined morals of this most virtuous monarch, Abú-l Muzaffar Muhiu-d dín Muhammad Aurangzeb 'Álamgír, according as he has witnessed them with his own eyes. The Emperor, a great worshipper of God by natural propensity, is remarkable for his rigid attachment

¹ Catalogue, p. 52.

to religion. He is a follower of the doctrines of the Imám Abú Hanífa (may God be pleased with him !), and establishes the five fundamental doctrines of the *Kans*. Having made his ablutions, he always occupies a great part of his time in adoration of the Deity, and says the usual prayers, first in the *masjid* and then at home, both in congregation and in private, with the most heartfelt devotion. He keeps the appointed fasts on Fridays and other sacred days, and he reads the Friday prayers in the *Jámi'* *masjid* with the common people of the Muhammadan faith. He keeps vigils during the whole of the sacred nights, and with the light of the favour of God illumines the lamps of religion and prosperity. From his great piety, he passes whole nights in the Mosque which is in his palace, and keeps company with men of devotion. In privacy he never sits on a throne. He gave away in alms before his accession a portion of his allowance of lawful food and clothing, and now devotes to the same purpose the income of a few villages in the district of Dehlí, and the proceeds of two or three salt-producing tracts, which are appropriated to his privy purse. The Princes also follow the same example. During the whole month of Ramazán he keeps fast, says the prayers appointed for that month, and reads the holy Kurán in the assembly of religious and learned men, with whom he sits for that purpose during six, and sometimes nine hours of the night. During the last ten days of the month, he performs worship in the mosque, and although, on account of several obstacles, he is unable to proceed on a pilgrimage to Mecca, yet the care which he takes to promote facilities for pilgrims to that holy place may be considered equivalent to the pilgrimage.

From the dawn of his understanding he has always refrained from prohibited meats and practices, and from his great holiness has adopted nothing but that which is pure and lawful. Though he has collected at the foot of his throne those who inspire rapture in joyous assemblies of pleasure, in the shape of singers who possess lovely voices and clever instrumental performers, and in the commencement of his reign sometimes used to hear them

sing and play, and though he himself understands music well, yet now for several years past, on account of his great restraint and self-denial, and observance of the tenets of the great Imām (Sháfi'i), (may God's mercy be on him!), he entirely abstains from this amusement. If any of the singers and musicians becomes ashamed of his calling, he makes an allowance for him or grants him land for his maintenance.

He never puts on the clothes prohibited by religion, nor does he ever use vessels of silver or gold. In his sacred Court no improper conversation, no word of backbiting or falsehood, is allowed. His courtiers, on whom his light is reflected, are cautioned that if they have to say anything which might injure the character of an absent man, they should express themselves in decorous language and at full detail. He appears two or three times every day in his court of audience with a pleasing countenance and mild look, to dispense justice to complainants who come in numbers without any hindrance, and as he listens to them with great attention, they make their representations without any fear or hesitation, and obtain redress from his impartiality. If any person talks too much, or acts in an improper manner, he is never displeased, and he never knits his brows. His courtiers have often desired to prohibit people from showing so much boldness, but he remarks that by hearing their very words, and seeing their gestures, he acquires a habit of forbearance and tolerance. All bad characters are expelled from the city of Dehlí, and the same is ordered to be done in all places throughout the whole empire. The duties of preserving order and regularity among the people are very efficiently attended to, and throughout the empire, notwithstanding its great extent, nothing can be done without meeting with the due punishment enjoined by the Muhammadan law. Under the dictates of anger and passion he never issues orders of death. In consideration of their rank and merit, he shows much honour and respect to the Saiyids, saints and learned men, and through his cordial and liberal exertions, the sublime doctrines of Hanífa and of our pure religion

have obtained such prevalence throughout the wide territories of Hindústán as they never had in the reign of any former king.

Hindú writers have been entirely excluded from holding public offices, and all the worshipping places of the infidels and the great temples of these infamous people have been thrown down and destroyed in a manner which excites astonishment at the successful completion of so difficult a task. His Majesty personally teaches the sacred *kalima* to many infidels with success, and invests them with *khi'l'ats* and other favours. Alms and donations are given by this fountain of generosity in such abundance, that the emperors of past ages did not give even a hundredth part of the amount. In the sacred month of Ramazán sixty thousand rupees,¹ and in the other months less than that amount, are distributed among the poor. Several eating houses have been established in the capital and other cities, at which food is served out to the helpless and poor, and in places where there were no caravanserais for the lodging of the travellers, they have been built by the Emperor. All the mosques in the empire are repaired at the public expense. *Imáms*, criers to the daily prayers, and readers of the *khutba*, have been appointed to each of them, so that a large sum of money has been and is still laid out in these disbursements. In all the cities and towns of this extensive country pensions and allowances and lands have been given to learned men and professors, and stipends have been fixed for scholars according to their abilities and qualifications.

As it is a great object with this Emperor that all Muham-madans should follow the principles of the religion as expounded by the most competent law officers and the followers of the Hanífi persuasion, and as these principles, in consequence of the different opinions of the *kásis* and *muftis* which have been delivered without any authority, could not be distinctly and clearly learnt, and as there was no book which embodied them all, and as until many books had been collected and a man had

¹ This is double the amount mentioned a little above.

obtained sufficient leisure, means and knowledge of theological subjects, he could not satisfy his inquiries on any disputed point, therefore His Majesty, the protector of the faith, determined that a body of eminently learned and able men of Hindústán should take up the voluminous and most trustworthy works which were collected in the royal library, and having made a digest of them, compose a book which might form a standard canon of the law, and afford to all an easy and available means of ascertaining the proper and authoritative interpretation. The chief conductor of this difficult undertaking was the most learned man of the time, Shaikh Nizám, and all the members of the society were very handsomely and liberally paid, so that up to the present time a sum of about two hundred thousand rupees has been expended in this valuable compilation, which contains more than one hundred thousand lines. When the work, with God's pleasure, is completed, it will be for all the world the standard exposition of the law, and render every one independent of Muhammadan doctors.¹ Another excellence attending this design is, that, with a view to afford facility to all, the possessor of perfections, Chulpi 'Abdu-llah, son of the great and the most celebrated Mauláná 'Abdu-l Hakím of Sálkot, and his several pupils have been ordered to translate the work into Persian.

Among the greatest liberalities of this king of the faithful is this, that he has ordered a remission of the transit duties upon all sorts of grain, cloth, and other goods, as well as on tobacco, the duties on which alone amounted to an immense sum, and to prevent the smuggling of which the Government officers committed many outrages, especially in regard to the exposure of females. He exempted the Muhammadans from taxes, and all people from certain public demands, the income of which exceeded thirty *lacs* of rupees every year. He relinquished the Government claims against the ancestors of the officers of the State, which used to be paid by deductions from their salaries. This money every year formed a very large income paid into the

¹ The *Fatwa-i 'A'lamgiri*.

public treasury. He also abolished the practice of confiscating the estates of deceased persons against whom there was no Government claim, which was very strictly observed by the accountants of his predecessors, and which was felt as a very grievous oppression by their sorrowful heirs. The Royal orders were also issued to collect the revenues of each province according to the Muhammadan law.

Some account of the battles which the Emperor fought before his accession, as well as after that period, has been given above, and we shall now write a few instances of his fortitude. At the time when the Royal army arrived at Balkh, 'Abdu-l 'Azíz Khán, with a large force which equalled the swarms of locusts and ants, came and arranged his men in order of battle, and surrounded the Royal camp. While the conflict was being carried on with great fury, the time of reading the evening prayers came on, when His Majesty, though dissuaded by some worldly officers, alighted from his horse and said the prayers, etc., in a congregation, with the utmost indifference and presence of mind. 'Abdu-l 'Azíz, on hearing of this, was much astonished at the intrepidity of the Emperor, who was assisted by God, and put an end to the battle, saying that to fight with such a man is to destroy oneself.

The Emperor is perfectly acquainted with the commentaries, traditions and law. He always studies the compilations of the great Imám Muhammad Ghizálí (may God's mercy be on him !), the extracts from the writings of Shaikh Sharaf Yahyá Munírí (may his tomb be sanctified !), and the works of Muhí Shírazí, and other similar books. One of the greatest excellences of this virtuous monarch is, that he has learnt the Kurán by heart. Though in his early youth he had committed to memory some chapters of that sacred book, yet he learnt the whole by heart after ascending the throne. He took great pains and showed much perseverance in impressing it upon his mind. He writes a very elegant *Naskh* hand, and has acquired perfection in this art. He has written two copies of the holy book with his own hand, and

having finished and adorned them with ornaments and marginal lines, at the expense of seven thousand rupees, he sent them to the holy cities of Mecca and Medina. He also wrote an excellent *Nasta'lik* and *Shikastah* hand. He is a very elegant writer in prose, and has acquired proficiency in versification, but agreeably to the words of God, "Poets deal in falsehoods," he abstains from practising it. He does not like to hear verses except those which contain a moral. "To please Almighty God he never turned his eye towards a flatterer, nor gave his ear to a poet."

The Emperor has given a very liberal education to his fortunate and noble children, who, by virtue of his attention and care, have reached to the summit of perfection, and made great advances in rectitude, devotion, and piety, and in learning the manners and customs of princes and great men. Through his instruction they have learnt the Book of God by heart, obtained proficiency in the sciences and polite literature, writing the various hands, and in learning the Turkí and the Persian languages.

In like manner, the ladies of the household also, according to his orders, have learnt the fundamental and necessary tenets of religion, and all devote their time to the adoration and worship of the Deity, to reading the sacred Kurán, and performing virtuous and pious acts. The excellence of character and the purity of morals of this holy monarch are beyond all expression. As long as nature nourishes the tree of existence, and keeps the garden of the world fresh, may the plant of the prosperity of this preserver of the garden of dignity and honour continue fruitful!

The Distances of certain places in Hindústán—The Provinces and their Revenues.

The length of the daily-increasing empire, from the port of Láhorí, province of Thatta, to the *tháná* of Bindásal in Bengal, is 994 royal *kos*, 1740 common *kos* known in most parts

of Hindústán. Each royal *kos* measures 5000 yards, and each yard is the breadth of 42 fingers. Two royal *kos* are equal to three and a half common *kos*. From the capital of Dehlí to Láhori the distance is 437 royal *kos*, and 764 common *kos*; from the same city to *thíná* Bindásal 557 royal *kos*, and 975 common *kos*. In the same manner, from Láhori to Thatta 25 royal *kos*; from Thatta to Bhakkar 31 *kos*; from Bhakkar to Multán a little more than 99 *kos*; from Multán to Láhore 75 *kos*; from Láhore to Sháh-Jahánábád 170 *kos*; from Sháh-Jahánábád to Ágra 44 *kos*; from Ágra to Alláhábád 107 *kos*; from Alláhábád to Patna 96 *kos* and a fraction; from Patna to Mungír 37 *kos*; from Mungír to Akbarnagar or Ráj Mahál 48 *kos*; from Akbarnagar to Jahángirnagar, or Dacca, 108 *kos*; from Dacca to Silhet 87 *kos*; from Silhet to Bindásal 30 *kos*; and calculating every stage at twelve *kos*, the usual travelling distance in Hindústán, the whole length is 145 stages, or a journey of four months and twenty-seven days. The breadth of the whole empire is from the frontier of Tibet and the delightful province of Kashmír to the fort of Sholápúr, which in the prosperous reign of this monarch has been taken from 'Ádil Khán, a distance of 672 royal *kos*, or 1176 common *kos*; from Sháh-Jahánábád, the seat of Empire, to the boundary of Tibet, is 330 royal *kos*, or 577 common *kos*; from the seat of the Empire to Sholápúr, 342 royal *kos*, or 598 common *kos*; as was found by measurement which may be thus detailed. From the boundary of Tibet to Little Tibet, 60 royal *kos*; from Little Tibet to Kashmír, 64 *kos*; from Kashmír to Láhore 101 *kos*; from Láhore to Sháh-Jahánábád 105 *kos*; from Sháh-Jahánábád to Ágra 44 *kos*; and from Ágra to Burhánpúr 178 *kos*. At the rate of twelve *kos* a stage, the whole breadth is 98 stages, occupying a period of three months and ten days.

Under the management and care of this virtuous monarch, the country of Hindústán teems with population and culture. It is divided into nineteen provinces, and 4440 *parganas*, the revenue of which amounts altogether to nine *arbs*, twenty-four *krores*

seventeen *lacs*, 16,082 *dáms*, or 9,24,17,16,082 *dáms*, out of which the *khálisa*, or the sum paid to the royal treasury, is 1,72,79,81,251 *dáms*, and the assignments of the *jagírdárs*, or the remainder, was 7,51,77,34,731 *dáms*.

Details of all the Provinces.

Sháhjahánábád—285 *maháls*; revenue 1,16,83,98,269 *dáms*. *A'gra*—230 *maháls*; revenue 1,05,17,09,283 *dáms*. *Lahore*—330 *maháls*; revenue 90,70,16,125 *dáms*. *Ajmir*—235 *maháls*; revenue 63,68,94,882 *dáms*. *Ahmadábád*—200 *maháls*; revenue 44,00,83,096 *dáms*. *Alláhábád*—268 *maháls*; revenue 43,66,88,072 *dáms*. *Oudh*—149 *maháls*; revenue 32,00,72,193 *dáms*. *Bihár*—252 *maháls*; revenue 72,17,97,019 *dáms*. *Bengal*—1219 *maháls*; revenue 52,37,39,110 *dáms*. *Orissa*—244 *maháls*; revenue 19,71,00,000 *dáms*. *Kashmir*—51 *maháls*; revenue 21,30,74,826 *dáms*. The four provinces of the Dakhin, viz. *Aurangábád*, *Zafarábád*, *Birár*, and *Khándesh*—552 *maháls*; revenue 2,96,70,00,000 *dáms*. *Málwa*—257 *maháls*; revenue 42,54,76,670 *dáms*. *Multán*—98 *maháls*; revenue 24,53,18,575 *dáms*. *Kábul*—40 *maháls*; revenue 15,76,25,380 *dáms*. *Thatta*—revenue 57,49,86,900¹ *dáms*.

From the concluding Chapter of Wonders and Marvels.

Those who have visited the territory of Jakkar² and Ladakh have heard the following story. In these hills there is found a worm which is exceedingly small. It adheres to the toes of the foot, and bites them. No force of hand or instrument is able to detach it, but it increases every moment in bulk and length, so that, having swallowed up the toe, it becomes equal to a large rat, and then swallows the whole foot. After this it increases to the size of a dog, and then swallows up both the

¹ [This is probably a mistake for 5,74,98,690.]

² The Lanskar of our maps.

legs and up to the waist or half the body of the man. Although the people beat it much and try to cut it, yet no instrument or weapon has any effect upon it. In a short time it becomes like a lion, and having eaten the man entirely, goes away towards the jungle or the hills, and then disappears.

LXX.

ZÍNATU-T TAWÁRIKH

OF

'AZÍZU-LLAH.

THIS "Ornament of Histories," by 'Azízu-llah, is a mere compilation of no value. The author informs us in his preface that he intended composing a second volume, in order to reconcile the discrepancies which were observable in different histories. Whether he ever did so does not appear, but there is so little critical judgment exercised in the single volume we have under consideration, that the second is not worth the search.

In the preface we learn that the work was commenced in 1086 A.H. (1675-6 A.D.), but passages occur at the close which show that the work is brought down to 1126 A.H. It is evident, however, that the original work concluded with the account of Aurangzeb's children, and that the few last pages, including mention of Bahádur Sháh and Jahándár Sháh, have been added by some transcriber. In the last volume the date of 1087 A.H. is given, which leads us to conclude that the history occupied one year in its composition.

There is nothing worthy of translation.

CONTENTS.

Preface, pp. 1-11.

The Creation.—Adam.—Prophets.—Muhammad.—Imáms, pp. 12-111.

Persian Dynasties.—Greeks.—Saljúks.—Osmanlis.— pp. 212-294.

'Ummayyides and 'Abbásides, pp. 294-410.

Táhiris. — Tulúnias. — Ikhshidites. — Ghaznívides. — Buwaih-ides. — Isma'ilians. — Sharífs. — Saiyids, pp. 410-464.

Ghorians. — Afgháns. — Mughals, pp. 674-816.

Kings of Delhi, from the earliest Hindí period to the time of Farrukh Siyar, pp. 816-996.

Size. — Svo. 996 pages, of 17 lines each.

This work is rare. I know of only one copy. Malcolm, in his "History of Persia," quotes a *Zinatu-t Tawárikh* respecting the Ghaznívides, which he describes as a metrical history.

LXXI.

LUBBU-T TAWÁRIKH-I HIND

OF

RÁÍ BHÁRÁ MAL.

THE author of this brief history was Bindrában, son of Rái Bhára Mal, and was himself also honoured with the title of *Rái*. We learn from the Conclusion of the *Khulāsatu-l Inshá* that Rái Bhára Mal was the *diwán* of Dára Shukoh; and it is probable, therefore, that our author was early initiated into a knowledge of public affairs. He says that the reason of his entering on this undertaking was that, "after meditating upon the conquests made by the Tímúrian family in this country, upon their being still more enlarged by 'Álamgír (Aurangzeb) up to the year 1101 A.H., and upon the fact of their continuing uninterruptedly in the possession of the same family, he thought of writing a book which should briefly describe how, and in what duration of time, those conquests were achieved, should give the history of former kings, their origin, and the causes which occasioned their rise or fall, the period of their reign, their abilities and enterprises, and which should more particularly treat of the great conquests made by 'Álamgír."

"It is true," he continues, "that former historians have already written several works regarding the history of ancient kings, and especially Abú-l Kásim, surnamed Firishta, whose compositions are very good as far as regards the language, but the defect of that work is that, notwithstanding its being an abstract, it is in many parts too prolix." Adverting also to the fact that

his history does not extend beyond the thousandth year of the Hijra, and hence the important transactions of one hundred years are altogether omitted, he thought it expedient to extract its essence, and compile, with his own additions, a new work, to be called the *Lubbu-t Tawárikh*, or "Marrow of Histories."

He gives as another reason for the superiority of his work over others, that it treats of the extensive and resplendent conquests of the Emperor 'Álamgír, whose kingdom extended towards the East, West, and the South to the seas, and towards the North to the boundaries of Írán and Túrán, a vast dominion, to the tenth of which no other kingdom is equal. Perhaps Rúm only might enter into competition with it, but even in that case "seeing is better than hearing."

CONTENTS.

Preface, pp. 1-3.

Section I.—The Kings of Dehlí, from Mu'izzu-d dín Muhammad Sám to Aurangzeb, pp. 4-256.

Section II.—The Kings of the Dakhin, viz. the Bahmaní, 'Ádil-Sháhí, Nizám-Sháhí, Kutb-Sháhí, the 'Imád-Sháhí and Barídia, or the Kings of Kulbarga, Bijápúr, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda, Birár, and Bidr, pp. 256-329.

Section III.—The Kings of Gujarát, pp. 330-352.

Section IV.—The Kings of Málwá, pp. 352-374.

Section V.—The Kings of Khándesh and Búrhánpúr, pp. 375-386.

Section VI.—The Kings of Bengal, pp. 386-398.

Section VII.—The Kings of Jaunpúr, 399-403.

Section VIII.—The Kings of Sind, pp. 403-408.

Section IX.—The Kings of Multán, pp. 408-410.

Section X.—The Kings of Kashmír, pp. 410-412.

SIZE.—8vo. pp. 412, of 15 lines each.

Major Scott has made great use of this work in his "History the Dakhin," but so brief a work is of little use. The author quotes no authorities in his preface except Firishtá, but he

mentions also in the body of the work the *Akbar-náma* and *Jahángír-náma* as being so common as to render it unnecessary for him to enlarge on the periods of which they treat.

The exact year in which the work was composed is somewhat doubtful. It is not quite clear from the preface whether the date should be rendered 1100 or 1101 A.H. A chronogram given by an early transcriber makes it 1106; and if the title of the work be intended to form a chronogram, which is nowhere stated by the author, the date would be 1108 A.H. (1696 A.D.).

The *Lubbu-t Tawárikh-i Hind* is very common in India. One of the best copies I have seen is in the possession of Nawáb Hasan 'Alí Khán of Jhajjar, written in 1148 A.H. In Europe also it is not uncommon. There is a copy of it in the British Museum (No. 5618). There is also an illegible copy at Paris (Gentil, No. 44), under the incorrect title of *Muntakhabu-t Tárikh*.

[The translations of the following Extracts were revised by Sir H. M. Elliot.]

EXTRACTS.

Sháh Jahán abolishes the Ceremony of Prostration.

It had long been customary with the subjects of this state to prostrate themselves before the King in grateful return for any royal favours conferred on them, and on the receipt of royal mandates. This just King (Sháh Jahán), on his accession to the throne, commanded that the practice should be abolished, and, at the representation of Mahábat Khán (Khán-khánán), he established instead the practice of kissing the ground. This also being afterwards found equally objectionable, the King, actuated by his devotion and piety, ordered that it likewise should be discontinued; and that the usual mode of salutation by bowing and touching the head should be restored, with this difference, that, instead of doing so only once, as before, the act should be performed three several times. Circular orders, enforcing the observance of this practice, were issued to all the Governors within the royal dominions.

Prosperity of the Country during Sháh Jahán's Reign.

The means employed by the King in these happy times to protect and nourish his people; to punish all kinds of oppressive evil-doers; his knowledge on all subjects tending to the welfare of his people; his impressing the same necessity upon the revenue functionaries, and the appointment of honest and intelligent officers in every district; his administration of the country, and calling for and examining annual statements of revenue, in order to ascertain what were the resources of the empire; his showing his royal affection to the people, and expressing his displeasure when necessary; his issuing stringent orders to the officers appointed to the charge of the crown and assigned lands, to promote the increase and welfare of the tenants; his admonishing the disobedient, and constantly directing his generous attention towards the improvement of agriculture and the collection of the revenues of the state;—all these contributed in a great measure to advance the prosperity of his empire. The *pargana*, the income of which was three *lacs* of rupees in the reign of Akbar (whose seat is in the highest heaven!), yielded, in this happy reign, a revenue of ten *lacs*! The collections made in some districts, however, fell short of this proportionate increase. The *chakladárs* who, by carefully cultivating their lands, aided in increasing the revenue, received marked consideration, and *rice versa*.

Notwithstanding the comparative increase in the expenses of the State during this reign, gratuities for the erection of public edifices and other works in progress, and for the paid military service and establishments, such as those maintained in Balkh, Badakhshán, and Kandahár, amounted, at one disbursement only, to fourteen *krors* of rupees, and the advances made on account of edifices only were two *krors* and fifty *lacs* of rupees. From this single instance of expenditure, an idea may be formed as to what the charges must have been under others. Besides, in times of war, large sums were expended, in addition to fixed salaries and

ordinary outlay. In short, the expenditure of former reigns, in comparison with that of the one in question, was not even in the proportion of one to four; and yet this King, in a short space of time, amassed a treasure which it would have taken several years for his predecessors to accumulate!

Sháh Jahán's Justice.

Notwithstanding the great area of this country, complaints were so few that only one day in the week, viz. Wednesday, was fixed upon for the administration of justice; and it was rarely even then that twenty plaintiffs could be found to prefer suits, the number generally being much less. The writer of this historical sketch on more than one occasion, when honoured with an audience of the King, heard His Majesty chide the *dárogha* of the Court that although so many confidential persons had been appointed to invite plaintiffs, and a day of the week was set apart exclusively with the view of dispensing justice, yet even the small number of twenty plaintiffs could but very seldom be brought into Court. The *dárogha* replied that if he failed to produce only one plaintiff, he would be worthy of punishment.

In short, it was owing to the great solicitude evinced by the King towards the promotion of the national weal and the general tranquillity, that the people were restrained from committing offences against one another and breaking the public peace. But if offenders were discovered, the local authorities used generally to try them on the spot where the offence had been committed according to law, and in concurrence with the law officers: and if any individual, dissatisfied with the decision passed on his case, appealed to the Governor or *dhucán*, or to the *kázi* of the *súba*, the matter was reviewed, and judgment awarded with great care and discrimination, lest it should be mentioned in the presence of the King that justice had not been done. If parties were not

satisfied even with these decisions, they appealed to the chief *dhurān*, or to the chief *kāzi* on matters of law. These officers instituted further inquiries. With all this care, what cases, except those relating to blood and religion, could become subjects of reference to His Majesty?

LXXII.

'ĀLAMGĪR-NĀMA

OF

MUHAMMAD KĀZIM.

THIS work was written 1688 A.D. by Mirzá Muhammad Kāzim, son of Muhammad Amín Munshí, the author of the *Pádsháh-nāma*, previously noticed as No. LXI. It contains a history of the first ten years of the reign of 'Ālamgír Aurangzeb. It was dedicated to Aurangzeb in the thirty-second year of his reign; but on its being presented, the Emperor forbade its continuation, and, like another Alexander, *edicto vetuit ne quis se pingeret*, but not for the same reason. The Mughal Emperor professed as the cause of his prohibition that the cultivation of inward piety was preferable to the ostentatious display of his achievements. Elphinstone observes of this strange prohibition that the Emperor not only discontinued the regular annals of the empire, which had before been kept by a regular historiographer, but so effectually put a stop to all records of his transactions, that from the eleventh year of his reign the course of events can only be traced through the means of letters on business and of notes taken clandestinely by private individuals.¹

This prohibition is the more extraordinary from its inconsistency, with orders previously issued for the preparation of the *'Ālamgír-nāma*. The Preface of that work shows not only the encouragement which the author received in the prosecution of his work, but also the little reliance that can be reposed in the narrative when any subject is mentioned likely to affect

¹ [See more upon this point in the article on the *Muntakhabu-l Lubāb* of Khāfi Khān, post, No. LXXIX.]

the personal character of the monarch. It is much the same with nearly all the histories written by contemporaries, which are filled with the most nauseous panegyrics, and

With titles blown from adulation.

The historian was to submit his pages to the interested scrutiny of the Emperor himself, and to be guided in doubtful questions by information graciously given by the monarch respecting what account was to be rejected or admitted. As the royal listener was not likely to criminate himself, we must bear perpetually in mind that such histories are mere one-sided accounts, and not to be received with implicit reliance.

After an encomium of the powers of eloquence, the author says that it was solely owing to the reputed charms of his style that he was introduced to the great monarch 'Alamgir, and, after a long obscurity, was suddenly raised from insignificance to the high situation of His Majesty's *munkhi* in the year of the coronation. His style being approved by the King, he was ordered to collect information about all the extraordinary events in which the King had been concerned, and accounts of the bright conquests which he had effected, into a book; and accordingly an order was given to the officers in charge of the Royal Records to make over to the author all such papers as were received from the new-conquered and other high functionaries of the different countries concerning the great events, the morality and yearly registers of all kinds of actions and matters, and the descriptions of the different cities and countries.

The author was further instructed, that if there were any such particulars as were omitted in any of the above papers, or not witnessed by himself, he should make inquiries respecting them from such trustworthy officers as shared the royal views, who would relate the exact circumstances; and if there were anything which particularly required the explanation of His Majesty, the author was graciously permitted the liberty of making inquiries from the King himself.

He was also ordered to attend on His Majesty on proper occasions, to read over whatever he had collected, and had written from the above authorities, and to have His Majesty's corrections incorporated. It is to be regretted that Aurangzeb did not here again imitate the example of Alexander, of whom Lucian gives an anecdote which shows that conqueror to have been less compliant with his flattering historians. "Aristobulus, after he had written an account of the single combat between Alexander and Porus, showed that monarch a particular part of it, wherein, the better to get into his good graces, he had inserted a great deal more than was true: when Alexander seized the book and threw it (for they happened at that time to be sailing on the Hydaspes) directly into the river: 'Thus,' said he, 'ought you to have been served yourself, for pretending to describe my battles, and killing half a dozen elephants for me with a spear.'"

The value of the Royal Records may be known from the narrative of an English traveller who visited the Court in A.D. 1609. Captain Hawkins says, "During the time that he drinks his six cups of strong liquor, he says and does many idle things; yet whatever he says or does, whether drunk or sober, there are writers who attend him in rotation, who set many things down in writing; so that not a single incident of his life but is recorded, even his going to the necessary and when he lies with his wives. The purpose of all this is that when he dies all his actions and speeches worthy of being recorded may be inserted in the chronicles of his reign."

"As the history regarding His Majesty's birth and minority up to the time of his ascending the throne has already," says our author, "been fully detailed in the book called *Bādshāh-nāma*, it was at first resolved that this book should begin with the accounts of His Majesty's return from the Dakhin towards his capital (which took place in 1068 A.H., 1657 A.D.), and it will contain an account of the undertakings and conquests achieved by His Majesty during the period of eighteen years. But the author subsequently thought of writing, in an Introduction, a

brief account of the King's minority, because it was replete with wonderful events, and because many conquests were effected during that period. It accordingly commences with Dárá Shukoh's assumption of authority upon the illness of his father Sháh Jahán, and the means employed by Aurangzeb to cut off his brothers and obtain the Imperial Crown.

[The style in which this work is written is quite in accord with the courtly panegyrical character of the book. It is strained, verbose, and tedious; fulsome in its flattery, abusive in its censure. Laudatory epithets are heaped one upon another in praise of Aurangzeb; while his unfortunate brothers are not only sneered at and abused, but their very names are perverted. Dárá Shukoh is repeatedly called *Be-Shukoh*, "the undignified;" and Shujá' is called *Ná-shujá'*, "the unvaliant." The work seems to have obtained no great reputation in India. "Subsequent authors," says Colonel Lees "do not express any very decided opinion upon the qualifications of Muhammad Kázim as an historian. The author of the *Mir-átu-l 'Alam*, however, speaks of him as an author of great erudition; the author of the *Ma-ásiru-l 'Alamgiri* has made an abridgment of his work the first portion of his history; and Kháfí Khán, the author of the *Muntakhabu-l Lubáb*, has made the *'Alamgir-náma* a chief authority," though he occasionally controverts its statements. It is well that the book has been so well worked up by later writers, for a close translation of it into English would be quite unreadable. A few passages have been translated by the Editor, but in them it has been necessary to prune away a good deal of the author's exuberance of language and metaphor.]

The history of the conquest of Assam has been translated from this work by Mr. Vansittart, in the "Asiatic Miscellany," vol. i., and in "Asiatic Researches," vol. ii. [The whole of the original work has been printed in the "Bibliotheca Indica," and occupies more than 1100 pages.]

EXTRACTS.

Illness of Sháh Jahán.

[On the 8th Zi-l hijja, 1067 A.H. (8th September 1657), the Emperor Sháh Jahán was seized with illness at Dehli. His illness lasted for a long time, and every day he grew weaker, so that he was unable to attend to the business of the State. Irregularities of all sorts occurred in the administration, and great disturbances arose in the wide territories of Hindústán. The unworthy and frivolous Dárá Shukoh considered himself heir-apparent, and notwithstanding his want of ability for the kingly office, he endeavoured with the scissors of greediness to cut the robes of the Imperial dignity into a shape suited for his unworthy person.¹ With this over-weening ambition constantly in his mind, and in pursuit of his vain design, he never left the seat of government. When the Emperor fell ill and was unable to attend to business, Dárá Shukoh took the opportunity of seizing the reins of power, and interfered with everything. He closed the roads against the spread of news, and seized letters addressed to individuals. He forbade the officers of government to write or send any intelligence to the provinces, and upon the mere suspicion of their having done so, he seized and imprisoned them. The royal princes, the great nobles, and all the men who were scattered through the provinces and territories of this great empire, many even of the officials and servants who were employed at the capital, had no expectation that the Emperor would live much longer. So great disorders arose in the affairs of the State. Disaffected and rebellious men raised their heads in mutiny and strife on every side. Turbulent *raiya*t*s* refused to pay their revenue. The seed of rebellion was sown in all directions, and by degrees the evil reached to such a height that in Gujarát Murád Bakhsh took his seat upon the throne, had the *khutba* read and coins struck in his name, and assumed the title of

¹ [Passages like this frequently occur, but after this they have been turned into plain language in the translation.]

King. Shujá' took the same course in Bengal, led an army against Patna, and from thence advanced to Benares.]

Heresy of Dará Shukoh.

[Dará Shukoh in his later days did not restrain himself to the free-thinking and heretical notions which he had adopted under the name of *tasawwuf* (Sufism), but showed an inclination for the religion and institutions of the Hindús. He was constantly in the society of *Bráhmans*, *Jogis* and *Sannyásis*, and he used to regard these worthless teachers of delusions as learned and true masters of wisdom. He considered their books which they call *Bed* as being the Word of God, and revealed from heaven, and he called them ancient and excellent books. He was under such delusion about this *Bed*, that he collected *Bráhmans* and *Sannyásis* from all parts of the country, and paying them great respect and attention, he employed them in translating the *Bed*. He spent all his time in this unholy work, and devoted all his attention to the contents of these wretched books. Instead of the sacred name of God, he adopted the Hindú name *Prabhu* (lord), which the Hindús consider holy, and he had this name engraved in Hindí letters upon rings of diamond, ruby, emerald, etc. * * Through these perverted opinions he had given up the prayers, fasting and other obligations imposed by the law. * * It became manifest that if Dará Shukoh obtained the throne and established his power, the foundations of the faith would be in danger and the precepts of Islám would be changed for the rant of infidelity and Judaism.]

Mir Jumla Mu'azzam Khán.

[After the conquest of Zafarábád and Kalyán, and the return of Aurangzeb from Bijápúr, where he had failed in obtaining full success, through the opposition and malevolence of Dará Shukoh, he left 'Umdat-u-s Saltanatu-l Káhira Mu'azzam Khán, with a part of the Imperial army, in the vicinity of Bijápúr, to realize a sum of a hundred *lacs* of rupees as tribute from 'Ádil Khán, by

the promise of which the retreat of Aurangzeb had been obtained. The intrigues of Dárá Shukoh, who did his best to defeat this arrangement, and the mischievous disturbing letters which he sent to 'Adil Khán and his nobles, brought this desirable settlement to nought. His Majesty Sháh Jahán, who at that time took no very active part in the affairs of government, was influenced by the urgent representations of that weak-minded (Dárá Shukoh), and summoned Mu'azzam Khán to court. In obedience to this order, the Khán marched with the force under his command to Aurangábád, intending to proceed from thence to the capital. This movement at such a time seemed injurious to the State, and encouraging to the turbulence of the Dakhinís. Mu'azzam Khán had no sinister object in proceeding to the capital; but Aurangzeb, as a matter of prudence and of State policy, made him prisoner and detained him in the Dakhin. When Dárá Shukoh obtained information of this arrest, his malignity and jealousy led him to persuade the Emperor that it was all a trick and conspiracy between the Khán and Aurangzeb. By this he so worked upon the feelings and fears of the Emperor that he roused his suspicions against Muhammad Amín Khán, son of Mu'azzam Khán, who then held the office of *Mir Bakhshi* at Court, and obtained permission to secure his person. Accordingly Dárá Shukoh summoned Muhammad Amín to his house and made him prisoner. After he had been in confinement three or four days, intelligence of the true state of the case and of the innocence of Muhammad Amín reached the Emperor, and he, being satisfied of the facts, released Muhammad Amín from durance.]

Illness of the Emperor Aurangzeb.

[On the night of the 12th Rajab (in the eighth year of his reign), the Emperor was suddenly attacked with strangury, and suffered great pain until the following morning. * * The skill and attention of his physicians had their effect, * * and in a few days he recovered.]

LXXIII.

MA-ĀSIR-I 'ĀLAMĠIRĪ

or

MUHAMMAD SĀKĪ MUSTA'IDD KHĀN.

THIS is a history of the reign of 'Ālamġir (Aurangzeb). The first ten years is an abridgment of the work last noticed, the *'Ālamġir-nāma*; the continuation till the death of Aurangzeb in A.D. 1707 is an original composition. It was written by Muhammad Sākī Musta'idd Khān, *munshi* to 'Ināyatu-llā Khān, *wazir* of Bahādur Shāh. He had been a constant follower of the Court for forty years, and an eye-witness of many of the transactions he records. He undertook the work by desire of his patron, and finished it in A.D. 1710, only three years after the death of Aurangzeb. [Khāfī Khān, in his *Muntakhabu-l Lubāb*, informs us that "after the expiration of ten years (of Aurangzeb's reign) authors were forbidden from writing the events of that just and righteous Emperor's reign; nevertheless some competent persons (did so), and particularly Musta'idd Khān, who secretly wrote an abridged account of the campaign in the Dakhin, simply detailing the conquests of the countries and forts, without alluding at all to the misfortunes of the campaign."¹]

The *Ma-āsir-i 'Ālamġirī* contains two Books and a short Appendix.

Book I.—An abridgment of Mirzā Muhammad Kāzīm's history of the first ten years of the Emperor's reign and the events preceding his accession.

Book II.—The events of the last forty years of the Emperor's reign, with an account of his death.

¹ [Col. Lees, Journ. R.A.S., n.s. vol. iii. p. 473.]

Appendix.—Several anecdotes of the Emperor, which could not be included in the history; and a minute account of the Royal family.

The history is written in the form of annals, each year being distinctly marked off.

Stewart, in his "Descriptive Catalogue," observes of the writer of this work, that "although his style be too concise, I have never met in any other author with the relation of an event of this reign which is not recorded in this history."

It is differently spoken of by the author of the "Critical Essay," who shows a discrimination rarely to be met with in Indian critics. The omissions he complains of will not appear of much importance to a European reader.

"Muhammad Sáki Musta'idd Khán, who composed the chronicle named *Ma-ásir-i 'A'lamgiri*, has not by any means rendered his work complete; for he has omitted to record several matters of considerable importance. Thus, he has not mentioned the dignities and offices of honour accorded to Royal princes, and their successive appointments to different situations, such as might best qualify them for managing the affairs of government. Some he has noticed, but he has omitted others. Neither has he informed us in what year the illustrious Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh (now gone to the abode of felicity) and Muhammad 'Ázam Sháh were invested with the high rank of *Chihal-hazari* (40,000); and of many other circumstances relating to these two princes, some are mentioned, and many have been altogether unnoticed. In the same manner also he has treated of other Royal princes.

"Respecting likewise the chief nobles and their removals from different offices or appointments and dignities, some are mentioned, but several are omitted; thus he has neglected to notice the dates and various circumstances of the appointment of *Haft-hazari* (7000) of Ghází'u-d dín Khán Bahádur Fíroz Jang, and the *Shash-hazari* (6000) of Zulfikár Khán Bahádur Nusrat Jang, two distinguished generals.

"On the other hand, he relates with minute precision some very

trifling occurrences little worthy of being recorded in history, and by no means interesting, such as particulars concerning chajah or places of prayer, the merits of different preachers and similar topics, which had been subjects of discussion among his intimate companions. On this account his work is not held in high estimation among those learned men who know how to appreciate historical compositions."

[This verdict of a native critic is worthy of record, although it cannot be accepted. Muhammad Sâki has a style of his own which is not difficult, and yet has some pretensions to elegance. The early part of the work is little better than a Court Circular or London Gazette, being occupied almost exclusively with the private matters of the royal family, and the promotions, appointments, and removals of the officers of government. Farther on he enters more fully into matters of historical record, and gives details of Aurangzeb's campaign in the Dakhin, and his many sieges of forts.]

The work was edited and translated into English by Henry Vansittart in 1785, and published in a quarto volume. [The complete text has been printed in the Bibliotheca Indica, and fills 541 pages. A translation of the last 40 years, Muhammad Sâki's own portion of the work, was made for Sir H. Elliot by "Lieut. Perkins, 71st N.I.," and from that translation the following Extracts have been taken.]

EXTRACTS.

Earthquake.

[Text, p. 73.] On the 1st Zi-l hijja, 1078 A.H. (3rd May, 1668), the intelligence arrived from Thatta that the town of Samâji had been destroyed by an earthquake; thirty thousand houses were thrown down.

Prohibition of Hindû Teaching and Worship.

[Text, p. 81.] On the 17th Zi-l ka'da, 1079 (18th A. 1669), it reached the ear of His Majesty, the protector

faith, that in the provinces of Thatta, Multán, and Benares, but especially in the latter, foolish Bráhmans were in the habit of expounding frivolous books in their schools, and that students and learners, Musulmán as well as Hindús, went there, even from long distances, led by a desire to become acquainted with the wicked sciences they taught. The "Director of the Faith" consequently issued orders to all the governors of provinces to destroy with a willing hand the schools and temples of the infidels; and they were strictly enjoined to put an entire stop to the teaching and practising of idolatrous forms of worship. On the 15th Rabi'u-l ákhir it was reported to his religious Majesty, leader of the unitarians, that, in obedience to order, the Government officers had destroyed the temple of Bishnáth at Benares.

[Text, p. 95.] In the month of Ramazán, 1080 A.H. (December, 1669), in the thirteenth year of the reign, this justice-loving monarch, the constant enemy of tyrants, commanded the destruction of the Hindú temple of Mathura or Mattra, known by the name of Dehra Késú Rái, and soon that stronghold of falsehood was levelled with the ground. On the same spot was laid, at great expense, the foundation of a vast mosque. The den of iniquity thus destroyed owed its erection to Nar Singh Deo Bundela, an ignorant and depraved man. Jahángír, before he ascended the throne, was at one time, for various reasons, much displeased with Shaikh Abú-l Fazl, and the above-mentioned Hindú, in order to compass the Shaikh's death, affected great devotion to the Prince. As a reward for his services, he obtained from the Prince become King permission to construct the Mattra temple. Thirty-three *lacs* were expended on this work. Glory be to God, who has given us the faith of Islám, that, in this reign of the destroyer of false gods, an undertaking so difficult of accomplishment¹ has been brought to a successful termination! This vigorous support given to the true faith was a severe blow to the arrogance of the Rájás, and, like idols, they turned their faces awe-struck to the wall. The

¹ Alluding to the destruction of the Hindú temple.

richly-jewelled idols taken from the pagan temples were transferred to Agra, and there placed beneath the steps leading to the Nawáb Begam Sâhib's mosque, in order that they might ever be pressed under foot by the true believers. Mattra changed its name into Islâmâbâd, and was thus called in all official documents, as well as by the people.

[Text, p. 100.] In Shawwâl information reached the King that Shâh-zâda Muhaammad Mu'azzam, under the influence of his passions, and misled by pernicious associates and flatterers, had, notwithstanding his excellent understanding, become imbued with a spirit of insubordination. Prompted by his natural benevolence, His Majesty wrote several letters replete with advice to the Prince, but this alone did not satisfy him—the Nawáb Bâi, the Prince's mother, was sent for to go to her son, and lead him back into the right path if any symptom of rebellion should appear in him. Ifikhr Khân Khân-zâman, a wise and discreet man, was directed to repair to the Prince, charged with much beneficial advice. He soon reached his destination, and delivered himself of the King's messages. Prince Muhaammad Mu'azzam was a fountain of candour; there was moreover no truth in the report; so his only answer was to bow his head in submission. He wrote to his father letters expressive of humility and shame. Unwilling to ever transgress the obedience due to his King and to his God, he insured himself happiness in both worlds. The King, slow to anger and prompt to forgive, lavished presents and kind words on his son.

FIFTEENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN.

*Outbreak of the Satnâmis—also called Mondihis.*¹

[Text, p. 114.] It is cause for wonder that a gang of bloody, miserable rebels, goldsmiths, carpenters, sweepers, tanners, and other ignoble beings, braggarts and fools of all descriptions,

¹ [Khâfi Khân shortens the first vowel and calls them *Mundihis*—see post.]

should become so puffed up with vain-glory as to cast themselves headlong into the pit of self-destruction. This is how it came to pass. A malignant set of people, inhabitants of Mewát, collected suddenly as white ants spring from the ground, or locusts descend from the skies. It is affirmed that these people considered themselves immortal; seventy lives was the reward promised to every one of them who fell in action. A body of about 5000 had collected in the neighbourhood of Náranul, and were in open rebellion. Citra and districts were plundered. Táhir Khán Faujdár, considering himself not strong enough to oppose them, repaired to the presence. The King resolved to exterminate the insurgents. Accordingly, on the 26th of Zí-l-ka'da, an order was issued that Ra'd-andáz Khán should proceed with his artillery, Hámid Khán with the guards and 500 of the horsemen belonging to Saiyid Murtazá Khán, his father, and Yahyá Khán Rúmi, Najib Khán, Rúmi Khán, Kamálu-d dín, son of Diler Khán, Purdil, son of Fíroz Khán Mewáti, and Isfandyár, *bakhshi* to Prince Muhammad Akbar, with their own troops, to effect the destruction of the unbelievers. The royal forces marched to the encounter; the insurgents showed a bold front, and, although totally unprovided with the implements of war, made good use of what arms they had. They fought with all the valour of former rebels whose deeds are recorded in history, and the people of Hind have called this battle *Mahá-bhārat*, on account of the great slaughter of elephants on that trying day. The heroes of Islám charged with impetuosity, and crimsoned their sabres with the blood of these desperate men. The struggle was terrible. Conspicuous above all were Ra'd-andáz Khán, Hámid Khán, and Yahyá Khán. Many of the Moslems were slain or wounded. At length the enemy broke and fled, but were pursued with great slaughter. Few indeed escaped with their lives; a complete victory crowned the efforts of the royal commanders—and those regions were cleansed of the presence of the foul unbelievers. The triumphant *gházis*, permitted to kiss the threshold, were rendered proud by the praises of their King.

The title of Shujá'at Khán was conferred on Ra'd-andáz, with the rank of 3000 and 2000 horse.

[Text, p. 170.] On the 19th Rabí'u-l ákhir, 1089 A.H., a report from Shafí'a Khán, *diwán* of Bengal, made known that the *Amir-i umará* had appropriated one *kror* and thirty-two *lacs* of rupees above his yearly salary. A claim against the *amir* was accordingly ordered to be entered.

TWENTY-SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1090 A.H. (1679 A.D.).

[Text, p. 175.] On the 24th Rabí'u-l ákhir, Khán-Jahán Bahádur arrived from Jodhpúr, bringing with him several cart-loads of idols, taken from the Hindú temples that had been razed. His Majesty gave him great praise. Most of these idols were adorned with precious stones, or made of gold, silver, brass, copper or stone; it was ordered that some of them should be cast away in the out-offices, and the remainder placed beneath the steps of the grand mosque, there to be trampled under foot. There they lay a long time, until, at last, not a vestige of them was left.

[Text, p. 176.] Rája Jaswant Singh had died at Kábúl without male issue; but, after his decease, several faithful adherents—Song, Ragunáth Dás Bhátí, Ranjhúr, Durga Dás, and some others—sent information to the King of two of the wives of the late Rája being with child. These ladies, after their arrival at Lahore, gave each of them birth to a son. This news was communicated to the King, with a request that the children should be permitted to succeed to their father's rank and possessions. His Majesty replied that the children should be sent to him to be brought up at his Court, and that rank and wealth should be given to them.

[Text, p. 186.] On the 12th Zí-l hijja, 1090 A.H. (January, 1680), Prince Muhammad 'Ázam and Khán Bahádur obtained permission to visit U'dípúr. R'

Khán and Yakkatáz Khán also proceeded thither to effect the destruction of the temples of the idolators. These edifices, situated in the vicinity of the Ráná's palace, were among the wonders of the age, and had been erected by the infidels to the ruin of their souls and the loss of their wealth. It was here that some twenty Máchátor Rájpúts had resolved to die for their faith. One of them slew many of his assailants before receiving his death-blow. Another followed, and another, until all had fallen, many of the faithful also being despatched before the last of these fanatics had gone to hell. The temple was now clear, and the pioneers destroyed the images.

[Text, p. 188.] On the 2nd of Muharram, 1091 A.H. (24th January, 1680), the King visited the tank of U'díságar, constructed by the Ráná. His Majesty ordered all three of the Hindú temples to be levelled with the ground. News was this day received that Hasan 'Alí Khán had emerged from the pass and attacked the Ráná on the 29th of Zí-l hijja. The enemy had fled, leaving behind them their tents and baggage. The enormous quantity of grain captured in this affair had created abundance amongst the troops.

On the 7th Muharram Hasan 'Alí Khán made his appearance with twenty camels taken from the Ráná, and stated that the temple situated near the palace, and one hundred and twenty-two more in the neighbouring districts, had been destroyed. This chieftain was, for his distinguished services, invested with the title of Bahádur.

His Majesty proceeded to Chitor on the 1st of Safar. Temples to the number of sixty-three were here demolished.

Abú Turáb, who had been commissioned to effect the destruction of the idol-temples of Amber, reported in person on the 24th Rajab, that threescore and six of these edifices had been levelled with the ground.

TWENTY-FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1091-2 A.H.
(1680-81 A.D.).

[Text, p. 207.] The Ráná had now been driven forth from his country and his home. The victorious *gházis* had struck many a blow, and the heroes of Islám had trampled under their chargers' hoofs the land which this reptile of the jungles and his predecessors had possessed for a thousand years. He had been forced to fly to the very limit of his territories. Unable to resist any longer, he saw no safety for himself but in seeking pardon. Accordingly he threw himself on the mercy of Prince Muhammad 'Ázam, and implored his intercession with the King, offering the *parganas* of Mándil, Púr, and Badhanor in lieu of the *jisya*. By this submission he was enabled to retain possession of his country and his wealth. The Prince, touched with compassion for the Ráná's forlorn state, used his influence with His Majesty, and this merciful monarch, anxious to please his son, lent a favourable ear to these propositions. An interview took place at the Ráj Sambar tank on the 17th of Jumáda-l ákhir, between the Prince and the Ráná, to whom Diler Khán and Hasan 'Alí Khán had been deputed. The Ráná made an offering of 500 *ashrafis* and eighteen horses with caparisons of gold and silver, and did homage to the Prince, who desired him to sit on his left. He received in return a *khi'at*, a sabre, dagger, charger and elephant. His title of Ráná was acknowledged, and the rank of commander of 5000 conferred on him.

TWENTY-SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1094-5 A.H.
(1683-4 A.D.).

Caves of Ellora.

[Text, p. 238.] Muhammad Sháh Malik Júná, son of Tughlik, selected the fort of Deogír as a central point whereat to establish the seat of government, and gave it the name of Daulatábád. He removed the inhabitants of Dehlí thither with

their wives and children, and many great and good men removed thither and were buried there. Ellora is only a short distance from this place. At some very remote period a race of men, as if by magic, excavated caves (*nakkáb*) high up among the defiles of the mountains. These rooms (*khána*) extended over a breadth of one *kos*. Carvings of various designs and of correct execution adorned all the walls and ceilings; but the outside of the mountain is perfectly level, and there is no sign of any dwelling (*khána*). From the long period of time these pagans remained masters of this territory, it is reasonable to conclude, although historians differ, that to them is to be attributed the construction of these places.

THIRTIETH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1097-8 A.H. (1686-7 A.D.).

Imprisonment of Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam.

[Text, p. 293.] Muhammad Mu'azzam, although a prince of great intelligence and penetration, was led by pernicious counsellors into opposition to his father's wishes, and this conduct became the source of much suffering to himself and displeasure to the ruler of the State. For a long time His Majesty, loth that such conduct should become known, closed his eyes to the Prince's proceedings. During the siege of Bijápúr some persons were caught carrying secret messages to Sikandar ('Ádil Sháh); these men were put to death. Some officers also, suspected of evil intentions, Mumín Khán, commandant of artillery, 'Azíz Afghán, Multifát Khán, second *bakhshí*, and the cunning Bindrában, were expelled from the army on the 18th of Shawwál. The Prince's destiny grew dark, and wisdom and foresight quite forsook him. During the investment of Haidarábád he allowed himself to be deluded by some promise of Abú-l Hasan, and at last sundry written communications, which passed between the trenches and the fort of Golkonda, fell into the hands of Fíroz Jang. Other proofs were also available of the Prince's treachery. The Khán, that very night, laid these documents before the

King, who was now well convinced of the Prince's wilfulness, whatever doubts he might have entertained before. Hayāt Khān, *dārogha* of the Prince's *divān-khāna*, was sent for and ordered to direct his master to send his troops to oppose Shaikh Nizām Haidarābādī, who was about to make a night attack on the camp. Ihtimām Khān, it was said, would guard the Prince's tents during the absence of his own people. This order was obeyed.

The next morning, according to order, the Prince, Mu'izzu-d dīn, and Muhammad 'Azīm,¹ attended the *darbār*. His Majesty, after taking his seat, told them that Asad Khān and Bahramand Khān had something to communicate to them in the chapel. No sooner had the Princes entered this place than their arms were taken from them. As soon as a tent could be pitched, they were removed into it. His Majesty withdrew to the seraglio by the private entrance, and there, wringing his hands, and with many symptoms of grief, he exclaimed that the labour of forty years had fallen to the ground !

Guards were placed round the tent, under the orders of Ihtimām Khān. *Mutasaddis* seized all the Prince's property, which, however, was but as a drop of water in the ocean. Ihtimām was invested with the title of Sardār Khān, and raised from the command of 1000 to that of 1500.

THIRTY-FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1102-3 A.H. (1691-2 A.D.).

Release of Muhammad Mu'azzam from Confinement.

[Text, p. 341.] Neither the Prince nor his sons had been, when first confined, permitted even to unbind the hair of their heads. This treatment lasted six months. Khidmat Khān, *Násir*, emboldened by his long service under this King and under his father, remonstrated most vehemently against this severity (no other dared to speak in the Prince's favour), and His Majesty relented. As time wore on, the King's wrath grew less, his paternal feel-

¹ [More commonly called Muhammad 'Azam.]

ings resumed their sway, and he daily sent his blessing by Sardár Khan to this second Joseph, imprisoned like Jonas, desiring him to be satisfied with this much until the Father of all Mercies moved his heart to put an end to his sufferings. Strange to relate, Sardár Khán one day told the King that His Majesty could order the Prince's release when he thought fit so to do. "True," replied the King, "but Providence has made me ruler of the habitable world. The oppressed appeals to me against his oppressor, and expects redress. This son of mine has endured some hardships at my hands, in expiation of certain worldly offences, but the hour has not yet come for me to release him; his only hope is in God. Let him therefore be hopeful, so that he may not lose all hope in me, nor appeal against me to God, for should he do so, what refuge would be left to me?"

Fato had decreed that Muhammad Mu'azzam should adorn the throne; wherefore the King, that personification of all virtues, resolved to draw the Prince from the state in which he had been kept, and let his light shine on the people. That his mind might not bow down under the weight of grief, the rigours of confinement were gradually made less. On one occasion, when the King marched from Badrí, all the tents were ordered to be left standing for the Prince's recreation. He was permitted to wander from one to the other, enjoying the luxuries each different place afforded, and refreshing body and mind. The Prince observed to the officers who had charge of him that he longed to behold His Majesty, and that the sight of such places could not satisfy that wish. At length, when the news of the Prince's mother having died in the capital was received, His Majesty caused a tent of communication to be pitched between the *dhicán-i khás* and the Prince's tent, where the monarch repaired in person with the virtuous Princess Zínatu-n Nísá Begam, and offered the usual consolations.

Some time after this, on the 4th of Zí-l ka'da, Mu'azzam had the honour of paying his respects to the King, who desired him to perform his mid-day prayers in his presence. When His

Majesty went to the mosque on Fridays, the Prince was to pray in the private chapel. Permission was also granted him to visit occasionally the baths in the fort; at other times he might wander among the parterres and tanks of the Sháhábád gardens. Thus by degrees was broken the barrier between father and son. Khwája Daulat received orders to fetch the Prince's family from the capital.¹

FIFTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN.

Death of Aurangzeb.

[Text, p. 519.] After the conclusion of the holy wars which rescued the countries of the Dakhin from the dominion of the pagans, the army encamped at Ahmadnagar on the 16th of Shawwál, in the 50th year of the reign. A year after this, at the end of Shawwál, in the 51st year of the reign, the King fell ill, and consternation spread among people of all ranks; but, by the blessing of Providence, His Majesty recovered his health in a short time, and once more resumed the administration of affairs. About this time the noble Sháh ('Álam) was appointed governor of the province of Málwá, and Prince Kám Bakhsh governor of that of Bijápúr. Only four or five days had elapsed after the departure of their royal highnesses, when the King was seized with a burning fever, which continued unabated for three days. Still His Majesty did not relax in his devotions, every ordinance of religion was strictly kept. On the evening of Thursday, His Majesty perused a petition from Hámidu-d dín Khán, who stated that he had devoted the sum of 4000 rupees, the price of an elephant, as a propitiatory sacrifice, and begged to be permitted to make over this amount to the Kází Mullá Haidar for distribution. The King granted the request, and, though weak and suffering, wrote with his own hand on the

¹ [From subsequent passages it appears that the Prince was reinstated in his seat on the Emperor's right hand in the thirty-ninth year, and was presented to the government of Kabúl in the forty-second year.]

petition that it was his earnest wish that this sacrifice should lead to a speedy dissolution of his mortal frame.

On the morning of Friday, 28th of Zi-l ka'da (1118 A.H. 21st February, 1707 A.D.), His Majesty performed the consecrated prayers, and, at their conclusion, returned to the sleeping apartments, where he remained absorbed in contemplation of the Deity. Faintness came on, and the soul of the aged monarch hovered on the verge of eternity. Still, in this dread hour, the force of habit prevailed, and the fingers of the dying King continued mechanically to tell the beads of the rosary they held. A quarter of the day later the King breathed his last, and thus was fulfilled his wish to die on a Friday. Great was the grief among all classes of people for the King's death. The shafts of adversity had demolished the edifice of their hopes, and the night of sorrow darkened the joyful noon-day. Holy men prepared to perform the funeral rites, and kept the corpse in the sleeping apartment pending the arrival of Prince Muhammad A'zam, who was away a distance of five-and-twenty *kos* from the camp. The Prince arrived the following day, and it is impossible to describe the grief that was depicted on his countenance; never had anything like it been beheld. On Monday he assisted in carrying the corpse through the hall of justice, whence the procession went on without him. May none ever experience the anguish he felt! People sympathized with the Prince's sorrow, and shed torrents of tears. Such and so deeply-felt were the lamentations for a monarch whose genius only equalled his piety, whose equal the world did not contain, but whose luminous countenance was now hidden from his loving people!

According to the will of the deceased King, his mortal remains were deposited in the tomb constructed during his lifetime near the shrine of the holy Shaikh Zainu-d dín (on whom God have mercy!). "Earth was consigned to earth, but the pure soul survived." This place of sepulture, known by the name of Khuldábád, is distant eight *kos* from Khujista-bunyád (Aurangábád), and

three *kos* from Daulatábád. A red stone three yards in length, two in width, and only a few inches in depth, is placed above the tomb. In this stone was hollowed out, in the shape of an amulet, a cavity for the reception of earth and seeds; and odoriferous herbs there diffuse their fragrance around.

Account of the late King's Family.

[Text, p. 533.] God had given unto 'Álamgír five sons and five daughters, born of different mothers, and all learned in spiritual and worldly matters. Mention has already been made of them; it now remains to give a short notice of each.

The first son was Muhammad Sultán, born of the Nawáb Báí, on the 4th of Ramazán, in the year 1049 A.H. (14th November, 1639 A.D.). His manners were agreeable, he knew the Kurán by heart, and was well acquainted with the Arabic, Turkish and Persian languages. His valour was great. This Prince died in the 21st year of the reign.

The second son, Muhammad Mu'azzam Shah 'Álam Bahádur, was born of the same Nawáb Báí, in the end of Rajab, 1053 A.H. (September, 1643 A.D.). While still a boy he acquired a perfect knowledge of the Kurán, and of the science of reading. When so engaged, his voice is pleasing and melodious. So great is his knowledge of law and of the traditionary sayings of the Prophet, that he is held by all the learned men of the day to be unequalled in this accomplishment. He is deeply read in Arabic, and the fluency and elegance of his diction are the wonder of the very Kurán-readers of Arabia. He knows many sorts of writing, is careful of his time, and a protector of the poor.

Prince Muhammad A'zam, the third son, was born of Dilras Bánú Begam, daughter of Sháfi Nawáz Khán Safawí, on the 12th of Sha'bán, in the year 1063 (28th June, 1653). He was distinguished for his wisdom and excellence. He excelled in many ways, and his innate virtues and sagacity rendered him the indispensable companion of the late King. His death occurred

on the 18th of Rabí'u-l awwal, only three months and twenty days after that of his royal parent. It was marked by deeds of valour.

The next son, Prince Akbar, was born of Begam,¹ on the 12th of Zí-l hijja, in the year 1067 (12th September, 1656 A.D.). He fled from his father, and passed his life in Persia. He died in the 48th year of the reign, but there are two reasons for supposing that his end was a happy one. In the first place, the King remarked that Prince Akbar had always performed his Friday prayers most devoutly; and secondly, his mortal remains lie in the area of the tomb of Imám Rizá (on whom be blessings and praise!).

Muhammad Kám Bakhsh, the fifth and last son, was born on the 10th of Ramazán, in the year 1077 (25th February, 1667). His mother was Báí U'dípúrí. His father instructed him in the word of God, and his knowledge of all known works surpassed that of his brothers. The Turkish language and several modes of writing were familiar to him. He was brave and generous. The death of this Prince took place two years after that of his father.

Account of the Daughters.

Zebu-n Nisá Begam was the eldest of the daughters. She was born of Begam¹ on the 10th of Shawwál, in the year 1048 (5th February, 1639). Owing to the King's teaching, she became thoroughly proficient in knowledge of the Kurán, and received as a reward the sum of 30,000 *ashrafis*. Her learning extended to Arabic, Persian, to the various modes of writing, and to prose and poetry. Many learned men, poets and writers were employed by her, and numerous compilations and original works are dedicated to her. One of these, a translation of the *Tafsír-i Kabír*, called *Zebu-t Tafsír*, was the work of Mullá Safí'u-d dín Ardbelí, attached to the service of this Princess. Her death occurred in the year 1113 (1701 A.D.).

¹ The name is not given.

The second daughter was Zínatu-n Nisá Begam. She was born on the 1st Sha'bán, in the year 1053 (9th October, 1643 A.D.). This Princess is remarkable for her great piety and extreme liberality.

Badru-n Nisá Begam, the third in order, was born of the Nawáb Báí on the 29th Shawwál, in the year 1057 (17th November, 1647 A.D.). She knew the Kurán by heart, was pious and virtuous. Her demise took place on the 27th Zí-l ka'da in the 13th year of the reign.

The fourth daughter, Zubdatu-n Nisá Begam, was born on the 26th Ramazán, in the year 1061 (1st September, 1651 A.D.). Her mother was Begam. This Princess was ever engaged in worship, prayer, and pious works. She was wedded to Sipihr Shukoh, son of Dárá Shukoh. She went to Paradise in the same month as her father, to whom her death was not made known.

Mihru-n Nisá Begam, the fifth daughter, was born of Aurangábádí Mahal on the 3rd of Safar, in the year 1072 (13th September, 1661). She became the spouse of Ízad Bakhsh, son of Murád Bakhsh, and lived until the year 1116.

LXXIV.

FUTUHAT-I 'ĀLAMGIRI

OF

MUHAMMAD MA'SŪM.

[THIS book of "the Victories of Aurangzeb" would seem also to be known as *Wāki'āt-i 'Ālamgiri*. There is a translation of the Preface and of the Table of Contents among Sir H. M. Elliot's papers. From the Preface it appears that the author was Muhammad Ma'sūm, son of Sālih. He was employed in the service of Sultān Shujā', Aurangzeb's brother, "whose generosity is equal to that of the sun." Having obtained a few months' leave of absence, he, with much hesitation and diffidence, determined, as he says, "to write the events of these two or three years, which I have witnessed myself or have heard from others." The Table of Contents gives 55 Chapters. The first relates to Shāh Jahān's conquest of Balkh and Badakhshān. Chapter 52 "relates the murder of Dārā Shukoh by the orders of Aurangzeb in the garden of Khizrábād, by the hands of Shāh Nazar *Chelā*, and of the burial of his remains in the mausoleum of Humáyūn, which is the burial-place of all the murdered princes of this house." Chapter 55 gives the remaining account of Shāh Shujā' and Mu'azzam Khān. The translator adds: "The history is not complete, and it is not known whether the author had written only thus far, or whether the scribe had no time to copy further." As it professes to be only the history of two or three years, it is probably complete. There is, according to Dr. Bird, another work bearing this title written by Srī Dās, a Nāgar Brahman of Gujarāt. "The author was a spectator of the occurrences he details, and was in the service of Shaikhul-Islām, the son of 'Abdu-l Wahhāb Ahmadābādī. This work is very rare."¹]

¹ Bird's *Gujarāt*, p. 89.

LXIV.

TARIEH-I MULK-I ASHAM

17

SHARHAT-D DUN TALASH.

LXXVI.

WAKÁÍ'

OF

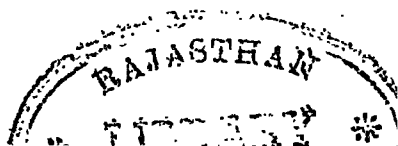
NÍ'AMAT KHÁN.

[THIS is the work of the celebrated wit and satirist, Mirzá Muhammad Ní'amat Khán, whose poetical sobriquet was 'Alí. His writings are much valued in India for the excellence of the style, which is highly florid; but it is very obscure, and is more pregnant with metaphor than meaning. The author was appointed to the office of news-writer by Aurangzeb, and the *Wakái'* is especially devoted to the history of the siege and conquest of Golkonda. The *Makhsanu-l Gharaib* states that his ancestors were physicians of Shíráz, but that he was brought up in Hindústán. He was appointed by Aurangzeb to the *mansab* of *bakáwalí*, with the title of Ní'amat Khán, but he was ungrateful to his patron and satirized him. At length, from improper conduct, he fell into disgrace. "His verses and *ghazals* are not excellent, but his satire is pleasant and pungent." It appears that he had some knowledge of medicine. The *Tárikh-i Chaghataí* also speaks of his strong powers of satire, and states that he received the title of Dánishmand Khán in the first year of the reign of Bahádúr Sháh. He afterwards wrote a *Sháh-náma*, and died at Dehlí in 1122 A.H. (1710 A.D.), in the 4th year of Bahádúr Sháh, or according to another authority, two years earlier. The author is the person referred to in the following passage from "The Critical Essay": "Mirzá Muhammad, generally called Ní'amat Khán Hájí, was an eminent personage, who obtained the title of Dánishmand Khán, and he has recorded

the events of that monarch's (Aurangzeb's) reign as far as the third year. Although his work is written in a very pleasing style, yet it occasionally offends the reader's delicacy by indecent jests and coarse witticisms, in which the author was too much accustomed to indulge." In the 'Catalogue of Jonathan Scott's library, the *Wakái*' is said to be a most curious work, exhibiting anecdotes of private character in a humorous and entertaining style; but, says Sir H. M. Elliot, "I conceive that allusion must be made to the *Mushakát*, which has been lithographed at Lucknow in the same volume as the author's *Ruka'át*." The *Wakái*' has been printed at Bombay in a volume of 319 pages. It was also published at Lucknow in 1843. The Editor of this edition, after lauding the author in the Preface, says that "the work contains very difficult and complicated passages not suited to the comprehension of common people; so, with great pains and diligent research in Persian and Arabic dictionaries, he has supplied marginal notes, turning the most difficult passages into a smooth and easy style."

There is an abstract of a portion of this work among the papers, but it is a short dry summary of no value, either as a specimen of the work, or as a contribution to history.^{1]}

¹ [This article has been compiled from Sir H. M. Elliot's rough sketch and from Persian notes and extracts collected by him.]



LXXVII.

JANG-NÁMA

OF

NÍ'AMAT KHÁN 'ALÍ.

[THIS "Book of War" is another production of Ní'amat Khán or Dánishmand Khán, the writer of the last-noticed work. An abstract of the work prepared for Sir H. M. Elliot shows that it begins with the war carried on by Aurangzeb against the Ráná of U'dípúr, and ends with the accession of Bahádur Sháh. The struggle which followed the death of Aurangzeb occupies a considerable portion of the work. A lithographed edition of the work was printed at Lucknow in 1261 A.H. (1845 A.D.).]



son of the King, Sultán Muhammad Mu'azzam, surnamed Sháh 'Álam. Sometimes the expression *Sa'ádat ta'wam* has also been applied to his second son, Sultán Muhammad A'zam Sháh; but the term *Farzand-i 'Ali Jáh* is only used for the eldest. By the term *Bhrádar-i ná-mihrbán* is meant the King's elder brother, Dárá Shukoh. The expressions *Farzand-záda-i 'aziz* and *Farzand-záda bahádur* are respectively intended for Muhammad Mu'izzu-dín, the eldest son of Sháh 'Álam, and for Muhammad Bedár Bakht Bahádur, the son of Sultán Muhammad A'zam Sháh *Muhtá-púr*. The words *Farzand-záda 'azimu-l kadr* are used for Muhammad 'Azimu-dín, the second son of Sháh 'Álam. The expressions *Umdatul Mulk Madáru-l Muhám* and *án fidci* are peculiar to Asad Khán, who was honoured with the title of *Amtru-l umará* after the death of Sháyista Khán. The term *Khán Fíroz Jang* is the abbreviated title of Ghází'u-dín Khán Fíroz Jang. *Nusrat Jang* is the title of Zú-l Fikár Khán. *Mirzá Bakhshí* is intended for Mirzá Sadru-dín Muhammad Khán Safawí. *Mir-átash* for Tarbiyat Khán, and the single word *Hamid* for Hamídu-dín Khán."

The name of the compiler is not mentioned. This *Kalimát-i Taiyibát* has been lithographed at Lucknow in 8vo., and contains 67 pages, 17 lines to a page. It is in extensive demand.

The *Rakáim-i Karáim* is a somewhat smaller collection, and consists of 48 octavo pages of fifteen lines to a page. It comprises letters written by the Emperor to Mír 'Abdu-l Karím Khán, father of the compiler; and out of compliment to him, the son called the collection by the name of *Rakáim-i Karáim*. The following is extracted from the Preface: "I Saiyid Ashraf Khán Mír Muhammad Husainí do myself the honour of collecting the epistles of the great King 'Álamgír, which were written to my father 'Abdu-l Karím Amír Khán, and of arranging them in the form of a book, which I denominate by the title of *Rakáim-i Karáim*, as that expression is in a manner connected with the name of the late 'Abdu-l Karím. I much regret the loss of most of the Emperor's epistles, which were either despatched

to his father, sons, and officers. They were collected by *Munshu-l Mamálik* Shaikh Abú-l Fath, and were arranged and formed into a book by Sádik, entitled *Ná-tamám*, a resident of Ambála. The work is noticed in the Catalogue of the Mackenzie Collection (vol. ii. p. 135). [There are several Extracts of this work among Sir H. M. Elliot's MSS., and there is a copy in the British Museum.]

LXXIX.

MUNTAKHABU-L LUBÁB

OR

MUHAMMAD HÁSHIM, KHÁFÍ KHÁN.

THIS work, which the author himself styles *Muntakhabu-l Lubáb Muhammad Sháhí*, is frequently called *Tárikh-i Kháfi Khán*. It is a highly esteemed history, commencing with the Invasion of Bábar, A.D. 1519, and concluding with the fourteenth year of the reign of Muhammad Sháh. It contains also an Introduction, giving an outline of the history of the Mughals and Tartars from Noah to Bábar. It is chiefly valuable for containing an entire account of the reign of Aurangzeb, of which, in consequence of that Emperor's well-known prohibition, it is very difficult to obtain a full and connected history. It is, however, to that very prohibition we are indebted for one of the best and most impartial Histories of Modern India.

Muhammad Háshim, also called Háshim 'Alí Khán, is better known as an author by the designation Kháfi Khán. He was a man of a good family residing at Dehlí, and he privately compiled a minute register of all the events of this reign, which he published some years after the monarch's death. His father, Khwája Mír, also an historian, was an officer of high rank in the service of Murád Bakhsh; but after that Prince's confinement and murder, he passed into the employment of Aurangzeb. Muhammad Háshim Khán was brought up in Aurangzeb's service, and was employed by him in political and military situations. He himself gives an interesting account of a mission on which he was sent by the Viceroy of Gujarát to the English at Bombay; on which occasion, while commending them in

other respects, he accuses them of levity in laughing more than befitted the solemnity of political intercourse. [He frequently speaks in his own person, reporting what he had himself seen or heard. In the reign of Farrukh Siyar, he was made a *diwán* by Nizámu-l Mulk (the first of the Nizáms of Haidarábád), and writes with interest and favour in all that concerns that chief. For this reason he is sometimes designated *Nizámu-l Mulk*.]

His work is a complete history of the House of Tímúr, giving first a clear and concise account of that dynasty, from the founder down to the close of Akbar's reign. This portion of the work is condensed, the events having been so fully detailed by previous writers. The great body of the work is occupied with the hundred and thirty years that succeeded the death of Akbar, of which period the author states that the last fifty-three years were written from his own personal observation, and the verbal accounts of men who had watched the occurrences of the time. It is considered probable that he had composed the first half of the work before he was compelled to stop by Aurangzeb's orders, but, being anxious to bring down his history to the close of his own life, he continued his labours in secret. It is represented that Muhammad Sháh. was so pleased with the history that he ennobled the author with the title of Kháfí Khán, the word *kháfí* meaning "concealed." This origin of the designation is the one ascribed by all modern writers, and has been fully accredited by our English historians; but I am disposed to dispute the correctness of this story, and to consider Kháfí as a gentilitious name denoting the country whence his family sprung. Kháf, or more correctly Khwáf, is a district of Khurásán near Naishápúr, and *Khwáfí* so applied is by no means unfamiliar to Asiatics. Thus we have the famous doctor Shaikh Zainu-d dín Khwáfí,¹ Imám Khwáfí, the Khwáfí Saiyids, etc., and what is confirmatory of this opinion is that not only does Ghulám 'Alí Sháh style our author Muhammad Háshim the son of Khwája Mír Khwáfí, but he himself gives his [father's name as Mír Khwáfí. It is not

¹ [See *suprà*, Vol. IV. p. 288.]

impossible that Muhammad Sháh may have indulged in a joke upon the author's original name, and may have expressed himself in some such phrase to the effect that the author was now really Khwáfí. [Mr. Morley, in his Catalogue of the MSS. of the Royal Asiatic Society, adopts the former explanation, and says : "From the fact of the work having been so long concealed (*kháfi*), its author received the title of Kháfí Khán." Colonel Lees, on the other hand, arrived independently at the same conclusion as Sir H. M. Elliot. He shows that the patronymic Khwáfí was one in very common use, and thinks that the interpretation "concealed" "had its origin in an imperfect and somewhat ludicrous misrepresentation of what Kháfí Khán himself says, to which has consequently been given a sense the very opposite of its true meaning. Kháfí Khán certainly says that he kept all these things locked up in a box, but it was the box of his 'memory.'¹ There might have been some reason for Kháfí Khán concealing his work for a year or two after the death of Aurangzeb ; but there seems no sound or apparent reason for his concealing his work for nearly thirty years after that event."²]

The author of the "Critical Essay," translated and published for the Oriental Translation Fund, speaks of this history as containing a detailed and particular statement of various transactions which the author himself had actually witnessed, regretting at the same time that he had never seen it. When Colonel Dow wrote his History of Hindústán, he was obliged to conclude at the end of the tenth year of Aurangzeb's reign, because there were no documents calculated to throw light upon the subsequent period. Mill also complains that we have no complete history of Aurangzeb. This defect has since been remedied by the Honourable Mountstewart Elphinstone, who has judiciously availed himself of Kháfí Khán's history, and thus has been

¹ [See the passage post, under the Eleventh Year of the Reign.]

² [Journal Royal Asiatic Society, n.s. vol. iii. p. 471.]

enabled to give us a complete narrative of the reign of Aurangzeb and his immediate successors. Elphinstone confesses himself indebted to Major A. Gordon, of the Madras Army, for a MS. translation of Kháfí Khán's history down to near the end of Jahángír's reign ; and he expresses his regret (Book X. Ch. I.), "that this excellent translation has not been carried on to the end of the history, which comes down to recent times, and affords the only full and connected account of the whole period which it embraces." Grant Duff acknowledges the same obligation in his History of the Mahrattas (vol. i. p. 118), and states that Mr. Erskine had translated the portion relating to Sháh Jahán's transactions with the Dakhín. [Inquiries have been made for this MS. translation of Major Gordon, but without success.]

[Sir H. M. Elliot had made no provision for the translation of this work. The lengthy translation which follows is entirely the work of the Editor. The Text used is that published in the Bibliotheca Indica ; but two MSS. containing the history of Aurangzeb's reign, one belonging to the Library of the East India Office, and the other to the Royal Asiatic Society, have been occasionally referred to. A greater number of copies has not been sought for, because, according to Colonel Lees, the MSS. differ very much. "Copies (of Kháfí Khán's history) are very numerous; but, strange to say, no two copies that I have met with—and I have compared five apparently very good MSS.—are exactly alike, while some present such dissimilarities as almost to warrant the supposition that they are distinct works, some passages being quite accurate, and others again *entirely* dissimilar. In the copies to be found of other well-known MSS., which have been copied and recopied repeatedly, we find omissions and a variety of readings, but not such broadcast discrepancies as I have found in some of the copies of Kháfí Khán which I have consulted."]

licensed sellers of tobacco, and a traveller must not carry more than enough for his own use. Unlike a Hindú temple, their place of worship was very conspicuous, for tapers of camphor were kept burning there in the day-time. In accordance with their vain tenets, they had set up figures of the Lord Jesus and Mary (on our Prophet and on them be peace!), and other figures in wood, paint and wax, with great gaudiness. But in the churches of the English, who are also Christians, there are no figures set up as idols. The writer of these pages has frequently gone into that place, and has conversed with their learned men, and records what he has observed.

Reports of the unseemly practices of these people reached the Emperor, and when Kásim Khán was sent to Bengal as Governor, he received secret orders to suppress them, and to take their fortress. Kásim Khán accordingly proceeded to Húglí and laid siege to it. The detail of his skilful arrangements and strenuous exertions would be of great length; suffice it to say that, by the aid of boats, and by the advance of his forces both by land and water, he brought down the pride of those people, and subdued their fortress after a siege of three months. Nearly 50,000 *raiyats* of that place came out and took refuge with Kásim Khán. Ten thousand persons, *Firingis* and *raiyats* perished in the course of the siege. Fourteen hundred *Firingis*, and a number of persons who had been made Christians by force, were taken prisoners. Nearly ten thousand persons, innocent *raiyats* and captives of those people, were set free. More than a thousand Musulmán of the Imperial army fell in the course of the siege.

REIGN OF ABÚ-L MUZAFFAR MUHÍU-D DÍN MUHAMMAD
AURANGZEB BAHÁDUR 'ÁLAMGÍR PÁDSHÁH-I GHÁZÍ,
ELEVENTH IN DESCENT FROM AMÍR TIMÚR.

Aurangzeb.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 2.] The attempt to write an epitome of the fifty years' reign of this illustrious monarch is like

trying to measure the waters of the sea in a pitcher; the affairs of the last forty years in particular are a boundless ocean, which authors have shrunk from committing to the thread of narrative. But for all this, the writer of these pages has resolved that to the best of his ability, and with the most active exertion, after the most exhaustive inquiry and complete investigation, he will narrate some events capable of narration which he has heard from the tongues of men advanced in years, which he has fully verified by inquiries from men in office and from the writers of official despatches, and by the evidence of his own eyes during this period of time. Like plagiarists of no ability, he commits one fact out of a hundred to his crude relation, and offers his petition to his intelligent critics and well-informed readers, that if, from his feeble grasp of the thread of narrative, any discrepancies should appear between the earlier and later portions of his work, or if any trifling variations from other histories should appear, they will hold him excused, because in trustworthy books even discrepancies are found arising from varying versions (of the same occurrence).

Birth of Aurangzeb.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 3.] Aurangzeb was born in the year 1028 A.H. (1619 A.D.) at Dhúd,¹ which is on the frontiers of the *súba* of Ahmadábád and Málwá, whilst his father was *súbadár* of the Dakhin.

Illness of Sháh Jahán.

[vol. ii. p. 4.] On the 7th Zí-l hijja, 1067 A.H. (Sept. 8, 1657 A.D.), (the Emperor Sháh Jahán, called after his death) *Firdaus makání*, was attacked with illness, which turned out

¹ The "Dohud" of Thornton, "one hundred miles W. of Ujjain, and seventy-seven N.E. of Baroda."

to be strangury. This produced much derangement in the government of the country, and in the peace of the people. Dárá Shukoh looked upon himself as heir to the throne, and even in the time of his father's health he had held the reins of government. But he had fallen into ill repute through having imbibed the heretical tenets of the *Súfis*. He had declared infidelity (*kufr*) and Islám to be twin brothers, and had written treatises on this subject; he had also associated himself with *Bráhmans* and *Gosains*. Seizing the opportunity (of his father's illness), he took the direction of State affairs into his own hands, and having exacted from the ministers their pledges not to publish what passed in council, he closed the roads of Bengal, Ahmadábád, and the Dakhin against messengers and travellers. But when the intelligence of his officious meddling had spread abroad through the provinces by the *dák-chauki* (post), a strong adverse feeling was shown by the *amirs*, *zamindárs*, and *raiyats*, and also by the unruly spirits who sought for a field of action. Turbulent men from every corner and quarter, and men eager for a fray, in every province and country, raised their heads in expectation of strife.

When intelligence of these proceedings reached Muhammad Shujá' in Bengal, and Muhammad Murád Bakhsh in Ahmadábád, each of them, vying with the other, had coins struck and the *khutba* read in his own name. Shujá', with a large force, marched against Bihár and Patna, and the news of his movements was carried to the capital. Sháh Jahán had from the very first shown great partiality and affection for Dárá Shukoh, and generally, in all matters, had done his best to gratify his son. Now that he was ill, and no longer master of himself, he was more than ever inclined to gratify Dárá and yield to his wishes. Dárá Shukoh looked with an eye of apprehension upon the talents of Prince Aurangzeb, and was made uneasy by the vigour and wisdom which he displayed. So, by various arguments, he induced his father to recall to Court the nobles and generals who were engaged with Aurangzeb in the siege of

Bijápúr. When this evil news became known, the prosecution and completion of the siege of Bijápúr was prevented. Aurangzeb made an arrangement with Sikandar 'Adil Sháh of Bijápúr, and accepted from him a promise to pay a tribute of a *kror* of rupees in cash and goods as the price of peace. He then raised the siege of Bijápúr, and proceeded to Khujista-bunyád (Aurangábád). After this he learned that Dárá Shukoh, with the intention of getting possession of the treasure of Sháh Jahán, had left Dehlí, and had gone to Ágra.

Defeat of Muhammad Shujá'.

[vol. ii. p. 5.] On the 4th Rabí'u-l awwal, 1068 A.H. (1st December, 1657), Dárá Shukoh sent Rája Jai Singh, and several other *amírs*, with an army under the command (of his son) Sulaimán Shukoh against Muhammad Shujá'. When the Rája with the vanguard arrived near Benares,¹ Muhammad Shujá' prepared his forces for battle, and having got possession of several boats, he advanced to give battle to the Rája, and halted a *kos* and a half from him. Next day the Rája moved from his ground early in the morning before sunrise, and while Muhammad Shujá' was yet asleep under the influence of wine, the Rája attacked him. Roused from his slumber, the incautious and careless Prince found that all was lost. He made a hurried flight with some of his servants and companions to a boat, and made his escape. All his camp and treasure, artillery, and *matériel*, was plundered, and fell into the hands of the Rája. After this defeat, Muhammad Shujá' did not return to Bengal, and that country fell into the possession of the officers of Dárá Shukoh. A number of his servants and companions were taken prisoners, and were carried off by the Rája to Ágra. Dárá Shukoh had them paraded round the city; afterwards he put some of them to death, and of many others he had a hand amputated.

¹ "At the village of Bahádurpúr, on the side of the Ganges."—*'Alamgir-náma*.

to be stranguery. This produced much derangement in the government of the country, and in the peace of the people. Dará Shukoh looked upon himself as heir to the throne, and even in the time of his father's health he had held the reins of government. But he had fallen into ill repute through having imbibed the heretical tenets of the *Súfis*. He had declared infidelity (*kuf*) and Islám to be twin brothers, and had written treatises on this subject; he had also associated himself with *Bráhmans* and *Gosains*. Seizing the opportunity (of his father's illness), he took the direction of State affairs into his own hands, and having exacted from the ministers their pledges not to publish what passed in council, he closed the roads of Bengal, Ahmadábád, and the Dakhin against messengers and travellers. But when the intelligence of his officious meddling had spread abroad through the provinces by the *dák-chauki* (post), a strong adverse feeling was shown by the *amirs*, *zamíndárs*, and *raiyats*, and also by the unruly spirits who sought for a field of action. Turbulent men from every corner and quarter, and men eager for a fray, in every province and country, raised their heads in expectation of strife.

When intelligence of these proceedings reached Muhammad Shujá' in Bengal, and Muhammad Murád Bakhsh in Ahmadábád, each of them, vying with the other, had coins struck and the *khutba* read in his own name. Shujá', with a large force, marched against Bihár and Patna, and the news of his movements was carried to the capital. Sháh Jahán had from the very first shown great partiality and affection for Dará Shukoh, and generally, in all matters, had done his best to gratify his son. Now that he was ill, and no longer master of himself, he was more than ever inclined to gratify Dará and yield to his wishes. Dará Shukoh looked with an eye of apprehension upon the talents of Prince Aurangzeb, and was made uneasy by the vigour and wisdom which he displayed. So, by various arguments, he induced his father to recall to Court the nobles and generals who were engaged with Aurangzeb in the siege of

Bijápúr. When this evil news became known, the prosecution and completion of the siege of Bijápúr was prevented. Aurangzeb made an arrangement with Sikandar 'Ádil Sháh of Bijápúr, and accepted from him a promise to pay a tribute of a *kror* of rupees in cash and goods as the price of peace. He then raised the siege of Bijápúr, and proceeded to Khujista-bunyád (Aurangábád). After this he learned that Dará Shukoh, with the intention of getting possession of the treasure of Sháh Jahán, had left Dehlí, and had gone to Ágra.

Defeat of Muhammad Shujá'.

[vol. ii. p. 5.] On the 4th Rabí'u-l awwal, 1068 A.H. (1st December, 1657), Dará Shukoh sent Rája Jai Singh, and several other *amirs*, with an army under the command (of his son) Sulaimán Shukoh against Muhammad Shujá'. When the Rája with the vanguard arrived near Benares,¹ Muhammad Shujá' prepared his forces for battle, and having got possession of several boats, he advanced to give battle to the Rája, and halted a *kos* and a half from him. Next day the Rája moved from his ground early in the morning before sunrise, and while Muhammad Shujá' was yet asleep under the influence of wine, the Rája attacked him. Roused from his slumber, the incautious and careless Prince found that all was lost. He made a hurried flight with some of his servants and companions to a boat, and made his escape. All his camp and treasure, artillery, and *matériel*, was plundered, and fell into the hands of the Rája. After this defeat, Muhammad Shujá' did not return to Bengal, and that country fell into the possession of the officers of Dará Shukoh. A number of his servants and companions were taken prisoners, and were carried off by the Rája to Ágra. Dará Shukoh had them paraded round the city; afterwards he put some of them to death, and of many others he had a hand amputated.

¹ "At the village of Bahádurpúr, on the side of the Ganges."—*'Alamgir-nama*.

March against Murád Bakhsh.

[vol. ii. p. 6.] ¹ On the same day that Sulaimán Shukoh and Rája Jai Singh were sent against Muhammad Shujá', Mahárája Jaswant Singh and Kásim Khán, with the royal artillery and with several thousand horse and some guns of their own, and attended by several *amirs* of repute, were ordered to march to Ahmadábád and the Dakhin. Their instructions were that they were to ascertain the true state of affairs, and if Muhammad Murád Bakhsh should move from Ahmadábád, Kásim Khán ² was to advance with several *amirs* and some guns to meet and receive him. After receiving intelligence of Prince (Murád Bakhsh's) departure from the Dakhin, Mahárája Jaswant Singh was to act according to circumstances. If Prince Aurangzeb should begin to move from the Dakhin, the Mahárája and Kásim Khán were to lead all the royal forces across his line of march, and give him battle when opportunity offered. Dará Shukoh made the province of Málwá his own *iktá'*, and devoted the whole of the revenues to the payment of his officers, so that, their hopes being excited by the riches of that country, they might heartily support each other, and strengthen the army in prosecuting the war.

It also came to hearing that Dará Shukoh had imprisoned Ísá Beg, the *takil* of Aurangzeb, and had sequestered his house.

Proceedings of Murád Bakhsh.

[vol. ii. p. 7.] It was learned from the news-letters (*akhbár*) of Ahmadábád that Prince Muhammad Murád Bakhsh had struck coin and caused the *khutba* to be read in his name. He had also sent Khwája Sháhbáz, a eunuch, with an army and necessary siege train for the reduction of the fort of Surat, and the occupation of the port. Khwája Sháhbáz, on reaching Surat, invested the place,

¹ This statement begins with the words, "The news arrived," showing that the author writes from the side of Aurangzeb. This, or a phrase of like meaning, is often used.

² "Kásim Khán's special duty was to act against Murád Bakhsh, and remove him from Gujarát, and to support Jaswant Singh."—*A'lamgir-náma*, p. 33.

and after driving mines and blowing up bastions and forts, he reduced the fortress. Then he called together the merchants of the place, and demanded from them a contribution of fifteen *lacs* of rupees. After much parley, the chiefs of the merchants agreed to pay six *lacs* of rupees on behalf of their body, and took a bond for the money under the seal of Muhammad Murád Bakhsh, and the bail of Khwája Sháhbáz. * * * *

Movements of Aurangzeb.

[vol. ii. p. 9.] About this time Mír Jumla arrived, who had been sent by Sháh Jahán before his illness to support Aurangzeb, and he acted as a trusted friend and faithful counsellor. But Aurangzeb deemed it expedient, in order to avoid reproach, to leave Mír Jumla as a prisoner at Daulatábád, while he himself marched against his enemies. As a matter of prudence and expediency, Aurangzeb wrote repeatedly and in the most affectionate terms to Muhammad Murád Bakhsh, and offered him his congratulations. In his letters he said, "I have not the slightest liking for or wish to take any part in the government of this deceitful and unstable world, my only desire is that I may make the pilgrimage to the temple of God. But whatever course you have resolved upon in opposition to the good-for-nothing and unjust conduct of our disgraceful brother (*birádar-i be-shukoh*), you may consider me your sincere friend and ally. Our revered father is still alive, and I think that we two brothers should devote ourselves to his service, and to the punishment of the wilfulness of that haughty one and the presumption and conceit of that apostate. If it be possible, and we are permitted to see our father again, after exerting ourselves to put down that strife and insurrection, we will entreat the King to forgive the faults of our brother, who has involuntarily been impelled to such a course of action. After setting the government in order, and punishing the enemies of the State, our brother must be reclaimed and he must go to pay a visit to the holy temple. It is impossible that

you should allow of no delay in your movements, but should march at once to chastise that presumptuous infidel Jaswant Singh. You must consider me as having arrived on your side of the Nerbadda, and must look upon my numerous army and powerful artillery as the means of securing your victory. You must know that I make the Word of God my bail for this treaty and compact, and you must by all means banish suspicion from your mind."

Aurangzeb arrived in Burhánpúr on the 25th Jumáda-l awwal, (1068 A.H., 19th February, 1658 A.D.), * * and remained there a month attending to necessary arrangements, and obtaining accurate intelligence. On the 25th Jumáda-l ákhir he set out on his march to the capital. * * Jaswant Singh knew nothing of the approach of the great army of the two brothers until they came within seven *kos* of Ujjain, when Rájá Sheoráj, commandant of Mándú, obtained information of their having crossed at the ford of Akbarpúr, and wrote the particulars to the Mahárája. Kásim Khán, on hearing that Prince Murád Bakhsh had left Ahmadábád, went forth in haste to welcome him. But when he learnt that the Prince had gone eighteen *kos* out of the way to meet Aurangzeb, he turned back disappointed. Dará Shukoh's men, who were in the fortress of Dhár, when they beheld the irresistible forces of the two brothers, took to flight and joined the Mahárája.

Rájá Jaswant Singh, with Kásim Khán, on the approach of Prince Aurangzeb, advanced a march to meet him, and pitched his camp at the distance of one *kos* and a half. Aurangzeb then sent a Bráhmaṇ called Kab, who had a great reputation as a Hindí poet and master of language, to the Rájá with this message: "My desire is to visit my father.¹ I have no desire for war. It is therefore desirable that you should either accompany me, or keep away from my route, so that no conflict may arise, or blood be shed." The Rájá did not acquiesce in this proposition, and sent an impertinent answer. Next day

¹ These few words represent the meaning of a great many.

both sides prepared for battle. * * * On the 22nd Rajab, 1068 A.H. (20th April, 1658 A.D.), the battle was joined.¹ * * * Every minute the dark ranks of the infidel Rájput̃s were dispersed by the prowess of the followers of Islám. Dismay and great fear fell upon the heart of Jaswant, their leader, and he, far from acting like one of the renowned class of rájas, turned his back upon the battle, and was content to bring upon himself everlasting infamy. * * Kásim Khán also, with other Imperial officers and the forces of Dárá Shukoh, took to flight. Shouts of victory arose from the men of Aurangzeb, and all the artillery, elephants, treasure, camels, baggage, animals, and equipments of the enemy, after being rifled and plundered, came into the possession of Aurangzeb. * * On the 27th Rajab the Prince marched from the borders of Ujjain, and on the 28th pitched his camp in the territories of Gwálior, * * and on the 1st of Ramazán crossed the Chambal.

Condition of the Emperor Sháh Jahán.

[vol. ii. p. 20.] The hot climate of Ágra did not agree with the Emperor, and as he had only slightly improved in health, he set off for Dehlí. Dárá Shukoh from the first disapproved of this removal, and spoke against it. Now when he had heard of the defeat of Rája Jaswant Singh, he was bewildered, and so worried his father with complaints and importunities, that he prevailed upon him to return. With the greatest urgency he made preparations for the coming conflict, and began his march with all the great nobles of his father's suite, with the old and newly raised followers of his own amounting to about 60,000 men, and with a strong train of artillery. * * It is said that the Emperor repeatedly forbade the march of Dárá Shukoh, and said that nothing would come of it but further strife and contention between the brothers. He conceived the idea of setting out himself to expostulate with the two brothers, and bring about a

¹ "Near Dharmatpúr."—*A'lamgir-náma*.

peace, and gave orders that preparations should be made for his journey. But Dárá Shukoh was averse to this, and being supported in his representations by Khán-Jahán Sháyista Khán, he diverted his father from his purpose. 'It is also recorded that before the news arrived of Rája Jaswant's defeat, and before the two armies of the Dakhin and Ahunadábád had united, the Emperor desired to go towards them, and frequently consulted Khán-Jahán about it. Khán-Jahán was maternal uncle of Aurangzeb, and was well disposed towards him. He did not approve of the Emperor's design, but spoke of the excellent character and intelligence of Aurangzeb out of the hearty kindness he felt for him. When the intelligence arrived of the defeat of Rája Jaswant Singh, the Emperor was very angry with Khán-Jahán for the part he had taken. He struck him on the breast with his staff, and refused to see him for some two or three days. But his old feeling of kindness revived. He again consulted him about going forth to meet his sons; but the Khán gave the same advice as before, so that, notwithstanding the preparations, the intended journey ended in nothing.

Defeat of Dárá Shukoh by Aurangzeb.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 22.] On the 16th of Sha'bán, (1068 A.H., 10th May, 1658 A.D.), Dárá Shukoh sent Khalilu-llah Khán, and * * with some of the Imperial and his own forces, as an advanced force to Dholpúr, to make a stand there, and secure the fords of the Chambal. He himself remained outside the city (of Ágra) waiting for the arrival of Sulaimán Shukoh, who was expected to return from his operations against Shujá'. But as Sulaimán did not arrive, he was obliged to start on his march to meet and engage his two brothers. On the 6th Ramazán, near Samúgarh, the two armies encamped about half a *kos* distant from each other. The forces which had been sent to guard the fords had effected nothing at all. Next day Dárá Shukoh busied himself in distributing his forces, putting his guns in position, and arranging

his train of elephants. He advanced a little and took up a position in a wide plain, presenting a front nearly two *kos* in width. The day was so hot that many strong men died from the heat of their armour and want of water. Aurangzeb also rode forth, but as he saw no advantage in being precipitate and beginning the fight, he took his stand about a cannon-shot distance, and waited for his adversary to commence the attack. But, as he made no sign beyond a parade of his forces, after evening prayer, Aurangzeb encamped in the same position, but gave orders for a strict watch being kept until morning. Next morning¹ Aurangzeb * * distributed his forces (in the following manner). * * Muhammad Murád Bakhsh, with his famous *zardárs*, took his place with the left wing. * * Having made his arrangements, he kept with him a party of bold and trusty men, of all tribes, and placing Prince Muhammad A'zam behind, in the *horda*, he went forth to battle. * *

The action began with discharges of rockets and guns, and thousands of arrows flew from both sides. Sipihir Shukoh, the leader of Dárá's advanced force, in concert with Rustam Khán Dakhiní, with ten or twelve thousand horse, made an attack upon Aurangzeb's guns. Driving back all before them, they pressed forward to Prince Muhammad Sultán, who was with Aurangzeb's advance, and great confusion arose in this part of the army. Just at this juncture, by luck, a ball from the enemy's own guns struck the elephant of the brave Rustam Khán, and stretched the animal dead upon the ground. This accident intimidated Rustam Khán, and he withdrew from his attack upon the advanced force, and fell upon the right wing under Bahádur Khán Koka. This commanding officer made a vigorous resistance; but forces were continually brought to support Rustam Khán, and the battle grew warm. Bahádur Khán at length received a wound which compelled him to retire, and many were killed

¹ Or, as the author expresses it, "When the sun, the mighty monarch of the golden crown, with his world-conquering sword, rose bright and refulgent from his orient rising-place; and when the king of the starry host put his head out of the window of the horizon."

and wounded on both sides. Aurangzeb's forces wavered, and seemed about to give way, when Islám Khán and others brought reinforcements to Bahádur. At the same time Shaikh Mír and others, with the *allamsh*, came up to support the right wing, and to oppose Rustam Khán and the forces under Sipilr Shukoh. A desperate contest was maintained. * * but at length Rustam Khán was defeated, and Sipilr Shukoh also was hurled back.

Dará Shukoh, being informed of the repulse of Sipilr Shukoh and Rustam Khán, led the centre of his army, composed of not less than 20,000 horse, against the victorious wing. He advanced with great bravery and firmness from behind his own guns against the guns and the advanced force which had won the victory. He was received with such heavy discharges of rockets, guns and muskets, and with such fierce charges from his brave opponents, that he was compelled to retire.

Dará next made an attack upon Prince Murád Bakhsh, and led a force like the waves of the sea against that lion of the field of battle. The conflict was raging when Khalilu-llah Khán, the leader of the enemy's vanguard, led three or four thousand Uzbek archers against the elephant of Murád Bakhsh. The arrows rained down from both sides, and confusion arose in the ranks of Murád Bakhsh, so that many were overpowered with fear and fell back. The elephant of Murád Bakhsh was about to turn away covered with wounds from arrows, spears, and battle-axes, but his brave rider ordered a chain to be cast round his legs. At this moment Rájá Rám Singh, a man highly renowned among the Rájputs for his bravery, wound a string of costly pearls round his head, and with his men clothed in yellow, as bent upon some desperate action, charged upon the elephant of Murád Bakhsh, and crying out defiantly, "What, do you contest the throne with Dará Shukoh?" hurled his javelin against Murád Bakhsh. Then he cried out fiercely to the elephant-driver, "Make the elephant kneel down!" Murád Bakhsh having warded off his assault, shot him in the forehead with an arrow

and killed him. The Rájputs who followed that daring fellow mostly fell dead around the feet of the Prince's elephant, and made the ground as yellow as a field of saffron.

It is related in the *Abangir-nama* that at this point of the battle Aurangzeb came to the support of his brother, and helped to repulse the enemy. But the author of this work has heard from his father (who was present in the battle in the suite of the Prince, and remained with him to the end of the engagement, although he was severely wounded), and from other trustworthy informants: that the Prince, after repeatedly making inquiries and learning of the progress of the enemy, was desirous of going to the support of his brother. But Shaikh Mir dissuaded him, and advised him to remain patient where he was. Meanwhile the battle raged fiercely, and deeds of valour and devotion were displayed on all sides.

The fierce Rájputs, by their energy and desperate fighting, made their way to the centre (which was under the command of Aurangzeb himself). One of them, Rája Rúp Singh Rúthor, sprang from his horse, and, with the greatest daring, having washed his hands of life, cut his way through the ranks of his enemies sword in hand, cast himself under the elephant on which the Prince was riding, and began to cut the girths which secured the *howda*. The Prince became aware of this daring attempt, and in admiration of the man's bravery, desired his followers to take the rash and fearless fellow alive, but he was cut to pieces.

While this was going on, Rustam Khán again advanced against his brave opponents, and the fight grew hotter. Rustam, who was the mainstay of Dárá's army, Rája Sattar Sál, and * * were killed in this conflict. Dárá, seeing so many of his noble and heroic followers killed and wounded, was much affected. He became distracted and irresolute, and knew not what to do. Just at this time a rocket struck the *howda* of his elephant. This alarmed and discouraged him so much that he dismounted in haste from his elephant, without even waiting to put on his slippers, and he then without arms

mounted a horse. The sight of this ill-timed alarm, and of the empty *howda*, after he had changed his elephant for a horse, disheartened the soldiers. The men lost heart in sympathy with their leader, and began to think of flight. Just at this time, as one of his attendants was girding him with a quiver, a cannon-ball carried off the man's right hand and he fell dead. The sight of this struck terror into the hearts of those around him; some of them dispersed, and others fled from the fatal field. Dará, beholding the dispersion of his followers, and the repulse of his army, prizing life more than the hope of a crown, turned away and fled. Sipihir Shukoh also, at this time, joined his father with some of his followers,¹ and they all fled in despair towards Agra. A great victory was thus gained. Shouts of exultation followed, and the young princes offered their congratulations.

Aurangzeb descended from his elephant to return thanks for this signal victory, surpassing all expectation, and, after performing his devotions, he proceeded to the tent of Dará Shukoh. Everything had been ransacked except this tent and the artillery, so he took possession of the tent, which thus received a new honour. He bestowed presents and praises upon the princes and his devoted nobles, delighting them with his commendation and eulogy.

Prince Murád Bakhsh had received many arrow wounds in his face and body. Aurangzeb first applied to them the salve of praise and compliment, and then had them dressed by skilful surgeons. To the internal wounds of that weak-minded² Prince he applied the balm of thousands of praises and congratulations upon (his approaching) sovereignty. Then he wiped away the tears and blood from his brother's cheek with the sleeve of condolence. It is said that the *howda* in which Murád Bakhsh rode was stuck as thick with arrows as a porcupine with

¹ The '*Amal-i Sâlih*' says they were only thirty or forty in number. The same work gives a long and laboured account of this battle, but it is not so circumstantial as that of Khâfi Khân.

² *Sâdah-lauh*, "tabula rasa."

quills, so that the ground of it was not visible. This *howda* was kept in the store-house in the fort of the capital as a curiosity, and as a memorial of the bravery of that descendant of the house of Tímúr, and there it remained till the time of the Emperor Farrukh Siyar. * *

Dará Shukoh, with two thousand horse, many of whom were wounded, and without baggage, arrived at Ágra in the evening without torches. He proceeded to his own house, and shame and remorse for his ruined fortune would not allow him to visit his father. The Emperor sent for him, professing a desire to talk and take counsel with him, but he excused himself. In the same night, after the third watch, he went out of the city towards Dehlí, intending to proceed to Láhore. He took with him Sipihr Shukoh, his wife and daughter and several attendants. He also carried off on elephants, camels and mules, his jewels, gold, silver, necessaries, and whatsoever he could. In the third day's march he was joined by nearly 5000 horse, and some nobles and equipments, which were sent after him by his father.

After resting a while from his victory, Aurangzeb addressed a letter to the Emperor [*recounting what had passed*], and excusing himself by referring all to the will of God. Soon afterwards, Muhammad Amín Khán, and Khán-Jahán, son of Ásraf Khán

his personal attendants to Aurangzeb. The word "*Ālamgīr*" immediately attracted notice. It was deemed a good omen, and called forth congratulations. Aurangzeb then sent Prince Muhammad Sultān to restore order in the city, to rescue it from the violence and oppression of the army and the mob, and to give peace to the people. To Khān-Jahān, son of Āsaf Khān, he gave the title of *Amīru-l umarā*, * * and many of the other nobles who had come to wait upon him were rewarded with increase of rank and presents of money and jewels. * *

Confinement of Shāh Jahān.

[vol. ii. p. 32.] The authors of the three '*Ālamgīr-nāmas*' have each described the seclusion of the Emperor Shāh Jahān by the will of Aurangzeb, but 'Ākil Khān Khāfi, in his *Wāki'āt-i 'Ālamgīrī* has entered fully and particularly into matters, and has described the investment of the fort (of Āgra), the confinement of Shāh Jahān, the closing up of the waters (*band-namūdān-i āb*),¹ and the somewhat bitter correspondence which passed. From this it appears that on the 17th Ramazān, 1068 (8th June, 1658), Aurangzeb directed Prince Muhammad Sultān to go into the fort of Āgra, and to place some of his trusty followers in charge of the gates. Afterwards he was directed to wait upon his grandfather, to deliver to him some agreeable and disagreeable messages respecting his retirement, and to cut off from him all means of intercourse with the outside. Accordingly Prince Muhammad Sultān went in and acted according to his instructions. He took from the Emperor all power and choice in matters of rule and government, and placed him in seclusion.

Muhammad Ja'far Khān was sent to secure Mewāt, which formed part of the *jāgīr* of Dārā Shukoh. Twenty-six *lacs* of rupees, with some other requirements of royalty, were presented to Murād Bakhsh. On the 22nd Ramazān Aurangzeb made

¹ Probably figurative. Bringing matters to a crisis.

his entry into Agra, and took up his abode in the house of Dárá Shukoh. * *

Flight of Dárá Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 33.] When Dárá Shukoh reached the vicinity of Dehlí, the close pursuit of Aurangzeb's forces, and the apprehension of being shut up in the city, determined him to remain outside. There he employed himself in gathering money and supplies. Whatever he found in the royal stores, or in the houses of the *amírs*, he laid hands upon. He remained some days awaiting the arrival of Sulaimán Shukoh, who, after his defeat of Shujá', was wandering about in Bihár and Patna in a state of perplexity—for the news of the success of Aurangzeb frightened him from going to join his father. Dárá, perceiving that if he remained longer he would fall a prisoner into the harsh hands of his brother, marched off towards the Panjáb with the new army which had gathered round him, numbering about 10,000 horse. Every day he wrote letters to Sulaimán Shukoh, describing his wretched condition and his approaching arrival at Sirhind and Láhore. He also wrote conciliatory letters to the *faujdárs* and governors of the Panjáb, in which he mingled promises and threats. He repeatedly wrote to his father, lamenting his inability to wait upon him, through his adverse fortune and the unhappy dissension between the two brothers and their respective adherents.

Aurangzeb also frequently resolved to go and see his father, to make excuses, and to seek forgiveness of the offences of which he had been guilty, by no choice of his own, but through the divine decrees of fate, and the unseemly conduct of his brother. But he knew that his father's feelings were strongly in favour of Dárá Shukoh, and that under the influence of destiny he lost all self-control, so he determined that it was better not to pay the visit. Instead of going himself, he directed Prince Muhammad A'zam to go and wait upon the Emperor with many apologies. The Prince accordingly presented 500 *ashrafs* and

4000 rupees; and the Emperor, half in joy, half in anger, took the Prince to his bosom, and shed tears over him as he embraced him.

Aurangzeb next turned his attention to the pursuit of Dára Shukoh. He left Prince Muhammad Sultán with * * * to attend upon the Emperor, and he appointed Islám Khán to be the Prince's director (*atálík*). * * On the 22nd Ramazán he started in pursuit of his brother. On his way he learnt that Dára had left Dehlí on the 21st Ramazán, and had gone towards Láhore. * * * He sent Khán-daurán to supersede Saiyid Kásim Bárha in command of the fortress of Alláhábád. If the Saiyid gave over the fortress, he was to be treated with courtesy and sent to Aurangzeb; if he refused to yield, Khán-daurán was directed to invest the fortress, and to call for reinforcements if necessary.

Sháh Jahán, while in confinement, wrote secretly to Mahábat Khán, Governor of Kábul [*a long letter, in which he said*]: "Dára Shukoh is proceeding to Láhore. There is no want of money in Láhore, there is abundance of men and horses in Kábul, and no one equal to Mahábat Khán in valour and generalship. The Khán ought therefore to hasten with his army to Láhore, and, having there joined Dára Shukoh, they might march against the two undutiful sons, to inflict upon them the due reward of their misconduct, and to release the Emperor, the Sáhib Kirán-i sání, from prison." * *

Imprisonment of Murád Bakhsh.

[vol. ii. p. 37.] This simple-minded¹ Prince had some good qualities; but in the honesty of his heart and trustfulness of his disposition, he had never given heed to the saying of the great man (Sa'dí) that two kings cannot be contained in one kingdom. He was deluded by flattering promises, and by the presents of money, etc., which had been sent to him, but they were deposits

¹ The *'Alamgir-náma* calls him "stupid and ignorant."

or loans rather than gifts. * * * On the 4th Shawwál, while they were encamped at Mathurá, twenty-five kos from Ágra, Murád Bakhsh was made prisoner by a clever trick, which was aided by fortune, and into the particulars of which it is needless to enter. Chains were placed upon his feet. That same night four elephants with covered *howdas* were sent off in four different directions, each under two or three *sardárs* and an escort. The elephant which was sent to the fort of Salím-garh carried the prisoner Murád Bakhsh. This precaution was taken lest the partisans of the Prince should fall upon the *howda* in which he was confined. All the treasure and effects of Murád Bakhsh, not one *dám* or *díram* of which was plundered, was confiscated.

Flight of Dárá Shukoh. Aurangzeb ascends the Throne.

[vol. ii. p. 39.] Dárá Shukoh, in his progress through the Panjáb, broke up, burnt or sunk the boats where he crossed the rivers. * * It was reported that upon his arrival at Láhore he had seized upon nearly a *kror* of treasure, together with all the stores belonging to the Government and the royal *amirs*, and that he was engaged in enlisting soldiers and collecting munitions of war. On hearing this, Aurangzeb, not caring to enter the fortress of Dehli, encamped in the garden of Ághar-ábád, now called Shálámár, and he sent on an advanced force, under Bahá-dur Khán, in pursuit of Dárá. On the 1st Zí-l ka'da, 1068 A.H. (22nd July, 1658 A.D.), after saying his prayers, and at an auspicious time, he took his seat on the throne of the Empire of Hindústán, without even troubling himself about placing his name on the coinage or having it repeated in the *khutba*. * * Such matters as titles, the *khutba*, the coinage, and the sending of presents to other sovereigns, were all deferred to his second taking possession of the throne.

Sulaimán Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 41.] Intelligence now arrived that Sulaimán Shukoh had crossed the Ganges, and intended to proceed by

promises and oaths, that after bringing the country into subjection they would divide it between them in a brotherly way. These deceitful and treacherous letters deceived Shujā, and although he had received kind and assuring letters and promises from Aurangzeb, the foolish fellow busied himself in collecting forces, and marched from Dacca to the assistance of Dara Shukoh, with a strong army and a large force of artillery. It was Dara Shukoh's desire to celebrate his accession to the throne at Lahore, and to have his name placed upon the coins and repeated in the *shikha*; but the power of the sword of Aurangzeb prevented this. The *zamindars* and *jaydars* of name and station, hearing of the decline of the fortunes of Dara and the rise of the fortunes of Aurangzeb, forsook the former.

Raja Jaswant.

[vol. ii. p. 12.] Raja Jaswant, when he fled from the encounter with Aurangzeb, betook himself to his own country. Women, especially Rājput women, have often a higher sense of honour than men; and for this reason will rather bear the torture of fire than suffer disgrace. Raja Jaswant's chief wife was a daughter of Raja Chhatar Sal. She strongly condemned her husband's conduct, and refused to sleep with him. In conversation she would express her censure both by words and hints. The Raja was stung to the quick by her reproaches, so he sent a letter by his *wizir* to Aurangzeb, asking forgiveness of his offences. After his apology was accepted, he proceeded to Court, where he was graciously received, presented with many gifts and confirmed in his *mansab*.

Dara Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 44.] Dara Shukoh's newly-raised army had been greatly reduced by desertion, and he was alarmed at the approach of Aurangzeb; so he fled with three or four thousand horse and a few guns towards Thatta and Multan. He left behind Dara Khan to obstruct as much as possible the passage of the rivers

way of Hardwar, to join his father. The *Amir-ul-umara* and *
 were sent off to intercept him by forced marches. On the 7th
 Zi-l'ka'da Aurangzeb began his march to Lahore in pursuit of
 Dara. * The reporters now sent in the news that when
 Sulaiman Shukoh was approaching Hardwar, he heard that a
 force had been sent against him, and he had consequently turned
 off to the mountains of Srinagar. His expectations of assistance
 from the *zamindars* of this country had not been fulfilled; so
 some of his adherents had parted from him, and were repairing
 to Aurangzeb. There remained with him altogether not more
 than five hundred horsemen; so, not deeming it prudent to
 stop longer there, he went off in the direction of Allahabad.
 Before reaching that city his guard¹ (*ardak*) fell ill, and
 parted from him with more of his followers. Not more than
 two hundred now remained with him, so he returned to the
Zamindar of Srinagar. His road passed through the *jagir* of
 the Princess Kudsia. He extorted two *lacs* of rupees from her
 manager, plundered his house, carried the man off prisoner, and
 afterwards put him to death. The remainder of his men now
 deserted him, and there remained only Muhammad Shah Koka and
 a few attendants and servants. The *Zamindar* of Srinagar covered
 the money and jewels that he had with him, and kept him as
 a sort of prisoner in his fort. After this had been reported,
Amir-ul-umara, who had been sent to intercept Sulaiman Shukoh,
 was directed to send him prisoner in charge of a detachment,
 and to go himself to Agra to Prince Muhammad Sultan.

Dara Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 42.] After leaving Lahore, Dara Shukoh busied
 himself in raising forces, and in winning the hearts of the dwellers
 in those parts. He made promises and engagements in writing
 to the *zamindars* and *rajputs*, to conciliate them and augment
 his army. So he collected nearly twenty thousand horsemen.
 He wrote to his brother Shuja, and made the most solemn

promises and oaths, that after bringing the country into subjection they would divide it between them in a brotherly way. These deceitful and treacherous letters deceived Shujā, and although he had received kind and assuring letters and promises from Aurangzeb, the foolish fellow busied himself in collecting forces, and marched from Dacca to the assistance of Dara Shukoh, with a strong army and a large force of artillery. It was Dara Shukoh's desire to celebrate his accession to the throne at Lahore, and to have his name placed upon the coins and repeated in the *khubta*; but the power of the sword of Aurangzeb prevented this. The *zamindars* and *faujddars* of name and station, hearing of the decline of the fortunes of Dara and the rise of the fortunes of Aurangzeb, forsook the former.

Rāja Jaswant.

[vol. ii. p. 42.] Rāja Jaswant, when he fled from the encounter with Aurangzeb, betook himself to his own country. Women, especially Rājput women, have often a higher sense of honour than men; and for this reason will rather bear the torture of fire than suffer disgrace. Rāja Jaswant's chief wife was a daughter of Rāja Chatrar Sāl. She strongly condemned her husband's conduct, and refused to sleep with him. In conversation she would express her censure both by words and hints. The Rāja was stung to the quick by her reproaches, so he sent a letter by his *wakils* to Aurangzeb, asking forgiveness of his offences. After his apology was accepted, he proceeded to Court, where he was graciously received, presented with many gifts and confirmed in his *mansab*.

Dara Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 44.] Dara Shukoh's newly-raised army had been greatly reduced by desertion, and he was alarmed at the approach of Aurangzeb; so he fled with three or four thousand horse and a few guns towards Thatta and Multan. He left behind Dāūd Khān to obstruct as much as possible the passage of the rivers

by the army of Aurangzeb, by burning or sinking the boats. * * * After a while the intelligence arrived that Dara Shukoh, after staying at Multan for a short time, had gone off towards Bhakkar, and that his followers were daily decreasing. * * In the beginning of Muharram, 1069 A.H., Aurangzeb (continuing his pursuit of Dara) pitched his camp on the banks of the Ravi near Multan. * * *

Prince Shuja'.

[vol. ii. p. 45.] Intelligence now arrived that Muhammad Shuja' had marched from Bengal with 25,000 horse and a strong force of artillery, with the intention of fighting against Aurangzeb. This proceeding changed the plans of Aurangzeb, who deemed it necessary to give up the pursuit of Dara, and to direct his energies to the repression of his graceless brother. So on the 12th Muharram, 1069 (30th Sept., 1658 A.D.), Aurangzeb fell back towards Dehli, the capital. * * * On the last day of Muharram, he started from Lahore, * * * and on the 4th Rabi'u-l-awwal he reached Dehli. There he learned that Muhammad Shuja' had advanced as far as Benares, and that Ram Das, the commandant, who had been appointed by Dara Shukoh, had surrendered the fort to Shuja'. The commandants of Chitapur and Allahabad had also surrendered their fortresses and joined him. * * After exacting three lacs of *rupees* under the name of a loan from the bankers of Benares, Muhammad Shuja' continued his march. He sent a force against Jaunpur, and the commander of that fortress after its investment surrendered and joined Shuja'.

Mir Jumla Mu'azzam Khan.

[vol. ii. p. 44.] Instructions were sent to the Dakhin, directing the release of Mu'azzam Khan, *alias* Mir Jumla, whom Aurangzeb had deemed it desirable to leave in confinement at Daulatabad. Mu'azzam Khan now arrived from the Dakhin,

his zeal having urged him to make a quick journey. He brought with him his military *matériel*. Aurangzeb received him graciously, and acted under his advice in managing the army. * * He and his son Muḥammad Amin Khān, with some other devoted adherents, were appointed to attend Aurangzeb, who was with the centre of the army.

Defeat of Prince Shujā'.

[vol. ii. p. 50.] "The armies of Aurangzeb and Shujā'¹ were within half a kos of each other, and both sides prepared for battle. * * The guns of Shujā' were so placed as to have an advantage over those of his opponents; so Mu'azzam Khān, who was a good tactician, removed forty guns during the night to another position. He took no rest, but busied himself in ordering his army and encouraging the men. The Emperor Aurangzeb was engaged in his tent performing his devotions, and praying to God for victory. Suddenly, about the fourth watch, a great tumult arose. Rājā Jāsawant Singh,² the treacherous wretch,³ who marched with the army, had, through one of his confidants, opened communications with Shujā' in the early part of the night, undertaking to make a sudden assault upon the army just before daybreak, and to desert, doing as much mischief as he could. "When I do this," said he, "the King (Aurangzeb) will come in pursuit of me; you must then charge sharply upon his forces."

About two hours of the night remained, when Jāsawant Singh, in league with other Rājput leaders, set their numerous followers in motion, and began to move off, destroying and plundering as they went, and cutting down all who opposed them. The forces under Prince Muḥammad Sultān suffered especially from their attacks. No tent, small or great, escaped their ravages. All his treasure and effects were plundered. * *

¹ "At the village of Kora."—*Alamgir-nama*. "Shujā's army rested by the tank of Khajwa or Kachhwa."—*Amal-i-Saltih*.

² He had been placed with other Rājās in the right wing.

³ A very faint expression of the abuse heaped upon him.

Then they made towards the royal quarters, ransacking everything, and not a tent near the royal pavilion remained safe from them. For some time the cause of all this disorder was unknown. All kinds of erroneous surmises were made, and a panic was spreading through the whole army. Many men were so disheartened that they joined the plunderers, thinking that the best way of escaping from the disaster. One party fled to the open country; another approached the enemy's army, and set about ravaging. • But for all this confusion in the army, nothing shook the resolution of Aurangzeb. It was now reported to him that the traitor had moved off towards his home. Then Aurangzeb descended from his elephant, and took his seat in a litter that all the panic-stricken men who beheld him might see that he was resolute, and had no intention of retreating. He sent orders round to the commanders, directing them to forbid all riders of elephants or horses to stir from their places. • • • Without exaggeration, half the army had gone away to plunder or escape, and many had joined the enemy. Intelligence was brought of Jassant Singh having marched away towards Agra.

Aurangzeb's devoted servants now gathered round him from far and near. He then again mounted his elephant, and without a cloud upon his brow rode forth to arrange his order of battle. • • • Alauzzam Khan received authority to make such alterations in the disposition of the forces as he deemed necessary. • • • The battle began about the fourth or fifth *ghurr* of the day with a cannonade which made the earth to tremble, and filled the hearts of both armies with awe and trembling. • • • A cannon-ball from the Emperor's army reached the elephant on which Sultan Zain-ul-'Abidin² was riding, and although it did not strike the leg also of the personal attendant who was seated behind the *howda*. This circumstance greatly discouraged many of Shuja's

¹ More eulogy of the Emperor's firmness and resolution follows here and afterwards.
² "Son of Shuja."—*Alauzzam Khan*.
³ "Or the elephant."—*Id.*

army. * Saiyid 'Alam Barha, with three elephants, made an attack upon the left of the royal army, and the vigour of his assault spread confusion in the ranks of his opponents, and many of them took to flight. The retreat of the left wing made the centre waver, and the Emperor was left with only 2000 horse-men to protect him. Greatly encouraged by the sight, the enemy made a bold and fierce attack upon the centre. The Emperor mounted upon an elephant, moved about inspiring his men and shooting arrows against his enemies. Murtaza Kuli Khan, of the left wing, with * several others, made a bold charge upon the enemy, and the Emperor, seeing how matters stood, joined in the charge. * This gave a severe check to the enemy, who lost many men killed and wounded. The vigour of the Saiyids of Barha had abated, but their three elephants, each of them dashing about with his trunk a chain of two or three *mans* weight, overthrew and crushed every one who came in their way. One of them at length charged towards the elephant of the Emperor. Without moving from his place or changing countenance, the Emperor made signs for his guards to shoot the animal's driver. One of the guards brought the man to the ground, and then one of the royal elephant-drivers got upon the elephant's neck and led him off. The other two elephants then charged the right wing of the royal army, and other forces of the enemy coming up, this wing fell into confusion. * The Emperor was urged to move to its support, but he was hotly engaged himself. * He sent messages to the officers of the right wing, urging them to stand fast until he could come to their assistance. Several of the enemy's leading men now fell, and the efforts of the forces opposed to the Emperor relaxed, so that he was able to proceed to the succour of his right. This encouraged the men. Cries of "Kill! kill!" were raised on every side, and many of the enemy were killed. A general attack was made on the enemy's centre, and then several chiefs, who had thought it expedient to support him, came over and joined the Emperor. Victory declared in favour of the Emperor.

and when the glad news of Shuja's flight was brought, shouts of congratulation and victory arose, and the drums and trumpets sounded in triumph.

The victors fell upon the camp of the enemy and thoroughly plundered it; every man took what he could lay hands on; but 114 guns, 115 elephants, and much treasure, and many jewels, came into the possession of the Emperor. After descending from his elephant, and returning thanks to God for his victory, he praised his nobles for their exertions. Then he sent his son Muhammad Sultan in pursuit of Shuja, with directions to use every exertion to cut off his flight. *

Flight of Dara Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 60.] Intelligence was brought that Dara Shukoh had arrived at Bhakkar in a wretched condition, with only three thousand horse. Want of porters, and the desertion of many of his adherents, compelled him to leave part of his treasure and baggage under charge of some of his servants at Bhakkar. Dense thorn-brakes, tollsome marches, and loss of porters, impeded his progress through the salt desert beside the river of Thatta; this, with the loss of baggage, which fell into the hands of his pursuers, allowed him no rest. Through want of water, the hardships of the march, and various diseases, many of his men died or fell away from him. Shaikh Mir, his pursuer, kept treading on his heels, and, after crossing the desert, he had not more than a thousand horsemen left. After arriving at Siwistan he determined to proceed to Ahmaddabad.

The force of Shaikh Mir, the pursuer, also suffered greatly from want of water, and the long and rapid march. Loss of horses and porters, added to the other hardships, killed and scattered them. Most of those who remained had to march on foot. On these facts being reported, Shaikh Mir was ordered to return.

Surrender of Allāhābād.

[vol. ii. p. 61.] On the 1st Jumāda-l-awwal Auranġzeb proceeded towards Āgra, and at the second stage he received a despatch from Prince Muḥammad Sulṭān, reporting a second success over Shujā'. Saiyid Kāsim, commandant of the fortress of Allāhābād, left a deputy in charge of the fortress, and accompanied Shujā' to battle. After the defeat, Kāsim Khan returned to the fortress, and busied himself in making it secure. When Shujā' arrived, he made plausible excuses for not giving up the place. He went out with alacrity to meet the Prince, made promises of fidelity, and entertained him, after which he was dismissed to his post. When Prince Muḥammad Sulṭān drew near, he wrote to him a repentant letter, professing his obedience, and sending to him the keys of the fortress. On hearing of this, Auranġzeb ordered Khan-daurān to be placed in command of Allāhābād, and Kāsim Khan to be sent courteously to his presence.

Rājā Jaswant.

[vol. ii. p. 61.] Auranġzeb appointed Amīr Khān and * with ten thousand horse to punish the traitor Rājā Jaswant. He also joined to this force Rāj Singh Rāthor, a nephew of Rājā Jaswant, who had a family feud with his uncle. This chief was honoured with the title of *ṛāja* and many presents. Hopes also were held out to him of a grant of Jodpūr, his native country.

Dard Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 62.] Directions were sent to Amīr Khān, Governor of Lāhore, that upon the return of Shaikh Mir from the pursuit of Dard, he was to remove Prince Murād Bakhsh from Salim-garh, and send him under charge of Shaikh Mir to Gwalior.

On the 18th Jumāda-l-awwal Auranġzeb reached Āgra, and on

the 23rd he again set out. He now learnt that Dara Shukoh had passed through Kachh to the borders of the province of Ahmadabad. He had collected round him three or four thousand horse. After the troops of Aurangzeb had given up the pursuit of him, he proceeded leisurely, endeavouring to gain over the *syndhs* and *zamindars*, and to collect soldiers. By presents of money and jewels he won over the *Zamindar* of Kachh, and affianced his daughter in marriage to Prince Sipah Shukoh. The *zamindar* sent him on with an escort through his territory towards Ahmadabad. Upon his arriving there, Shah Nawaz Khan, the *subdar*, one of whose daughters was married to Aurangzeb, and another was in the house of Murad Baksh, went out to meet him, accompanied by Rahmat Khan *diwan*, and others. They presented to him near ten *lacs* worth of gold, silver, and other property belonging to Murad Baksh, which was in Ahmadabad. Dara Shukoh then exerted himself in collecting money and men, and in winning adherents by presents of robes and jewels, and by promotions in rank and title. He appointed officers, who took possession of the ports of Surat, Kambayat, Broach, and the districts around. In the course of a month and seven days he collected 20,000 horse, and he sent requisitions to the governors of Bijapur and Haidarabad for money and men. He also thought over several plans for going to the Dakhin, and for joining Rája Jaswant Singh. * * On the 1st Jumada-ul-khira Dara Shukoh began his march with a well-appointed army and a large train of artillery, for he had obtained thirty or forty guns from Surat. As he pursued his march, he every day received false and delusive letters from Rája Jaswant, deceiving him with promises of coming to his assistance.

When Aurangzeb received intelligence of these proceedings, he marched towards Ajmir. Mirza Rája Jai Singh had interceded with him on behalf of Rája Jaswant; so he pardoned his offences,

and wrote to him a conciliatory letter, reinstating him in his *mansab*, and restoring to him his title of *Alaidarja*. He at the same time directed the Raja to write to him about the state of affairs, and send the letter by swift messengers. * Muhammad Amin Khan, who had been commissioned to punish the Raja, was recalled. Raja Jaswant, who had advanced twenty kos from Jodpur to meet Dara Shukoh, on receiving the Emperor's letter, broke off his alliance with Dara, and returned to his own country.

This defection greatly troubled Dara, who opened a correspondence with the Raja, and endeavoured to win him over by promises and flattery, but without effect. When Dara came to a place twenty kos distant from Jodpur, he sent a Hindu named De Chand to the Raja; but he artfully replied that he remained true to his engagement, but that it was not expedient for him to move just then. Dara Shukoh, he said, should go to Ajmir, and open communications with other Rajputs. If two or three Rajputs of note joined him, then he, the Raja, would also come to his support. Dara Shukoh, having no other course open, proceeded to Ajmir, and again sent De Chand to Jaswant; but all his persuasions and remonstrances were in vain, and it was evident that all the Raja's statements were false and treacherous. The fact of his having received a letter of pardon from Aurangzeb was also publicly talked about. It has been said that "Necessity turns lions into foxes," and so Dara Shukoh, notwithstanding his knowledge of the Raja's perfidy, sent Sipahir Shukoh to him; but although the Prince flattered and persuaded, and held out great promises, the traitor did not listen, and the Prince, like De Chand, turned empty away. Deprived of all hope of assistance from Raja Jaswant, Dara Shukoh was at a loss what course to pursue. Then he heard of the near approach of Aurangzeb, and resolved to fight. But not deeming it expedient to fight a regular battle, he determined to retire into the hills about Ajmir, and to throw up lines of defence. Accordingly he moved into the dells, blocked up the

roads with barriers of stone and earth, and stationed his guns and musketeers so as to make his position secure. * * * He himself took his station with the centre. * * * Aurangzeb directed the commander of his artillery to advance his guns against Dār's lines. * * * For three days most vigorous attacks were made, but Dār's position was very strong, and his men fought bravely, so that the assailants made no impression. Dār's forces indeed sallied out, and after causing considerable destruction of men and beasts, returned to their positions. The artillery practice of the assailants damaged only the defence works. On the fourth night Aurangzeb called around him some of his most trusty servants, and incited them by strong exhortations and promises to undertake an assault. * * * Next day Aurangzeb sent Rājā Rājūr, *Zamindar* of Jamun, with his infantry, against the rear of a hill, where an assault was not expected, and where the concentration of forces was thought to render it impossible. * * * But he forced his way, and planted his banner on the summit of the hill. * * * The success at the beginning of the battle was due to Rājā Rājūr; but at last the victory was owing to the devotion of Shaikh Mir, and the intrepidity of Diler Khān. Afghān, who attacked the lines held by Shah Nawāz Khān. Pride and shame so worked upon Shah Nawāz, that he gave up all hope of surviving, and died fighting most courageously.

Dār Shukoh seeing the defeat of his army, and hearing of the death of Shah Nawāz Khān, seeing also the approach of his victorious foes, lost all sense and self-control, and fled with Sipih Shukoh, Firuz Mewāli, and some of the inmates of his harem, in great consternation and sorrow. Of all his nobles none accompanied him but the two above named. He managed to save some jewels and money, and with some of his women, his daughter, and a few attendants, he went off towards Ahmaddābād. * * * The fact of his flight was not known for certain until three hours after dark, and fighting went on in several parts of the lines until the flight of the enemy and the abandonment of the lines were ascertained. * *

Raja Jai Singh and Bahadur were sent in command of a force in pursuit of Dara Shukoh. * Aurangzeb made a short stay at Ajmir, and started from thence for the capital on the 4th Rajab, 1069.

Prince Shuja.

[vol. ii. p. 75.] Prince Shuja fled before the pursuing force of Prince Muhammad Sultan to Jahangir-nagar (Dacca), and Muazzam Khan obtained possession of the fort of Alongir. * Shortly afterwards the fort of Chunar, which Shuja had got into his power, was given up to Aurangzeb.

SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN (1659 A.D.).

[vol. ii. p. 77.] The second year of the reign commenced on the 4th Ramazân, 1069 A.H. * * * The Emperor's name and titles were proclaimed in the pulpit as "Abû-l-Muzaffar Muhi-d-din Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahadur 'Alamgir Bâdshah-i-Ghâzi." In former reigns one side of the coins had been adorned with the words of the creed and the names of the first four Khalifs; but as coins pass into many unworthy places, and fall under the feet of infidels, it was ordered that this superscription should be changed [for certain couplets containing the Emperor's name].

[vol. ii. p. 79.] Since the reign of the Emperor Akbar the official year of account and the years of the reign had been reckoned from the 1st Farwardi, when the Sun enters Aries, to the end of Ishdiyar, and the year and its months were called Ilahi; but as this resembled the system of the fire-worshippers, the Emperor, in his zeal for upholding Muhammadan rule, directed that the year of the reign should be reckoned by the Arab lunar year and months, and that in the revenue accounts also the lunar year should be preferred to the solar. The festival of the (solar) new year was entirely abolished. Mathematicians, astronomers, and men who have studied history, know that * the recurrence of the four seasons, summer, winter, the rainy season of Hindû-

stan, the autumn and spring harvests, the ripening of the corn and fruit of each season, the *tankhuda* of the *ydgirs*, and the money of the *mansabdars*, are all dependent upon the solar reckoning, and cannot be regulated by the lunar; still his religious Majesty was unwilling that the *navros* and the year and months of the Magi should give their names to the anniversary of his accession.

Dara Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 80.] The sad circumstances of the remainder of

Dara Shukoh's career must now be related. On leaving the mountains of Ajmir, he proceeded with his wife, daughter, some jewels, a little money, and a few domestic servants, towards Ahmadabad. The rest of his treasure, goods, and necessary baggage, with some female servants, borne by twelve elephants and horses, he left behind in charge of servants, some of them old, some new, in the company and under the superintendence of some trusty eunuchs, with orders to follow as quickly as possible.

When this party had marched four or five kos, all the servants began to plunder the property, and struggling and fighting with each other, every man seized what he could lay hands on. The baggage was taken from the backs of the elephants and placed on camels, and the women were stripped of their jewels and taken off the camels to be mounted on the elephants; then the plunderers, with camels and horses laden with money and articles of great value, made off for the desert. The eunuchs were unable to prevent the proceedings of their escort. In great distress, and in dread of the pursuit of the victorious troops, they were intent upon preserving their own honour and that of their master; so they led off the women on the elephants, and pursuing all night the track of Dara through the desert, after a night and a day

they overtook him.

That forlorn fugitive, in sore distress, without baggage, and

The text says simply "all," but it is clear from the context that this means the

servants.

despoiled by plunderers, wandered on through the desert. In eight days' time he approached Ahmaddâd. But the officials of the city * proclaimed Aurangzeb, and took measures to prevent Dârâ from entering. The fugitive perceived that ill-fortune everywhere awaited him. He gave up all hope of getting possession of the city, and went to Kârî, two kos from Ahmaddâd. There he sought assistance from Kânî Kôlî, one of the most notorious rebels and robbers of that country. Kânî joined him, and conducted him through Gujarat to the confines of Kachh. Here he was joined by Gul Muhamad, whom he had made governor of Surat and Broach, and who brought with him fifty horse and two hundred matchlockmen. The *zumindâr* of Kachh, when Dârâ lately passed through the country, entertained him, treated him with every respect, and alligned a daughter in marriage to his son, all in expectation of future advantage. Dârâ, in his distress, now looked to him for assistance; but he heeded not, and did not even show the courtesy of a visit. After two days spent in fruitless efforts to soften the *zumindâr*, Dârâ, with tearful eyes and burning heart, resolved to proceed to Bhakkar.

On reaching the frontier of Sind, Firôz Mewâtî, who had hitherto accompanied the unfortunate Prince, seeing how his evil fate still clung to him, abandoned the ill-starred fugitive, and went off to Dehli. Dârâ, in a bewildered condition, proceeded towards the country of Jâwîân; but the dwellers in the deserts of that country closed the roads with the intention of making him prisoner. With some fighting and trouble he escaped from these people, and made his way into the country of the Makashis. Mirzâ Makashi, the chief of the tribe, came forth to meet him, took him home with great kindness, and entertained him. After this he proposed to send him towards Rân, under an escort which was to conduct him to Kandahâr, twelve marches distant from where he was, and he strongly advised the adoption of this course. But Dârâ could not give up his futile

* "Crossed the Indus, and proceeded to the country of Chând Khan (or Jândbân)." — *Atangir-nama*, p. 412. The name Jâwîân is confirmed by both MSS. of Khattî Khân.

hopes of recovering his throne and crown, and resolved to go to Malik Jivan, *zaminदार* of Dhādar,¹ who had long been bound to him by acts of generosity, and sent to assure him of his devotion and fidelity.

When Dara reached the land of this evil *zaminदार*, Malik Jivan came out like the destroying angel to meet him. As a guest-murdering host he conducted Dara home, and exerted himself to entertain him. During the two or three days that Dara remained here, his wife, Nādira Begam, daughter of Parwez, died of dysentery and vexation. Mountain after mountain of trouble thus pressed upon the heart of Dara, grief was added to grief, sorrow to sorrow, so that his mind no longer retained its equilibrium. Without considering the consequences, he sent her corpse to Lāhore in charge of Gul Muhammad, to be buried there.² He thus parted from one who had been faithful to him through his darkest troubles. He himself remained, attended only by a few domestic servants and useless eunuchs.

After performing the ceremonies of mourning, Dara determined to set out the next morning under the escort of Malik Jivan for Iran, by way of Kandahar. Jivan apparently was ready to accompany him to Iran; but he had inwardly resolved to forward his own interests by trampling under foot all claims of gratitude,³ and of making the wretched fugitive prisoner. So he formed his plan. He accompanied his guest for some kos. Then he represented that it was necessary for him to return, in order to procure some further provisions for the journey, which he would collect, and would overtake Dara after two or three days' march. Accordingly he went back, leaving his brother with a party of the ruffians and robbers of the country.

¹ Ephraïmstone has mistaken the name of the man for that of his country. He calls him "the chief of Jūn on the eastern frontier of Sind." The *'Fāngir-nāma* calls him "Malik Jivan Ayyūb, an Afghān," and the name of his estate is given as "Dādar" or "Dhādar." In the *'Amal-i Salih* it is "Dhāwar." It is probably "Dādar in Kachh Gandara."

² "The deceased had left a will desiring to be buried in Hindustān."—*'Fāngir-nāma*.

³ The *'Amal-i Salih* says that "the *zaminदार* Jivan was bound in gratitude to Dara by many kindnesses and favours."

to attend Dārā. This man suddenly fell upon his victim and made him prisoner, without giving him a chance of resistance. Then he carried him back with Sipihār Shukoh and his companions to the perfidious host, and kept him under guard in the place appointed. Alalik Jiwān wrote an account of this good service to Rājā Jai Singh and Bahādūr Khān, who had been sent from Ajmir in pursuit of Dārā, and he also wrote to Bākīr Khān, governor of Bhakkar. Bākīr Khān instantly sent off Alalik Jiwān's letter express to Aurangzeb. Upon the arrival of Bākīr Khān's despatch, Aurangzeb communicated the fact to his private councillors, but did not make it public until the arrival of a letter from Bahādūr Khān confirming the news. At the end of the month of Shawwāl it was published by beat of drum. The public voice spoke with condemnation and abhorrence of Alalik Jiwān; but a robe and a *mansab* of 1000, with 200 horse, were conferred upon him.

It was now ascertained that Sulaimān Shukoh had sought refuge with the *zamindār* of Srinagar. Rājā Rājpur was therefore directed to write to the *zamindār*, and advise him to consult his own interest and bring Sulaimān out of his territory; if not, he must suffer the consequences of the royal anger.

In the middle of Zī-1-hijja, Bahādūr Khān brought Dārā Shukoh and his son Sipihār Shukoh to the Emperor, who gave orders that both father and son should be carried into the city chained and seated on an elephant, and thus be exposed to the people in the *Chandni chāuk* and the *bāzār*, after which they were to be carried to Khizrabād in old Delhi, and there confined. Bahādūr Khān, after giving up his prisoner, received great rewards and marks of favour.

Two days afterwards Alalik Jiwān, who had received the title of Bahadit'yār Khān, entered the city, and was passing through the streets of the *bāzār*. The idlers, the partisans of Dārā Shukoh, the workmen and people of all sorts, inciting each other, *The 'Amal-i Salih* is more explicit, and says that Sulaimān was to be sent to Aurangzeb.

other, gathered into a mob, and, assailing Jivan and his companions with abuse and imprecations, they pelted them with dirt and filth, and clods and stones, so that several persons were knocked down and killed, and many were wounded. Jivan was protected by shields held over his head, and he at length made his way through the crowd to the palace. They say that the disturbance on this day was so great that it bordered on rebellion. If the *kotwal* had not come forward with his policemen, not one of Alalik Jivan's followers would have escaped with life. Ashes and pots full of urine and ordure were thrown down from the roofs of the houses upon the heads of the Afghans, and many of the bystanders were injured. Next day the *kotwal* made an investigation, and it was ascertained that an *amir* (guardsman) named Haibat had taken a leading part in the disturbance. He was condemned by a legal decision, and was executed.

At the end of Zi-l hijja, 1069¹ (Sept. 1659), the order was given for Dara Shukoh to be put to death under a legal opinion of the lawyers, because he had apostatized from the law, had vilified religion, and had allied himself with heresy and infidelity. After he was slain, his body was placed on a *howda* and carried round the city.² So once alive and once dead he was exposed to the eyes of all men, and many wept over his fate. He was buried in the tomb of Humayun. Sipih Shukoh was ordered to be imprisoned in the fortress of Gwalior.

Remission of Taxes.

[vol. ii. p. 87.] The movements of large armies through the country, especially in the eastern and northern parts, during the two years past, and scarcity of rain in some parts, had combined to make grain dear. To comfort the people and alleviate their distress, the Emperor gave orders for the remission of the

¹ "On the 26th day."—*Amal-i-Salih*.

² The *'Alangir-nama* says nothing about the legal opinion, or the exposure of the corpse. It simply states that Aurangzeb gave the order for the execution, and that it was promptly carried out by certain officers, whose names are given.

villidur (toll) which was collected on every highway (*guzar*), frontier and ferry, and brought in a large sum to the revenue. He also remitted the *gundur*, a ground or house cess, which was paid throughout the Imperial dominions by every tradesman and dealer, from the butcher, the potter, and the greengrocer, to the draper, jeweller, and banker. Something was paid to the government according to rule under this name for every bit of ground in the market, for every stall and shop, and the total revenue thus derived exceeded *lacs* (of rupees). Other cesses, lawful and unlawful, as the *sar-shundur*, *bur-shundur*, *bur-gad*,² the *charai* (grazing tax) of the *Banyars*, the *lucnand*,³ the collections from the fairs held at the festivals of Alinhamadan saints, and at the fairs or fairs of the indels, held near Hindu temples, throughout the country far and wide, where *lacs* of people assemble once a year, and where buying and selling of all kinds goes on. The tax on spirits, on gambling-houses, on brothels, the fines, thank-offerings, and the fourth part of debts recovered by the help of magistrates from creditors. These and other imposts, nearly eighty in number, which brought in *lacs* of rupees to the public treasury, were all abolished throughout Hindustan. Besides these, the tithes of corn,⁴ which lawfully brought in twenty-five *lacs* of rupees, was remitted in order to alleviate the heavy cost of grain. To enforce these remissions, stringent orders were published everywhere throughout the provinces by the hands of mace-bearers and soldiers (*ahads*).

But although his gracious and beneficent Majesty remitted these taxes, and issued strict orders prohibiting their collection, the avaricious propensities of men prevailed, so that, with the exception of the *gundur*, which, being mostly obtained from the capital and the chief cities, felt the force of the abolition, the

¹ A tax on goats. The printed text has "*bur-shundur*," but the MSS. agree in writing *bur*.

² This does not appear in either two of the MSS. referred to.

³ "*Charai bandra wa lucnand wa hadi i aydan*," etc. The *lucnand* ought etymologically to mean some voluntary contribution.

royal prohibition had no effect, and *jagirdars* and *jagirdars* in remote places did not withhold their hands from these exactions. Firstly, because throughout the Imperial dominions in the reign of Aurangzeb, no fear and dread of punishment remained in the hearts of the *jagirdars*, *jagirdars*, and *zamindars*. Secondly, because the revenue officers, through inattention, or want of consideration, or with an eye to profit, contrary to what was intended, made deductions (for these cesses) from the *lankhikah* accounts of the *jagirdars*. So the *jagirdars*, under the pretext that the amount of the cesses was entered in their *lankhikah* papers, continued to collect the *whidat* and many other of the abolished imposts, and even increased them. When reports reached the government of infractions of these orders, (the offenders) were punished with a diminution of *mansub*, and the delegation of mace-bearers to their districts. The mace-bearers forbade the collection of the imposts for a few days, and then retired. After a while, the offenders, through their patronage or the management of their agents, got their *mansub* restored to its original amount. So the regulation for the abolition of most of the imposts had no effect.

The *whidat* in particular is condemned by righteous and just men as a most vexatious impost, and oppressive to travellers, but a large sum is raised by it. In most parts of the Imperial territories the *jagirdars* and *jagirdars*, by force and tyranny, now exact more than ever from the traders and poor and necessitous travellers. The *zamindars* also, seeing that no inquiries are made, exact more on roads within their bound-aries than is collected on roads under royal officers. By degrees matters have come to such a pass, that between the time of leaving the factory or port and reaching their destination, goods and merchandise pay double their cost price in tolls. Through the villainy and oppression of the toll-collectors and the *zamindars*, the property, the honour, and the lives of thousands of travellers and peaceful wayfarers are littered away. The Maharrattas, those turbulent people of the Dakhin (before the

peace and after the peace which I shall have to write about in the reign of Farrukh Siyar, and other *amirs* upon the frontier, have carried their violence and oppression in the matter of the *valhadr* to such extremes as are beyond description.

The War with Shujā'.—Defection of Prince Muhammad Sultan.

[vol. ii. p. 90.] Prince Muhammad Sultan, with Mu'azzam

Khān as his adviser and commander-in-chief, pursued Shujā' until he reached Dacca, where Shujā' busied himself in collecting munitions of war, men and artillery. The command of the Imperial army and the appointment of the *amirs* rested in a great degree with Mu'azzam Khān. This was a great annoyance to the Prince, and Shujā', having got information of this, conceived the idea of winning the Prince over to his side. So he opened communications with the Prince, and by letters and presents, and the arts which gain the feelings of young, inexperienced men, he seduced the Prince from the duty he owed to his father, and brought him over to his own side. Soon he offered the Prince his daughter in marriage, * and at length the Prince was so deluded as to resolve upon joining Shujā'. Towards the end of the month Ramazān, at the beginning of the third year of the reign, he sent a message to Shujā', informing him of his intention, and in the night he embarked in a boat on the Ganges with Amir Kūli, the commander of the artillery, Kāsim 'Alī *Mir-tuzak*, who were the prime movers in this business, and with some eunuchs and domestic servants, taking with him all the treasure and jewels he could. When Shujā' heard of this step, he referred it to the favour of God, and sent his son Buland Akhtar with several boats and porters to conduct the Prince with his treasure and baggage over the river.

After the Prince had crossed over, and Shujā's men were busy in carrying away his treasure and baggage, the fact

of his evasion became known, and was communicated to Mu'azzam Khan. The desertion caused great uneasiness in the Imperial army; * * * and Mu'azzam Khan himself was much annoyed and troubled, but he would not allow this to be seen. He mounted his horse, inspected the lines, encouraged the troops, and did all he could to counteract the effects of this untoward proceeding. The rainy season had come, * * * so, for the comfort of his troops, he removed thirty *kos* from Akbar-nagar, to a high ground suitable for a camp in the rains. * * *

Shuja' passed over to Akbar-nagar by boats, and attacked Mu'azzam unawares; and although the Imperial forces made a splendid resistance, some of their allies were indifferent or disaffected, so they were overpowered and compelled to retreat. Mu'azzam Khan brought up some forces from his centre, and encouraging the waverers, he renewed the resistance, and charged. Two or three of Shuja's chief *amirs* were killed or wounded, and his attack was eventually repulsed. There were several other conflicts with similar results, until the rains and the rising of the river put an end to all fighting. * * * Muhammad Sultan married Shuja's daughter, and it was announced that after spending a few days in nuptial pleasure at Akbar-nagar, the attack on the Imperial army would be renewed. * * * Mu'azzam Khan received reinforcements after the cessation of the rains, and it would be a long story to relate all his bold and skilful movements. Suffice it to say that in the course of fifteen to twenty days there were some sharp conflicts, in which Shuja' was defeated, and eventually put to flight, and escaped in the war-boats, by means of which he had been enabled to make his attacks on the army of Mu'azzam. * * * Many of the war-boats were sunk by the fire of the artillery, and some were captured. * * * Several actions were fought near the streams, and also between the war-boats on the Ganges in the vicinity of Tanda, in which many men were killed and wounded.

When Aurangzeb received the intelligence of Muhammad Sultan's going over to Shuja', and of Mu'azzam Khan's obstinate

fighting, he thought it prudent and necessary to go himself to the seat of war, and on the 5th Rabi'u-l-awwal he set out for the East. * * About the middle of Rabi'u-s sanî intelligence arrived that Prince Muhammâd Sulthân had left Shujâ', and had again joined Mu'azzam Khân. The Prince repented of the step he had taken, * * and communicated to one of the commanders in the royal army that he desired to return. * * He escaped with some of his servants and jewels and money on board of four boats, but he was pursued by the boats of Shujâ'. * * The boats were fired upon, and one was sunk, but the Prince escaped. His return gave great joy to Mu'azzam Khân, who reported the fact to the Emperor, under whose orders he was sent to Court, [and his associates to prison].

When the Prince returned to his father's army, Shujâ' mediated fight, but still some hard fighting went on. At length Shujâ' despaired of success, and retired leaving Bengal to the occupation of Mu'azzam Khân.

Shah Jahân.

[vol. ii. p. 101.] Many letters passed between the Emperor Shah Jahân and Aurangzeb, full of complaints and reproaches on one side, and of irritating excuses on the other. There is no advantage to be gained from recording this correspondence, and the copies of the Emperor's letters are not in the author's possession; but two or three letters which Aurangzeb wrote to his father are here reproduced verbatim, and the contents of Shah Jahân's letters may be inferred from them.

[p. 104.] The third letter is in answer to one written by Shah Jahân to Aurangzeb, pardoning his offences, and sending some jewels and clothes, belonging to Dara Shukoh, which had been left in his palace.

¹ The '*Amal-i-Salih*' says that the Prince was confined in the fort of Mir-garb, or in Salim-garb according to the '*Atamgir-nama*.
² Three are given, but the last one only has been translated.

"After discharging the observances of religion, it is reported to your most august presence. The gracious letter which you sent in answer to the humble statement of your servant, conferred great honour upon him at a most auspicious time. The glad tidings of the pardon of his faults and sins has filled him with joy and gladness. Through the gracious kindness of his fault-forgiving and excuse-accepting father and master, he is filled with hope. Thanks be to God that Your Highness, listening to the suggestions of equity and merit, has preferred mercy to revenge, and has rescued this wicked and disgraced sinner from the abyss of sorrow and misery in both worlds! His firm hope in the mercy of God is that in future no unworthy action will proceed from this humble servant! God, who knows the secrets of the hearts, who, according to the belief of the faithful and the infidel, and according to all religions and faiths, takes note of lies and falsehoods, He knows that this servant is not and has never been acting in opposition to the will and pleasure of his august father, as evil-judging men have supposed, but that he has considered himself the deputy of his father, and continues firm in this important service and duty! But the due ordering of the affairs of the State and of the Faith, and the comfort of the people, are impossible under the rule of one who acts as a deputy. So, unwillingly, for the safety of the State and the good of the people, he is acting, for a few days, in the way which his heart disapproves. God knows how many regrets he has felt in this course of action! Please God, the moment that peace shall dawn upon the country, and the clouds of strife shall be dispelled, all Your Majesty's wishes shall be gratified to your heart's desire! This humble one has devoted the best part of his life entirely to performing good service and rendering satisfaction (to God); how then can he be satisfied that, for the fleeting trifles of the world, the august days of Your Majesty, to whose happiness the life and wealth of your children are devoted, should be passed in discomfort, and that the people of your palace should be separated!

! He calls himself *unwili*, "disciple"; and his father *unwili*, "spiritual teacher."

from you ! Shujā', not knowing the value of safety, came to Allāh-
 humble servant, though he feels somewhat at ease as regards his
 elder brother, has not given up all thought of him ; but, placing
 his trust in God, and hoping for the help of the true giver of
 victory, he marched against him on the 17th instant. He is
 hopeful that, under the guidance of God and the help of the
 Prophet, and the good wishes of his old paternal protector, he
 will soon be free of this business, and do nothing to hurt the
 feelings of Your Majesty. It is clear to Your Majesty that God
 Almighty bestows his trusts upon one who discharges the duty
 of cherishing his subjects and protecting the people. It is mani-
 fest and clear to wise men that a wolf is not fit for a shepherd,
 and that no poor-spirited man can perform the great duty of
 governing. Sovereignty signifies protection of the people, not
 self-indulgence and libertinism. The Almighty will deliver your
 humble servant from all feeling of remorse as regards Your
 Majesty. Your servant, after acknowledging your pardon of his
 faults and offences, and the present of the jewels of Dara Shukoh,
 returns his thanks for your kindness and forgiveness."

THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1070 (A.H., 1660 A.D.).

Disappearance of Prince Shujā'.

[vol. ii. p. 107.] The third year of the reign began on the
 24th Ramazān. * Despatches about this time arrived from
 1 "Dasgiri," the word used, is equivocal, it means both "patron" and "prisoner."

Mu'azzam Khan, reporting his successive victories and the flight of Shujā' to the country of Rākhang (Arracan), leaving Bengal undefended. It appeared that there had been several actions in which Shujā' was invariably defeated, and that after the last, he loaded two boats with his personal effects, vessels of gold and silver, jewels, treasure and other appendages of royalty. * * * His son had been in correspondence with the Rāja of Rākhang, (Arracan), * * and when Shujā' saw that he had no ally or friend anywhere left, and that those whom he had deemed faithful had deserted him, he conceived the idea of occupying one of the fortresses on the frontiers of the Rāja of Rākhang, and addressed the Rāja on the subject. * * But he was unable to carry his design into execution, and at length, in the greatest wretchedness and distress, he fell into the clutches of the treacherous infidel ruler of that country, and according to common rumour he was killed, so that no one ascertained what became of him.¹

Beginning of the troubles with Siyā?

[vol. ii. p. 110.] I now relate what I have heard from trusty men of the Dakhin and of the Malabar race about the origin and race of the reprobate Siyā. [His ancestors owe their origin to the line of the Rānas of Chitor. In the tribe of the Rājputs, and among all Hindus, it is the settled opinion, that to have a son by a woman of a different caste, or to beget one upon a slave-girl (*kans*), is wrong and censurable. But if in youth, when the passions are strong, a man should have a son by a strange woman, he should take him into his house and have him brought

¹ In the *Amal-Salih* it is said, "When Shah Shujā' was informed of [Sultan Muhammad's evasion] he lost heart, and with some of his Khans and with forty or fifty faithful servants, he embarked in a boat and proceeded to Mnaka (孟加). From that time to the present year, 1081 A.H., no one knows whether he is alive or dead." Mnaka is Mecca, and this was probably what the copyists understood, but it is more likely that the word used by the author had reference to the "Mughls" or inhabitants of Arracan.

² His name is written *سیاح*.

up among his confidential handmaids and slaves. But nothing descends to such a son on the death (of the father). Even if the mother of the child is of a better stock than the father, she cannot marry him unless she be of the same tribe. If, through love, a man consorts with such a woman, and has a son, the child is looked upon with great disdain, he is brought up as a bastard, and can only marry with one like himself. If a woman of the merchant caste goes into the house of a man of lower caste than herself, or the daughter of a Brahman consorts with a Khatri, every child that is born is looked upon as a slave (*kauti o ghulam*).

It is said that one of the ancestors of Sivaji, from whom he received the name of Bhoslah, dwell in the country of the Ikand. He formed a connexion with a woman of inferior caste, and, according to the custom of his tribe, he took the woman to himself without marriage. She bore him a son. Reflecting upon this disgrace to himself and tribe, he kept the child concealed in the hills in that position of life which he had determined for him. There he secretly brought him up. He was very devoted to the woman; so that, although his father and mother wished him to marry a woman of his own tribe, he would not consent. When the cup of his affection ran over, and the fact of this maintenance of his child was the common talk of friends and strangers, he secretly took the boy from the place where he had concealed him, and carried him off along with his mother to the Dakhin. Although he falsely gave out that his son was by a woman of his own tribe, no Kshatri of pure race would allow of any matrimonial connexion with the boy. So he was obliged to marry the lad to a girl of the Malharita tribe, which also claims to belong to an obscure class of Kshatrias. From this good stock, in the seventh or eighth generation, was born Sahu Bhoslah. The origin of the name Bhoslah, according to the commonly-received opinion, is from the Hindawi word "*ghoslah*," meaning "place," or a very small and narrow place; and as that man was brought

up in such a place, he received the name of Bhoobah. But I have heard a different explanation.

After the dominion of the Muzumud-Mahle dynasty had passed into the possession of Shah Jahan, and that Emperor had entered into friendly relations with 'Alim Khan of Bijapur, the latter proposed to exchange certain districts in the neighbourhood of Bhujeta-bungah (Anarsagah), and belonging to Bijapur, for the ports of Alwal, Hiral, Bandah, Rajpuri, and Chikana¹ in the Kokan, which had formerly appertained to Muzumud-Mahle, but had been taken possession of by 'Alim Khan, so being in proximity with his territory in the Konkan known by the name of Tal Kokan. These districts consisted of jungles and hills full of trees. The proposal was accepted, and both Kokans were included in the territory of 'Alim Khan of Bijapur. *

Mulla Ahmad, an adherent of the Bijapur dynasty, who was descended from an Arab immigrant, held three *parganas* in this country. * At this time two *parganas*, named Pura and Suga, became the *jugir* of Sahib Bhoobah. Sivaji became the manager of these two *parganas* on the part of his father, and looked carefully after them. He was distinguished in his tribe for courage and intelligence; and for craft and trickery he was reckoned a sharp son of the devil, the father of fraud. In that country, where all the hills rise to the sky, and the jungles are full of trees and bushes, he had an inaccessible abode. Like the *zamindars* of the country, he set about erecting forts on the hills, and mud forts, which in the Hindustani dialect of the Dalchin are called *gaurhi*.

'Alim Khan of Bijapur was attacked by sickness, under which he suffered for a long time, and great confusion arose in his territory. At this time Mulla Ahmad went with his followers to wait upon the Emperor Shah Jahan, and Sivaji, seeing his country

¹ Danda and Rajpuri are close together, near Jijir. Jwal and Bhal (or Bahal) are said in a subsequent passage to be "on the coast near Surat." Chikana, a place frequently mentioned, is not a port, but lies a little north of Pura. See an account of Chikana in Grant Duff's History of the Marathas, vol. i. p. 61.

left without a ruler, boldly and wickedly stepped in and seized it, with the possessions of some other *jagirdars*. This was the beginning of that system of violence which he and his descendants have spread over the rest of the Kokan and all the territory of the Dakhin. Whenever he heard of a prosperous town, or of a district inhabited by thriving cultivators, he plundered it and took possession of it. Before the *jagirdars* in those troublesome times could appeal to Bijapur, he had sent in his own account of the matter, with presents and offerings, charging the *jagirdars* or proprietors with some offence which he had felt called upon to punish, and offering to pay some advanced amount for the lands on their being attached to his own *jagir*, or to pay their revenues direct to the Government. He communicated these matters to the officials at Bijapur, who in those disturbed times took little heed of what any one did. So when the *jagirdar's* complaint arrived, he obtained no redress, because no one took any notice of it. The country of the Dakhin was never free from commotions and outbreaks, and so the officials, the *vaylats*, and the soldiery, under the influence of surrounding circumstances, were greedy, stupid, and frivolous; thus they applied the axe to their feet with their own hands, and threw their wealth and property to the winds. The greed of the officials increased, especially in those days when the authority of the rulers was interrupted, or their attention diverted. In accordance with the wishes of this disturber, the reins of authority over that country fell into his hands, and he at length became the most notorious of all the rebels.

He assembled a large force of Mahratia robbers and plunderers, and set about reducing fortresses. The first fort he reduced was that of Chandan.¹ After that he got possession of some other fortresses which were short of supplies, or were in charge of weak and inexperienced commanders. Evil days fell upon the kingdom of Bijapur in the time of Sikandar 'Ali 'Adil

¹ Also called Chandan-mandan. See Grant Duff (vol. i. p. 130), who says that Torna was the first fort he obtained.

Khān the Second, whose legitimacy was questioned, and who ruled when a minor as the *locum tenens* of his father. The operations of Aurangzeb against that country when he was a prince in the reign of his father, brought great evil upon the country, and other troubles also arose. Sivaji day by day increased in strength, and reduced all the forts of the country, so that in course of time he became a man of power and means. He had drawn together a large force, and attacked the Kings of Hind and of Bijāpur, and, protected by mountains and jungles full of trees, he ravaged and plundered in all directions far and wide. The inaccessible forts of Rājgarh¹ and Chākna were his abodes, and he had secured several islands in the sea by means of a fleet which he had formed. He built several forts also in those parts, so that altogether he had forty forts, all of which were well supplied with provisions and munitions of war. Boldly raising his standard of rebellion, he became the most noted rebel of the Dakhin.

Sivaji murders Afzal Khān Bijāpurī.

When Sikandar 'Alī 'Adil Khān came to years of discretion, and took the government into his own hands, he wrote letters to Sivaji, but without effect. He then sent Afzal Khān with a large army to chastise the rebel. Afzal Khān was one of 'Adil Khān's most distinguished and courageous officers, and he pressed Sivaji hard. The truculent rebel, knowing that he could gain nothing by regular warfare, artfully sent some of his people to express his repentance, and to beg forgiveness of his offences. After some negotiation, the deceitful *bradhmins* made an agreement that Sivaji should come to wait upon Afzal Khān at a certain place under his fortress with only three or four servants and entirely without arms. Afzal Khān likewise was to proceed in a *paliki*, with four or five servants, and without arms, to the place agreed upon under the fort. After Sivaji had paid his

¹ About twenty miles south-west of Puna.

respects, and verbal agreements had been made, he was to receive a *khilat* and then be dismissed. When Afzal Khān had taken the proffered tribute and *peshtakash*, Siviya was to entertain him, and speed him on his way back to Bijāpur, or rather he would attend him thither in person upon an assurance of reconciliation. The designing rascal by sending various presents and fruits of the country, and by his humbleness and submission, conciliated Afzal Khān, who fell into the snare, believing all his false deceiving statements, and observing none of that caution which the wise commend. Without arms he mounted the *palik*, and proceeded to the place appointed under the fortress. He left all his attendants at the distance of a long arrow-shot. Then the deceiver came down on foot from the fort, and made his appearance with manifestations of humility and despair. Upon reaching the foot of the hill, after every three or four steps, he made a confession of his offences, and begged forgiveness in abject terms and with limbs trembling and crouching. He begged that the armed men and the servants who had accompanied Afzal Khān's litter should move farther off. Siviya had a weapon, called in the language of the Dakhin *bichud*, on the fingers of his hand hidden under his sleeve, so that it could not be seen. He had concealed a number of armed men among the trees and rocks all about the hill, and he had placed a trumpet on the steps, to whom he said, "I intend to kill my enemy with this murderous weapon; the moment you see me strike, do not think about me, but blow your trumpet and give the signal to my soldiers." He had given orders to his troops also that as soon as they heard the blast of the trumpet, they should rush out and fall upon the men of Afzal Khān, and do their best to attain success.

Afzal Khān, whom the angel of doom had led by the collar to that place, was confident in his own courage, and saw Siviya approach unarmed and fearing and trembling. He looked upon

1 The primary meaning of this word is "a scorpion." The weapon is also called *wad-nakh*, "tiger's claws." Grant Duff gives a drawing of one.

his person and spirit as much alike, so he directed all the men who had accompanied his litter to withdraw to a distance. The treacherous foe then approached and threw himself weeping at the feet of Afzal Khan, who raised his head, and was about to place the hand of kindness on his back and embrace him. Sivaji then struck the congealed weapon so fiercely into his stomach that he died without a groan. According to his orders, the trumpeter blew a blast of triumph to arouse the concealed troops. Men on horse and foot then rushed forth in great numbers on all sides, and fell upon the army of Afzal Khan, killing, plundering, and destroying. The bloodthirsty assassin rushed away in safety and joined his own men, whom he ordered to offer quarter to the defeated troops. He obtained possession of the horses, elephants, treasure, and all the baggage and stores. He proposed to take the soldiers into his service, and gained them over. Then, as usual, he went on collecting stores and men.

Adil Khan of Bijapur, on hearing of this defeat, sent another army against Sivaji, under the command of Rustam Khan, one of his best generals. An action was fought near the fort of Parnala, and Rustam Khan was defeated. In fine, Fortune so favoured this treacherous worthless man, that his forces increased, and he grew more powerful every day. He erected new forts, and employed himself in settling his own territories, and in plundering those of Bijapur. He attacked the caravans which came from distant parts, and appropriated to himself the goods and the women. But he made it a rule that wherever his followers went plundering, they should do no harm to the mosques, the Book of God, or the women of any one. Whenever a copy of the sacred Kur'an came into his hands, he treated it with respect, and gave it to some of his Musulman followers. When the women of any Hindû or Muhammadan were taken prisoners by his men, and they had no friend to protect them, he watched over them until their relations came with a suitable ransom to buy their liberty. Whenever he found out that a woman was a slave-girl, he looked upon her as being the property of her master, and appropriated her to himself.

He laid down the rule that whenever a place was plundered, the goods of poor people, *put-sydl* (copper money), and vessels of brass and copper, should belong to the man who found them; but other articles, gold and silver, coined or uncoined, gems, valuable stuffs and jewels, were not to belong to the finder, but were to be given up without the smallest deduction to the officers, and to be by them paid over to Sivaji's government.

March of Amiru-l umard¹ to punish Sivaji.

[vol. ii. p. 119.] When Aurangzeb was informed of Sivaji's violence, he directed *Amiru-l umard* who was *Subadar* of the Dakhin, to punish and put him down. *Amiru-l umard* marched, in accordance with these orders, from Aurangabad at the end of Jumada-I awal, 1070 (end of January, 1660 A.D.), and marched towards Puna and Chikna, which in those days were Sivaji's places of abode and security. He left Muntaz Khan in command at Aurangabad, and on the 1st Rajab arrived at the village of Seeghanw, belonging to Sivaji. At this time Sivaji was at the town of Supa,² but upon hearing of *Amiru-l umard*'s movements, he vacated that place, and went off in another direction. *Amiru-l umard* took Supa without opposition, and left Jaddi Rai there to take charge of it, and to provide supplies of corn for the army. The daring freebooter Sivaji ordered his followers to attack and plunder the baggage³ of *Amiru-l umard*'s army wherever they met with it. When the *Amir* was informed of this, he appointed 4000 horse, under experienced officers, to protect the baggage. But every day, and in every march, Sivaji's Dakhins swarmed round the baggage, and falling suddenly upon it like Cossacks, they carried off horses, camels, men, and whatever they could secure, until they became aware of the approach of the troops. The Imperial forces

¹ Shayista Khan.

² About forty miles south-east of Puna.

³ *Kah*, "forage, provisions."

pursued them, and harassed them, so that they lost courage, and giving up fighting for flight, they dispersed. At length they reached Puna and Sivapur, two places built by that dog (Sivaji). The Imperial forces took both these places and held them. Then the royal armies marched to the fort of Chākna, and after examining its bastions and walls, they opened trenches, erected batteries, threw up intrenchments round their own position, and began to drive mines under the fort. Thus having invested the place, they used their best efforts to reduce it. The rains in that country last nearly five months, and fall night and day, so that people cannot put their heads out of their houses. The heavy masses of clouds change day into night, so that lamps are often needed, for without them one man cannot see another one of a party. But for all the muskets were rendered useless, the powder spoilt, and the bows deprived of their strings, the siege was vigorously pressed, and the walls of the fortress were breached by the fire of the guns. The garrison were hard pressed and troubled, but in dark nights they sallied forth into the trenches and fought with surprising boldness. Sometimes the forces of the freebooter on the outside combined with those inside in making a simultaneous attack in broad daylight, and placed the trenches in great danger. After the siege had lasted fifty or sixty days, a bastion which had been mined was blown up, and stones, bricks and men flew into the air like pigeons. The brave soldiers of Islam, trusting in God, and placing their shields before them, rushed to the assault and fought with great determination. But the infidels had thrown up a barrier of earth inside the fortress, and had made intrenchments and places of defence in many parts. All the day passed in fighting, and many of the assailants were killed. But the brave warriors disdained to retreat, and passed the night without food or rest amid the ruins and the blood. As soon as the sun rose, they renewed their attacks, and after putting many of the garrison to the sword, by dint of great exertion and resolution they carried the place. The survivors of the garrison retired into

the citadel. In this assault 300 men of the royal army were slain, besides sappers and others engaged in the work of the siege. Six or seven hundred horse and foot were wounded by stones and bullets, arrows and swords. The men in the citadel being reduced to extremity, sent Ráo Bhaó Singh to make terms, and then surrendered. Next day *Amir-ul-umara* entered and inspected the fortress, and having left Uzbek Khan in command of it, he marched after Sivaji. After a time he gave the name of Islámábád to Chákra, and called Jáfar Khán from Aláwa to his assistance. *Amir-ul-umara* reported that the fort of Parenda had been won without fighting.

Sulaimán Shukoh.

[vol. ii. p. 123.] Sulaimán Shukoh had for some time found refuge in the hills with Pírthi Singh, *Zamindar* of Srínagar, and Tarbiyat Khán had been sent with an army to overturn that territory. Pírthi Singh now wrote, through the medium of Rája Jái Singh, begging forgiveness for his offences, and offering to give up Sulaimán Shukoh. Káunwar Rái Singh, son of Rája Jái Singh, was sent to fetch Sulaimán Shukoh, * and he brought him to Court on the 11th Jumáda-l-awwal. He was led into the presence of the Emperor, who graciously took a lenient course, and ordered him to be sent prisoner to the fort of Gwálíor, along with Mubámmad Suláimán, who had been confined in Salím-garh.

street and *bazar* of the city was choked with poor helpless people, so that it was difficult for the inhabitants to move about. An Imperial order was issued, that in addition to the regular *bulghur-khanas*, where raw and cooked grain was given away, ten more *langar-khanas* (free houses of entertainment), should be opened in the city, and twelve *bulghur-khanas* in the suburbs and among the tombs, and careful men were appointed to superintend them. Instructions were also issued for the *amirs* to make provision for *langar* distributions, and orders were given for the remission of taxes on (the transport of) grain, with the view of favouring the gathering of stores.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1071 A.H. (1661 A.D.).

[vol. ii. p. 128.] Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam married (in 1071 A.H.) the daughter of Raja Rûp Singh.

Campaign of Khân-khânân Mu'azzam Khân (Mîr Jumla) against Assam.

[vol. ii. p. 130.] The country of Ashâm (Assam) lies to the east and north of Bengal between long ranges of hills. Its length is nearly 100 *jarîbî kos*, and its width from the mountains on the north to those on the south side is eight days' journey. It is said to be the native land of Pirâu Waisiya,¹ the *warir* of Afrâsiyâb, and the Râja of the country traces his descent from this Pirâu. In the beginning the Râjas were fire-worshippers, but in course of time they became identified with the idolators of Hind. * It is the established practice in that country that every individual pays annually one *tolâ* of gold-dust to the government of the Râja. * When the Râja of that country or a great *samindâr* dies, they dig a large tomb or apartment in the earth, and in it they place his wives and concubines, as also his horses and equipage, carpets, vessels of gold and silver, grain,

etc., all such things as are used in that country, the jewels worn by wives and nobles, perfumes and fruit, sufficient to last for several days. These they call the provisions for his journey to the next world, and when they are all collected the door is closed upon them. It was in consequence of this custom that the forces of Khān-khānān obtained such large sums of money from under ground. The country of Khāmshūp borders upon Assam, and the two countries are friendly. For the last twenty years the people of this country had been refractory. They were in the habit of attacking the Imperial territories in the province of Bengal, and of carrying off the ryots and Musulmans as prisoners. So great injury was done to life and property, and great scandal was cast upon the Muhammadan religion.

Islām Khān, *Subdār* of Bengal, led an army against the country in the reign of Shāh Jahan, but he was recalled and appointed to the office of *icār* before the work was accomplished. Afterwards Shiyā' went to seek refuge with the *Zamindār* of Rakhang, who was one of the *zamindars* of those parts, and his fate was never ascertained. After Khān-khānān had settled the affairs of Dacca and other parts of Bengal, he resolved upon marching against Assam, and began to collect men and supplies for the campaign. When the Rājā of Assam and the *Zamindār* of Kuch Bihar, named Bihm Narāin, heard of this, they were greatly alarmed, and wrote penitent letters making submission and seeking forgiveness. * * * These were forwarded to the Emperor, but orders were sent to Khān-khānān for the extermination of both of them. So he marched against that country with artillery, provisions for sieges, and a number of boats, which are of great importance for carrying on war in those parts. [*Long details of the campaign.*] Khān-khānān had the *khutba* read and money coined in the name of the Emperor. He set aside the government of the Rājā, and was desirous of pursuing him; but the rainy season was coming on, and in that country it lasts five months, and rains almost incessantly night and day. * * * Large quantities of gold and silver were obtained from the places of sepulture.

* * Khān-khānān left the commander of his artillery in the conquered fortress of Ghar-gānw to take charge of it, and to get his guns in order, for artillery is all-important in that country. The Khān then retired thirty kos and a half from Ghar-gānw to Mathura-pur, which is situated at the foot of a hill, and is not liable to inundation. There he found cantonments in which to pass the rainy season. For seven or eight kos round he stationed outposts under experienced officers to guard against surprise by the Assamese. The infidels repeatedly made attacks on dark nights, and killed many men and horses.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, CORRESPONDING TO 1072 A.H. (1662 A.D.).

[vol. ii. p. 154.] The fifth year of the reign began 1st Shaw-wal. Soon after the celebration of the fifth anniversary, the Emperor was attacked by illness. In the course of a week the fact got noised about in the vicinity of the capital, where it interrupted the ordinary occupations of the people, and excited the hopes of the disaffected. But His Majesty's health soon recovered, * * and on the 7th Jumādā-awwal he started from Dehli for Lahore on his way to Kashmir.

Murder of Prince Murād Bakhsh.

[vol. ii. p. 155.] The author of the '*ʿĀlimgīr-nāma* has given an account of the killing of Murād Bakhsh as suited his own pleasure (*marzi*). I now give my version of it as I have ascertained it from written records, and as I have heard it from the evidence of truthful men of the time, and from the mouth of my own father, who was a confidential servant of Murād Bakhsh, and until his services were no longer needed lived at the foot of the fort (of Gwalior), intent upon raising a rope-ladder (*kamand*) and

¹ See supra, p. 180.

of rescuing his master, without even thinking of taking service under Aurangzeb. When Muhammad Bakhsh was sent to the fortress, a favourite concubine, named Sarsun Bâi, was at his request allowed to accompany him. The unfortunate prisoner used to give away half what was allowed him for his support in cooked food to the Mughals and Mughal woman who had followed him to his place of captivity, and lived in poverty at the foot of the fortress. After many schemes had been proposed, the Mughals contrived a plan for fastening a rope-ladder to the ramparts at a given time and place. After the second watch of the night, before the world was asleep, Murâd Bakhsh communicated his intended escape to Sarsun Bâi, and promised to do his best to return and rescue her. On hearing this, Sarsun Bâi began to weep and cry out in such a way that the guards heard what she said, and with lights and torches searched for and discovered the ladder. When the plot was communicated to Aurangzeb, he felt some alarm for his throne. At the instigation of some of the Emperor's friends, the sons of 'Alî Naki, whom Murâd Bakhsh had put to death, brought a charge of murder against him. The eldest son refused to demand satisfaction for his father's death, but the second complied with the expressed wish, and brought a charge of murder in a court of law against Murâd Bakhsh. The case came at length before the Emperor, and he directed that it should be submitted to a judge. After it had been decided according to law, the order was given in Rabi'-us sanî, 1072 A.H., for the judge to go along with the heir of the slain man to Murâd Bakhsh to pronounce the sentence of the law, upon the murder being proved. The date of his death is found in the line *Al waî ba-har badindah kushând*, "Alas and alas! on some pretext they killed him." His gracious Majesty rewarded the eldest son for not enforcing his claim of blood.

The Campaign in Assam.

[Vol. ii. p. 157.] I now revert to the campaign of Khândân in Assam. [Long details of the sufferings of the troops

from the constant attacks of the natives, from the ruin and floods, from want of food, and from sickness and disease. The men of the army were reduced to such extremity that some of the officers, after consulting together, were about to move off and leave Khân-khân. He got information of this, and took measures to prevent it. He gave public orders for the army to move its position towards that held by the Râja, but privately he prepared for a (backward) march, and comforted his men with prospects of peace and return. When the Assamese got intelligence of the movement, they assembled in great numbers, and showed great insolence. Diler Khân resolved to punish them, and thousands of them were slain and made prisoners. Khân-khân ordered that the prisoners should have the heads of the slain tied round them, and be thus exposed to the derision of the camp. He then sent them to the outposts to be again exposed, and afterwards put to death. * * The Râja at length consented to terms of peace. He agreed to pay 120,000 *tolas* of silver, and 2000 *tolas* of gold, and to present fifty elephants and one of his ugly daughters to the Emperor. He also agreed to present fifteen elephants and another daughter to Khân-khân, together with some cash and goods. It was further agreed that of the conquered places a few forts and towns in cultivated districts near the frontier of Bengal should be attached to the Imperial dominions. * *

In the middle of Jumâdâ-1 awwal, in the fifth year of the reign, the Khân-khân began his return march with an army broken down by disease, and with many of the officers and nobles at the point of death. The Khân-khân himself was seriously ill, but he strove to the last in the service of his master. Concealing his own suffering, or making light of it, he exerted himself night and day to direct and comfort his army, until he was overpowered by disease, and knew that the time of his departure was near. He appointed certain of his officers to march against the Râja of Kûsh Bihâr, who had failed in keeping his engagements and paying tribute. Then

he spoke a few last words of kindly counsel, and died at Khizr-pur, on the frontiers of Kuch Bihār, on the 12th Ramazān, at the beginning of the sixth year of the reign.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1073 A.H. (1663 A.D.).

Sicqī surprises Shāyista Khān at Pīna.

[vol. ii. p. 171.] The *Amir-i umarā* (Shāyista Khān), after taking several forts and strong places, proceeded to Pāna, and lodged there in a house which had been built by that hell-dog Sicqī. From thence he sent out detachments to destroy the power of Sicqī, and to make him prisoner. A regulation had been made that no person, especially no Mahrattā, should be allowed to enter the city or the lines of the army without a pass, whether armed or unarmed, excepting persons in the Imperial service. No Mahrattā horseman was taken into the service. Sicqī, beaten and dispirited, had retired into mountains difficult of access, and was continually changing his position. One day a party of Mahrattas, who were serving as foot-soldiers, went to the *kotwā*, and applied for a pass to admit 200 Mahrattas, who were accompanying a marriage party. A boy dressed up as a bridegroom, and escorted by a party of Mahrattas with drums and music, entered the town early in the evening. On the same day another party was allowed to enter the town on the report that a number of the enemy had been made prisoners at one of the outposts, and that another party was bringing them in pioned and bare-headed, holding them by ropes and abusing and reviling them as they went along. They proceeded to the place agreed upon, where the whole party met and put on arms. At midnight they went to the cook-house, which was near the women's apartments. Between the two there was a small window stopped up with mud and bricks. They proceeded by a way well known to them, and got into the kitchen. It was the month of the fast. Some of the cooks were awake, and busy in

preparing the vessels for cooking, and others were asleep. The assailants approached noiselessly, and, as far as they were able, they attacked and killed unawares those who were awake. Those who were asleep they butchered as they lay. So no great alarm was raised. They then quickly set to work about opening the closed window in the palace. The noise of their pickaxes and the cries of the slaughtered men awoke a servant who was sleeping in a room next to the wall of the cook-house. He went to the *Amir-i Umard* (Shayista Khan), and informed him of what he had heard. The *Amir* scolded him, and said that it was only the cooks who had got up to do their work. Some maid-servants then came, one after another, to say that a hole was being made through the wall. The *Amir* then jumped up in great alarm, and seized a bow, some arrows, and a spear. Just then some Alahrattas came up in front, and the *Amir* shot one with an arrow; but he got up to the *Amir*, and cut off his thumb. Two Alahrattas fell into a reservoir of water, and *Amir-i Umard* brought down another with his spear. In the midst of the confusion two slave-girls took Shayista Khan, *Amir-i Umard*, by the hand, and dragged him from the scene of strife to a place of safety. A number of Alahrattas got into the guard-house, and killed every one they found on his pillow, whether sleeping or awake, and said: "This is how they keep watch!" Some men got into the *nakdi-khuda*, and in the name of the *Amir-i Umard* ordered the drums to be beaten; so such a din was raised that one man could not hear another speak, and the noise made by the assailants grew higher. They closed the doors. Abu-l-Fath Khan, son of Shayista Khan, a brave young man, rushed forward and killed two or three men, but was himself wounded and killed. A man of importance, who had a house behind the palace of the *Amir-i Umard*, hearing the outcry, and finding the doors shut, endeavoured to escape by a rope-ladder from a window; but he was old and feeble, and somewhat resembled Shayista Khan. The Alahrattas mistook him for the *Amir-i Umard*, killed him and cut off his head. They also attacked two of the *Amir's* women.

One of them was so cut about that her remains were collected in a basket which served for her coffin. The other recovered, although she had received thirty or forty wounds. The assailants gave no thought to plundering, but made their way out of the house and went off.

In the morning Rājā Jāswant, who was commander of *Amir-w-i-unar*'s supports, came in to see the *Amir*, and make his apology; but that high-born noble spoke not a word beyond saying, "I thought the Mahārāja was in His Majesty's service when such an evil befell me." When this occurrence was reported to the Emperor, he passed censure both upon the *Amir* and Rājā Jāswant. The *Sibdu* of the Dakhin and the command of the forces employed against Sivaji was given to Prince Muhammad Aluazzam. The *Amir-w-i-unar* was recalled, but a subsequent order sent him to be *Sibdu* of Bengal. Mahārāja Jāswant was continued as before among the auxiliary forces under the Prince.

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1074 A.H. (1664 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 177.] Despatches arrived from Prince Aluazzam to the effect that Sivaji was growing more and more daring, and every day was attacking and plundering the Imperial territories and caravans. He had seized the ports of Jwal, Pābal and others near Surat, and attacked the vessels of pilgrims bound to Mecca. He had built several forts by the sea-shore, and had entirely interrupted maritime intercourse. He had also struck copper coins (*sikka-i-pul*) and *huns* in the fort of Rāj-garh. Mahārāja Jāswant had endeavoured to suppress him, but without avail. Rājā Jai Sing [*and many other nobles*] were sent to join the armies fighting against him.

¹ See *supra*, p. 256.

EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1075 A.H. (1665 A.D.).

War in the Dakhin. Surrender of Sivaji.

Raja Jai Singh proceeded to his command and paid his respects to Prince Muḥammad Mu'azzam at Aurangābād. He then went to Puna, and having arranged the affairs of that district, he employed himself in distributing the forces under his command to ravage the country and attack the forts of the enemy. He himself proceeded to attack the forts of Pūrāndhar and Rūdār Māl, two of the most noted fortresses in the country, which had formerly belonged to Nizām-ul-Mulk. The two forts were close to each other. Diler Khān was sent on in command of the advanced force. * Diler Khān began the siege, and both the forts were invested. The garrison made a vigorous defence. * Jai Singh arrived with his son Kesar Singh. * After a bastion had been blown up on one side, a panic seized the defenders of the foot of the hill. The besiegers then attacked them and succeeded in making their way to the top of the hill, when the defenders called for quarter, which was granted to them by the Raja and Diler Khān. The two commanders waited upon Diler Khān, and were sent to the Raja, who disarmed the garrison, and took possession of the forts. Eighty men, horsemen, infantry and sappers, were lost in the siege, and more than a hundred were wounded.

After the conquest of the two forts, Raja Jai Singh sent Dād Khān and * with seven thousand horse to plunder and lay waste the country which Sivaji had won by force and violence. Great efforts were made on both sides, and for five months the Imperial forces never rested from harassing and fighting the enemy. At Sivāpūr, which was built by Sivaji, and at the forts of Kandāna² and Kanwārī-garh, not one trace of cultivation was

¹ The text calls them "Pāndhar and Rūd-māl." Pūrāndhar is about twenty miles south-east of Puna, and Rūdār Māl was one of its outworks. See Grant Duff, vol. i. pp. 204, 207.

² Now called Singarh, eight miles south of Puna.—Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 62.

Three miles S.E. of Torna, and about fifteen from Panna.—Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 182.

The Rája promised him security for his life and honour, upon condition of his going to wait on the Emperor, and of agreeing to enter into his service. He also promised him the grant of a high *munsab*, and made preparations for suitably receiving him. Sivaji then approached with great humility. The Rája sent his *munsab* to receive him, and he also sent some armed *Rájputs* to provide against treachery. The *munsab* carried a message to say that if Sivaji submitted frankly, gave up his forts, and consented to show obedience, his petition for forgiveness would be granted by the Emperor. If he did not accept these terms, he had better

lelt, and cattle out of number were taken. But on the other hand, the sudden attacks by the enemy, their brilliant successes, their assaults in dark nights, their seizure of the roads and difficult passes, and the firing of the jungles full of trees, severely tried the Imperial forces, and men and beasts in great numbers perished. But the enemy also had suffered great losses, and took to flight. The fort of Rájgarh, which Sivaji himself held, and the fort of Kandana, in which were his wife and his maternal relations, were both invested, and the besiegers pressed the garrisons hard. The roads on all sides were blocked, and Sivaji knew that, however much he might desire it, he could not rescue his family and carry them to a place of safety. He also knew that if these strongholds were taken, his wife and family would be liable to suffer the consequences of his own evil deeds. Accordingly he sent some intelligent men to Rája Jai Singh, begging forgiveness of his offences, promising the surrender of several forts which he still held, and proposing to pay a visit to the Rája. But the Rája, knowing well his craft and falsehood, gave directions for pressing the attack more vigorously, until the intelligence was brought that Sivaji had come out of the fortress. Some confidential Brahmans now came from him, and confirmed his expressions of submission and repentance with the most stringent oaths.

return and prepare to renew the war. When Sivaji received the message, he said with great humility that he knew his life and honour were safe if he made his submission. The Raja then sent a person of higher rank to bring him in with honour.

When Sivaji entered, the Raja arose, embraced him, and seated him near himself. Sivaji then, with a thousand signs of shame, clasped his hands and said, "I have come as a guilty slave to seek forgiveness, and it is for you either to pardon or to kill me at your pleasure. I will make over my great forts, with the country of the Kokan, to the Emperor's officers, and I will send my son to enter the Imperial service. As for myself, I hope that after the interval of one year, when I have paid my respects to the Emperor, I may be allowed, like other servants of the State, who exercise authority in their own provinces, to live with my wife and family in a small fort or two. Whenever and wherever my services, are required, I will, on receiving orders, discharge my duty loyally." The Raja cheered him up, and sent him to Diler Khan.

After directions had been given for the cessation of the siege, seven thousand persons, men, women and children, came out of the fort. All that they could not carry away became the property of the Government, and the fort was taken possession of by the forces. Diler Khan presented Sivaji with a sword, and * *. He then took him back to the Raja, who presented him with a robe, * * and renewed his assurances of safety and honourable treatment. Sivaji, with ready tact, bound on the sword in an instant, and promised to render faithful service. When the question about the time Sivaji was to remain under parole, and of his return home, came under consideration, Raja Jai Singh wrote to the Emperor, asking forgiveness for Sivaji and the grant of a robe to him, and awaited instructions. * * A mace-bearer arrived with the *farman* and a robe, * * and Sivaji was overjoyed at receiving forgiveness and honour. A discussion then arose about the forts, and it was finally settled that out of the thirty-five forts which he possessed, the

keys of twenty-three should be given up, with their revenues, amounting to ten *lacs* of *huns*, or forty *lacs* of rupees. Twelve small forts, with moderate revenues,¹ were to remain in the possession of Siyaji's people. Sambha his son, a boy of eight years old, in whose name a *mansab* of 5000 had been granted at Raja Dai Singh's suggestion, was to proceed to Court with the Raja, attended by a suitable retinue. Siyaji himself, with his family, was to remain in the hills, and endeavour to restore the prosperity of his ravaged country. Whenever he was summoned on Imperial service, he was to attend. On his being allowed to depart, he received a robe, horse, and * * .

Death of Shah Jahan.

[vol. ii. p. 186.] It now became known that the *Sulih Kirin-i suhi* (Shah Jahan) was very ill, and that his life was drawing to a close. Prince Muhammad Muazzam was immediately sent off in haste to visit him, but he received the intelligence of his (grandfather's) death while on his way. He died² at the end of Rajab 1076 A.H. (22nd Jan. 1666), in the eighth year of the reign of Aurangzeb, who grieved much over his death. Shah Jahan reigned thirty-one years, and he was secluded and under restraint nearly eight years.³

[vol. ii. p. 188.] Among the events of this year was the subjugation of Sangram-nagar and Chhatgam near Arracan. The *zamindars* of these places had shaken off their allegiance, but Ummed Khan, eldest son of Shajista Khan, *Amir-i umud*, defeated them. * * The name of Sangram-nagar was changed to 'Khamgir-nagar, and that of Chhatgam to Islamahabad.

¹ See their names in Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 209.
² "On the 26th Rajab, in the fort of Agra, having thus entered the seventy-fifth solar year of his age."—*'Amal-i Sulih*.
³ "Seven years five months and eighteen days. The date of his death is found in the words *Shah Jahan kard wafat*."—*Shah Jahan-nama* of Sadiq Khan.

NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1076 A.H. (1666 A.D.).

Sivaji at the Imperial Court.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 189.] Raja Jai Singh, in the war with Bijapur, to be described presently, had, with the co-operation of Sivaji, done splendid service. After giving Sivaji every assurance of a kind and gracious reception, he made himself responsible for his safety, and sent him to Court. News of Sivaji's arrival was brought as the festival of the accession was being celebrated. It was ordered that Kunwar Ram Singh, son of Raja Jai Singh, with Mukhlis Khan, should go out to meet and conduct that evil malicious fellow into Agra. On the 18th Zi-1 ka'da, 1076, Sivaji, and his son of nine years old, had the honour of being introduced to the Emperor. He made an offering of 500 *ashrafis* and 6000 rupees, altogether 30,000 rupees. By the royal command he was placed in the position of a *pany-hazari*. But his son, a boy of eight years, had privately been made a *pany-hazari*, and Nathuji, one of his relations, who had rendered great service to Raja Jai Singh in his campaign against Bijapur, had been advanced to the same dignity, so that Sivaji had a claim to nothing less than the dignity of a *hafi-hazari* (7000). Raja Jai Singh had flattered Sivaji with promises; but as the Raja knew the Emperor to have a strong feeling against Sivaji, he artfully refrained from making known the promises he had held out. The *istikhbar*, or reception of Sivaji, had not been such as he expected. He was annoyed, and so, before the robe and jewels and elephant, which were ready for presentation to him, could be presented, he complained to Ram Singh that he was disappointed. The Kunwar tried to pacify him, but without effect. When his disrespectful bearing came to the knowledge of the Emperor, he was dismissed with little ceremony, without receiving any mark of the Imperial bounty, and was taken to a house outside the city near to the house of Raja Jai Singh, as had been arranged by Kunwar Ram

Singh. A letter was sent to Rājā Jai Singh, informing him of what had passed, and Sivaji was forbidden to come to the Royal presence until the Rājā's answer and advice should arrive. His son was ordered to attend the presence in the company of Rām Singh.

Campaign against Bijāpur.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 191.] Rājā Jai Singh, with Dilēr Khān and his other associates, in obedience to orders, marched against Bijāpur. He took with him, as guides and assistants, Alulla Yāhyā Bijāpuri, Purdil Khān, Sivaji, and Nathuji, one of Sivaji's relations, who was his chief supporter, and for whom also a *mansab* of 5000 had been proposed. His force amounted on paper (*kaldani*) to 33,000 horse, but he had with him 25,000. Abū-l-Majīd, grandson of Bahlol Khān, and one of the bravest of the nobles of Bijāpur, separated from 'Adil Khān, and joined Rājā Jai Singh, whom he assisted in subduing that country. The Rājā acted in all matters upon his advice, and he wrote to the Emperor recommending that a *mansab* of 5000 and 4000 horse should be settled upon him, which request was graciously acceded to. Forts belonging to Bijāpur were taken by storm, or after a few days' siege, in all directions. Sivaji and Nathuji, with two thousand horse and eight or nine thousand infantry, showed great skill in taking forts, and won much fame. In the course of three or four weeks three forts, Mangal-pābra and others, were taken. [*Severe fighting.*]

At length, after two months' fighting, the Imperial forces came to five kos distance from Bijāpur. On the 2nd Rājāb they began the investment of the city. 'Adil Khān, being now closed in, directed his generals to enter the Imperial territory and lay it waste. Others were sent to oppose the Rājā and attack his baggage. The embankments of the tanks were cut, poisonous matters and carrion were thrown into the wells, the trees and lofty buildings near the fortress were destroyed, spikes were fixed

in the ground, and the gardens and houses on both sides of the city were so destroyed that not a trace of culture was left near the city. * * Khwāja Nekām, a eunuch, joined Sharza Khān, the commander of Adil Khān's army, with a reinforcement of 6000 horse and 25,000 infantry, from Kutbu-l-Mulk. Every day there was severe fighting, and the men and animals which went out from the Imperial army to forage were cut off. Diler Khān was present wherever danger was, but to recount all the combats which were fought would be long and tedious. * *

Sivaji, with Nathuji and several thousand Imperial horse, had been sent to reduce the fort of Parnāla; ¹ but after making some bold movements, he was obliged to relinquish the attempt, and proceeded to Khehna, ² one of his own forts. Nathuji, who had been corrupted by some of the Bijāpur chiefs, separated from Sivaji, and went off along with them. The Rājā called Sivaji to him, and treated him very courteously. At length, by the active exertions and clever management of Sivaji, several forts came into the possession of the royal forces. In accordance with Sivaji's own desire, and in performance of the promise made to him, under the Imperial orders he was sent off express with his son at the end of the month of Ramazān to Court. After the departure of Sivaji, the siege of Bijāpur was carried on for two months and a half longer, and there were many hard fights under the walls. * *

At the end of Zi-l-kada the siege had gone on for eight months, during which neither cavalry nor infantry had rested. All round Bijāpur for forty or fifty kos not a trace of grass or fodder was left. No supplies arrived, so the Imperial armies were reduced to great straits. The Rājā and Diler Khān therefore deemed it advisable to remove to the neighbourhood of Dhārur, to have their wounded tended, to give rest to their troops, and to

¹ "Near Kolāpur."—Toxt, vol. i. p. 383. It lies about twelve miles N.W., and is marked in the maps as "Parnāla."
² Khehna is now called Vishnūgarh.—Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 177. See also Thornton, s.v. "Vishnūgarh." It lies in the Ghats, about 60 miles N.W. of Kolāpur. When the Muhammadans took it, they gave it the name of Sakhrāna. See post.

collect lead and powder. They also hoped to obtain these supplies of fodder and corn. A despatch to this effect was sent off to the Emperor. The Dakhinis also, inside the fortress, found their provisions drawing to an end, and their weapons expended or damaged. Both besiegers and besieged were therefore anxious for an arrangement. * * * When the despatch reached the Emperor, he issued an order directing his generals to cease operations against 'Adil Khan. Rāja Jai Singh was directed to proceed to Aurangabad, and Diler Khān was recalled to Court.

Sivaji's Escape.

[vol. ii. p. 108.] After Sivaji returned angry and disappointed from the royal presence to his house, orders were given to the *kotwal* to place guards round it. Sivaji, reflecting upon his former deeds and his present condition, was sadly troubled by the state of his affairs. The thought of nothing else but of delivering himself by some crafty plan from his perilous position. His subtle mind was not long in contriving a scheme. From the beginning he kept up a show of friendship and intimacy with the *amirs*, and with Kunwar Rām Singh. He sent them presents of Dakhin products, and, by expressing contrition for his past conduct, he won them over to advocate the acceptance of his shame and repentance.

Afterwards he feigned to be ill, and groaned and sighed aloud. Complaining of pains in the liver and spleen, he took to his bed, and, as if prostrated with consumption or fever, he sought remedies from the physicians. For some time he carried on this artifice. At length he made known his recovery. He sent presents to his doctors and attendants, food to the Brahmans, and presents of grain and money to needy Musulmans and Hindūs. For this purpose he had provided

¹ The '*Angir-nama*, p. 970, says that Sambhaji received a good deal of notice from the Emperor, and that upon a letter of remonstrance arriving from Rāja Jai Singh, the guards were removed from Sivaji's dwelling.

large baskets covered with paper. These, being filled with sweetmeats of all sorts, were sent to the houses of the *untirs* and the abodes of *fakirs*. Two or three swift horses were procured, and, under the pretence of being presents to Brahmans, they were sent to a place appointed fourteen kos from the city, in charge of some of his people, who were privy to his plans. A devoted companion, who resembled him in height and figure, took his place upon the couch, and Sivaji's gold ring was placed upon his hand. He was directed to throw a piece of fine muslin over his head, but to display the ring he wore upon his hand; and when any one came in, to feign to be asleep. Sivaji, with his son, got into two baskets, and were carried out, it being pretended that the baskets contained sweetmeats intended for the *brahmins* and *fakirs* of *Matlura*.

Thus, on the last day of *Safar*, Sivaji got out of *Agra*, and proceeded to where his horses were posted. Thence, in the course of two watches, he reached *Matlura*. There he shaved off his beard and whiskers, and smeared his own and his son's face with ashes, and, taking with him some jewels and gold, he went off with some of his confederates, who were also disguised as *fakirs*. He crossed the *Jumna* at an unfrequented ferry, and proceeded towards *Benares*, travelling in the night, and being guided by some swift *Dakhini* runners, whose business is to disguise themselves and travel in all directions. It is said that they carried sufficient money and jewels for their wants in hollow walking-sticks.

On the following day, at the fifth watch, a *Dakhini* runner, employed as a spy, brought information that Sivaji had got free and was making off. The *kotwal* was directed to make inquiry, but he replied that the guards were at their posts round the house. Another spy confidently reported his escape. The *kotwal's* men went to see, and they saw as they thought Sivaji asleep under his thin covering, and his ring distinctly visible. The *kotwal* reported accordingly. A third spy now strongly asseverated that Sivaji had escaped, and was forty or fifty kos away. A

closer investigation revealed the fact of his escape. The *Kotwal* and Kunwar Rām Singh were censured, and as Rām Singh was suspected of having prompted the evasion, he was deprived of his *mansab* and forbidden to come to Court. Orders were sent to the provincial governors, and to the officials in all directions, to search for Sivaji, and to seize him and send him to the Emperor. Rāja Jai Singh, who just at this time had retired from Bijapur, and had arrived at Aurangabad, received orders to arrest Xathuji before the escape of Sivaji became public, and to send him to Court. After that he was to watch carefully for the bird escaped from the cage, and not suffer him to re-establish himself in his old haunts and to gather his followers around him. • • It is said that Sivaji made such expedition in his flight that no courier could have overtaken him. But his son Sambha, a boy of tender years, was with him, and he suffered so much from the rapid motion, that Sivaji left him behind at Allahabad, in charge of a Brahman, a man of high repute in that place, whose relations in the Dakhin had been closely connected with Sivaji's father. Sivaji placed a sum of money with the Brahman and commended the boy to his care. He was not to part from him until he received a letter in Sivaji's own hand; and if he obtained certain intelligence of Sivaji's death, he was to act as he deemed best.

Siege of Bijapur raised.

Rāja Jai Singh, in obedience to orders, raised the siege of Bijapur. Knowing that the forts which he had taken could not be held after his departure, through want of provisions on the inside, against the swarms of Dakhins outside, he resolved to abandon them. He took out of them such guns as he could carry away. Then he gave the forts up to plunder, and afterwards set fire to them, and blew up the strong towers and walls. Then he proceeded to Aurangabad. Information now reached him of the flight of Sivaji, and, in obedience to the Imperial command,

he arrested Nathuji and his son, and sent them to Court. * * On arriving there, Nathuji was ordered to be kept under close surveillance. Seeing no other chance of escape, he expressed a wish to become a Musulmán, which greatly pleased the Emperor. So he was initiated, and received a *mansab* of three thousand and two thousand horse, with the title of Muhammad Kuli Khán. After some time, when he returned to the Dakhin with reinforcements for Diler Khán, he recanted, and seized an opportunity to join Sivaji.

TENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1077 A.H. (1667 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 207.] Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam was appointed *Subadar* of the Dakhin, * * and intelligence reached the Court of the death of Raja Jai Singh.

ELEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1078 A.H. (1668 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 211.] After the expiration of ten years (of the reign), authors were forbidden to write the events of this just and righteous Emperor's reign. Nevertheless some competent persons (did write), and particularly Alustaid Khán, who secretly wrote an abridged account of the campaign in the Dakhin, simply detailing the conquests of the countries and forts, without alluding at all to the misfortunes of the campaign; and Bindraban, who wrote an abridged account of the events of some years of the second and third decades. But I have neither seen nor obtained any history that contains a full and detailed account of the forty remaining years of the reign. Consequently, from the eleventh to the twenty-first year of the Emperor's reign, I have not been able to relate the events in the order in which they occurred, giving the month and year; but after this year, with very great labour and pains, I collected information from the papers in the public offices, and by inquiry made from truthful persons, the confidential and old servants of the Emperor and

old cunuchs. This, and whatsoever I myself observed, after attaining years of discretion, for thirty or forty years, I laid up in the strong box (of my memory), and that I have written. And since I heard that Bindaban (his Bahadur Shah), who was long a *mutasaddi* of Shah 'Alam during the time he was a prince, had compiled a history, and had included in it an account of upwards of thirty years, being exceedingly anxious to see it, I made great search for it. Subsequently when, after great trouble, I obtained a copy, and examined it carefully from beginning to end, in the hope that I might gather the rich fruits of his labours, I discovered that his work did not contain one-half of what I had collected and included in my own history.¹

The King of happy disposition strove earnestly from day to day to put in force the rules of the Law, and to maintain the Divine commands and prohibitions. Orders were also issued prohibiting the collection of the *ribhatt*, the *pindar*, and other imposts which brought in *lacs* of rupees to the State. Prohibitions were promulgated against intoxicating drinks, against taverns and brothels, and against the meetings called *jalfas* or *fairs*, at which on certain dates countless numbers of Hindūs, men and women of every tribe, assemble at their idol temples—when *lacs* of rupees change hands in buying and selling, and from which large sums accrue to the provincial treasuries. The minstrels and singers of reputation in the service of the Court were made ashamed of their occupation, and were advanced to the dignities of *munshis*. Public proclamations were made prohibiting singing and dancing. It is said that one day a number of singers and minstrels gathered together with great cries, and having fitted up a bier with a good deal of display, round which were grouped the public waiters, they passed under the Emperor's *sharokhan-i-darwan*, or interview-window. When he inquired what was intended by the bier and the show, the minstrels said that Alusic was dead, and they were carrying his

¹ See Col. Lees, in *Journ. Roy. As. Soc. N.S.* vol. iii. p. 471.

corpse for burial. Aungmye then directed them to place it deep in the ground, that no sound or cry might afterwards arise from it.

In the reigns of former kings, and up to this year, the *jhavokhu-i-durran* had been a regular institution. Although the King might be suffering from bodily indisposition, he went to the *jhavokhu* once or twice a day at stated times, and put his head out of the window to show that he was safe. This window, at Agra and at Delhi, was constructed on the side looking towards the Juma. Besides the nobles in attendance at the Court, hundreds of thousands of men and women of all classes used to collect under the *jhavokhu* and offer their blessings and praises. Many Hindus were known by the name of *durran*, for until they had seen the person of the King at the window, they put not a morsel of food into their mouths. His religious Majesty looked upon this as among the forbidden and unlawful practices, so he left off sitting in the window, and forbade the assembling of the crowd beneath it.

[TWELFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN.]¹

Escape of Sivaji.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 217.] Sivaji left Mathura after changing his clothes and shaving off his beard and whiskers, carrying with him his youthful son and forty or fifty individuals, servants and dependents, who all smeared their faces with ashes, and assumed the appearance of Hindu mendicants. The valuable jewels and the gold *mohurs* and the *huns* they carried with them were concealed in walking sticks, which had been hollowed out for the purpose, and were covered at the top with knobs. Some was sewed up in old slippers, and the wearers, pretending to be Hindu mendicants of three different classes, *Bairagis*, *Gosains*, and *Udasis*, proceeded by way of Allahabad to Benares. One very valuable diamond with some

¹ This does not appear in the text.

rubies was encased in wax, and concealed in the dress of one of his followers, and other jewels were placed in the mouths of other attendants.

So they proceeded until they reached a place of which the *faydur*, 'Ali Kuli Khan, had received private and public notice of Sivi's escape. The *faydur*, knowing of the escape of Sivi, on hearing of the arrival of these three parties of Hindu devotees, ordered them all to be placed in confinement, and an inquiry to be made. All these men and some other travellers remained in confinement a night and a day. On the second night Sivi, at the second watch of the night, proceeded alone to the *faydur* in private, and acknowledged that he was Sivi. But, said he, "I have two gems, a diamond and a ruby of great value, with more than a *lac* of rupees. If you secure me and send me back a prisoner, or if you cut off my head and forward that, the two priceless jewels will be lost to you. Here am I, and here is my head; but still, keep off this hand from wreathed me in this dangerous strait." 'Ali Kuli preferred the ready bribe to the hope of the reward which might afterwards accrue to him. He took the two valuable jewels, and on the following morning, after making inquiries, he released all the devotees and travellers from custody.

Sivi, looking upon his escape as a new lease of life, hastened to pursue his journey in the direction of Benares. He himself in rapid travelling and walking beat even the regular runners; but after reaching Allāhābād, his young son Sambhā, who accompanied him, was foot-sore and worn out. Sivi therefore at Benares gave a quantity of jewels and money, and placed his boy in the charge of a Brahman, named Kabkalas, who was the hereditary family priest of his family, and who happened at that time to be at Benares. Sivi promised that if he reached home alive, he would write to the Brahman, who was then to conduct the boy to his father by the road and in the manner prescribed in the letter. He warned him against listening to the wishes of

the boy, or attending to letters from his mother. Having thus provided for the care of his boy, he continued his flight, * and he had hardly entered Benares before the government messengers brought the news of Sivaji's escape. * Sivaji then continued his flight by way of Bilhar, Patna and Chanda, which is a thickly-wooded country and difficult of passage. Every place he came to, he and his followers changed their disguises, and so passed on from place to place secretly till he reached Haidarabad, and came to 'Abdu-lah Kutbu-l-Mulk. There he told such stories and used such arts and wiles to forward his purpose that he deceived 'Abdu-lah Shah.

Conquests of Sivaji.

[vol. ii. p. 220.] Sundry forts which had belonged to the Kutb-Shahi kings had passed into the hands of the 'Adil-Shahis. Sivaji had a great reputation for skill in the reduction of forts, and he swore to 'Abdu-lah Shah, that if he would supply him with forces and the means for conducting sieges, he would in a short time wrest these forts from the Bijapuris, and hand them over to the officers appointed to accompany him; he would not even accept some forts which had belonged to himself, and were in the possession of the officers of Aurangzeb, if he recovered them by the means supplied him. He vowed also that for the remainder of his life he would remain the devoted servant and adherent of 'Abdu-lah Shah. The ultimate objects of the arch-deceiver never entered into the consideration of 'Abdu-lah Shah. He provided a sufficient force and a suitable siege train, and he appointed to it several officers acquainted with siege operations, whom he enjoined to serve heartily in obedience to and in accord with Sivaji.

Sivaji, with the force placed under his command, marched on his enterprise. By fraud and stratagem, and by his marvellous skill in the conduct of sieges, every fort that he approached fell into his hands after a few days' investment. He cajoled the officers who had been sent with him to take charge of the cap-

tured forts, with plausible statements, with promises of giving them the command of more important places, and by using the money and property he had obtained from the captured strong-holds. So he carried them with him to other forts, and in a short time he reduced Sattam, Farnala, and ten or twelve other renowned forts belonging to Bishapur, which it would have taken years and fact of expense to conquer. He then marched against Kijgarh, and other forts which had been captured by Kija dai Singh, Diler Khan, and other Imperial generals, the keys of which he himself had surrendered. Having mastered them all, he placed one or two of them in charge of the officers of 'Abu-lah Shah.

According to common report, and the oral statements of men of Hadarabad, Sivaji came to that city in the first or second year of the reign of Abu-l Hasan, and succeeded in wheeling and sat-tying that sovereign. When he had finished his fortress-taking, according to his wont, he took up his abode at Kijgarh, and there again raised the standard of rebellion. In the days when the fortifications of the port of Surat were not yet completed, he attacked and took the place. There he obtained an immense booty in gold and silver, coined and uncoined, and in the stuffs of Kashmir, Ahmaddabad, and other places. He also made prisoners of some thousand Hindû men and women of name and station, and Musulmans of honourable position. *Ators* in money and goods thus came into the hands of that evil infidel.

Aurangzeb, on being informed of the capture and plunder of Surat, ordered that the fortifications of that port should be completed; and he placed Diler Khan and Khan-Jahan in command of an army to punish Sivaji. It is said that Sivaji got together some ten or twelve thousand Kachhi and Arab horses, so that when he sent out an army most of the horsemen were *barghys*, i. e. they rode horses belonging to him. He rebuilt the

'This was in the thirteenth year of the reign, 1081 A.H. (1671 A.D.), according to the *Ma-dav-i-Khumbh*.

forts which had formerly stood on the sea-shore, and he constructed also vessels of war, which were kept under the guns of the fortress. With these vessels he attacked and plundered ships which were proceeding to Europe and to Mecca.

When Sivaji had satisfied himself of the security of Rajgarh, his old retreat, and of the dependent territory, he turned his thoughts towards finding some other more inaccessible hill as a place for his abode. After diligent search he fixed upon the hill of Raktir,¹ a very high and strong place. The ascent of this place was three kos, and it was situated twenty-four kos from the sea; but an inlet of the sea was about seven kos from the foot of the hill. The road to Surat passed near the place, and that port was ten or twelve stages distant by land. Rajgarh was four or five stages off. The hills are very lofty and difficult of ascent. Rain falls there for about five months in the year. The place was a dependency of the Kokan, belonging to Nizam-ul-Mulk. Having fixed on the spot, he set about building his fort. When the gates and bastions and walls were complete and secure, he removed thither from Rajgarh, and made it his regular residence. After the guns were mounted, and the place made safe, he closed all the roads around, leaving only one leading to his fortress. One day he called an assembly, and having placed a bag of gold and a gold bracelet worth a hundred *pagodas* before the people, he ordered proclamation to be made that this would be given to any one who would ascend to the fort, and plant a flag, by any other than the appointed road, without the aid of ladder or rope. A *Dhier* came forward, and said that with the permission of the *Raja* he would mount to the top of the hill, plant the flag, and return. He ascended the hill, fixed the flag, quickly came down again, and made his obeisance. Sivaji ordered that the purse of money and the gold bracelet should be given to him, and that he should go set at liberty; and he gave directions for closing the way by which the *Dhier* had ascended.

¹ The name was afterwards changed to Raktir-garh. It lies due east of Jinjera.—See Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 190.

At the first, Rahiri was attached to the Kokan, and belonged to Nizam-ul-Mulk. Afterwards this country and several of the dependencies of Bijapur passed into the possession of the Emperor Shah Jahan. When the Imperial government became friendly with Bijapur, the Kokan, which had belonged to Nizam-ul-Mulk, was granted to 'Adil Shah in exchange for territory newly acquired by Bijapur. Fath Khan, an Afghan, was appointed governor of the country on the part of Bijapur, and he posted himself in the fort of Danda-Rajput, which is situated half in the sea and half on land. Subsequently he built the fort of Jazira upon an island in the sea, about a cannon-shot distant from Danda-Rajput, in a very secure position, so that, if the governor of the country was hard pressed by an enemy, he might have a secure retreat in that place.

After Sivaji had fixed his abode at Rahiri, which is twenty-five from Danda-Rajput, he appointed a commandant of that fortress. In a short time, he reduced and occupied seven other forts, small and great, in that neighbourhood, and then resolved upon the conquest of Danda-Rajput. Fath Khan had observed the triumphant progress of Sivaji, and how fortress after fortress had fallen into his hands. So Fath Khan lost courage; he abandoned Danda-Rajput, and retired to the island fortress in the sea. Sivaji then resolved to effect the conquest of the island also, and he so conducted matters that Fath Khan was soon reduced to extremities, and he offered to surrender the place to Sivaji, upon a pledge of security to himself and the garrison.

Fath Khan had in his service three Abyssinian slaves, Sidi Sambal, Sidi Yaktar, and Sidi Khairiyar, each of whom had ten Abyssinian slaves, which he had trained and drilled. The management of the island and of many domestic concerns was in the hands of these Abyssinians. These three men got infor-

¹ See *supra* p. 256.

² *Jazira*, the island; but it is more commonly known under the Marathi form "Jinjira."

and to ward off naval attacks. He was armed and ready night and day. He frequently captured ships of the enemy, and cut off the heads of many Mahrattas, and sent them to Surat. He used to write reports to Khán-Jahán, and he frequently received marks of approbation from him. He was constantly revolving in his mind plans for wresting the fort of Dandá-Rájpúri from the hands of Sivaji. He got together some rockets,¹ which he fastened to trees, and discharged them at night against the fort.

Sivaji also was prosecuting his plans for the reduction of Jazira. But he now retired to a dwelling about three *kos* to celebrate the *Id-i*, leaving in command at Rájpurí some officers experienced in siege work, to prosecute incessantly the operations against Jazira during his absence, and he held out to them the reward of a *man* of gold and other presents. One night, while the garrison of Dandá-Rájpúri were celebrating the *Id-i*, and were intoxicated or inattentive, Sidi Yákút sent on shore four or five hundred men under Sidi Khairiyat with ropes, ladders, and other apparatus. He himself drew thirty or forty boats laden with siege *matériel* under the walls of Rájpurí, and gave the signal agreed upon to announce his arrival. They found the garrison off their guard, and Sidi Khairiyat assaulted the place with loud cries from the land side. When the enemy took the alarm, and rushed to repel the attack on that side, Sidi Yákút planted his scaling-ladders, which he had brought in his boats, and by means of these and of ropes, his brave followers scaled the walls, and quickly made their way up. Some of the assailants were cast into the sea, and were drowned, others fell under the swords of the defenders, but the storming party forced its way into the fort, and raised the cry, "Strike! kill!" Just at this time the powder magazine caught fire, and blow up a number of men, including ten or twelve who were with Sidi Yákút. The smoke and the noise made it difficult to distinguish friend from foe, but Sidi Yákút raised his war-cry, and

¹ *Tophde-hawdi*, lit. "aerial-guns."

mation of the enemy's power, and of Fath Khán's intention of surrendering the island to Sivají. They took counsel together, and resolved that no good could come from allowing the island to pass into the hands of any infidel. So they determined to take Fath Khán prisoner, and to make Sídí Sambal governor of the fortress. In the fourteenth year of the reign these Abyssinians seized Fath Khán unawares, placed chains upon his legs, and wrote a statement of the facts to 'Ádil Sháh Bījápúrí. They also wrote to Khán-Jahán, the *Súbadár* of the Dakhin, begging the aid of the Imperial forces, and requesting him to send his forces by sea from Surat. Khán-Jahán graciously bestowed *mansabs* and presents on each of the three Abyssinians.

Khán-Jahán also took measures to thwart the designs of Sivají. He got together some ships at the fortress (of Surat), and began the rebuilding which had been ordered. Then he collected some ships of war with the intention of taking a cruise. One night he attacked the vessels of Sivají which lay near the fort of Dandá-Rájpúrí, and captured them with two hundred sailors trained for warlike work. One hundred of them were Mahrattas, and had lately been appointed to this duty by Sivají. Stones were tied to the feet of these men, and they were thrown into the sea. From that day forth the animosity between the Abyssinians and Sivají grew more violent. Sivají collected forty or fifty vessels of war to defend the forts of Kalába and Gandirí, which were the strongest of his newly-built forts on the sea-shore. He then turned his thoughts to the reduction of the fort of Jazíra (Jinjera), and the capture of the Abyssinians. There were frequent naval fights between the opposing forces, in which the Abyssinians were often victorious.

Sídí Sambal was advanced to a *mansab* of 900, and then he died. Before he expired he made Sídí Yákút his successor, and enjoined all the other Abyssinians to pay him a loyal and cheerful obedience. Sídí Yákút was distinguished among his people for courage, benignity and dignity. He now strove more than ever to collect ships of war, to strengthen the fortress,

Taxes.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 229.] An order was promulgated exempting the commercial goods of Musulmáns from tax throughout the dominions of Hindústán. But after a short time, upon the reports of the revenue officers, and by recommendation of good and experienced persons, an order was issued that every article belonging to Musulmáns, the price of which was not large, should pass free; but that goods of value should pay duty. Goods belonging to partners were not to be troubled with duties. The revenue officers then reported that Musulmáns had adopted the practice of dividing their goods into small parcels in order to avoid the duty, and that they passed the goods of Hindús in their names, and thus the payment of the *zakát* prescribed by the Law was avoided. So an order was given that, according to the Law, two and a half per cent. should be taken from Musulmáns and five per cent. from Hindús.

*[Disturbances among the Yúsufzúis.]**War with Bijápúr.*

[Text, vol. ii. p. 236.] In the sixteenth year of the reign, corresponding to 1083 A.H. (1673 A.D.),¹ Khán-Jahán fought a battle with Bahlol, the Bijápúr general, near the town of Málkher,² about four stages from Bijápúr. Islám Khán Rúmi fought splendidly, and the Imperial army was worsting the enemy in all directions, when an explosion of gunpowder took place, which so frightened the elephant of Islám Khán that the driver lost all control of it, and the animal carried off his rider to the lines of the enemy, where Islám Khán was dragged off the elephant and killed. A good deal of the baggage of the Imperial army was plundered, and many men were slain in the battle. * * Aurangzeb received the news of the defeat of Diler Khán and the death of Islám

¹ Just before this the dates become confused.

² See Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 78. It lies about thirty miles south-east of Kulbarga.

encouraged his men to slaughter the defenders who had escaped the fire. Sídí Khairiyat also scaled the walls on his side, and the place was taken.

I, the author, was in that country some time, and I repeatedly heard from many men, and from the mouth of Yákút Khán himself, that when the magazine blew up, although Sivají was twenty *kos* off, it awoke him from sleep, and he said that some misfortune had fallen on Dandá-Rájpúrí, and he sent men to ascertain what had happened.

At this time Sivají's forces had gone to attack the neighbourhood of Surat. Within the space of four or five *kos* from Rájpúrí there were six or seven Nizámu-l Mulki forts which had fallen into the hands of Sivají, but he was unable at this time to render them any assistance. So Sídí Yákút seized the opportunity to attack them. Six forts surrendered after two or three days' resistance, but the commandant of one fort held out for a week in the hope of relief from Sivají. The Abyssinians pushed forward their approaches, and kept up such a fire that he was obliged to surrender. Sídí Yákút granted quarter to the garrison, and seven hundred persons came out. But notwithstanding his word, he made the children and pretty women slaves, and forcibly converted them to Islám. The old and ugly women he set free, but the men he put to death. This struck such terror into the hearts of Sivají and his followers that he was obliged to confine himself to securing Ráhirí. Sídí Yákút sent an account of his victory to Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, *Súbadár* of the Dakhín, and to Khán-Jahán. His *mansab* was raised, a robe of honour was sent to him, and he received the title of Khán. Similar honours were also given to Sídí Khairiyat.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 229.] A report reached Sivají that his son Sambhá, whom he had left at Alláhábád with the *Bráhma*n, was dead, and Sámabháji's wife wanted to become a *sati*, * * but a few months afterwards the *Bráhma*n arrived, bringing Sámabháji with him.

information was carried to Kár-talab Khán, *faujdar* of Nárnaul. He sent a large force of horse and foot to the assistance of the *shikkdár*, and to punish and seize the rioters. The *Sát-námis* fought this force also, wounded and killed a great many of them, and put the rest to flight. Matters grew worse, and the *faujdar* set about collecting more men, both horse and foot, and called to his assistance the *samindárs* of the neighbourhood. With his old and new men, and with the levies from the *samindárs*, he marched against the rioters, and gave them battle. He killed a good many of them, but was repulsed and compelled to fly.

To shorten a long story, suffice it to say that after several fights the *faujdar* was killed, and the town of Nárnaul fell into the hands of the *Sát-námis*. They proceeded to collect the taxes from the villages, and established posts of their own. When the Emperor reached Dehlí, he was informed of this outbreak, and he sent force after force to quell it, but they were all defeated and dispersed. It was said that swords, arrows, and musket-balls had no effect upon these men, and that every arrow and ball which they discharged against the royal army brought down two or three men. Thus they were credited with magic and witchcraft, and stories were currently reported about them which were utterly incredible. They were said to have magic wooden horses like live ones, on which their women rode as an advanced guard.

Great *rájas* and veteran *amirs* were sent against them with powerful armies. But the revolvers were eager for the fight, and advanced to about sixteen or seventeen *kos* from Dehlí. The royal army went forth boldly to attack them; but the *samindárs* of the neighbourhood, and some cowardly *Rájpúts*, seized the opportunity to throw off their obedience, and to withhold the government dues. They even broke out into open violence, and the flames daily increased. The King ordered his tents to be brought out. He then wrote some prayers and devices with his own hands, which he ordered to be sewn on the banners and standards, and carried against the rebels. At length, by the exertions of Rája Bishan Singh, Hámid Khán, and others,

Khán in the Dakhin, while he was at Hasan Abdál on his march against the Afgháns, in the beginning of the seventeenth year of his reign, and he was obliged to defer the punishment of the Dakhinís for the time. * * The Emperor returned from Hasan Abdál to the capital at the end of the eighteenth or nineteenth year of his reign.

Riot of Hindú Devotees.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 252.] One of the remarkable occurrences of this year¹ was the outburst of the Hindú devotees called *Sat-námis*, who are also known by the name of *Mundihs*. There were four or five thousand of these, who were householders in the *parganas* of Nárnaul and Mewát. These men dress like devotees, but they nevertheless carry on agriculture and trade, though their trade is on a small scale. In the way of their religion they have dignified themselves with the title of "Good name," this being the meaning of *Sat-nám*. They are not allowed to acquire wealth in any but a lawful calling. If any one attempts to wrong or oppress them by force, or by exercise of authority, they will not endure it. Many of them have weapons and arms.

At the time Aurangzeb was returning from Hasan Abdál, a strong altercation arose one day near Nárnaul, between a man of this sect, who was engaged in agricultural work, and a man who was keeping watch over the harvest. The latter broke the *Sat-námi's* head with his staff. A number of *Sat-námis* then collected and beat the watchman, so that they left him for dead. When intelligence reached the *shikkdár*, he assembled his men and sent them to arrest those *Sat-námis*. Meantime numbers of the *Sat-námis* assembled. They attacked the *shikkdár's* men, overpowered them, wounded several, and took away their arms. Their numbers went on increasing, and

¹ According to the *Ma-ásir*, it was the fifteenth year. See *suprà*, p. 135.

ments. After the death of the Rájá, his foolish servants took away the Rájá's two sons, named Ajít Singh and Dalathamán,¹ who were of tender years, and the Ránís also. Without waiting for permission from Aurangzeb, and without even obtaining a pass from the *Súbadár* of the province, they set off towards the capital. When they reached the ferry of Atak, they were unable to produce any pass, so the commander of the boats refused to let them proceed. They then attacked him, killed and wounded some of his men, and by force made good their way over the river and went onwards towards Dehlí.

There was an old standing grievance in the Emperor's heart respecting Rájá Jaswant's tribute, which was aggravated by these presumptuous proceedings of the *Rájpúts*. He ordered the *kotwál* to take his own men, with an additional force obtained from the *mansabdárs*, as well as some artillery, and to surround the camp of the *Rájpúts*, and keep guard over them. After some days, a party of *Rájpúts* sought permission to go home. Their request was made known to Aurangzeb, and, as it seemed right and proper, it was granted.

Meanwhile the *Rájpúts* had obtained two boys of the same age as the Rájá's children. They dressed some of the female attendants in the garments of the *ránís*, and taking every precaution that their stratagem should not be discovered, they left these women and the boys under guard in their camp. The (real) *ránís*, disguised as men, went off at night in charge of two trusty servants and a party of devoted *Rájpúts*, and made their way with all speed to their own country. The brave and active chiefs, who might have stopped or overtaken them, were keeping guard over the tents in which the pretended children of the Rájá were. After two or three watches, when a report of the fact was made, some officials were sent to make inquiries, and it was repeatedly stated that the *ránís* and the children were still there. Orders were then given for taking all the Rájá's followers into the fortress. The *Rájpúts* and the

several thousands of them were killed, and the rest were put to flight, so that the outbreak was quelled. * *

Re-Imposition of the Jizya.

With the object of curbing the infidels, and of distinguishing the land of the faithful from an infidel land, the *jizya*, or poll-tax, was imposed upon the Hindús throughout all the provinces.¹ Upon the publication of this order, the Hindús all round Dehlí assembled in vast numbers under the *jharokha* of the Emperor on the river front of the palace, to represent their inability to pay, and to pray for the recall of the edict. But the Emperor would not listen to their complaints. One day, when he went to public prayer in the great mosque on the Sabbath, a vast multitude of Hindús thronged the road from the palace to the mosque, with the object of seeking relief. Money-changers and drapers, all kinds of shopkeepers from the Urdú *bázár*, mechanics, and workmen of all kinds, left off work and business, and pressed into the way. Notwithstanding orders were given to force a way through, it was impossible for the Emperor to reach the mosque. Every moment the crowd increased, and the Emperor's equipage was brought to a stand-still. At length an order was given to bring out the elephants and direct them against the mob. Many fell trodden to death under the feet of the elephants and horses. For some days the Hindús continued to assemble in great numbers and complain, but at length they submitted to pay the *jizya*.

Death of Rája Jaswant Singh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 259.] ² Intelligence now arrived of the death of Rája Jaswant Singh, who had gone to Kábul with reinforce-

¹ According to the *Ma-dsir*, the *jizya* was imposed in Safar, 1090, in the 22nd year of the reign (1680 A.D.), and it is not associated with the outbreak of the *Sat-námis*, which, according to that work, occurred five years before.

² See the account of this given by the *Ma-dsir-i 'A'lamgiri*, *suprà* p. 187.

It was soon after reported that the mean-spirited Ráná had again broken his engagements, and showed rebellious designs, so that Khán-Jahán could bring him to no final settlement. This kindled the flames of the Emperor's wrath, and towards the end of the same year, he set off again to Ajmír, with the intention of punishing the Ráná and the other evil-disposed *Rájpúts*. He wrote to Prince Mu'azzam, directing him to come from the Dakhin to Ujjain, and Prince Muhammad A'zam was ordered to march with all speed from Bengal. When the King's tents were pitched near Ajmír, Prince Muhammad Akbar was sent with a large force to attack and chastise the Ráná. Sháh Kuli Khán, who was promoted and received the title of Tahawwur Khán, was placed in command of his advanced guard.

When the Ráná heard of these preparations, he laid U'dípúr, his capital, waste, and with the treasure and family and followers of himself and Jaswant Singh, he fled to the mountains and difficult passes. The Prince was ordered to follow him into the hills with a strong force of brave men suited for mountain warfare. Another force was sent to ravage the country of the Ráná, and destroy the crops. When Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam arrived at Ujjain, he was directed to march against the lake of Aná-súgar, which belonged to the Ráná, and was about eighty *kos* from Ajmír. His orders were to station his army about that neighbourhood, and to trample every scrap of cultivation under the hoofs of his horses.

It was now announced that Prince Muhammad A'zam had shown such alacrity in the execution of the orders issued to him, that he had compressed four months' march into less than one, and came up with his army. He was ordered to march through the mountains and central fastnesses of the Ráná, into the territories of the *Ráhtors*, and there to kill, ravage and make prisoners among the *Rájpúts*. He was also ordered to employ a force in preventing the transport of supplies to the Ráná, and in stopping cultivation. Nearly twenty-five thousand horse, *Ráhtors*, belonging to the territories of Jaswant, and other *Rájpúts*, assembled to support the Ráná, and had the boldness to attack the royal forces, and to

disguised women, who were ready to fight like men for the honour of their *Rāja*, made a determined resistance. Many were killed, but a party escaped.

The flight of the *rānīs* was not clearly proved. Some men, who wished to show their zeal, and to cover their negligence in the matter, asserted that the boys had escaped, and that the *wasir* had sent out a force to secure them. The royal forces went in pursuit twenty *kos* from Dehlí, but they could not overtake the *Rājput*s, and returned unsuccessful. The two (substituted) boys were given into the charge of the women of the royal *harem*, and were there brought up. The two boys which the *Rājput*s carried off were for a long time rejected by Aurangzeb, who refused to acknowledge that they were the sons of Jaswant, until all doubt was removed by the Ráná of Chitor, who married Ajít Singh to a girl of his family.

*The Ráná and other Rājput*s. Defection of Prince Akbar.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 261.] At the beginning of Zí-l hijja of the twenty-second year of the reign, Aurangzeb started from Ajmír, with the intention of bringing the refractory *Rājput*s to punishment. * * A strict *farmán* was sent to the Ráná of Chitor, calling upon him to assent to the payment of the *jisya*, and directing him to bring from the territories of Jodhpúr the two alleged sons of Rája Jaswant Singh. After a short stay at Ajmír, the army marched with the intention of ravaging Jodhpúr, and other *Rājput* districts. The Ráná, feeling himself incapable of resistance, sent his *vakils* with tribute and a letter declaring his obedience in the matter of the *jisya*, but offering to give over two or three *parganas* (districts) in commutation. He declared that he was not supporting the sons of Jaswant, and finally begged forgiveness for his offences. Aurangzeb left Khán-Jahán Bahádur to complete the arrangements in this quarter, and returned to Dehlí. His journey to Ajmír and back occupied seven months and twenty days.

youth, and the favour of some of his friends. Durgá Dás was their spokesman. He was noted among them for his plausibility, and he used all his arts and wiles to persuade the Prince that they would supply him with forty thousand *Rájpút* horse, and with abundance of treasure. This so dazzled the Prince that he was deluded, and several of his evil companions artfully used their persuasions. So the inexperienced Prince was led astray from the path of rectitude, and through his youth and covetousness he fell into the snares of the *Rájpúts*.

Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, when he heard of these doings, wrote a few words of friendly counsel to the Prince, to whom he was much attached. He also wrote a letter to Aurangzeb, informing him that the false and deceitful infidels were using all their wiles to mislead the Prince, and that he must watch against being taken unawares. Aurangzeb entertained no suspicions of Muhammad Akbar; but report had cast an evil aspersion on the name of Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam at the time when Aurangzeb was at Hasan Abdál. The infidels had addressed themselves to Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam in the first instance, and Aurangzeb had received information about it, so he now thought that Mu'azzam's letter about his brother Akbar was sheer calumny. Accordingly he wrote to him, and accused him of making a false charge, and praying that the Almighty would keep him in the right course, and preserve him from listening to the evil suggestions of designing people.

Soon afterwards the secret became public. Thirty thousand *Rájpúts* under Durgá Dás joined the Prince. The news spread from tent to tent, and was the talk of young and old. It was reported that he had ascended the throne, and that coins had been struck in his name; that Tahawwur Khán had been made a *haft-hasári*, and had received the title of *Amiru-l umará*; that Mujáhid Khán, and other great servants of the State, who were with the Prince, had received distinguished honours, which some of them had felt themselves constrained to accept. The Prince was doing his best to win the affections of all, and was said to be marching against Aurangzeb.

fall upon their supplies. They allured several thousand of the royal forces into the heart of the Ráná's fastnesses. There they attacked them, and killed many, both horse and foot; but the royal forces at length prevailed and beat them. Notwithstanding that the *Rájpúts* held all the roads through the hills, and came down occasionally from the hills, and attacked the Prince's forces by surprise, the Prince's army fought bravely, and Tahawwur Khán and others rendered distinguished service in chastising the enemy. They employed themselves in laying waste the country, destroying temples and buildings, cutting down fruit-trees, and making prisoners of the women and children of the infidels who had taken refuge in holes and ruined places.

Orders were also issued to Muhammad Amín Khán, *Súbadár* of Ahmadábád, directing him to take up a position with his forces between Ahmadábád and the territories of the *Rájpúts*, and to march against them wherever he heard of them. Khán-Jahán Bahádur Kokaltásh was re-appointed *Súbadár* of the Dakhin, and sent to lay siege to the fort of Sálir,¹ which had fallen into the possession of the enemy.

When the Ráná was hard pressed, and his allies were crippled, when not a scrap of grain was left, and not a trace of cultivation was to be found, the Ráná and the *Ráhtor Rájpúts* had recourse again to lies and stratagems. They first addressed themselves to Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, and sought to make him an intercessor for their forgiveness, or to persuade him to rebel and join them. The Prince paid no heed to their allurements, and Nawáb Báí, the mother of the Prince, being informed of what was passing, gave good counsel to the Prince, and strongly dissuaded him from yielding an assent; and from giving any aid, assistance, or intercession on behalf of the *Rájpúts*. She even persuaded him not to allow the *vahils* of the Ráná to approach him. When they despaired of success in this quarter, the *Rájpúts* betook themselves to Prince Muhammad Akbar, taking advantage of his

¹ Or "Sálhír" in the Gháts of Baglána, see *suprá* p. 66.

Permission being given, Mujáhid Khán took all the money and valuables he could carry, and joined his brother. The two brothers then went together to the Emperor.

Aurangzeb had been greatly depressed by the adverse news which reached him; but on hearing of the approach of the two brothers, he recovered his spirits. He directed that Shaháb-ud dín should be addressed with the title of Khán, and he also conferred great favours on Mujáhid Khán. From the latter he learnt the state of the Prince's army, and about those who were acting with him from choice or from necessity. Some other men of note now came over, and it was ascertained that after the departure of Mujáhid Khán, dissensions had arisen in the Prince's army.

Khwája Makárim, a confidential adherent of Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, led an advanced force towards the army of Prince Muhammad Akbar. A skirmish took place. The Khwája was wounded, and so were two or three men on the other side; but he ascertained that Tahawwur Khán had advanced from the Prince's army with a small escort, intending to desert the Prince and join Aurangzeb. On this being reported to the Emperor, he ordered that Tahawwur Khán should take off his arms before being admitted to the presence. The Khán demurred to putting off his arms, so Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam made a sign to kill the unhappy man. It was now stated to the Emperor that Tahawwur Khán had come, under the orders of Prince Muhammad Akbar, to make known his pretensions and demands. On hearing this, Aurangzeb's anger blazed forth, and he placed his hand upon his sword, and ordered that the Khán should be allowed to enter with his arms. But one of the attendants, in an insulting way, placed his hand upon the Khán's breast to stop him. The Khán struck him a blow on the face and retreated, but his foot caught in a rope, and he fell down. Cries of "Strike! slay!" arose on all sides. Numbers fell upon him, and he was soon killed, and his head was cut off. After he was dead, it was found that he had armour under his

On the forces being sent off, under the command of Prince Akbar, against the infidels, only Asad Khán and a limited number of officers and men were left in attendance upon the Emperor. All his retinue, counting the eunuchs and writers, did not exceed seven or eight hundred horsemen. A great panic fell upon the royal camp, and wild confusion followed. A letter under the royal signature was sent off in haste to Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, urging him to come with all his army, and with the greatest haste, to Aurangzeb. When the Prince received it, he marched without a moment's delay to join his father. Leaving his ladies and attendants behind under protection, he set off with all speed, and, pressing nine or ten days' journey into the space of two or three, he joined his father, bringing with him Prince Mu'izzu-d dín and Muhammad 'Azím.

When Muhammad Mu'azzam arrived with his nine or ten thousand horse, and they heard the reports about the mighty force of seventy thousand horse with which Prince Muhammad Akbar was approaching to the attack, no man of the army had any hope of escape. The expressions of some of Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam's thoughtless companions roused Aurangzeb's caution and prudence. Suspicion arose in his heart, and he thought it advisable to order that his guns should be pointed against the Prince's army, and he sent a message desiring the Prince to leave his army, and to come to him in all speed with his two sons. The Prince obeyed the summons, and hastened to wait upon his father.

The precautions taken by the *Rájputs* prevented intelligence being obtained of the movements of Prince Muhammad Akbar. Shahábu-d dín, son of Kalich Khán, a brave and intelligent man, was sent out with a force to reconnoitre. On coming in sight of the Prince's army, Shahábu-d dín's brother, Mujáhid Khán, who was with the Prince, and had found it necessary to temporize, but watched for an opportunity to escape, went to the Prince, and said that if he were allowed he would go to his brother, and bring him over to the Prince's side.

order, laid siege to the fort of Sálir. Many *Rájpúts* were killed, and many Musulmán's also fell. He pressed the siege for four or five months, but making no impression, he withdrew to Aurangábád.

The hell-dog Sivaji went forth with an army on a plundering expedition, and while Khán-Zamán, the *Sibadár*, was at Burhánpúr, he entered Khandesh, and plundered the town of Dharan-gánw,¹ one of the most flourishing places in that country. * * * Afterwards he ravaged and burnt Chopra¹ and other *parganas*. He then marched against Jálna, a rich mercantile place in the Bálághát.² * * In the course of the same year he was attacked with illness and died.³ The date of his death is found in the words, "*Kúfir ba-jahannam raft*," "The infidel went to hell," which was discovered by the writer of these pages. Sivaji left two sons, Sambhá and Rám Rája. The former succeeded him. He made Kabkalas,⁴ the Bráhma who brought him from Allahábád, his minister.

Sivaji had always striven to maintain the honour of the people in his territories. He persevered in a course of rebellion, in plundering caravans, and troubling mankind; but he entirely abstained from other disgraceful acts, and was careful to maintain the honour of the women and children of Muhammadans when they fell into his hands. His injunctions upon this point were very strict, and any one who disobeyed them received punishment. But the son, unlike his father, obtained an evil name by collecting round him women of all tribes, and by assailing the honour of the women of the places in which he dwelt. His father never showed any backwardness in attacking and plundering prosperous places, but he never made any attack upon Aurangábád and Burhánpúr, the provincial capitals of the

¹ These places lie about 70 miles west of Burhánpúr. Chopra is the most northerly. See *suprá*, p. 16.

² See *suprá*, p. 17.

³ "On the 24th Rabi'u-l Akhír, Sivá returned from riding; he was overcome by the heat, vomited blood, and expired."—*Ma-dairu-l 'Álamgiri*.

⁴ Both the MSS. used agree with the printed text in this spelling of the name (see *suprá*, p. 285); but Grant Duff, who refers to our author, writes the name "Kuloosha," and is followed by Elphinstone with "Calusha."

clothes, but there were various opinions as to what his real intentions were.

The author of this work heard from Khwāja Makrīm, afterwards Jān-nisār Khān, and from several of his contemporaries, in their old age, that Tahawwur Khān returned in good faith, in consequence of a letter he had received from 'Ināyat Khān, his father-in-law, who was a private secretary of Aurangzeb, but that he felt the order to put off his arms was an insult to his position, his services, and his character. However it may be, his murder caused great divisions in the Prince's army, and among his *Rājputs*, and they were much dispirited.

It was commonly reported that Aurangzeb craftily wrote a letter to Prince Muhammad Akbar, and contrived that it should fall into the hands of the *Rājputs*. In it he praised the Prince for having won over the *Rājputs* as he had been instructed, and that now he should crown his service by bringing them into a position where they would be under the fire of both armies. This letter was the cause of great divisions among them. Such is the story I have heard, but not from any trustworthy person. For all the mighty force which Prince Akbar brought against his father, the sword was not drawn, and no battle was fought, but his army was completely broken. The Prince was soon informed that the *Rājputs* had abandoned him. There remained with him only Durgá Dās, two or three confidential officers of the Ráná, and a small force of two or three thousand horse. Of all his old servants and men, these alone remained. He lost all courage, self-reliance, and hope, and being utterly cast down, he took to flight. * * Prince Muhammad, Mu'azzam was ordered to pursue him.

TWENTY-THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1090 A.H. (1679-80 A.D.).

Affairs of the Dakkhin. Death of Sivaji.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 270.] Khān-Jahān Bahádur Kokaltásh, after arriving at the *Khujista-bunyád* Aurangábád, according to

plunderers ravaged these towns at their will. Large sums of money fell into their hands, much of which had been buried for long periods, and sometimes in places unknown even to the householders. They then repeatedly attempted to carry the fortress by assault. But the officers took their stations at the gates and other points of attack, and with great bravery beat off the assailants. Being unable to enter the city, the plunderers carried off with them the gold, silver, jewels, and other articles of value which were portable; but many other things which they had taken they were obliged to leave behind, because they could not carry them. The property which was thrown into the streets of the *básárs* and burnt exceeded all computation.

Intelligence of this raid upon the neighbourhood of Burhánpúr was carried by runners to Aurangábád, to Khán-Jahán Babádúr Kokaltásh. He immediately took horse, and accomplished three or four days' march in one day and night, and reached the pass of Fardápúr, thirty-two *kos* distant. There it became necessary to wait three or four watches to rest the animals, and to provide means for crossing the river. According to the current reports of some men who took a worldly view of things, and had a bad opinion of Khán-Jahán, some emissaries of Sambhájí came to him with an immense sum of money, and prevailed upon him to halt there for four or five watches. One thing is certain. After the enemy were repulsed from Burhánpúr, the burden of their plunder, and the knowledge of Khán-Jahán's pursuit, prevented them from reaching their renowned but distant fortresses. They were obliged to go to the fort of Sálír, in Baglána, which was the nearest of their strongholds. They went by way of Mustafa-ábád or Chopra. Under these circumstances the proper course for Khán-Jahán was to leave Fardápúr without delay, and, bearing towards his left hand, to pass through Dharan-gánw and Chopra, to intercept the marauders. But, through the representations of Sambhájí's emissaries, he went towards his right hand, contrary to what was desirable, and proceeded to 'Idál-ábád. When the enemy heard this, he made the most of his opportu-

Imperial dynasty. If any of his counsellors advised an attack upon these places, he very wisely and prudently forbade it; "for," said he, "if we attack these places, the honour of Aurangzeb will be wounded, and he will march hither himself, and then, God knows how the strife will end!"

When Sivají was dead, his wretched son Sambhá desired to surpass his father. He raised the standard of rebellion, and on the 20th Muharram, in the twenty-third year of the reign, corresponding with 1091 A.H. (15th February, 1680), he attacked Kákar Khán Afghán, who acted as collector of the *jizya*, under Khán-Zamán, the *Súbadár* of the Dakhín. Sambhá was returning with nearly twenty thousand men from a plundering expedition in Birár. He made a forced march of three or four *kos*, as was the practice in those days, and early in the morning made his attack, while his victims were entirely ignorant of his approach. Thus he fell upon Bahádur-púr, one *kos* and a half from Burhánpúr. This place was rich, and there were many bankers and merchants in it. Jewels, money, and goods from all parts of the world were found there in vast abundance. He surrounded and attacked this place, and also another town called Hasda-púra, which was outside of the fortifications, and his attack was so sudden and unexpected, especially upon Bahádur-pur, that no one was able to save a *dám* or a *diram* of his property, or a single one of his wives and children.

Kákar Khán, with his men in the city, saw the smoke of these towns rising to the sky, but he had not a force sufficient to go out and attack the plunderers, so he shut himself up within the walls and looked after the security of his gates and defences. Seventeen other places of note, such as Hasan-púra, etc., in the neighbourhood of the city, all wealthy and flourishing places, were plundered and burnt. Many honourable men girded on their swords, and, joining in the fight, attained martyrdom. Others submitted themselves humbly to the will of God. Some who were near the fortress took their wives and children by the hand, and fled in distress within the walls. For three days the

repeatedly sent to Khán-Jahán Bahádúr, *Súbadár* of the Dakhin, and to all the *faujdlárs*, directing them to stop him whenever he might come, to take him prisoner alive if possible, if not, to kill him. Under these orders Khán-Jahán pursued the Prince with the intention of making him prisoner. He came within fourteen or fifteen *kos* of him, but on approaching nearer he made only a feint of arresting him. The fact was reported to the Emperor by Mír Núru-llah, who was very unceremonious in these matters. A strong letter of censure was written upon the matter, and strict directions were sent to all the new-writers.

Prince Akbar then proceeded to Baglána, to the territory of Rája Debi Singh, the commandant and *faujdlár* of Malir. Rája Debi sent out a force to take him prisoner; but when the force followed, the Prince escaped from Baglána. A few of his *Rájás* remained behind, and these were taken to the Rája. Whilst the Rája was making inquiries of these men, another party of his horsemen overtook one of the Prince's followers, who had upon his back a blood-stained jacket belonging to the Prince, but which he had thrown off in consequence of the heat. They attacked and wounded this man, and carried him off to the Rája, under the impression that he was the Prince. The Rája did not believe it, and abused his men for their stupidity. Prince Akbar, after passing through the territories of the Firingis, found unquiet refuge for a while in the hills of Baglána. By means of a bribe of money, he induced the hill-men to guide him to Ráhirí, belonging to Sambhá. This chieftain came forth to receive him, gave him a house of his own to dwell in, about three *kos* from the fort of Ráhirí, and fixed an allowance for his support.

TWENTY-FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1092 A.H. (1681 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 278.] After the '*Id-i fitr*, Aurangzeb started for the Dakhin, to punish the infidels, and to pursue Prince

nity, and carried off all the plunder he could transport, and all his prisoners, by a rapid march, through Chopra, to the fort of Sálír, which he reached in four or five days. The principal inhabitants of Burhánpúr wrote a statement to Aurangzeb, describing the success of the enemy, the loss inflicted on the property and honour of Muhammadans, and the discontinuance of the public prayers on Fridays. Aurangzeb then wrote a letter strongly censuring Khán-Jahán, and announcing his own intention of proceeding to the Dakhin. In his anger he took away from Khán-Jahán all the increased honours and emoluments he had conferred upon him in that year. Considering the disorders in the Dakhin, and the flight of Prince Muhammad Akbar, he gave orders for his travelling equipage to move towards Burhánpúr.

TWENTY-FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1091 A.H. (1680 A.D.):

Prince Akbar.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 275.] When Prince Muhammad Akbar took to flight, not more than three or four hundred men remained with him. Some of them were his own old followers, and others were *Rájpúts*. * * All his property and treasure and guns fell into the hands of the royal army, as well as one son, a boy of tender years, named Nekú Siyar, and two daughters. One son, who had arrived at years of discretion, remained with the *Rájpúts*. The Prince himself was distracted, and knew not whither to go. At one time he thought of going to Dehlí and Láhore by way of Ajmír. Then he proposed to go to Persia. Whichever way he turned, the *faujdar*s and *samindar*s, under orders from the Emperor, blocked his way. Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam received orders to pursue him; but the common report is that he only made a feint of doing so, and marched leisurely.

Akbar proceeded by way of Láhore and Multán, and under the guidance of the *samindar*s he then passed by difficult roads through the hills towards the Dakhin. * * Orders had been

of the city of Burhánpúr for the past year, amounting to 26,000 rupees, had been paid into the public treasury. During the three months that he had been in office, he had settled the sum of one *lac* and 80,000 rupees as the amount payable by half the towns connected with Burhánpúr. He now hoped that he might be allowed to leave with His Majesty, and that the collection of the *jizya* might be deputed to some one else. He was applauded and promoted. He was allowed to accompany the Emperor, and his deputies were to collect the tax. * *

After Aurangzeb reached Aurangábád, Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam was sent to take the forts and punish the infidels of Rám-darra in the Kokan; and Prince Muhammad A'zam was directed to reduce the fort of Sálír, near the fort of Malír in Baglána, which had been held for some time by the Mahrattas. Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam penetrated into the Kokan, and passing through its inmost recesses, passes and thick woods, he laid the country waste in all directions, and put many infidels to the sword. Khwája Abú-l Makárim, afterwards Ján-nisár Khán, and others, greatly distinguished themselves in this campaign; but the grain and millet and vetches of that country were injurious to strangers, and the climate was very uncongenial to camels and horses. Men in great numbers and quadrupeds beyond compute perished. Horses were so scarce that there was not one left in the stable of the Prince which was fit to carry him. Most men were obliged to walk, and no provisions arrived, for the enemy closed the roads on every side. Life became insupportable, and it was impossible for the Prince to remain there. On the facts being reported to the Emperor, he gave orders for the recall of the army.

TWENTY-SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1093 A.H. (1682 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 281.] The fort of Sálír, against which Prince Muhammad A'zam had been sent, is not one capable of investment. It is near the sea, and there are so many ravines

Muhammad Akbar. * * On the 14th Zí-l ka'da he reached Burhánpúr, the *Dáru-s súrúr* (abode of joy). Khán-Jahán Bahádur, the *Súbadár*, and Amín Khán, the *Dhán* of the four *súbas* of the Dakhín, with the *faujdar*s and the officials and nobles there, waited upon him. Many great men of Bijápúr, of the Kutb-Sháhí dynasty, and of the Mahrattas, also came to pay their respects.

The infidel inhabitants of the city and the country round made great opposition to the payment of the *jizya*. There was not a district where the people, with the help of the *faujdar*s and *mukaddams*, did not make disturbances and resistance. Mír 'Abdu-l Karím, an excellent and honest man, now received orders to collect the *jizya* in Burhánpúr. A suitable force of horse and foot was appointed to support him, and the *kotwál* was directed to punish every one who resisted payment.

A fire broke out in a house near the citadel and the *chauk*. There were several sacks¹ of powder in the house, the roof was blown off, and many men were burnt. It came to Aurangzeb's knowledge that there were thirty sacks of gunpowder in a cellar under his sleeping apartment. An investigation was made, and it appeared that at the very commencement of the reign, when Aurangzeb left Burhánpúr to proceed to Dehlí, the gunners left this powder there, and during all that time it had never been taken out. The Emperor severely censured the officials who were answerable for this neglect, and degraded some of them. He told them that if this had happened in the reign of Jahángír, that King would have blown them all up with the powder. Aurangzeb's humanity and kindness was such that the severest punishment was reduction of dignity; and this even was soon restored through the intercession and kind offices of men high in office.

Aurangzeb passed three or four months very pleasantly at Burhánpúr; he then left for Aurangábád. Before he departed, Mír 'Abdu-l Karím, the *Amín-i jizya*, reported that the *jizya*

is one of the great *zamin্দárs* or rulers who are dependent on Persia. He affected to treat the Prince with hospitality and respect; but in reality he kept him under surveillance, and wrote to Aurangzeb offering to surrender the Prince for the sum of two *lacs* of rupees and for a charter exempting goods carried in the ships of Maskat from the payment of duty in the port of Surat. If Aurangzeb would send one of his officers, the Imám promised to give up the Prince.

Upon receiving this letter, Aurangzeb wrote to the officials of the port of Surat, directing them to act in accord with the proposition of the Imám. So the people at Surat sent Hájí Fázil, an old sailor in the royal service, to take Prince Akbar in charge. When intelligence of Prince Akbar's arrival in Maskat, and the evil designs of the Imám, became known to the King of Persia, he issued peremptory commands to the Imám, directing him to send the Prince (his guest) to him without delay, or an army would be appointed to deliver him and punish the Imám. So preforce the Imám delivered up the Prince to the Sháh's officers. * * When the Prince approached Isfahán, Sháh Sulaimán went forth to meet him. * * On the death of Sháh Sulaimán, his successor showed the Prince even greater hospitality and attention, so that the Prince asked for an army and money to assist him in Hindústán. Sháh Husain excused himself, * * and the Prince then asked permission to go to Garmsír in Khurásán. * * This was granted; and provision was made for his maintenance. * * He retired thither, and died there towards the close of the reign of Aurangzeb. ✓

TWENTY-SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1094 A.H. (1683 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 290.] The author of this work has not been able to obtain such satisfactory accounts of these two or three years (*in do sih sál*), as to be worthy of being committed to writing. * * But he has here recorded what he has heard from the mouths of trustworthy witnesses; also what he heard from his late

near, that hundreds of thousands of horsemen could not invest that lofty fortress. * * Neknám Khán was commandant of Makír and *faujdar* of Baglána. When the Prince was ordered to conquer it, Neknám opened negotiations with the commandant of Sálir, and by promises and presents, * * induced him to surrender the fortress.

[*Three officers in succession, Shahábu-d din, Khán-Jahán, and Kásim Khán, sail to take the fortress of Rám Sij.*]

Prince Akbar.

[vol. ii. p. 284.] When Prince Akbar went to Ráhírí, and became the guest of the accursed Sambhá, he was at first treated very kindly and respectfully, and provision was made for the necessary expenses of his followers. One day a *kázi* in the presence of Muhammad Akbar, in a stupid flattering way, said to Sambhá, "May all the Maharája's enemies be trodden under foot." The Prince heard this, and being angry, reprimanded the *kázi* for his folly. He also told Sambhá that such vain words ought not to be spoken in his (the Prince's) presence, and that it was also unbecoming in Sambhá to listen to them. The report also came that an army had been sent under the command of Itikád Khán to effect the conquest of Ráhírí. Prince Muhammad Akbar therefore thought it advisable to make his way as best he could to Persia. He bought two small ships, furnished them with provisions for forty days, and was about to start. Sídí Yákút Khán Habshí, who scoured the seas in those parts, was at first desirous of stopping the progress of the Prince, but he at last connived at it. The Prince, with Zíáu-d din Muhammad Shujá'í and forty or fifty persons, put his trust in God and embarked on his voyage. His ships were separated and endured great distress, the account of which would be too long for admission here.

Through stress of weather, the Prince's ship fell upon an island belonging to the Imám of Maskat. The people of the island made him prisoner and sent him to the Imám. This ruler

known to Aurangzeb, he sent an order to the officers of the port of Surat, directing them to put as much grain as possible on board of ships, and send it to the Prince's succour by sea. The enemy got intelligence of this, and as the ships had to pass by their newly-erected fortresses, they stopped them on their way, and took most of them. A few ships escaped the enemy, and reached their destination; but no *amir* got more than two or three *palas* of corn. The order at length came for the retreat of the army, and it fell back fighting all the way to Ahmadnagar, where Aurangzeb then was.

Kutbu-l Mulk.

[vol. ii. p. 292.] It now became known to the Emperor that Abú-l Hasan Kutbu-l Mulk, Sovereign of Haidarábád, had entrusted the government of his kingdom to Mádaná and Ákauá, two infidels, who were bitter enemies to the Musulmáns, and brought great and increased troubles upon them. The King himself was given up to luxury, drinking and debauchery. * * Aurangzeb having turned his attention to the conquest of Haidarábád, and the subjugation of Abú-l Hasan, he first sent Khán-Jahán Kokaltásh with his sons and * * with a detachment against certain adherents of Abú-l Hasan, who had taken possession of some districts dependent upon Zafar-nagar, on the pretence that they had formerly formed part of the country of Telingána. Their instructions were to chastise these men, and to recover the districts. After this, Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam with * * were sent to effect the conquest of the country of Telingána.

Aurangzeb now sent Mirzá Muhammad, the superintendent of his *ghusl-khána*, to Abú-l Hasan Kutbu-l Mulk, with a message to this effect: "It has come to our hearing that you have two very fine diamonds of 150 *sarkhs* in weight, with sundry other rarities. We wish you to ascertain the value of these gems, and to send them to us for the balance of tribute due." But he told his envoy confidentially that he did not send him to obtain the

brother, Muhammad Murád Khán, who was a servant of the Court, and on whose statements he places implicit trust; and lastly, what the author himself witnessed in his travels and at Haidarábád. He has compared and considered the information derived from these various sources, and has reduced it to writing. If there should appear to be any excess or deficiency, the pardon of the reader is solicited.

Siege of Rám-darra.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 290.] In the beginning of the twenty-seventh year Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam marched from Ahmadnagar to lay siege to the forts of Rám-darra, belonging to Sámblá, which were in a part of the country never before penetrated by an Imperial army. * * The roll of his army numbered 20,000 horse. * * On the march through the narrow passes, there were many sharp fights with the enemy, in which numbers of the royal soldiers fell; but the enemy were put to flight. On reaching the village of Sámpgánw, the fort of that place was invested. The besiegers showed great bravery, and took the fort in two days. They then entered the country of Rám-darra. It was in a very strong position, and the air of the place did not suit the invaders. The enemy swarmed around on every side, and cut off the supplies. On one side was the sea, and on two other sides were mountains full of poisonous trees and serpents. The enemy cut down the grass, which was a cause of great distress to man and beast, and they had no food but cocoa-nuts, and the grain called *kúdín*, which acted like poison upon them. Great numbers of men and horses died. Grain was so scarce and dear that wheat flour sometimes could not be obtained for less than three or four rupees. Those men who escaped death dragged on a half existence, and with crying and groaning felt as if every breath they drew was their last. There was not a noble who had a horse in his stable fit for use. When the wretched state of the royal army became

overpowered that all chance of escape seemed difficult, and the enemy's forces came on every moment with greater strength. * * One of the enemy's chiefs pressed forward, with a loud cry, to the elephant of Khán-Jahán, with the intention of hurling a javelin at him. Khán-Jahán encountered him, shouting out, "I am a nobleman," and, allowing him no time to throw his javelin, Khán-Jahán drew his bow to his ear, and pierced his assailant with an arrow, so that he fell headlong from his horse. The royal army was still very hard pressed, intelligence constantly came in from the front and rear that the enemy were in overwhelming force, and the only course left for the army of Khán-Jahán was to retreat. At this juncture the driver of an elephant belonging to Rája Rám Singh placed a heavy chain in its mouth, and made it charge upon the enemy's advanced force. * * Wherever the elephant charged, the noise of the chain and the blows of his trunk struck terror into the enemy. The horses of two or three officers took fright, and threw their riders. Thus the army of the enemy was put to flight, and Khán-Jahán celebrated his victory, and pitched his camp on the field of battle. Many horses, elephants, and guns fell into his hands. * * He then sent an officer who wrested the fort of Síram from the hands of the enemy, and placed a garrison therein. * *

The enemy advanced also against Prince Mu'azzam, and for some days kept up a deceptive correspondence. Fighting began and went on for three days, with great loss to both sides. On the fourth day the action was continued with increased violence, and the enemy were at length compelled to retreat. The Prince, Khán-Jahán, and the other Imperial officers, did not deem it expedient to pursue them. They determined to remain where they were, and sent a despatch of the victory to Aurangzeb. The Emperor had for some time felt a little dissatisfied with the Prince, and he was displeased with Khán-Jahán for the licence and debauchery which prevailed in his camp, and which he had repeatedly censured without effect. He was also annoyed

two diamonds, which he did not at all want, but rather to ascertain the truth of the evil reports which had reached him. * * Upon the arrival of Mirzá Muhammad, he demanded the diamonds, according to his instructions. Abú-l Hasan swore that he had no such gems, and that if he had, he would have been happy to send them without any demand being made for them. * * Such stones as his predecessors possessed had been sent to the late Emperor. * *

Mirzá Muhammad returned, and Abú-l Hasan learnt that armies had been sent against him under the command of Khán-Jahán and Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam. He then sent Ibráhim Khán, otherwise called Husainí, who had received the title of Khalilu-llah Khán, and was commander-in-chief, and one of the chief nobles of Haiderábád, with * *, and a force of thirty or forty thousand horse, to oppose the armies sent against him.

When the two armies approached each other, between the territories of Bijápúr and Haiderábád, Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam was desirous of avoiding actual war by all means in his power. He sent a message to Khalilu-llah Khán, offering peace, on the following terms. Abú-l Hasan must express regret for his offences, and ask forgiveness. He must remove Mádaná and Ákaná from the management of affairs, and place them in confinement. The *parganas* of Síram, Rámگیر, etc., which had been taken by force, upon unjust grounds, from the possession of servants of the Imperial throne, must be restored. The balance of tribute due must be forwarded without delay. The foolish *amirs* of the Dakhin, in their pride, sent improper answers, regardless of the Imperial anger. So preparations for battle were made on both sides.

The limits of this brief history will not admit of a detailed account of all the actions fought by Khán-Jahán Bahádur Kokaltásh; but a short account of one engagement is given. In this action Khán-Jahán had not more than ten or eleven thousand horse, and Khalilu-llah Khán had more than thirty thousand. * * Khán-Jahán's army was so outnumbered and

sulted with his officers as to the answer to be given, * * and the answer given was that they had taken the *parganas* at the point of the sword and spear, and were ready to fight for them. * * [*Fighting recommenced,*] and the enemy were at length defeated and put to flight. The Prince pursued them into their camp, and great consternation fell upon them.

One of the enemy's generals then sent two officers to the royal army to represent that the combatants on both sides were Musulmáns, and therefore the honour and safety of the women should be regarded. They asked for a truce of three or four hours to remove the women to a place of safety, and after that they would be ready to fight again. * * So the fighting and plundering was stayed. The enemy sent their women to a fort which was near, and at the end of three *pahars* the fighting recommenced on every side. * * The enemy kept up the fight till evening, but then they retreated.

The Prince sent a message to the enemy, to the effect that in battles numbers of Musulmáns on both sides are killed; it would therefore be better if two or three chiefs from both sides should meet and fight it out. This would be a real trial of strength, skill and courage, and it would be seen which side had the favour of God. * * Next day messengers brought the news that the enemy's horse had fled towards Haidarábád. The Prince marched in pursuit, and came near to Haidarábád.

Mádaná Pant and his friends had raised suspicions in the mind of Abú-l Hasan, that Muhammad Ibráhím had been the means of bringing the Prince thither. Abú-l Hasan was very angry, and was intent upon seizing Ibráhím, and putting him to death: Muhammad Ibráhím got intelligence of this, and went to offer his services to the Prince, who received him with great favour. When intelligence of this desertion became known in Haidarábád, Abú-l Hasan was greatly alarmed, and without consulting with any of his nobles, or even caring anything for his property or the honour of his own women and family, or of others, he fled with a few servants by night, with boxes full of such valuables as he

with him for not having pursued and secured Prince Akbar when that Prince was near his territory. * * Whenever he wrote to him, he got a saucy answer. For these and other reasons Aurangzeb was quite offended with Khán-Jahán.

TWENTY-EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1095 A.H. (1684 A.D.).

The War with Kutbu-l Mulk of Haidarábád.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 300.] The despatch of victory and the intelligence of the retreat of the enemy reached Aurangzeb; but his satisfaction was turned into displeasure when he learnt that the enemy had not been pursued. He wrote an angry letter to the Prince Sháh 'Álam,¹ and to Khán-Jahán, and was much dissatisfied. The generals of Abú-l Hasan did not after this dare to venture upon an engagement, but from time to time roving parties of them annoyed the Imperial forces at night with rockets. They sometimes showed themselves in reconnoissances by day, and fell back upon their camp. The Prince and Khán-Jahán were offended, and made no attack upon them, and remained for four or five months inactive without moving. This aggrieved Aurangzeb still more, and he wrote a strong letter of censure with his own hand to the Prince and Khán-Jahán. This letter greatly incensed the Prince.

The morning after the receipt of the letter, he held a council of war with Khán-Jahán, and the other nobles. * * Khán-Jahán was opposed to fighting, and some *amirs* agreed with him. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán and two or three *rájás* advised active operations. Nothing was decided that day, and next day Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán in private [*urged an attack upon the enemy*]. Prince Sháh 'Álam wrote to Muhammad Ibráhím, the commander of the enemy's army, offering terms of peace on condition of the *parganas* of Síram, Kír (or Khír), etc., being restored to the Imperial officers. * * Muhammad Ibráhím con-

¹ Prince Mu'azzam had received this title, by which he is hereafter called.

stopped in their work. After a good deal of negociation, the Prince took pity upon Abú-l Hasan and the inhabitants of the place. He accepted his proposals, upon certain conditions. A tribute of one *kror* and twenty *lacs* of rupees was to be paid, in addition to the usual annual tribute. Mádaná and Ákaná, the two brothers, and the chief causes of the war, were to be imprisoned and deprived of all authority. The fort of Síram and the *pargana* of Khír, and other districts which had been conquered, were to remain in the hands of the Imperialists, and Abú-l Hasan was to ask forgiveness of his offences from Aurangzeb.

While the negociations were pending, * * * some women of great influence in the *harem*, without the knowledge of Abú-l Hasan, laid a plot for the murder of Mádaná and Ákaná. * * Whilst the two doomed wretches were proceeding from the *darbár* to their own houses, a party of slaves attacked them and killed them. Rustam Rás also, who had reached the house, was killed. Many *bráhmans* lost their lives and property on that day. The heads of the two brothers were cut off, and were sent to Prince Sháh 'Álam by the hands of a discreet person. * *

When the Prince's despatch reached Aurangzeb, he in public approved of the terms of peace, and sent * * an officer to receive the tribute. Privately, however, he censured the Prince and Khán-Jahán, and summoned the latter to his presence.

War with Bijápúr.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 316.] Aurangzeb determined that he would march in person to effect the conquest of Bijápúr, and he started with that intention on the 4th Sha'bán. * * Prince A'zam, with some experienced nobles and a suitable force, was sent to reduce Bijápúr. On approaching the place, he found that the forces of the Dakhin, under the command of 'Abdu-r Rúf and Sharza Khán, hovered round him in all directions. In that year calamity had fallen on the crops, and grain was very dear. The Dakhiní

could carry, to the fort of Golkonda. When this fact became public, the stores of Abú-l Hasan were plundered, as also was the property of the merchants, worth four or five *krors* of rupees. The women of the soldiers, and of the inhabitants of the city, were subjected to dishonour, and great disorder and destruction prevailed. Many thousand gentlemen being unable to take horse, and carry off their property, in the greatest distress took the hands of their children and wives, many of whom could not even seize a veil or sheet to cover them, and fled to the fortress.

Before Prince Sháh 'Álam got intelligence of what was passing, the ruffians and plunderers of the city began their work of pillage and devastation. Nobles, merchants, and poorer men, vied with each other as to who, by strength of arm, and by expenditure of money, should get their families and property into the fortress. Before break of day, the Imperial forces attacked the city, and a frightful scene of plunder and destruction followed, for in every part and road and market there were *lacs* upon *lacs* of money, stuffs, carpets, horses, and elephants, belonging to Abú-l Hasan and his nobles. Words cannot express how many women and children of Musulmáns and Hindús were made prisoners, or how many women of high and low degree were dishonoured. Carpets of great value, which were too heavy to carry, were cut to pieces with swords and daggers, and every bit was struggled for. Prince Sháh 'Álam appointed officers (*sazúral*) to prevent the plunder, and they did their best to restrain it, but in vain. The *ko'túal* of the army received orders to go with the Imperial *dicán*, with an escort of four or five hundred horse, to take possession of what was left of the property of Abú-l Hasan.

forces occupied the country all around, and prevented all supplies of corn from reaching Bījápúr, so that grain became very scarce and dear in the (Imperial) army, and it was difficult to get a loaf. * * At length, after many severe actions, * * the forces of the enemy were driven back, and convoys of provisions were brought safely into the camp of Prince Muhammad A'zam, and he was relieved from the difficulties which had beset him. * * Great favours and honours were bestowed on Gházíu-d dín Khán for the service he had rendered in bringing in the convoy.

The protracted duration of the siege of Bījápúr, and the information he had received of the disaffection of the allies who accompanied Prince Muhammad A'zam, made Aurangzeb determine to proceed thither in person. At the beginning of Sha'bán, in the twenty-eighth year of the reign, he set out from Sholápúr, and on the 21st of the month he arrived before the fortress, to the great dismay of the besieged. He appointed * * several of his best officers to assist the Prince in carrying on the siege, and addressed to them some soul-stirring words. They set heartily to work constructing lines of approach, driving mines and filling up the ditch. * *

Some mischief-making people reported to Aurangzeb that on a day when an attack was made Sháh Kulí was inside the fortress along with Sikandar; also that a person named Saiyid 'Álam used to come out of the city by night, and have interviews in secret with the Prince. This was confirmed by the report of Rúhu-llah Khán *kotwál*. Orders were accordingly given for the arrest of Saiyid 'Álam when he came out to see Prince Sháh 'Álam, and also for the apprehension of Sháh Kulí. Sháh Kulí was at length seized and brought before Aurangzeb, who examined him and endeavoured to extract from him the truth about his visits to the city. Nothing but denial was obtained from the prisoner, so the order was given for binding him and submitting him to the torture. After receiving a few blows, his spirit gave way; he divulged the whole secret, and named several others who had been concerned with him.

for destroying you, he cannot have a better one than the murder of his *lajih*. If I am spared, I can do something to obtain forgiveness for you, and I will exert myself to the utmost." * * In some matters Sa'adat Khán had befriended Abú-l Hasan against the designs of his own master. So Abú-l Hasan, thinking of what might follow, refrained from injuring him, and made him presents. * *

When Aurangzeb drew near to Haidarábád, Abú-l Hasan felt that the time of his fall was near; but he sent a letter to Aurangzeb, renewing his protestations of obedience, and reiterating his claims to forgiveness. * * Aurangzeb wrote a reply, the gist of which was as follows: "The evil deeds of this wicked man pass beyond the bounds of writing; but by mentioning one out of a hundred, and a little out of much, some conception of them may be formed. First, placing the reins of authority and government in the hands of vile tyrannical infidels; oppressing and afflicting the *saiyids*, *shaiiks*, and other holy men; openly giving himself up to excessive debauchery and depravity; indulging in drunkenness and wickedness night and day; making no distinction between infidelity and Islám, tyranny and justice, depravity and devotion; waging obstinate war in defence of infidels; want of obedience to the Divine commands and prohibitions, especially to that command which forbids assistance to an enemy's country, the disregarding of which had cast a censure upon the Holy Book in the sight both of God and man. Letters full of friendly advice and warning upon these points had been repeatedly written, and had been sent by the hands of discreet men. No attention had been paid to them; moreover it had lately become known that a *lac of pagodas* had been sent to the wicked Sambhá. That in this insolence and intoxication and worthlessness, no regard had been paid to the infamy of his deeds, and no hope shown of deliverance in this world or in the next."

Abú-l Hasan, seeing that there was no longer any hope for him, sent forth his forces, under the command of his best officers,

Hasan with hopes of favours from Aurangzeb, and exerted himself to obtain payment of the tribute. Abú-l Hasan, in the hope of finding safety, told Sa'adat Khán that he was unable to find the money; but he offered instead the jewels and valuables belonging to his wives and others. He therefore asked him to send his young eunuch to select and take away the jewels and other things. Sa'adat Khán refused to send the eunuch, and negotiations went on for some days, until the intelligence was brought that Aurangzeb was at Kulbarga.

Abú-l Hasan, in the extremes of fear and hope, sent for Sa'adat Khán, and delivered into his charge several trays of jewels and valuables, without even settling the value of them. These were sealed up, and it was arranged that Sa'adat Khán should carry them to his house. In the course of the next two or three days Abú-l Hasan would do his best to obtain the tribute money, and would send it to the house of Sa'adat Khán. The value of the jewels was then to be settled, and the whole was to be sent to Aurangzeb, with a letter from Sa'adat Khán commending Abú-l Hasan's willingness and obedience, and praying for merciful consideration. Abú-l Hasan sent some loads of fruit for Aurangzeb, and Sa'adat Khán also sent some baskets with them.

Two or three days later intelligence was brought that Aurangzeb had left Kulbarga and had arrived at Golkonda. Everybody now said that his object was to conquer Golkonda. Abú-l Hasan sent to Sa'adat Khán, saying * * that he had no longer hope of any consideration from Aurangzeb, and demanded back the jewels which he had placed in his charge. Sa'adat Khán replied that * * he had sent the jewels to Aurangzeb in the baskets which accompanied Abú-l Hasan's present of fruit. A great scene followed. Abú-l Hasan placed a guard over Sa'adat Khán's house. * * The latter said that he had only obeyed the orders, and acted in accordance with his wishes in sending the jewels. "For this," said he, "you are now about to kill me. My master has long desired some pretext

Of evil intentions he had none. * * But for all their pleas and protestations they could not remove the suspicions which Aurangzeb had of his son. * * Orders were given for a force to be sent to bring the Prince before him. Hayát Khán said there was no necessity for that. If the Emperor sent an officer to call the Prince, he would come at once, for he had no thought but of obedience. So on the 18th Rabí'u-s sání, in the twenty-ninth year of the reign, an officer was sent to bring the Prince, with Muhammad 'Azím, his second son, to the royal presence. The Prince obeyed immediately, and waited on his august father. * * The Emperor ordered that all the establishments of the Prince should be seized, and his *mansabs* and *jágirs* confiscated. [*Harsh treatment of Núru-l Nissa, the Prince's wife, and of her eunuchs.*] But here we will refrain from entering upon the unhappy details of the Prince's imprisonment, and his liberation, and will proceed with the account of the conquest of Golkonda.

Day by day, and week by week, the approaches were pushed forward under the direction of Gházíu-d dín Fíroz Jang, but they were encountered with great daring by the besieged under the command of Shaikh Nizám, Mustafá Khán Lári, otherwise called 'Abdu-r Razzák, and others. The fighting was desperate, and many were killed on both sides. * * After one sharp encounter, in which a sally of the garrison was driven back with loss, Shaikh Minháj, Shaikh Nizám, and others, deserted Abú-l Hasan, and came over to the besiegers, when Aurangzeb granted to them suitable *mansabs* and titles. Muhammad Ibráhím, who was the first to quit the way of error, and to enter upon the royal road of rectitude, received a *mansab* of 7000 and 6000 horse, with the title of Mahábat Khán. He exerted himself above all others in endeavouring to reduce the fortress. Shaikh Nizám received a *mansab* of 6000 and 5000 horse, with the title of Takarrub Khán. Of all the nobles of Abú-l Hasan, the one who never forsook him until the fall of the place, and who throughout exerted himself in an inconceivable manner, was Mustafá Khán Lári, or, as he was also called, 'Abdu-r Razzák.

to meet Aurangzeb, urging them to fight valiantly, and to endeavour to make Aurangzeb prisoner. * * On the 24th Rabī'u-l awwal the royal army took ground at gun-shot distance from Golkonda, and the work of the siege began. * * Abú-l Hasan had forty or fifty thousand horse outside the walls, with whom the royal army had frequent encounters, and a sharp fire of guns and rockets was kept up from the fortifications. Some distinguished officers of the royal army and many men were lost on both sides. After the arrival of Fīroz Jang, the whole management of the siege was placed in his hands.

Prince Sháh 'Álam had fallen under the displeasure of his father at the siege of Bijápúr; still, at the siege of Golkonda, the lines on the right side were under his command. But the days of his fortune and prosperity had been overshadowed by some years of trouble and misconduct. He now secretly received messages and presents from Abú-l Hasan, to secure his services and the services of his associates, in obtaining forgiveness of past offences. The Prince's objects were that peace and war should be dependent upon his approval as heir apparent, and that as far as possible he should bind Abú-l Hasan to his interests. He never reflected that this course must eventually end in his fall and disgrace. Some meddling mischief-making people got information of what was going on, and informed Aurangzeb. * * The manager of the Prince's equipages now reported to him that the carriages belonging to his *zanúna* were far away from his tents, and were open to attacks from the garrison. He accordingly ordered that they should be brought nearer to his tent.

Some of Prince Muhammad A'zam's companions informed Aurangzeb that Sháh 'Álam was about to make his way into the city. On hearing this, Aurangzeb was greatly enraged. He called Hayát Khán, and another of Sháh 'Álam's confidential servants, to his presence, and questioned them in private as to the Prince's intention. They replied that the Prince's object was to obtain, by his influence, a pardon for Abú-l Hasan, and, failing in that, to do his best for the reduction of the fortress.

Burhānpūr. He also summoned Rūhu-llāh Khān, an experienced and highly-trusted nobleman, from Bijápūr. Soon after the Prince's arrival, the dearness of grain passed all bounds. * * In the middle of Rajab, when the siege had lasted three months, * * it was resolved to make an attempt to take the place by surprise at night, by means of scaling-ladders and ropes. * * A few brave men succeeded in ascending the ramparts, * * but the barking of a dog gave the alarm, and the defenders rushed to the walls and soon despatched those who had gained the top. They also threw down the ladders, and so made an end of those who were mounting. Others opened fire. When the leaders of the storming party gained the summit of the ramparts, one of Aurangzeb's servants ran off to report their success, without waiting to see the result of the enterprise. Aurangzeb, on receiving his report, ordered the drums of victory to be beaten, and ordered out his royal equipage and state dress. Next day spies reported that Abú-l Hasan gave the dog a gold collar, a plated chain, etc., and directed that the dog should be kept chained near to himself.

The siege was protracted for a long time, and from the immense stores of ammunition in the fortress, an unintermitting discharge was kept up night and day from the gates, and towers, and walls, of cannon-balls, bullets, rockets and other fiery missiles. The smoke arising from the constant firing removed the distinction of day and night, and no day passed without the besiegers suffering a loss in killed and wounded. The assailants exerted themselves vigorously, especially * *, and so in the course of a month and some days the lines were carried up to the very edge of the ditch, and orders were issued for filling it up. It is said that Aurangzeb himself, after observing the rite of purification, sewed the seams of the first cotton bag to be filled with earth and thrown into the moat. High mounds were raised, and heavy guns were placed upon them and pointed against the fortress. Their heavy fire greatly harassed the defenders. The scarcity and dearth of grain and fodder (within the city) was extreme, so that many men of wealth were disheartened; who then can describe the position of the poor and needy? Throughout the Dakhin in the early part of this year there was a scarcity of rain when the *jorár* and *bájrá* came into ear, so they dried up and perished. These productions of the autumn harvest are the main support of the people of the Dakhin. Rice is the principal food of the people of Haidarábád, and the cultivation of this had been stopped by war and by scarcity of rain. The Dakhinís and the forces of the hell-dog Sambhá had come to the assistance of Haidarábád, and hovering round the Imperial forces, they cut off the supplies of grain. Pestilence (*wabá*) broke out, and carried off many men. Thus great numbers of men were lost. Others, unable to bear the pangs of hunger and wretchedness, went over to Abú-l Hasan, and some treacherously rendered aid to the besieged.

When the siege had been carried on for some time, Aurangzeb recalled Prince Muhammad A'zam, whom, in consequence of the unfaithfulness of Prince Sháh 'Álam, he had sent to settle the country round Ujjain and Akbarábád, and who had got as far as

self at about a gun-shot distance from the walls, he ordered an assault to be made under his own eyes. Prodigies of valour were exhibited. * * But a storm of wind and rain arose, and obstructed the progress of the assailants, * * and they were forced to fall back drenched with rain. The garrison again made a sally, took possession of the trenches, spiked the heavy guns, on the mounting of which immense money and labour had been expended, and carried away all that was portable. They pulled out of the moat the logs of wood, and the many thousands of bags which had been used to fill it up, and used them to repair the breaches made by the mines. * * It was afterwards determined that the third mine should be sprung in the presence of Aurangzeb. But although fire was applied, nothing resulted. An examination as to the cause was instituted, but nothing was discovered until it was learnt from spies that the enemy had cleared out the powder and cut the match. * * Fíroz Jang had received two arrow wounds. The command of the army was then given to Prince Muhammad A'zam.

Several of the officers of Abú-l Hasan had come over to the side of Aurangzeb, and had received suitable titles, *mansabs*, and presents. Shaikh Minháj, having heard of this, was about to desert, but Abú-l Hasan placed him in confinement, and seized his house. Of all his nobles, none remained faithful to Abú-l Hasan but 'Abdu-r Razzák Lári, who had received the title Mustafá Khán, and 'Abdu-llah Khán Paní Afghán. At the end of Sha'bán, the siege had lasted eight months, and Abú-l Hasan's men still worked indefatigably. At length, 'Abdu-llah Khán made secret overtures to Aurangzeb, and agreed to open one of the gates of the city for the admission of his troops.

Aurangzeb frequently communicated with 'Abdu-r Razzák Lári, and promised him a *mansab* of six thousand, with six thousand horse, and other regal favours. But that ungracious faithful fellow, taking no heed of his own interest and life, in the most insolent manner exhibited the Emperor's letter to the men in his bastion, and tore it to pieces in their presence, and he

or he must be brought bound before me. I will then consider what consideration I can show him." He then issued orders to the officials of Birár for the preparation of 50,000 bags of cotton, and for other materials for carrying on the siege and filling up the moat. * *

On the 19th Sha'bán it was reported that a triple mine had been driven under the bastions of the fortress, and charged with gunpowder. Orders were then given that a force should be collected in the lines as if about to make an attack upon the undermined work, so that the enemy might observe this, and assemble his men there. The mines were then to be fired. 'Abdu-r Razzák Lári and others of the besieged, having observed these proceedings, commenced countermining. They pushed their work with such skill and activity, * * that they drew the powder and match from one mine, and poured water into the other two. The Imperial troops collected for the assault, and raised their cries ; and the gunners watched the ramparts for the proper moment for firing the mine. When the signal was given, one mine exploded, but as part of the powder had been extracted, and of the remaining part that which lay nearest to the fortress was wet, the blowing up of the bastion did more injury to the besiegers than the besieged. * * The garrison then sallied forth, and occupied the trenches, killing all whom they found alive in them. After a severe struggle, in which many men fell on both sides, the trenches were recovered. The second mine was exploded, and thousands of stones, great and small, were hurled into the air ; but, as in the former case, they fell upon the heads of the besiegers, * * and great numbers were killed and wounded. * *

Great wailings and complaints arose from the troops engaged in the siege. * * The cannonade recommenced on both sides, and many more of the besiegers fell. * * Although Fíroz Jang exerted himself most strenuously, he made no impression upon the place. The long delay kindled the anger of Aurangzeb. He called his chiefs and officers together, * * and placing him-

atom of dust struggling in the rays of the sun, threw himself upon the advancing foe, and fought with inconceivable fury and desperation, shouting that he would fight to the death for Abú-l Hasan. Every step he advanced, thousands of swords were aimed at him, and he received so many wounds from swords and spears that he was covered with wounds from the crown of his head to the nails of his feet. But his time was not yet come, and he fought his way to the gate of the citadel without being brought down. He received twelve wounds upon his face alone, and the skin of his forehead hung down over his eyes and nose. One eye was severely wounded, and the cuts upon his body seemed as numerous as the stars. His horse also was covered with wounds, and reeled under his weight, so he gave the reins to the beast, and by great exertion kept his seat. The horse carried him to a garden called Nagína, near the citadel, to the foot of an old cocoa-nut tree, where, by the help of the tree, he threw himself off. On the morning of the second day a party of men belonging to Husainí Beg passed, and recognizing him by his horse and other signs, they took compassion upon him, and carried him upon a bedstead to a house. When his own men heard of this, they came and dressed his wounds. The remainder of the story of this brave devoted warrior shall be told hereafter.

The shouts and cries, and the groans and lamentations, within and without, made Abú-l Hasan aware that all was over. He went into his *harem* to comfort his women, to ask pardon of them, and take leave of them. Then, though his heart was sad, he controlled himself, and went to his reception room, and took his seat upon the *masnad*, and watched for the coming of his unbidden guests. When the time for taking his meal arrived, he ordered the food to be served up. As Rúhu-llah Khán and others arrived, he saluted them all, and never for a moment lost his dignity. With perfect self-control he received them with courtesy, and spoke to them with warmth and elegance. * *

Abú-l Hasan called for his horse and accompanied the *amirs*,

sent a message by the spy who had brought it to say that he would fight to the death like the horsemen who fought with Imám Husain at Karbalá. * *

The besiegers continued to show great resolution in pushing on the siege. They cast into the ditches thousands of bags filled with dirt and rubbish, and thousands of carcasses of animals and men who had perished during the operations. Several times the valour of the assailants carried them to the top of the walls; but the watchfulness of the besieged frustrated their efforts; so they threw away their lives in vain, and the fortress remained untaken. But the fortune of 'Álamgír at length prevailed, and after a siege of eight months and ten days, the place fell into his hands; but by good fortune, not by force of sword and spear.

THIRTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1098 A.H. (1687 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 361.] At the beginning of the month Zí-l ka'da, at the commencement of the thirty-first year of the reign, agreeing with 1098 A.H. (Sept. 1687), by the efforts of Rúhn-llah Khán, a negociation was concluded, through Ranmast Khán Afghán Paní, with 'Abdu-llah Khán, who was one of the confidential officers of Abú-l Hasan, and had charge of the gate called the *khirki* (wicket). In the last watch of the night Rúhn-llah Khán and * *, at a sign from 'Abdu-llah, entered the fortress by means of ladders. Prince Muhammad A'zam, mounted on an elephant, had a large force ready to enter by the gate. Those who had got in went to the gate, posted their men, opened the gate, and raised the cry of victory.

'Abdu-r Razzák Lárí heard this, and, springing on a horse without any saddle, with a sword in one hand and a shield in the other, and accompanied by ten or twelve followers, he rushed to the open gate, through which the Imperial forces were pouring in. Although his followers were dispersed, he alone, like a drop of water falling into the sea, or an

one eye, and spoken a few faltering words expressing a hope of recovery. Aurangzeb sent a message to him, forgiving him his offences, and desiring him to send his eldest son 'Abdu-l Kádír with his other sons, that they might receive suitable *mansabs* and honours, and return thanks for the pardon granted to their father, and for the *mansabs* and other favours. When this gracious message reached that devoted and peerless hero, he gasped out a few words of reverence and gratitude, but he said that there was little hope of his recovery. If, however, it pleased the Almighty to spare him and give him a second life, it was not likely that he would be fit for service; but should he ever be capable of service, he felt that no one who had eaten the salt of Abú-l Hasan, and had thriven on his bounty, could enter the service of King 'Alamgír (Aurangzeb). On hearing these words, a cloud was seen to pass over the face of His Majesty; but he kindly said, "When he is quite well, let me know." Most of 'Abdu-r Razzák's property had been plundered, but such as was left was given over to him.

¹ Some time afterwards it was reported that 'Abdu-r Razzák had got quite well, and an order was issued to the *Súbadár* to send him to the royal presence. 'Abdu-r Razzák tried to excuse himself, and expressed a wish to go with his children on the pilgrimage to Mecca, on returning from which blessed journey he would devote himself to prayer for the long life of His Majesty. Orders were then given for arresting him and sending him to Court. Fíroz Jang got information of this, and with great sympathy invited 'Abdu-r Razzák to come and stay with him. He kept him for some time with marked kindness, and after the lapse of a year 'Abdu-r Razzák entered the Imperial service with a *mansab* of 4000 and 3000 horse.

The property of Abú-l Hasan which was recovered after its dispersion amounted to eight *lacs* and fifty-one thousand *huns*, and two *krors* and fifty-three thousand rupees, altogether six

¹ In the text ten pages intervene before this finish of 'Abdu-r Razzák's story is brought in. It appears in the thirty-second year of the reign.

carrying a great wealth of pearls upon his neck. When he was introduced into the presence of Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh, he took off his necklace of pearls and presented it to the Prince in a most graceful way. The Prince took it, and placing his hand upon his back, he did what he could to console and encourage him. He then conducted him to the presence of Aurangzeb, who also received him very courteously. After a few days the Emperor sent him to the fortress of Daulatábád, and settled a suitable allowance for providing him with food, raiment, and other necessities. Officers were appointed to take possession of the effects of Abú-l Hasan and his nobles.

'Abdu-r Razzák,¹ senseless, but with a spark of life remaining, was carried to the house of Rúhu-llah Khán. As soon as the eyes of Saf-shikan Khán fell upon him, he cried out, "This is that vile Lári! cut off his head and hang it over the gate." Rúhu-llah replied that to cut off the head of a dying man without orders, when there was no hope of his surviving, was far from being humane. A little bird made the matter known to Aurangzeb, who had heard of 'Abdu-r Razzák's daring and courage and loyalty, and he graciously ordered that two surgeons, one a European, the other a Hindú, should be sent to attend the wounded man, who were to make daily reports of his condition to Aurangzeb.

The Emperor sent for Rúhu-llah Khán, and told him that if Abú-l Hasan had possessed only one more servant devoted like 'Abdu-r Razzák, it would have taken much longer to subdue the fortress. The surgeons reported that they had counted nearly seventy wounds, besides the many wounds upon wounds which could not be counted. Although one eye was not injured, it was probable that he would lose the sight of both. They were directed carefully to attend to his cure. At the end of sixteen days, the doctors reported that he had opened

¹ In a subsequent page (390) the author says that he lived for some time with 'Abdu-r Razzák near Ráhirí. This accounts for the long notice he has given of that brave soldier.

THIRTY-THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1100 A.H. (1689 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 372.] The plague (*tá'ún*) and pestilence (*icabá*), which had for several years been in the Dakhin as far as the port of Surat and the city of Ahmadábád, now broke out with violence in Bijápúr, and in the royal camp. It was so virulent that when an individual was attacked with it, he gave up all hope, and thought only about his nursing and mourning. The black-pated guest-slayer of the sky sought to pick out the seed of the human race from the field of the world, and the cold blast of destruction tried to cut down the tree of life in every living being, and to remove every shoot and sign of life from the surface of the world. The visible marks of the plague were swellings as big as a grape or banana under the arms, behind the ears, and in the groin, and a redness was perceptible round the pupils of the eyes, as in fever or pestilence (*icabá*). It was the business of heirs to provide for the interment of the dead, but thousands of obscure and friendless persons of no property died in the towns and markets, and very few of them had the means of burial. * * It began in the twenty-seventh year of the reign, and lasted for seven or eight years.

THIRTY-FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1101 A.H. (1690 A.D.).

Operations against the Mahrattas. Capture and Execution of Sambhá.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 383.] Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh was sent with an army and some experienced *amirs* to punish the infidels about Bahádur-garh and Gulshanábád.¹ Fíroz Jang, with another army, was sent to reduce the forts in the neighbourhood of Rájgarh. Mukarrab Khan, otherwise called Shaikh Nizám Haidarábádí, was sent against the infidel Sambhá. Each of them endeavoured to distinguish himself in the performance of the service on which he had been sent. Mukarrab Khán was

¹ In Baglána, near Junír. See *post*, p. 345.

krors eighty *lacs* and ten thousand rupees, besides jewels, inlaid articles and vessels of gold and silver. The total in *dáms* was one *arb* fifteen *krors* sixteen *lacs* and a fraction, which was the sum entered on the records.

The mud fort of Golkonda was built by the ancestors of Rájá Deo Rái, and it was acquired by the Bahmaní Sultáns after a good deal of resistance. Upon the fall of the Bahmaní dynasty, their territories fell into the hands of a number of petty chiefs; but Sultán Muhammad Kulí, entitled Kutbu-l Mulk, who had been one of the nobles of Sultán Muhammad Sháh Bahmaní, brought some of the provinces of the Dakhin under his rule. For the old mud fort of Rájá Deo Rái, which stood upon the summit of a hill, he substituted one of stone. After some descents, the kingdom came to Muhammad Kutbu-l Mulk, for all the descendants bore the name of Kutbu-l Mulk. He took great pains in repairing the fort of Golkonda. He had a wife named Bhágmátí, of whom he was very fond. At her request, he built a city two *kos* distant from the fortress, to which he gave the name of Bhágnagar. Some time after the death of Bhágmátí, the name was changed to Haidarábád; but in the vernacular language of the people it is still called Bhágnagar. That woman¹ had established many brothels and drinking shops in that place, and the rulers had always been addicted to pleasure and to all sorts of debauchery. Abú-l Hasan exceeded all his predecessors in his devotion to pleasure. So the city got an evil name for licentiousness. After the conquest by Aurangzeb, it was called the hostile country (*dáru-l jihád*). [*Surrender of the fort of Sakar between Haidarábád and Bijápúr.*]

THIRTY-SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1099 A.H. (1688 A.D.).

[*Surrender of the fort of Adhoní to Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh.*]

¹ The words are explicit.

none of these objections. * * He set out and made a rapid march, and in the most difficult places they came to he himself went first on foot. * * They pressed on, and approached near the place where the doomed one was staying.

It is said that Sambhá's scouts informed him of the approach of the royal army, or the "Mughal army," as it was called in the language of the Mahrattas. But the heedless fellow scouted the idea of any Mughal army penetrating to that place. He ordered the tongues of the reporters to be cut out, and did not even take care to have his horses ready, or to prepare any earthworks.

Mukarrab Khán, with his sons and nephews, ten or twelve brave personal attendants, and two or three hundred horsemen, fell sword in hand upon the heedless Sambhá, who too late thought of defending himself. Kabkalas, his *wazir*, was well known for his courage and daring. He did his best to save him, and, with a party of Mahrattas, advanced to meet the assailants. At the commencement of the fight he received an arrow in the right arm, which rendered the limb useless. He fell from his horse, exclaiming that he would remain there. Sambhá, who was about to take to flight, sprang from his horse, and said that he would stay with him. Four or five Mahrattas were cut down, but all the rest of Sambhá's men fled. Kabkalas was taken prisoner; Sambhá went for refuge into an idol temple, and there hid himself. The place was surrounded, and he was discovered. Several of his followers, of no importance, were killed; but he and his family, including his son Sáhú, a boy of seven or eight years of age, were all made prisoners. All his men and women, twenty-six individuals in number, were taken, and also two women belonging to Rám Rája, his younger brother, whom he kept confined in one of his forts. The hands of all of them were bound, and they were brought to the feet of the elephant on which Mukarrab Khán was riding. Although Sambhá, in the brief interval, had shaved off his beard, smeared his face with ashes, and changed his clothes, he was discovered by a necklace

distinguished above all the nobles of the Dakhin for his military knowledge and enterprise. He laid siege to the fort of Parnála, near Kolápúr, and sent out his spies in all directions to gather intelligence, and especially to get information about Sambhá, who in his vile and evil course of life was ten times worse than his father Sivají. * *

This ill-bred fellow left his old home at Ráhirí, and went to the fort of Khelna. After satisfying himself of the state of its stores, and the settlement of the country round, under the guidance of adverse fortune, which kept him ignorant of the approach of the Imperial forces, he went to bathe in the waters of the Bán-Ganga, on the borders of the district of Sangamnir,¹ one day's journey from the sea-shore. The place was situated in a valley, surrounded by high mountains of difficult passage. Here Kabkalas, the filthy dog, had built a house, embellished with paintings, and surrounded with a garden full of fruit-trees and flowers. Sambhá, with Kabkalas, and his wives, and his son Sáhú, went there, accompanied with a force of two or three thousand horse, entirely unaware of the approach of the falcon of destiny. After bathing, he lingered there, viewing the lofty hills, the arduous roads full of ascents and descents, and the thick woods of thorny trees. Unlike his father, he was addicted to wine, and fond of the society of handsome women, and gave himself up to pleasure. Messengers brought him intelligence of the active movements of Mukarrab Khán; but he was absorbed in the pleasures which bring so many men of might to their ruin.

Mukarrab Khán started boldly from his base at Kolápúr, which was forty-five *kos* distant from the retreat to which Sambhá had resorted. He took with him two thousand horse and one thousand foot, selected men. The reports brought to him represented that the road was steep and arduous, over high hills, and that thirty or forty men without arms might hold the road against a large army by throwing down stones. But that brave leader heeded

¹ Sangameshwar, in the Ghats. See Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 359.

should be spared, and that they should be kept in perpetual confinement, on condition of surrendering the keys of the fortresses held by the adherents of Sambhá. But the doomed wretches knew that, after all, their heads would fall upon the scaffold, or that, if by abject submission and baseness, they escaped death, they would be kept in confinement deprived of all the pleasures of life, and every day of life would be a new death. So both Sambhá and Kabkalas indulged in abusive language, and uttered the most offensive remarks in the hearing of the Emperor's servants. But it was the will of God that the stock of this turbulent family should not be rooted out of the Dakhin, and that King Aurangzeb should spend the rest of his life in the work of repressing them and taking their fortresses. The Emperor was in favour of seizing the opportunity of getting rid of these prime movers of the strife, and hoped that with a little exertion their fortresses would be reduced. He therefore rejected the advice, and would not consent to spare them on condition of receiving the keys of the fortresses. He gave orders that the tongues of both should be cut out, so that they might no longer speak disrespectfully. After that, their eyes were to be torn out. Then, with ten or eleven other persons, they were to be put to death with a variety of tortures, and lastly he ordered that the skins of the heads of Sambhá and Kabkalas should be stuffed with straw, and exposed in all the cities and towns of the Dakhin, with beat of drum and sound of trumpet. Such is the retribution for rebellious, violent, oppressive evil-doers.

Sáhu, the son of Sambhá, a boy of seven years of age, was spared, and orders were given for his being kept within the limits of the palace. Suitable teachers were appointed to educate him, and a *mansab* of 700 was granted to him. * * Some women, including the mother and daughters of Sambhá, were sent to the fortress of Daulatábád.

When the author was staying along with 'Abdu-r Razzák Lári near the fort of Ráhirí, which Sivají built, he heard from the people of the neighbourhood that Sivají, although an infidel

of pearls under his garments, and by the gold rings upon the legs of his horse. Mukarrab Khán made him ride behind him on the same elephant, and the other captives were chained and carried off, some on elephants, some on horses.

A despatch was sent to His Majesty, but news of the exploit reached him first through the news-reporters, and was a cause of great rejoicing. When the intelligence came that Mukarrab Khán was approaching with his prisoners, His Majesty ordered * * a large party to go out two *kos* from Aklúj,¹ where he was staying, to give the victor a ceremonious reception. It is said that during the four or five days when Mukarrab Khán was known to be coming with his prisoners, the rejoicings were so great among all classes, from chaste matrons to miserable men, that they could not sleep at night, and they went out two *kos* to meet the prisoners, and give expression to their satisfaction. In every town and village on the road or near it, wherever the news reached, there was great delight; and wherever they passed, the doors and roofs were full of men and women, who looked on rejoicing. * *

After their arrival, Aurangzeb held a *darbár*, and the prisoners were brought in. On seeing them, he descended from his throne, and made two *ruk'ats* as a mark of his gratitude to the Almighty. It is said that Kabkalas observed this. He was well versed in Hindí poetry, and although his head and neck and every limb was firmly secured so that he could use only his eyes and tongue, when he saw Aurangzeb make these signs of devotion, he looked at Sambhá, and repeated some Hindí lines to this effect, "O Rájá, at the sight of thee the King 'Álamgír (Aurangzeb), for all his pomp and dignity, cannot keep his seat upon his throne, but has perforce descended from it to do thee honour."

After they had been sent to their places of confinement, some of the councillors of the State advised that their lives

¹ On the south of the river Níra, about half way between Bijápúr and Pána. It is the "Aldús" of Elphinstone's map.

force under Fíroz Jang was near at hand, Abú-l Khair was frightened, and was so craven as to surrender on a promise of safety to his life, his family, and his property. He left the place at night with some of his women in *dúlis* and the rest on foot, and he had with him several baskets and boxes of clothing, money, jewels, etc. The Mahrattas had gathered round, waiting for him, and although they had promised security to life and property, they stripped him of all he had, and left him in miserable plight. In the middle of the night he reached the army of Fíroz Jang, full of complaints and remorse. He was deprived of his *mansab* and *jágir*, and was sent on the pilgrimage.

Turbulence of the Játs. ✓

[Text, vol. ii. p. 394.] It was now reported from Ágra that when Ághar Khán came there under orders from Kábul, a party of Játs attacked the caravan near Ágra. They seized the cattle and plundered the carts which were in the rear, and carried off some women as prisoners. Ághar Khán pursued them to the neighbourhood of a fort, where, after a sharp struggle, he rescued the women. He then boldly invested the fort, but he was killed by a musket-ball. His son-in-law was also killed. Khán-Jahán Kokaltásh had formerly failed in executing a commission to restrain the Játs, and for this and some displeasing actions he was recalled, and Prince Bedár Bakht was appointed on the duty.

An order was issued that no Hindú should ride in a *pálki* or on an Arab horse without permission.

THIRTY-SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1103 A.H. (1692 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 397.] In the beginning or towards the middle of this year, Aurangzeb moved from Gúrgáon¹ and Shikárpúr to Bídri, and after a while from thence to Gulka, one day's march from Bījápúr, where the camp was pitched. The

¹ The previous march was from Aklúj to Gúrgáon (Text, p. 393).

and a rebel, was a wise man. The country round may be called a specimen of hell, for it is hilly and stony, and in the hot season water is very scarce, which is a great trouble to the inhabitants. Sivají had a well dug near his abode. A pavement was laid down round the mouth, and a stone seat was erected. Upon this bench Sivají would take his seat, and when the women of the traders and poor people came to draw water, he would give their children fruit, and talk to the women as to his mother and sisters. When the *ráj* descended to Sambhá, he also used to sit upon this bench; and when the wives and daughters of the *raiya*s came to draw water, the vile dog would lay one hand upon their pitcher, and another upon their waist, and drag them to the seat. There he would handle them roughly and indecently, and detain them for a while. The poor woman, unable to help herself, would dash the pitcher from her head, but she could not escape without gross insult. At length the *raiya*s of the country settled by his father abandoned it, and fled to the territory of the Firingís, which was not far off. He received the reward of his deeds.

THIRTY-FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1102 A.H. (1691 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 391.] Aurangzeb was desirous of rewarding Mukarrab Khán for his splendid and unparalleled success. * * * He granted to him an increase of 1000 horse, gave him the title of Khán-Zamán Fath-Jang, a present of 50,000 rupees, and of a horse, elephant, etc., etc. His son, Ikhlas Khán, who held a *mansab* of 4000 personal and 4000 horse, had it increased a thousand, and received the title of Khán-i 'Álam. His four or five sons and nephews also received titles and marks of favour.

About this time it was reported that Rájgarh, one of the forts of Sivají and Sambhá, had been taken. Abú-l Khair Khán was appointed its commandant. * * Before the news of the capture of Sambhá reached that neighbourhood, the enemy invested the place, and summoned Abú-l Khair to surrender. Although the

according to rule, or the ships of Arabia or Maskat, with which two countries they have a long-standing enmity, and they attack each other whenever opportunity offers. If a ship from a distant port is wrecked and falls into their hands, they look upon it as their prize. But their greatest act of tyranny is this. If a subject of these misbelievers dies, leaving young children, and no grown-up son, the children are considered wards of the State. They take them to their places of worship, their churches, which they have built in many places, and the *pádris*, that is to say the priests, instruct the children in the Christian religion, and bring them up in their own faith, whether the child be a Musulmán *saiyid* or a Hindú *bráhmaṇ*. They also make them serve as slaves. In the 'Ádil-Sháhi Kokan, close to the sea, in the fine and famous fort of Goa, their governor resides; and there is a captain there who exercises full powers on the part of Portugal. They have also established some other ports and flourishing villages. Besides this, the Portuguese occupy the country from fourteen or fifteen *kos* south of Surat to the boundaries of the fort of Bombay, which belongs to the English, and to the borders of the territories of the Habshís, which is called the Nizám-Sháhi Kokan. In the rear of the hills of Bagláná, and in strong positions, difficult of access, near the fort of Gulshanábád, they have built seven or eight other forts, small and great. Two of these, by name Daman and Basí, which they obtained by fraud from Sultán Bahádur of Gujarát, they have made very strong, and the villages around are flourishing. Their possessions measure in length about forty or fifty *kos*; but they are not more than a *kos* or a *kos* and a half in width. They cultivate the skirts of the hills, and grow the best products, such as sugarcane, pine-apples, and rice; and cocoa-nut trees, and betel-nut vines, in vast numbers, from which they derive a very large revenue. They have made for use in their districts a silver coin called *ashrafi*, worth nine *ánas*. They also use bits of copper which they call *busurg*, and four of these *busurgs* pass for a *fulús*. The orders of the King (of India) are not current there. When

evil days of Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam now drew to a close, and it pleased the Emperor to show him kindness. * * * He directed that the shaving of the head and other rigours of prison discipline should be forbidden, and he held out to the Prince hopes of release.

The Hindí names of many places end with the letter *h*, which there was a tendency to pronounce like *alif* in such names as Málwah, Bangálah, Baglánah, and Parnálah. * * Orders were given that such names should be written with an *alif*, as Málwá, Bangálá, Bagláná, etc.

Mukhlis Khán, *darogha* of the artillery, reported that some of the Mahratta chiefs had taken Rám Rája, brother of the late Sambhá, out of confinement, and had raised him to the *ráj* in succession to his father and brother. They had assembled large forces with the vain intention of besieging fortresses. He sent robes and presents to the officers in command of his own forts, and, like his father and brother, he appointed different leaders to plunder the country, and to get possession of forts.

The Portuguese.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 400.] It was mentioned in the history of the reign of Sháh Jahán that Christian traders had come to India to the ports on the sea-shore. The officers of the King of Portugal occupied several neighbouring ports, and had erected forts in strong positions and under the protection of hills. They built villages, and in all matters acted very kindly towards the people, and did not vex them with oppressive taxes. They allotted a separate quarter for the Musulmáns who dwelt with them, and appointed a *kázi* over them to settle all matters of taxes and marriage. But the call to prayer and public devotion were not permitted in their settlements. If a poor traveller had to pass through their possessions, he would meet with no other trouble; but he would not be able to say his prayers at his ease. On the sea, they are not like the English, and do not attack other ships, except those ships which have not received their pass

púra and Dahiná Jádú, two experienced warriors and leaders of from fifteen to twenty thousand horse. Other Mahratta chiefs submitted to their leadership, and great losses were inflicted on the Imperial forces.

Santá more especially distinguished himself in ravaging the cultivated districts, and in attacking the royal leaders. Every one who encountered him was either killed or wounded and made prisoner; or if any one did escape, it was with his mere life, with the loss of his army and baggage. Nothing could be done, for wherever the accursed dog went and threatened an attack, there was no Imperial *amír* bold enough to resist him, and every loss he inflicted on their forces made the boldest warriors quake. Ismá'il Khán was accounted one of the bravest and most skilful warriors of the Dakhin*, but he was defeated in the first action, his army was plundered, and he himself was wounded and made prisoner. After some months he obtained his release, on the payment of a large sum of money. So also Rustam Khán, otherwise called Sharza Khán, the Rustam of the time and as brave as a lion, was defeated by him in the district of Sattára, and after losing his baggage and all that he had with him, he was taken prisoner, and had to pay a large sum for his ransom. 'Alí Mardán Khán, otherwise called Husainí Beg Haidarábádí, * * was defeated and made prisoner with several others. After a detention of some days, they obtained their release on paying a ransom of two *lacs* of rupees.

These evil tidings greatly troubled Aurangzeb. * * Further, news came that Santá had fought with Ján-nisár Khán and Tahawwur Khán, on the borders of the Karnátik, and had inflicted upon them a sévere defeat and the loss of their artillery and baggage. Ján-nisár Khán was wounded, and escaped with difficulty. Tahawwur Khán was also wounded, and lay among the dead, but was restored to life. Many other renowned *amirs* met with similar defeats. Aurangzeb was greatly distressed, but in public he said that the creature could do nothing, for everything was in the hands of God.

the people there marry, the girl is given as the dowry, and they leave the management of all affairs, in the house and out of it, to their wives. They have only one wife, and concubinage is not permitted by their religion. * * *

Rám Rája.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 413.] Messengers now brought to the knowledge of the Emperor that the forces of Rám Rája had marched in various directions to ravage the territories and reduce the forts belonging to the Imperial throne. The fort of Parnála was one of the highest and most celebrated of the forts belonging to Bijápúr, and had been captured by the royal forces with a good deal of difficulty. It was now taken with little exertion by Rám Rája's officers, and its commandant was wounded and made prisoner. It was also reported that Rám Rája had gone to the assistance of the chiefs of Jinjí, and was busy collecting men. * * This information greatly troubled His Majesty. * * He was about to send Bahramand Khán to lay siege to Parnála, when intelligence came that Prince Mu'izzu-d dín had sat down before it. So he resolved to proceed in person to Bairampúrí.

THIRTY-SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1104 A.H. (1693 A.D.).

The Mahrattas.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 414.] This year Aurangzeb stayed at Bairampúrí,¹ the name of which was ordered to be changed to Islámpúrí. * * Forces were sent against the fort of Parnála and other forts in various places. * * After the execution of Sambhá, many of the Mahratta chieftains received instructions from Rám Rája to ravage the country. They hovered round the Imperial armies, and were exceedingly daring. * * Among them was Santá Ghor-

¹ Elphinstone calls it "Birmapúrí near Panderpúr (Púndharpúr) on the Bhíma." The Survey Map has "Brumhapooree," lower down the river than Púndharpúr, and south-west of Sholápur.

flames of his discontent, so that great danger threatened the army.

Intelligence now came of the approach of Santá, and the enemy's forces so closed round the royal army and shut up the roads, that for some days there were no communications whatever between the army and His Majesty. Messages still came to the Prince from the garrison, exciting his apprehensions, and holding out allurements. He was vexed with Jamdatu-l Mulk's opposition, and no communications arrived from the Emperor; so he was on the point of going over to the enemy. Jamdatu-l Mulk and Nusrat Jang were informed of this, and they surrounded his tents, and made the Prince prisoner.

When these troubles and discords were at their height, Santá came down upon the royal army with twenty-five thousand horse, and reduced it to such straits, that the commanders deemed it expedient to leave their baggage and some of their *matériel* to be plundered by Santá, and to retire into the hills for refuge. Every one was to carry off what he could, and the idea was that Santá would stop to plunder what was left, and not follow the retreating force. Accordingly the two generals retired fighting for some *kos*, till they reached the shelter of the hills, when they beat off Santá. A few days afterwards they renewed the siege, and the garrison was hard pressed. According to report, a sum of money reached the enemy, and they evacuated the fortress and retired.

When intelligence of the arrest of Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh reached Aurangzeb, he apparently acquiesced in it as a matter of necessity. The news of the reduction of the fortress came soon afterwards, and he applauded the services performed by the two generals. In reality, he was offended, and summoned the Prince with the two generals to his presence. The Prince was brought up under arrest. After waiting upon Aurangzeb, he addressed a few words of admonition to Jamdatu-l Mulk; but afterwards the marks of his displeasure became more apparent. Orders were given to set the Prince at liberty.

THIRTY-EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1105 A.H. (1694 A.D.).

Siege of Jinjí. Arrest of Prince Kám Bakhsh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 418.] Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh, with Jamdatu-l Mulk Asad Khán and Zúl-fikár Khán Nusrat Jang, approached Jinjí,¹ and encamping about a cannon-shot off the fortress, began to prepare for the siege. The fortress of Jinjí occupies several adjacent hills, on each of which stands a fort bearing a distinct name. Two of these hills are very high, and the forts were well furnished with artillery, provisions, and all necessary stores. It was impossible to invest all the forts, but the lines were allotted to different commanders, and every exertion was made for digging mines and erecting batteries. * * The garrison also did their best to put the place in order, and make a stout defence. From time to time they fired a gun or two. The *samíndárs* far and near of the country round, and the Mahratta forces, surrounded the royal army on all sides, and showed great audacity in cutting off supplies. Sometimes they burst unexpectedly into an intrenchment, doing great damage to the works, and causing great confusion in the besieging force. * *

The siege had gone on for a long time, and many men fell; but although the enemy's relieving force day by day increased, Zúl-fikár Khán Nusrat Jang and the other generals so pressed the siege that it went hard with the garrison. The command of the army and the general management of civil and revenue affairs in that part of the country were in the hands of Jamdatu-l Mulk and Nusrat Jang. This gave great offence to Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh, and Jamdatu-l Mulk and Nusrat Jang had to admonish him, and speak to him sharply about some youthful follies. The Prince was greatly offended. The Prince wished that the siege should be carried on in his name; but the generals acted on their own authority. Day by day the dissensions increased. The besieged were aware of these differences, and contrived to open communications with the Prince, and to fan the

¹ Eighty miles south-west of Madras.

selves into the sea, to preserve their chastity, and some others killed themselves with knives and daggers.

This loss was reported to Aurangzeb, and the news-writers of the port of Surat sent some rupees which the English had coined at Bombay, with a superscription containing the name of their impure King. Aurangzeb then ordered that the English factors who were residing at Surat for commerce should be seized. Orders were also given to I'timád Khán, superintendent of the port of Surat, and Sídí Yákút Khán, to make preparations for besieging the fort of Bombay. The evils arising from the English occupation of Bombay were of long standing. The English were not at all alarmed at the threatenings. They knew that Sídí Yákút was offended at some slights he had received. But they were more active than usual in building bastions and walls, and in blocking up the roads, so that in the end they made the place quite impregnable. I'timád Khán saw all these preparations, and came to the conclusion that there was no remedy, and that a struggle with the English would result only in a heavy loss to the customs revenue. He made no serious preparations for carrying the royal order into execution, and was not willing that one rupee should be lost to the revenue. To save appearances, he kept the English factors in confinement, but privately he endeavoured to effect an arrangement. After the confinement of their factors, the English, by way of reprisal, seized upon every Imperial officer, wherever they found one, on sea or on shore, and kept them all in confinement. So matters went on for a long time.

During these troubles I, the writer of this work, had the misfortune of seeing the English of Bombay, when I was acting as agent for 'Abdu-r Razzák Khán at the port of Surat. I had purchased goods to the value of nearly two *lacs* of rupees, and had to convey them from Surat to 'Abdu-r Razzák, the *faujdar* of Ráhirí. My route was along the sea-shore through the possessions of the Portuguese and English. On arriving near Bombay, but while I was yet in the Portuguese territory,

*Capture of a Royal Ship by the English. The English
at Bombay.*

[Text, vol. ii. p. 421.] The royal ship called the *Ganj-i sawát*, than which there was no larger in the port of Surat, used to sail every year for the House of God (at Mecca). It was now bringing back to Surat fifty-two *lacs* of rupees in silver and gold; the produce of the sale of Indian goods at Mocha and Jedda. The captain of this ship was Ibráhím Khán. * * There were eighty guns and four hundred muskets on board, besides other implements of war. It had come within eight or nine days of Surat, when an English ship came in sight, of much smaller size, and not having a third or fourth part of the armament of the *Ganj-i sawát*. When it came within gun-shot, a gun was fired at it from the royal ship. By ill-luck, the gun burst, and three or four men were killed by its fragments. About the same time, a shot from the enemy struck and damaged the mainmast, on which the safety of the vessel depends. The Englishmen perceived this, and being encouraged by it, bore down to attack, and drawing their swords, jumped on board of their opponent. The Christians are not bold in the use of the sword, and there were so many weapons on board the royal vessel that if the captain had made any resistance, they must have been defeated. But as soon as the English began to board, Ibráhím Khán ran down into the hold. There were some Turkí girls whom he had bought in Mocha as concubines for himself. He put turbans on their heads and swords into their hands, and incited them to fight. These fell into the hands of the enemy, who soon became perfect masters of the ship. They transferred the treasure and many prisoners to their own ship. When they had laden their ship, they brought the royal ship to shore near one of their settlements, and busied themselves for a week searching for plunder, stripping the men, and dishonouring the women, both old and young. They then left the ship, carrying off the men. Several honourable women, when they found an opportunity, threw them-

and unpleasant, bitter and sweet; but all he said was in a kind and friendly spirit towards 'Abdu-r Razzák. He inquired why his factors had been placed in confinement. Knowing that God and the Prophet of God would protect me, I answered, "Although you do not acknowledge that shameful action, worthy of the reprobation of all sensible men, which was perpetrated by your wicked men, this question you have put to me is as if a wise man should ask where the sun is when all the world is filled with its rays." He replied, "Those who have an ill-feeling against me cast upon me the blame for the fault of others. How do you know that this deed was the work of my men? by what satisfactory proof will you establish this?" I replied, "In that ship I had a number of wealthy acquaintances, and two or three poor ones, destitute of all worldly wealth. I heard from them that when the ship was plundered, and they were taken prisoners, some men, in the dress and with the looks of Englishmen, and on whose hands and bodies there were marks, wounds, and scars, said in their own language, 'We got these scars at the time of the siege of Sídí Yákút, but to-day the scars have been removed from our hearts.' A person who was with them knew Hindí and Persian, and he translated their words to my friends."

On hearing this, he laughed loudly, and said, "It is true they may have said so. They are a party of Englishmen, who, having received wounds in the siege of Yákút Khán, were taken prisoners by him. Some of them parted from me, joined the *Habshi*, and became Musulmán's. They stayed with Yákút Khán some time, and then ran away from him. But they had not the face to come back to me. Now they have gone and taken part with the *dingmárs*, or *sakanas*, who lay violent hands on ships upon the sea; and with them they are serving as pirates. Your sovereign's officers do not understand how they are acting, but cast the blame upon me."

I smiling replied, "What I have heard about your readiness of reply and your wisdom, I have (now) seen. All praise to your ability for giving off-hand, and without consideration, such an

in consequence of a letter from 'Abdu-r Razzák, I waited ten or twelve days for the escort of Sídí Yákút Khán. 'Abdu-r Razzák had been on friendly terms with an Englishman in his old Haidarábád days, and he had now written to him about giving assistance to the convoy. The Englishman sent out the brother of his *dacín*, very kindly inviting me to visit him. The Portuguese captain and my companions were averse to my going there with such valuable property. I, however, put my trust in God, and went to the Englishman. I told the *dacín's* brother, that if the conversation turned upon the capture of the ship, I might have to say unpleasant things, for I would speak the truth. The Englishman's *rakíl* advised me to say freely what I deemed right, and to speak nothing but the truth.

When I entered the fortress, I observed that from the gate there was on each side of the road a line of youths, of twelve or fourteen years of age, well dressed, and having excellent muskets on their shoulders. Every step I advanced, young men with sprouting beards, handsome and well clothed, with fine muskets in their hands, were visible on every side. As I went onwards, I found Englishmen standing, with long beards, of similar age, and with the same accoutrements and dress. After that I saw musketeers (*bark-andáz*), young men well dressed and arranged, drawn up in ranks. Further on, I saw Englishmen with white beards, clothed in brocade, with muskets on their shoulders, drawn up in two ranks, and in perfect array. Next I saw some English children, handsome, and wearing pearls on the borders of their hats. In the same way, on both sides, as far as the door of the house where he abode, I found drawn up in ranks on both sides nearly seven thousand musketeers, dressed and accoutred as for a review.

I then went straight up to the place where he was seated on a chair. He wished me Good-day, his usual form of salutation; then he rose from his chair, embraced me, and signed for me to sit down on a chair in front of him. After a few kind inquiries, our discourse turned upon different things, pleasant

The Mahrattas also possess the newly-built forts of Khanderí, Kalába, Kása, and Katora,¹ in the sea opposite the island fortress belonging to the *Habshis*. Their war-ships cruise about these forts, and attack vessels whenever they get the opportunity. The *sakanas* also, who are sometimes called *bawáril*, a lawless set of men belonging to Surat, in the province of Ahmadábád, are notorious for their piracies, and they attack from time to time the small ships which come from Bandar 'Abbási and Maskat. They do not venture to attack the large ships which carry the pilgrims. The reprobate English act in the same way as the *sakanas*.

Destruction of a Royal Army by the Mahrattas.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 428.] Among the events of this year was the defeat of Kásim Khán and * * *, who were sent to Danderí² against Santá Ghorpúra. * * One day intelligence was brought that Kásim Khán's advanced force had been attacked by a division of the enemy, that all their portable goods had been plundered, and the standing camp set on fire. * * Kásim Khán, on hearing this, endeavoured to push forward to their assistance; but he was surrounded by the enemy, and fighting went on till sunset. * * They had no food for man or animal. The nobles passed the night upon their elephants, and the men with their bridles in their hands. * * * At daybreak, the enemy became more daring, and the fighting more severe, for the Mahrattas swarmed on all sides. * * For three days the royal forces, over-matched and surrounded, did their best to repulse the enemy; but Kásim Khán was at length compelled to give ground and to

¹ The islands of Khanderi or Kenery, Kolaba, and Kansa near Jinjera. Katora has not been identified.

² The *Tazkira-i Chaghatdí* calls it "the little fort of Dúndheri"; but the *Ma-dsir-i 'Alamgiri* says "the little fort of Dirandi," and gives "Dúdheri" as the place of Himmat Khán's death (*post*, p. 357). Scott (vol. ii. p. 95) calls it "Dundoore," and Grant Duff (vol. i. p. 388) "Dodaíree." There is a fort of Dodaíree in the Survey Map, about 25 miles N.E. of Chftaldrág, which is the locality fixed upon by Elphinstone. It is wrongly written "Bodéri" in Elphinstone's map. According to the *T. Chaghatdi*, Himmat Khán was in a place called Biswápattan before he marched to his death.

exculpatory and sensible answer! But you must recall to mind that the hereditary Kings of Bījápúr and Haidarábád and the good-for-nothing Sambhá have not escaped the hands of King Aurangzeb. Is the island of Bombay a sure refuge?" I added, "What a manifest declaration of rebellion you have shown in coining rupees!"

He replied, "We have to send every year a large sum of money, the profits of our commerce, to our country, and the coins of the King of Hindústán are taken at a loss. Besides, the coins of Hindústán are of short weight, and much debased; and in this island, in the course of buying and selling them, great disputes arise. Consequently we have placed our own names on the coins, and have made them current in our own jurisdiction." A good deal more conversation passed between us, and part of it seemed to vex him; but he showed himself throughout very thoughtful of 'Abdu-r Razzák Khán, and mindful of his obligation to protect him. When the interview was over, he proffered me entertainment in their fashion; but as I had resolved from the first that I would not depart from the usual course in the present interview, I accepted only *atr* and *pán*, and was glad to escape.

The total revenue of Bombay, which is chiefly derived from betel-nuts and cocoa-nuts, does not reach to two or three *lacs* of rupees. The profits of the commerce of these misbelievers, according to report, does not exceed twenty *lacs* of rupees. The balance of the money required for the maintenance of the English settlement is obtained by plundering the ships voyaging to the House of God, of which they take one or two every year. When the ships are proceeding to the ports of Mocha and Jedda laden with the goods of Hindústán, they do not interfere with them; but when they return bringing gold and silver and *Ibráhtimí* and *riál*,¹ their spies have found out which ship bears the richest burden, and they attack it.

¹ "Rix-dollars."—Shakespeare's Dictionary.

the garrison to the verge of death. Kásim Khán, according to report, poisoned himself, or else died from want of the usual potion of opium, for he was overcome with disappointment and rage.

Rúhu-llah Khán and the other officers were compelled to make overtures for a capitulation. * * Some officers went out to settle the terms of the ransom. Santá said, "Besides the elephants and horses, and money and property, which you have with you, I will not take less than a *lac* of *huns*," equivalent to three *lacs* and 50,000 rupees. A Dakhiní officer said, "What are you thinking of! this is a mere trifle. This is a ransom which I would fix for Rúhu-llah Khán alone." Finally, seven *lacs* of rupees was settled as the ransom, the payment of which was to be distributed among the officers. Each one's share was settled, and he made an engagement to pay it as ransom, and to leave a relation or officer of rank with Santá as bail for payment. Santá's officers sat down at the gate of the fort, and allowed each officer to take out his horse and his personal clothing, the others were allowed to carry out as much as they could bear in their arms. Everything else, money and jewels, horses and elephants, etc., were confiscated by Santá. * * The government and personal property lost during this war and siege exceeded fifty or sixty *lacs* of rupees. * *

Santá was delighted with the terms he had made with the defeated army. Soon afterwards he heard that Himmat Khán was approaching by forced marches to the relief of the besieged army. Santá divided his forces into two divisions, and marched to meet him. At the distance of sixteen *kos* the force under command of Santá fell in with Himmat Khán, and a great battle followed. Himmat Khán fought with great spirit and bravery. Numberless Malirattas were slain, and many of his own army perished. Santá's forces retreated, and the royal forces were led against the second army. Himmat Khán made arrangements for the pursuit. By orders of Santá many musketeers had taken positions in the thick jungle and among the trees, to impede the advance of Himmat Khán. Some of the best marksmen had

retire fighting, to the shelter of the fort of Danderí. The chief men got some hay and corn from the fort, but the soldiers got no food. Movement in any direction was scarcely possible. Thus they remained for three or four days under the shelter of the walls of the fort, and of the lines they threw up to protect themselves from the assaults of the enemy. Their camels and cattle fell into the hands of the Mahrattas. While the fighting went on, the gates of the fort were kept closed, and the traders and inhabitants within let down food from the walls and sold it. On the fourth or fifth day the enemy got intelligence that Himmat Khán was coming with a force to the rescue. Santá left half his force to keep Kásim Khán's army invested, and with the other marched against Himmat Khán. On learning that another force belonging to Rám Rája would act against Himmat Khán, he returned to his former position.

Meanwhile matters went ill with the royal forces, and Kásim Khán, with a few other officers, resolved upon taking refuge in the fort secretly, without the knowledge of their brethren in arms. * * Kásim Khán went out at night with the ostensible purpose of making the rounds. Several reasons made it inexpedient to enter the gate, near which so many men and officers were gathered; so he ascended the walls by a rope-ladder. Rúhu-llah Khán, Saf-shikan Khán, and a crowd of soldiers in great tumult made their way in by the gate. Muhammad Murád Khán and others, hearing of this, followed the example. * * * In fine, for a month they were besieged within the four walls, and every day affairs grew worse with them. They were compelled to kill and eat their baggage and riding horses, which were themselves nearly starved. For all the greatest care and economy, the stores of grain in the fort were exhausted. * * To escape from starvation many men threw themselves from the walls and trusted to the enemy's mercy. * * People brought fruit and sweetmeats from the enemy's *bázár* to the foot of the walls, and sold them at extravagant prices. * * Reverses, disease, deficiency of water, and want of grain, reduced

was sent to settle the affairs of Agra, and to punish the rebels in that quarter. * * Soon afterwards Prince Muhammad A'zam was ordered with his sons to Kábul, and Prince Mu'izzu-d dín to Multán.

Death of Santá Ghorpúra.

[p. 445.] The death of Santá at this time was a great piece of good fortune for Aurangzeb. The exact particulars of his death are not known; but I will relate what I have heard from men of credit who were with the army. Ghazíu-d dín Khán Fíroz Jang, who had been sent to chastise Santá and other robbers, was four or five marches from Bijápúr. * * Intelligence was brought that Santá Ghorpúra, with an army of 25,000 horse, was at a distance of eight or nine *kos*. * * Fíroz Jang marched towards Bijápúr, and when he was eight or nine *kos* distant from the city his scouts brought him word that there was a quarrel between Santá and Dahiná Jádú, both of whom were *senápalis*, or generals, * * and they were constantly trying to get the better of each other. Santá was very severe in the punishments he inflicted on his followers. For a trifling offence he would cast a man under the feet of an elephant. Many of the Mahratta chiefs had ill-blood against him, and they had conspired with Dahiná Jádú, by letters and by messengers, to get rid of him. Hanumant Rái, a *sardár* of distinction, at the instigation of Dahiná Jádú, made an attack in concert with Jádú's army upon Santá. Dahiná had also won over the great officers who were in company with Santá. They plundered Santá's baggage, and several of the principal *ráwats* of his army went over to Hanumant. Many of his men were killed and wounded, and he himself, being deprived of his power, fled to the hills and his own *máwals*. * *

On receipt of orders from Aurangzeb, Fíroz Jang went in pursuit of Santá. Dahiná Jádú's army pursued him on the other side. Santá's forces were entirely separated from him and

climbed the trees, and concealed themselves among the thick branches. When Himmat Khán approached, a ball entered his forehead and killed him immediately. All the baggage and elephants and munitions of war belonging to Himmat Khán then fell bodily into the hands of Santá.

THIRTY-NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1106 A.H. (1694-5 A.D.).

The Royal Princes.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 434.] Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh had gone to Kharpa (Kaddapa), to punish the rebels and to settle affairs. The insalubrity of the climate affected his health, and dropsy supervened. He returned to Court, and experienced physicians were appointed to attend him. * * His illness became so serious that his couch was placed near the chamber of the Emperor, who showed his paternal solicitude by administering his medicine, by partaking of food with him, and doing everything he could to restore him to health. God at length gave him a perfect cure.

Directions were now given for the release of Prince Sháh 'Álam, who had been kept under restraint for seven years. * * His release [*with the provision made for him*] was very annoying to Prince Muhammad A'zam and his partisans.

While Prince Sháh 'Álam was in confinement, the Emperor had shown great favour to Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh, who considered himself to be the heir apparent. But now that the elder Prince was restored to full liberty, and to a greater share of attention than before, Prince Muhammad A'zam was much aggrieved. * * One day the King took the hand of Prince Sháh 'Álam, and placed him on his right hand. * * Then he took the hand of Prince Muhammad A'zam, and made signs for him to sit down on his left. This greatly annoyed Prince Muhammad A'zam, and an open quarrel was imminent. * * After a time Prince Muhammad Mu'azzam, who had been entitled Sháh 'Álam, was honoured with the title Bahádur Sháh, and

FORTIETH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1107 A.H. (1695-6 A.D.).

Rám Rája. Prince Akbar. Flood.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 450.] Rám Rája, brother of Sambhá, having left the fort of Ját, in the district of Rájgarh, went to Jinjí and other strong places. He then proceeded to the fort of Sattára, where he remained seven months. When he was informed of the murder of Santá, he sent for Dahiná Jádú, to consult with him about getting together an army, and recommencing the war.

Prince Muhammad Akbar, after the accession of Sultán Husain to the throne of Persia, repeatedly asked for the help of an army to reinstate him in Hindústán. The new Sháh, like his predecessor, excused himself. * * The Prince then complained that the climate of Isfahán did not agree with him, and asked permission to reside for a while in Garmsír. The request was granted, and assignments were made of the revenues of that province for his support. So the Prince proceeded thither, with an appointed escort of 10,000 *kazilbashes*.

In the month of Muharram of this year the river Bhanra,¹ near which the royal camp was pitched, rose to a great height, and overflowed, causing enormous destruction. The *amirs* had built many houses there. The waters began to overflow at midnight, when all the world was asleep. * * The floods carried off about ten or twelve thousand men, with the establishments of the King, and the princes and the *amirs*, horses, bullocks and cattle in countless numbers, tents and furniture beyond number. Numberless houses were destroyed, and some were so completely carried away that not a trace of them was left. Grief fell on all the army. * * The King wrote out prayers with his own hand, and ordered them to be thrown into the river, on the purpose of causing it to subside. * *

¹ The Bhima. The name is written here "Bhanra." In the *Bádsháhnámá* it is "Bhanbara." In the *Bádsháhnámá* it is "Bhanbara." In the *Bádsháhnámá* it is "Bhanbara."

dispersed. Nágojí Manai,¹ a Mahratta *sardár*, had served for some time in the Imperial army, but subsequently joined his own people. This part of the country was his native land. Several years before, Santá had thrown a brother of Nágojí under the feet of an elephant, and this had produced a mortal hatred. Under the guidance of his wife, he led a party in pursuit of Santá. He reached a place where Santá, worn and weary, and without attendants, was bathing in a stream. He approached him suddenly, and killed him unawares. He then cut off his head, and, placing it in a bag, fastened it behind him on his horse, and carried it off to Dahiná Jádú. On the road the bag fell off, and was picked up by some runners and horsemen belonging to the army of Fíroz Jang, who were in pursuit of Santá. The head was recognized, and was carried to Lutfullah Khán, commander of Fíroz Jang's advanced guard. * * It was finally sent to Aurangzeb, who gave the bearer of it the title of Khush-khabar Khán. The drums of joy were beaten, and the head was ordered to be exposed with ignominy before the army and in several places of the Dakhin.

'Abdu-r Razzák Lári.

[p. 448.] 'Abdu-r Razzák Lári, from the day of entering the royal service, had sought for an excuse for going to his native country. * * He was now deprived of the *faujdarí* of Ráhírí, and summoned to Court. He did not go, but wrote desiring to be relieved from his *mansab*, and to be allowed to go to Mecca. The leave was given, * * but every means was taken to satisfy him, and to avert him from his design. But he would not consent, so he received written leave to depart with his family and property, and with marks of favour. His three sons did not accompany him, but remained at Court.

¹ The text has Nákoná Miyán, Nakomá Míná, etc. Grant Duff's version of the name has been adopted.

by their refusal to assist him ; so he took counsel with the enemy, and agreed that after a siege of a day or two, and some exhibition of force, he would open the gates to them. He made it a condition that the *raiyats* should not be plundered, but that the great and wealthy men, the *sarráfs*, the merchants, and the *mukaddams*, might be put to the rack and tortured until the balance of the ransom due to the Mahrattas was discharged. The result was that a sum of one *lac* and forty thousand rupees was paid to the Mahrattas instead of eighty thousand, and that Husain 'Alí Khán himself realized nearly thirty thousand rupees. When (the result of the action) was reported to Aurangzeb, he was very angry, and said that there was no use in fighting when too weak to win.

FORTY-THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1110 A.H. (1698-9 A.D.).

Campaign against the Mahrattas. Siege of Sattára.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 459.] The daring inroads of the Mahrattas brought Aurangzeb to the resolution of waging a holy war against them, and of reducing the fortresses which were their homes and defences. His camp had now remained at Islámpurí four years, and fine mansions and houses had been built there, so that a new city had sprung up, and men thought they would never move far away. Orders were given for throwing up earth-works round the place, and the officers and men worked so well that in fifteen or twenty days a defence was raised which might have occupied six or seven months. The Nawáb Kudsíya Zínatu-n Nissa, sister of Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh, and mother of Muhammad Kám Baksh, with other ladies of the royal household, were left there under the charge of Jamdatu-l Mulk Asad Khán. Orders were also given that all *amirs* and officers should leave their wives and families and property behind. The people belonging to the royal establishments were also to remain. Strict orders were also given that no *ahadí* should take his wife or children with him. Great stress was laid

FORTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1108 A.H. (1696-7 A.D.).

[*Attempt to murder Sidi Yákút Khán of Jazira.*]

FORTY-SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1109 A.H. (1697-8 A.D.).

The Mahrattas.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 457.] Nibá Sindhiá and other officers of Rám Rája, with an army of eight thousand horse, came to the district of Nandurbár, and attacked and burnt several villages. When he heard that Husain 'Alí Khán was approaching from Thálír,¹ he suspended his operations against Nandurbár, and went to meet him. Husain Khán had only seven or eight hundred horse and two or three thousand provincial musketeers and archers; but he went forth to meet the enemy. They encountered each other at two *kos* from the town of Thálír, and a fierce action ensued. * * The number of Sindhiá's forces enabled him to surround Husain 'Alí Khán, about three hundred of whose men were killed. The day went against Husain 'Alí, and he had received two or three wounds. Dripping with blood, he threw himself from his elephant; but he had no strength left for fighting, so he was surrounded and made prisoner. All his baggage, his men, and elephants were captured.

In addition to the cash and property which they had got by plunder, the enemy fixed two *lacs* of rupees as the price of the ransom of the prisoners. After much exertion, nearly one *lac* and 80,000 rupees was raised from the *júgirs*, and from the property which had been left in the town of Thálír. To make up the balance, the *sarráfs* and merchants of Nandurbár were importuned to raise a sum, small or great, by way of loan. But they would not consent. The inhabitants of the town of Nandurbár had not paid the *chauth* to the Mahrattas, and being supported by the *faujdár*, they had closed their gates, which greatly annoyed the enemy (Mahrattas). Husain 'Alí Khán also was greatly incensed

¹ "Tálner," east of Nandurbár.

a half. Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh encamped on another side, and the *amirs* and officers were posted according to the judgment of Tarbiyat Khán. They all vied with each other in throwing up lines, digging mines, and in carrying on other siege operations. * * On both sides a heavy fire was kept up, * * and the garrison rolled down great stones, which came bounding down and crushed many men and animals. The rain obstructed the arrival of corn; the enemy were very daring in attacking the convoys, and the country for twenty *kos* round the fortress had been burnt, so that grain and hay became very scarce and dear. A battery twenty-four yards (*dar'a*) high was thrown up in face of the hill, and on the Prince's side also the batteries were carried to the foot of the hill. A hundred and sixty thousand rupees were paid for the services of the troops and *máwalis* of that country, who are very efficient in sieges. * * Matters went hard with the garrison, and the chance of firing a gun or a musket was no longer in their power; all they could do was to roll down stones from the walls. * *

Stone-masons were employed by the besiegers to cut two vaults in the side of the rock four yards long and ten yards broad, which were to be used as stations for sentinels. But when they were found not to answer for this purpose, they were filled with powder. * * On the morning of the 5th Zí-l ka'da, in the fourth month of the siege, one of these was fired. The rock and the wall above it were blown into the air and fell inside the fortress. Many of the garrison were blown up and burnt. The besiegers, on beholding this, pushed boldly forwards. At that time the second mine was fired. A portion of the rock above was blown up, but instead of falling into the fortress, as was expected, it came down upon the heads of the besiegers like a mountain of destruction, and several thousands¹ were buried under it. * * The garrison then set about repairing the walls, and they again opened fire and rolled down the life-destroying stones.

When Aurangzeb was informed of the disaster, and of the

¹ "Nearly two thousand."—*Ma-dsir-i 'A'lamgir*.

upon this order, but in the marches and campaigns of Hindústán such orders could not be enforced without resorting to such punishments as the Princes of the House of Timúr held to be inconsistent with their sense of justice. So the order was not obeyed as it ought to have been. On the 5th Jumáda-*l*-*awwal* the army marched towards the fort of Basant-garh,¹ and in twenty days it arrived at Murtaza-ábád, or Mirich. There Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh came, in obedience to summons, from Bir-gánv.

Rám Rája, brother of the deceased Sambhá, had, under the pressure of the royal armies, abandoned his fortresses and fled, taking refuge in the hills and places of difficult access. When he heard of the royal design upon the fortresses, he went off towards Birár, ravaging the towns and inhabited places. The *Zamindár* of Deogarh, in consequence of disturbances in his country, and the superior force of those who disputed the inheritance, had fled to the Court of Aurangzeb, and had received the title of Buland-bakht upon his becoming a Musulmán. Upon hearing of the death of his competitor, he hastened back to Deogarh without leave, and opposed the officers who were appointed to collect the tribute. He now joined Rám Rája in plundering the country. His Majesty ordered that his name should be changed to Nigún-bakht, and that Prince Badár Bakht should march against him with a suitable force. * * Rúhu-llah Khán *Bakhtshí*, with Hámidu-d dín Khán, were sent to plunder the environs of the forts of Parnála and Sattára. When the royal army came near to Basant-garh, Tarbiyat Khán, the commander of artillery, was ordered to take steps for investing the place and throwing up lines. * * The word was given for an assault, but the besieged were frightened and surrendered. Aurangzeb gave to the place the name *Kilid-i fúúh*, Key of Victory.

At the end of Jumáda-s sání the royal army arrived opposite Sattára, and the camp was pitched at the distance of a *kos* and

¹ Between the Kistná and Kocena, about thirty miles south of Sattára.

Soon afterwards it was announced that the eldest son, a boy of five years of age, had died of small-pox. The chiefs then made Tára Báí, the chief wife, and mother of one son, regent. She was a clever intelligent woman, and had obtained a reputation during her husband's lifetime for her knowledge of civil and military matters. Tára Báí proceeded to the hills of difficult approach.

On receiving this intelligence, the Emperor ordered the drums of rejoicing to be beaten, * * and the soldiers congratulated each other, * * saying that another prime mover in the strife was removed, * * and that it would not be difficult to overcome two young children and a helpless woman. They thought their enemy weak, contemptible and helpless; but Tára Báí, as the wife of Rám Rája was called, showed great powers of command and government, and from day to day the war spread and the power of the Mahrattas increased.

Surrender of Sattára and Capture of Parlí.

[Text, p. 470.] At the death of Rám Rája, a chief named Parsa Rám was in the fort of Parlí,¹ acting in that country as *dhucán* in revenue matters for Rám Rája. On hearing of his decease, without consulting with the commandant of the fort, he came and made his submission to Aurangzeb. The commandant also, being dismayed, sent a proposal of surrender upon terms. At the same time Sobhán, the commander of Sattára, was troubled by the blowing up of the wall on one side of the fortress and the burning of a great number of his men. The death of Rám Rája added to his perplexity. He was at feud with the commandant of fort Parlí, and he sent a message to Aurangzeb, through Prince Muhammad A'zam, offering to capitulate on honourable terms, if the proposal of the commandant of Parlí were rejected. He was willing to give up the keys of Sattára at once, and would undertake to place Parlí in Aurangzeb's hands

¹ Six miles south-west of Sattára.

despondency of his men, he mounted his horse, and went to the scene of action as if in search of death. He gave orders that the bodies of the dead should be piled upon each other, and made to serve as shields against the arrows of calamity ; then with the ladder of resolution, and the scaling-ropes of boldness, the men should rush to the assault. When he perceived that his words made no impression on the men, he was desirous to lead the way himself, accompanied by Muhammad A'zam Sháh. But the nobles objected to this rash proposition. Afterwards he addressed his soldiers in encouraging words * * [*and gave fresh orders for the conduct of the siege*].

An extraordinary incident now occurred. A great number of Hindú infantry soldiers had been killed all at once (in the explosion), and their friends were unable to seek and bring out their bodies. The violence of the shock had entirely disfigured them, and it was not possible to distinguish between Musulmán and Hindú, friend and stranger. The flames of animosity burst forth among all the gunners against the commander of the artillery. So at night they secretly set fire to the defences (*marhala*),¹ which had been raised at great trouble and expense against the fire from above, in the hope and with the design that the fire might reach the corpses of the slaughtered Hindús. A great conflagration followed, and for the space of a week served as a bright lamp both for besiegers and besieged. A number of Hindús and Musulmáns who were alive in the huts were unable to escape, and were burnt, the living with the dead.

Death of Rám Rája.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 468.] The news-writers now reported that Rám Rája, after meeting with some reverses in his raid upon Birár, was returning to the hills of his own territory. On his way he died, leaving three sons of tender years, and two wives.

¹ "Which were constructed entirely of wood."—*Ma-dsir-i 'Alamgiri*, p. 419.

In the middle of Safar the army reached an obscure fort, which offered sufficient protection for a few days, and an order was issued for a month's rest there. The rains, which had continued so far, now ceased, and the men of the army found a little comfort.

Some proceedings of Prince Muhammad A'zam were displeasing to His Majesty, and his division of the army was in a bad state; so that, although he had shown great diligence and enterprise in the reduction of the fort of Parnála and other forts, he was sent, in order to appease the troops, to be Governor of the province of Ujjain. In the same way, several officers of the army were sent to their *jágirs* at ten or twelve days' distance, to Bījápúr, and to other places in the vicinity. Prince Bedár Bakht was directed to lay siege to the fort of Parnála, and Zú-l fikár Khán and Tarbiyat Khán received orders to follow him with the artillery.

As many men had been lost in the reduction of the fortresses, strict orders were sent to the *Súbadárs* of Burhánpúr, Bījápúr, Haidarábád, Ahmadábád, and other provinces far and near, to raise (each) a thousand men, well horsed, to advance them six months' pay out of the State revenues, and to send them to the royal camp. Aurangzeb, with the intention of giving his men rest, went to Khawáspúr,¹ a place well supplied with grass and hay, and fruit-trees and water. At the end of Rabi'ü-l awwal the royal camp was pitched at that place, and the abundance of provisions soon restored the spirits of the army. * * But here also the army was to suffer hardship. The camp was pitched by the side of a *nála* containing only a little water, and, as the rainy season was over, there was no expectation of a heavy fall of rain. But rain which fell out of season in the hills and distant places sent down a flood of water, which inundated the camp, * * causing confusion and distress which defy description.

The fort of Parnála had been (formerly) taken by Prince

¹ "On the banks of the Mán river."—Grant Duff, vol. i. p. 395.

unconditionally in a short time, without any promise of security. On the 16th Zí-l ka'da he surrendered the keys, and more than three thousand persons, male and female, came out of the fort upon promise of safety. Great rejoicings followed. Sobhán was brought, bound hand and neck, to the foot of the throne; but orders were given for the forgiveness of his offences, and for loosening his bonds. He was appointed to a *mansab* of five thousand and two thousand horse, and a horse, an elephant, etc., were presented to him.

After the surrender of Sattára, Aurangzeb marched against Parlí, the commandant of that fort having been diverted by his advisers from his intention of surrendering. Parlí is a more lofty fort than Sattára, and it had been put into a state of preparation. * * On the 10th Zí-l hijja many men were killed in an attempted assault, but in a short time the garrison was pressed very hard. The besiegers were greatly incommoded by the heavy rain, which in this part of the country falls for five months without an hour's interval by night or day, and by lack of supplies, the convoys being cut off by the enemy who swarmed around. * * The garrison showed great daring in coming suddenly down the hill and attacking the besiegers; but the repeated attacks and the daring of Fathu-llah Khán at length prevailed, and a proposition of capitulation was made. At the beginning of Muharram, after a siege of a month and a half, the fortress was taken, and the men of the garrison marched out with their families and their old clothes. * * The name of Sattára was changed to A'zam-tará, and of Parlí to Nauras-tará.

Aurangzeb then determined to return, but there was little means of carriage, for the rains and the bad climate * * had affected the animals, so that those that were alive were nothing but skin and bone. Some of the baggage and *matériel* was carried away, some was left in the forts, and some was burnt. * * On reaching the river Kistná, there was great difficulty in crossing it. * * Some men attempted to swim over, but nine out of ten were drowned, * * and thousands remained behind and died.

difficulties of the road were great. * * Ambá-ghát,¹ at a distance of two days' march, took twelve days to reach. * * Prince Bedár Bakht was ordered to fall back on Baní Sháh Darak (as Parnála was now called), to punish the enemy, who were closing the roads in that direction, * * and to prevent any supplies being thrown into Khelna from that quarter. Muhammad Amín Khán was likewise ordered to the Ambá-ghát, to cut off any supplies intended for the fort, and to succour the convoys of *Banjáras* bearing grain for the royal army. He showed no lack of zeal in these duties; and was so active in ravaging and burning the inhabited places, in killing and making prisoners the people, and in seizing and carrying off the cattle, that any sign of cultivation, or the name or trace of a Mahratta, was not to be found. * *

The siege works were pushed on until a mine was carried near to the gate. In the raising of the earthworks,² camel saddles and baskets innumerable were used, full of earth and rubbish and litter, heads of men and feet of quadrupeds; and these were advanced so far that the garrison were intimidated.

FORTY-SIXTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1113 A.H. (1701-2 A.D.).

Muhammad A'zam, and had remained for some time in the royal possession. But in the thirty-fifth year of the reign the enemy regained possession of it. * * On the 10th Shawwál the (royal) army reached Pún-garh, a fort connected with Parnála.

FORTY-FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1111 A.H. (1699-1700 A.D.).

[*Siege of Parnála.*]

FORTY-FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1112 A.H. (1700-1 A.D.).

Sieges of Forts.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 489.] The siege (of Parnála) had endured for two months, and repeated attempts had been made to carry the place by escalade. * * At length, when the garrison was hard pressed, the commandant surrendered the fort, having secretly received a sum of money from Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh and Tarbiyat Khán, with whom he had been in correspondence. At the end of Zí-l hijja the keys were given up, and both the forts were evacuated.

The army was about to march, when a violent storm came on [*and did great damage*]. In the beginning of Muharram, 1113, it was determined to march towards Kaháwan, where there was plenty of grass and grain. Fathu-llah Khán was sent with a force to chastise the plundering Mahrattas, and to subdue their forts. * * He killed many of the enemy near the four forts in that neighbourhood, * * and, on hearing of his approach, the enemy abandoned the fort of Páras-garh.¹ Bahramand Khán was sent along with Fathu-llah Khán against the fort of Chandan-mandan,² * * and by the middle of Jumáda-l awwal all the four forts were subdued.

On the 16th Jumáda-l ákhir the royal army moved from Pánc-gánw, to effect the conquest of the fort of Khelna.³ The

¹ Also called Sádik-garh.—*Index to the Text.*

² Chandan and Wandan are sister forts a little north of Sattára.

³ See *supra*, p. 278.

effect the conquest of Kandána. On the 16th it reached that fortress [*and the siege was at once begun*].

Forty-seventh Year of the Reign, 1114 A.H. (1702-3 A.D.).

The Mahrattas.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 510.] After the siege (of Kandána¹) had gone on for three months and a half, and many men had been killed, and the directors of the siege were in difficulty, the fort² was bought from the commandant for a sum of money. The army then marched and remained for a month at Púna, and the neighbouring villages.³ * * In the middle of Rajab the army marched against Rájgarh, the earliest fortress and retreat of the restless infidels of this country. * * At the beginning of Sha'bán the army sat down before the fort. The circuit of the fort was so great, twelve kos in measurement, that a complete investment sufficient to prevent the throwing in of supplies was impossible. * * On the 15th Shawwál the royal flag was planted on the first gate of the fortress, and many of the garrison were slain or put to flight. * * But Hainájí, the commander, kept up an ineffectual resistance for twelve days longer, when he asked for terms. They were conceded on condition that the commander himself should come to the first gate, carry the royal flag into the fortress, and evacuate the place on the next day. * * Next day the garrison marched out with their families, and all the property they could carry. * * The fort received the name of Baní-Sháhgarh.

When Rám Rája died, leaving only widows and infants, men thought that the power of the Mahrattas over the Dakhin was at an end. But Tárá Báí, the elder wife, made her son of three years old successor to his father, and took the reins of govern-

¹ Now Singarh, eight miles south of Púna.

² "The name Bakhshinda-bakhsh was given to it" (see *post*, p. 382).

³ Prince Muhsu-l Mulk, son of Prince Kám Bakhsh, died here, so the name of Púna was changed to Muhtábád.

six months' siege, on the 19th Muharram, 1113 (16 June, 1701), the flags of the Prince and of Rúhu-llah Khán were hoisted over the fortress by Paras Rám, the commandant, himself, who had stipulated that no man of the royal army should go in with the flag. He solicited a night's grace, and through shame he and his family went out during the darkness of the night, with all the property they could carry. A large number of the garrison remained in the fort, but the Emperor in his mercy ordered that no one of them should be molested; so they came out and departed to their native wilds.* * The name of the fort was altered to Sakhkharalaná.

The clemency and long suffering and care of the Emperor were such that, when he ascertained that several fortresses had been long and vigorously besieged by the forces appointed to the duty, and that the garrisons were in difficulty, he paid sums of money to the commandants, and so got the forts into his possession. It often happened also that he gave the same sum of money, neither more nor less, to the officer conducting the siege. The heavy rains, and the overflow of the rivers and streams, had induced Aurangzeb to defer his march until the end of the rainy season. But he was moved by the irresolution and the advice of some of his *amirs*, who pined for ease, and complained of the dearness of grain and the insalubrity of the climate, and by the grumbling of the inexperienced and hard-trying soldiers. So at the end of Muharram he marched for Bír-gánw.¹ [*Great difficulties, dangers and losses from rains and floods.*] In the course of one month and seventeen days the fourteen *kos* between the forts of Khelna and Parnála were traversed, and on the 12th Rabi' u-l awwal the camp was pitched under the latter. [*Further hardships of the march and great difficulty in crossing the Kistná.*] Seventeen days were occupied in the transit of the river, * * * but Bahádur-gárh¹ was at length reached, and there the army halted for a month. * * At the end of Rajab, though only half a life remained in the bodies of the men, the army marched to

¹ See note, *post*, p. 383.

he builds one or two forts, which he makes his strongholds, and ravages the country round. The *mukaddams*, or head men of the villages, with the countenance and co-operation of the infidel *sibadars*, have built forts, and with the aid and assistance of the Mahrattas they make terms with the royal officers as to the payment of their revenues. They attack and destroy the country as far as the borders of Ahmadábád and the districts of Málwá, and spread their devastations through the provinces of the Dakhin to the environs of Ujjain. They fall upon and plunder large caravans within ten or twelve *kos* of the Imperial camp, and have even had the hardihood to attack the royal treasure. It would be a troublesome and useless task to commit to writing all their misdeeds; but it must suffice to record some few of the events which occurred in those days of sieges, which, after all, had no effect in suppressing the daring of the Mahrattas.

A force of the enemy, numbering fifteen or sixteen thousand horse, proceeded towards the port of Surat, and, after ravaging several districts, they went to cross the Nerbadda, which runs between Ahmadábád and Surat. The Imperial officers in charge of Ahmadábád took counsel together, and sent a suitable force against them, under Muhammad Beg Khán, and * * ten or twelve *sardars*, with thirteen or fourteen thousand horse, and seven or eight thousand trained *kolis* of that country. They crossed the Nerbadda, and encamped upon its bank. Next morning the Mahratta army approached within seven or eight *kos*. Two or three well-mounted light horsemen appeared on one side, and the Ahmadábád army made ready to receive them. After a conflict, the infidels took flight, and were pursued by the Imperial officers for two or three *kos*, who captured several mares, spears, and umbrellas, and returned rejoicing.

The men of the army, delighted at having put the enemy to flight, had ungirded themselves and taken the saddles from their horses. Some went to sleep, and some were engaged in cooking or eating, when a picked force of seven or eight thousand of the enemy's horse came suddenly upon them

ment into her own hands. She took vigorous measures for ravaging the Imperial territory, and sent armies to plunder the six *sūbas* of the Dakhin as far as Sirpur, Masulipat, and the *sūba* of Málwā. She won the hearts of her officers, and for all the struggles and schemes, the campaigns and sieges of Aurangzeb up to the end of his reign, the power of the Maharrattas increased day by day. By hard fighting, by the expenditure of the vast treasures accumulated by Shih Jahan, and by the sacrifice of many thousands of men, he had penetrated into their wretched country, had subdued their lofty forts, and had driven them from house and home; still the daring of the Maharrattas increased, and they penetrated into the old territories of the Imperial throne, plundering and destroying wherever they went. In imitation of the Emperor, who with his array of enterprising *ambas* was staying in those distant mountains, the commanders of Tātā Bāi cast the anchor of portraiture wherever they penetrated, and having appointed *kamūtdārs* (revenue collectors), they passed the years and months to their satisfaction, with their wives and children, tents and elephants. Their daring went beyond all bounds. They divided all the districts (*parganas*) among themselves, and following the practice of the Imperial rule, they appointed their *sūbādārs* (provincial governors), *kamūtdārs* (revenue collectors), and *rāhdārs* (toll-collectors).

Their principal *sūbdār* is commander of the army. Whenever he hears of a large caravan, he takes six or seven thousand horse and goes to plunder it. He appoints *kamūtdārs* everywhere to collect the *chauth*, and whenever, from the resistance of the *zamidārs* and *faujdārs*, the *kamūtdār* is unable to levy the *chauth*, he hastens to support him, and besieges and destroys his towns. And the *rāhdār* of these evil-doers takes from small parties of merchants, who are anxious to obtain security from plunder, a toll upon every cart and bullock, three or four times greater than the amount imposed by the *faujdārs* of the government. This excess he shares with the corrupt *jāgirdārs* and *faujdārs*, and then leaves the road open. In every *sūba* (province)

FORTY-EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1115 A.H. (1703-4 A.D.).

[Text, vol. ii. p. 521.] After the reduction of the fort of Rājgarh, the royal army rested for a few days, and at the end of Shawwāl it moved to the fort of Torna, four *kos* distant from Rājgarh. * * On the 13th Zi-l ka'da this fort was taken by assault, not like the other forts by negotiations with the commandants and promises of material advancement. * *

Siege of Wākinkera.

[p. 524.] Pām Nāik, a *zamindār* of low origin, belonging to the tribe of *Belar*, which is the Hindi for "fearless," sprang from the caste of *Dhars*, the most impure caste of the Dakhīn. He was noted for his turbulent habits. At the time of the war with Haidarābād, he sent his forces to the aid of Abū-l Hasan, and Pādshāh Khānzāda Khān, son of Rūhu-llah Khān, was sent to subdue his fort of Sagar,¹ and to occupy his fastnesses and retreats. He submitted to the royal army, and came to wait on the Emperor, but soon hastened back to his home.

Pām Nāik had a nephew named Paryā Nāik.² In the thirty-second year of the reign, when Rūhu-llah Khān senior was sent to reduce Rāichor, and when the royal court was at Ahmadābād, before the Bijāpūr affair, this Paryā Nāik, having seen the great power of Aurangzeb, came to his Court, and received a *mansab*. Rūhu-llah thought he might be of service at Rāichor, and took him there. There the good-for-nothing knave took part in the fighting, and rendered good service. After the reduction of Rāichor,³ he asked leave to go to Wākinkera,⁴ his ancestral abode, promising to levy all his powers there, and to present himself with a proper army wherever he was summoned.

Upon receiving permission, he went to Wākinkera, which is

¹ Rāichor lies between the Kistnā and Tumbhadrā. Sagar and Wākinkera are north-west of Rāichor between the Kistnā and the Bhīma, Sagar being fifteen miles north-east of Wākinkera.

² The *Ma-āsir-i 'Alamgiri* gives as the names Pām Nāik and Pidiyā Nāik.

like a flood. These men had been concealed among the trees and rocks near the river, and had sent out their spies to watch for an opportunity. The untried men of Ahmadábád lost their wits, and found no means of saddling their horses or girding on their arms. They had no experienced officers among them, and when the Dakhinís made their attack, a panic fell upon the army. On one side was the river, which the tide from the sea made unfordable, and on the other the advancing tide of the enemy. Many men were killed and wounded, and a great many threw themselves into the water, and were drowned. * * The enemy effected a complete overthrow of the Imperial army.

Dahiná Jádú, according to the general report of the *sardárs*, was a man of the highest influence. He now proposed terms of peace. His proposal was that conciliatory letters should be addressed to all the principal officers of the Rání, inviting them to wait upon Aurangzeb. When they had arrived in the vicinity of the royal camp, Rája Sáhú (son of Samblhájí) was to be placed in charge of Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh, and to be sent some four or five *kos* from the camp, so that the Mahratta *sardárs* might have an interview with him first. With the approval of Rája Sáhú, the chiefs were then to pay their respects to Prince Kám Bakhsh, and to return in his custody to the royal camp, where they were to receive the honour of admission into the royal service. Orders were accordingly given for the sending nearly seventy letters to various Mahratta chiefs. But, after all, the plan did not please Aurangzeb, who prudently felt misgivings as to the craftiness of the Mahrattas, and was apprehensive that if they assembled forty or fifty thousand horse near the royal camp, they might by this pretence carry off Rája Sáhú and Prince Kám Bakhsh, to their hills of difficult access.

Sultán Husain was summoned to Court; * * but his visit was countermanded, and he was ordered to go and lay siege to the fort of Torna.

a village on the top of a hill, and one of the dependencies of Sagar. The place is inhabited by many *Barbandás*, which name signifies "black-faced infantry,"¹ and these people are famed for their skill in archery and missiles. After Sagar had been taken from the hands of Pem Náik, the worthless Paryá Náik, by craft and wiles, made it the abode of his family and children. Having taken up his residence at Wákin-kera, he showed no signs of moving, but set about strengthening and adding to the defences, and laying in warlike stores. Favoured by fortune, he in time collected nearly fourteen or fifteen thousand infantry of vigour and audacity. He made his hill a strong fortress, and, collecting in a short time four or five thousand horse, he ravaged flourishing places far and near, and plundered caravans. Whenever an army was sent against him, the strong force which he had collected around him, the strength of his retreat, the influence of money spent in bribery, a practice which he well understood, his knowledge of *darbár* proceedings, and his own audacity, carried him through; and bags of money and a variety of presents covered all discrepancies in his statements. In his letters he made all sorts of artful excuses, and represented himself as one of the most obedient of *samindárs* and punctual of revenue-payers. Every month and year he exerted himself in increasing his buildings, strengthening his towers and walls, in gathering forces, and acquiring guns, great and small. At last his place became well known as the fort of Wákin-kera, and he became a fast ally of the Mahrattas, the disturbers of the Dakhin.

Jagná, son of Pem Náik, who was the heir to his property,² came to Court, was honoured with a *mansab*, and received a *sanad* for the *samindari* as its rightful heir. He went thither

¹ برقنداز بسیار که مراد از کالی پیادهای سیاه رو باشند All the copies agree in this reading. The *Ma-dsir-i 'A'lamgiri* calls them "*Kálak piyáda bandúkchi*" (p. 376), and they occur frequently.

² "Paryá Náik expelled Jikiyá, son of Pem Náik, from the lands he had inherited."
—*Ma-dsir-i 'A'lamgiri*, vol. ii. p. 492.

then asked humbly forgiveness for his brother, and for a truce of a week. Muhtasham Khán then entered the fortress (to take formal possession as *kila'dár*). He was entertained that night, and messages were sent to him assuring him that Paryá Náík would see him next day, and then under his protection would proceed to pay homage. When he went into the fort, the drums of the royal army were beaten joyfully. * * The people in the fort, in order to satisfy the *kila'dár*, busied themselves in sending out their useless goods, their women and the old men whose lives were precarious. The statement was still maintained that Paryá Náík intended to visit the *kila'dár*, but towards night the excuse was made that he was ill with fever. On the third it was stated that the fever had increased, and that he was delirious and talking wildly. Next day it was said that he was quite insane, and that he had gone out of the fort, and no one knew whether he had cast himself down from the fort to kill himself, or whether he had gone to join the Mahratta army.

and the artillery with a shower of fire, boldly resisted the advance of the Imperial forces. Cannon-balls from large and small guns were accompanied by thousands of blazing rockets, which rained night and day, and allowed not a moment's rest. A fierce struggle was commenced, and large numbers were killed on both sides. * *

The reduction of the fort was nearly accomplished, and the valour of the brave besiegers was about to reap its reward. The approaching fall of the fort was on every one's tongue, when intelligence came in that a large army of Mahrattas was approaching to succour the place. Next day Dahiná Jádú and Hindú Ráo, with two or three *sardárs*, whose wives and families were in Wákinkera, approached with eight or nine thousand horse and an innumerable force of infantry. Dahiná Jádú had been occupied for a short time in ravaging the country and opposing the royal forces. His present object was to get his wives and children and property out of Wákinkera, which he had deemed the safest of all the forts, and at the same time to render assistance to the garrison. On one side his strong force pressed severely on the royal army.

At this juncture, when misfortunes poured like hail upon the besiegers, one body drew the royal generals into a conflict on one side, while on another two or three thousand horse dashed up to the fort, mounted the women on swift mares, and with the aid of the infantry in the fort they succeeded in carrying them off. * * Paryá Náik sent money and goods, food and drink, to the Mahrattas, and settled allowances to their *sardárs*, to induce them to remain and protract the siege. The Mahrattas were quite willing to get money easily, so they remained and harassed the besiegers by daily attacks on both sides. Every day their forces increased. Many men of the royal army were killed, and a great panic spread amongst them. [*Private negotiations.*]

Súm Sankar, brother of Paryá Náik, came out of the fort (as a hostage), presented his offering, and paid homage. He received the honour of a robe, horse, jewels, and a *mansab*, and

better, and occasionally showed himself to the people in the public hall. The army was in an enemy's country, without house or home; and if the sad calamity (of the Emperor's death) were to happen, not one soul would escape from that land of mountains and raging infidels. Under the advice of his physician, he took China root.¹ Three or four times a week he took medicine, and every day he distributed charity. After his recovery, he richly rewarded his physician, and returned thanks to God. In the middle of Rajab, he commenced his march for Bahádur-garh, otherwise called Bír-gánw,² leaving Kalich Khán behind as *Súba-dár*. Slowly, and with difficulty, he pursued his march, and reached Bír-gánw at the end of Sha'bán, and ordered a halt of forty days for giving rest to the army during the time of the fast.

FIFTIETH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1117 A.H. (1705-6 A.D.).

Illness of the Emperor.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 540.] After the conclusion of the fast of Ramazán, the Emperor again turned his attention to business. He then proceeded to Ahmadnagar. In the month of Zí-l hijja the intelligence was brought of Zú-l fikar Khán having reduced the fort of Bakhshinda-bakhsh (Kaudána). Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh was in the province of Ahmadábád. When he heard of his father's illness, he wrote for leave to visit his father, stating as an excuse that the climate of Ahmadábád was very unfavourable to him. This displeased the Emperor, who replied that he had written a letter of exactly the same effect to his father Sháh Jahán when he was ill, and that he was told in answer, that every air (*hawá*) was suitable to a man except the fumes (*hawá*) of ambition. But the Prince wrote repeatedly to

¹ *Chob-i Chini*, "Smilax China."

² Bír-gánw and Bahádur-garh have not been found in the maps. A passage (Text, vol. ii. p. 452) states that a woman was carried by a flood "from Bahádur-garh to Islámpúri (on the Bhíma) in five or six watches," and another passage (p. 508) says Bahádur-garh was nine *kos* from the Kistná; so perhaps the place was on the Mán river, although that is more than nine *kos* from the Kistná. The route of Aurangzeb from Khelna to Bahádur-garh (*Ala-ásir*, p. 464) was Malkapúr, Paráula, Bar-gánw (War-gánw), the Kistná, As'ad-nagar, Bahádur-garh; so he must have crossed the river near Mirich.

mand, and the Emperor issued an order directing him to join as soon as possible. * * Zú-l síkár Khán seized several wells from which the enemy drew their supplies of water; and the enemy now felt the deprivation which the Imperial forces had suffered. * * The approaches were pushed forward to the fort, and on the day appointed for the assault the Emperor mounted his horse to take part therein, * * and took his position at a cannon-shot distance from the fort. * * The enemy were overpowered, and some positions were captured. * * Being greatly dispirited, they placed two or three thousand musketeers to hold one of the gates to the last. They then took their wives and children, their jewels, and whatever they could carry, and after setting fire to their temple and other buildings, they went out at another gate, and by some outlets which had been prepared for such an occasion, they made their way to the Mahratta army in parties. They then fled with the army. The conflagration in the fort and the cessation of the firing made the besiegers aware of their flight. A party of men entered, and found only disabled and wounded persons who were unable to fly. On the 14th Muharram the Imperial forces took possession of the place. * * The name Wákinkera was changed to Rahmán-bakhsh. The Imperial army then retired to pass the rainy season at Deo-gánw, three or four kos from the Kistná. * * News arrived that the fort of Bakhshinda-bakhsh or Kandána had been lost through the carelessness of the commander and the strategy of the Mahrattas. On the same day Hámidu-d dín Khán was sent to retake it.

Illness of the Emperor.

The Emperor was seized with illness, and had severe pains in his limbs, which caused grave apprehension. But he exerted himself, took his seat in the public hall, and engaged in business, thus giving consolation to the people. But his illness increased, he had fainting fits and lost his senses, so that very alarming rumours spread abroad, and for ten or twelve days the army and camp were in great distress. But by the mercy of God he grew

audience and the Court of Justice, he was very weak, and death was clearly stamped upon his face. Prince A'zam's feelings towards Prince Kám Bakhsh, who was a poet and learned man, now displayed themselves in various slights and improper actions whenever an opportunity offered. Kám Bakhsh was dear to his father, for it often happens that men have the greatest affection for their youngest sons. So the Emperor appointed a nobleman to act as the *bakhshi* of Kám Bakhsh, and to him he entrusted the Prince, with instructions to take care of him. This *bakhshi* was Sultán Hasan, otherwise called Mír Malang. He was a courageous and faithful servant, and upon his appointment, the Emperor gave him the title of Hasan Khán. In faithful discharge of his duty, Hasan Khán deemed it necessary to place his ward under the protection of special guards, in addition to his own servants, and these accompanied the Prince armed and accoutred whenever he went to Court. For some days and nights they watched over the Prince with great vigilance. Prince A'zam Sháh complained of this to the Emperor, but got no answer. He then wrote to Nawáb Zínatu-n Nissa Begam, his eldest sister, complaining of the insolence of Hasan Khán, who had exceeded his powers. He added that there would be no difficulty in chastising him, but that it had been forbidden by the Emperor. This letter was shown to the Emperor, who wrote a letter with his own hand, saying that he had heard of the suspicions and apprehensions shown by Hasan Khán, and would therefore send Kám Bakhsh to some other place. Prince A'zam winced under the censure implied in the letter; but he knew that submission was his only resource, and he felt great satisfaction at the removal of his younger brother.

The foresight of the Emperor told him that his health was failing, and he saw that Prince (A'zam's) pretensions increased daily. He knew that if two unchained lions were left together, after his decease there would be divisions in the army, and great disturbances among the people. His affection for Kám Bakhsh also worked upon him. He sent Kám Bakhsh with all the signs

the same effect, and was then appointed to the *súba* of Málwá. He did not, however, go to Ujjain, but wrote for leave to visit his father. A grudging permission was given, and the Prince made the best of his way, so that he arrived at the end of the month. The *súba* of Ahmadábád, which was taken from him, was given to Muhammad Ibráhím Khán. * *

When Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh reached his father's Court, his confidence in his own courage and boldness, and his pride in the army and treasure he had got together at Ahmadábád, made him aspire to the royal state and treasure. He thought nothing about his elder brother, but considered himself the chief in every way. Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh he looked upon as removed from rivalry by incompetence. But he had observed the altered temper of his father, whose feelings were not always in their natural state. His first thoughts fell upon Prince Muhammad 'Azím,¹ who was at 'Azímábád, or Patna, in Bihár, where he had been some time *Súbadár*, and had obtained a repute for amassing treasures. Therefore he wished to remove him by getting him recalled to Court; and by various representations, some false, some true, he so worked upon the mind of the Emperor that orders were issued for his recall, * * and the Prince proceeded to wait upon his grandfather.

Confirmation was received, through the Governor of Multán, of the death of Prince Muhammad Akbar in Garmsír, the report of which had been current for a year past.

FIFTY-FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1118 A.H. (1706-7 A.D.).

Death of the Emperor.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 547.] Prince A'zam Sháh was proud of his own courage, and of his army and soldiers. He had, moreover, won over to his side Jamdatu-l Mulk Asad Khán and several other *amirs*. He now sought a pretext for a quarrel with Prince Kám Bakhsh. The Emperor slightly improved in health; but although for some days he went into the public hall of

¹ Or 'Azímu-sh Shán, son of Mu'azzam.

administration of a country cannot be maintained. Dissensions had arisen among his nobles through rivalry. So every plan and project that he formed came to little good; and every enterprise which he undertook was long in execution, and failed of its object. Although he lived for ninety years, his five senses were not at all impaired, except his hearing, and that to only so slight an extent that it was not perceptible to others. He often passed his nights in vigils and devotion, and he denied himself many pleasures naturally belonging to humanity.

ACCESSION OF SHÁH 'ÁLAM BÂDShÁH (BAHÁDUR SHÁH),
TWELFTH IN DESCENT FROM AMÍR TIMÚR.

Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh claims the Crown.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 566.] Prince Muhammad A'zam Sháh, having taken leave of his father, was proceeding to his governorship of Málwá. He had travelled about twenty kos from the army, when one evening the intelligence of the Emperor's death reached him. On the same day he left his baggage and equipments, and with some of the chief nobles and an escort, he set off with all speed for the army. On arriving there, he entered the great tent. All the nobles came forth to meet him, and to console and sympathize with him, except Asad Khán and Hámid Khán, who were attending to the business of mourning and watching inside. After the burial was over, Jamdatu-l Mulk Asad Khán and other nobles and officers offered their condolences. An inspection was made of the amount of treasure, jewels, artillery, and effects. What was capable of being removed was separated and placed under the charge of vigilant officers, to provide the means of carriage and the supplies necessary for a journey. Hindí and Persian astrologers fixed on the 10th Zí-l hijja¹ as the day for ascending the throne.

Prince Bedár Bakht, who had been left at Ahmadábád in

¹ 1118 Hijra, 5th March, 1707.

and honours of royalty to Bījápúr, and the drums of the royal *naubat-khána* were ordered to play as he departed. The sight of all this made Prince A'zam writhe like a poisonous serpent, but he could not say a word. In two or three days he also received orders to proceed to Málwá in charge of strict officers.

After the departure of the two Princes, the Emperor grew much worse, and fever increased. But for the next four or five days, notwithstanding the severity of the disease, he attended carefully to the regular prayers. In this state of things Hámidu-d dín Khán presented a letter containing the advice of astrologers, recommending the giving away of an elephant and of a valuable diamond in charity. To that the Emperor wrote in reply that the giving away of an elephant was the practice of the Hindús and of star-worshippers; but he sent four thousand rupees to the chief *kázi*, for him to distribute among the deserving. On the same letter he wrote, saying, "Carry this creature of dust quickly to the first (burial) place, and consign him to the earth without any useless coffin." It is said that he wrote a will dividing his kingdom among his sons, and entrusted it to Hámidu-d dín Khán.

On Friday, the 28th Zí-l ka'da, in the fifty-first year of the reign, corresponding with 1118 A.H. (Feb. 21, 1707 A.D.), after performing morning prayers and repeating the creed, at about one watch of the day, the Emperor departed this life. He was ninety years and some months old, and had reigned fifty years two months and a half. He was buried near Daulatábád by the tombs of Shaikh Burhán-u-d dín and other religious worthies, and of Sháh Zari Zar-bakhsh, and some districts of Burhánpúr were assigned for the maintenance of his tomb.

Of all the sovereigns of the House of Tímúr—nay, of all the sovereigns of Dehlí—no one, since Sikandar Lodí, has ever been apparently so distinguished for devotion, austerity, and justice. In courage, long-suffering, and sound judgment, he was unrivalled. But from reverence for the injunctions of the Law he did not make use of punishment, and without punishment the

will now fall into anarchy. People did not know the value of the Emperor. I only hope that Heaven will direct matters as I wish, and that the Empire will be given to my father."

Ibráhím Khán afterwards was in doubt as to what Prince's name was to be recited in the *khutba* on the day of the 'Tdu-zuha, and it was decided that after the rising of the sun, and before the news of Aurangzeb's death was spread abroad, the *khutba* should be read in Aurangzeb's name in the 'Tdgáh. Ibráhím Khán ranged himself among the partisans of A'zam Sháh, and he resolved that if, as he expected, instructions should come for him to accompany Prince Bedár Bakht, he would assemble his forces and would hasten with the Prince to Ágra. In fact, if Muhammad A'zam Sháh had not been mistrustful¹ and forbidden it, he (Ibráhím Khán) would have helped Prince Bedár Bakht on his way.² Mukhtár Khán, father-in-law of Bedár Bakht, was *Súbadár* of Ágra. He had nine *krors* of rupees, besides *ashrafis* and presentation money (*rúpiya-i gharib nawáz*), amounting to as much as five hundred *tolas* in weight; and he had uncoined gold and silver in the shape of vessels. Báki Khán, the commander of the fortress, who had the treasure in his charge, designed to surrender the treasure and the keys of the fortress to whichever of the heirs of the kingdom should present himself. (Ibráhím Khán's plan) was the right and advisable course to pursue; but what God had ordained came to pass.

Prince Kám Bakhsh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 569.] A few words now about Prince Kám Bakhsh. After leaving his venerable father, he went to the fort of Parenda, forty or fifty *kos* distant. There he received the sad

¹ "The insinuations of envious people had turned the mind of A'zam Sháh against Bedár Bakht, and a *farmán* was sent desiring him to go from Ahmadábád to Málwá, and to wait at Ujjain for further instructions. The same ill-feeling also prompted the refusal of permission for him to go to Ágra."—*Tazkira-i Chaghatái*.

² This is a somewhat doubtful sentence.

charge of his government, arrived. Ibráhím Khán *Súbadar* also thought of coming, but an order was issued for his going to the frontier of Málwá, there to await further orders. He was directed not to be precipitate, but to await the arrival of the new monarch. The author of this work was at that time in the company of Muhammad Murád Khán, who was *Wáki'-nigár* and *Sawánih-nigár* of all the province of Ahmadábád, and was *faujdar* of the *sarkár* of Thánesür and Kúdra. On the 9th Zí-l hijja Murád Khán received a robe, on taking leave of Prince Bedár Bakht, and went home. Just then some servants of Ibráhím Khán *Názim* came to summon him. When he waited on Ibráhím Khán, and the latter became aware of his having received a robe from Bedár Bakht, he asked if the Prince had received any intelligence from his father, and in what condition the Prince was. Murád Khán replied that he did not know of any fresh news, and the Prince's health appeared to be as usual. Ibráhím Khán then placed in the hands of Murád Khán a letter, which he had received at Ahmadábád on the 10th from his *vakil* at Ahmadnagar, informing him of the sad event which had occurred, and said, "You must this very moment go to the Prince with the letter and offer our condolence."

Murád Khán went home, changed his robe, and went to wait upon the Prince. He found that the Prince was asleep; but considering the pressing nature of his mission, he told the eunuch on duty that he must awake the Prince as cautiously as he could. As soon as the Prince was aroused, he was told that Murád Khán was anxious to see him, and had caused him to be awake. The Prince had received information of the Emperor's illness, and he asked if Murád Khán still wore the robe which had been presented to him, and the eunuch replied that he was dressed in a fresh robe of white. The Prince's eyes filled with tears, and he sent for Murád Khán into a private room. The Khán placed in his hand the letter which had arrived, and offered his own and Ibráhím Khán's condolences. After that the Prince said to Murád Khán, "You know full well that the realm of Hindústán

days, when it surrendered, through the mediation of Ahsan Khán. An officer was placed in command, and the army marched on to further conquests. There was a great rivalry between Takarrub Khán and Ahsan Khán. The former removed Saiyid Ja'far from the command of Kulbarga, and appointed another person to the charge. When Kám Bakhsh returned to Kulbarga, he restored Saiyid Ja'far. * * After pacifying Ahsan Khán, the Prince sent him to lay siege to Karnúl, and directed his youngest son to accompany him as a check (*tora*). The commandant was unwilling to surrender, and, after some negotiations and siege work, he presented three *lacs* of rupees to Ahsan Khán for the use of the government, and so induced him to move away. * *

Prince A'zam Sháh.

[vol. ii. p. 571.] On the 10th Zi-l hijja A'zam Sháh, having ascended the throne, made his accession public in the Dakhin by coins struck in the name of A'zam Sháh. Having gratified the old nobles of the State with robes and jewels, augmentations of *mansabs* and promises, he set off, about the middle of Zi-l hijja, to encounter Sháh 'Álam, accompanied by *Jamdatu-l Mulk Amru-l umarú* Asad Khán, Zú-l fikár Khán Bahádur *Nusrat Jang* and [many other nobles]. He marched to *Khujista-bunyád* (Aurangábád), * * and from thence arrived at Burhánpúr. After leaving that place, he was abandoned by Muhammad Amin Khán, and Chín Kalich Khán, who had received the title of *Khán-daurán*. They were offended by the treatment they received from A'zam Sháh, and went off to Aurangábád, where they took possession of several districts.

Sháh 'Álam (Bahádur Sháh).

[vol. ii. p. 573.] An account must now be given of the proceedings of Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh. The late Emperor had appointed Mun'im Khán, a very able man of business, to

news of his father's decease. Muhammad Amín Khán, with a number of persons, went off to wait upon A'zam Sháh, without the leave or knowledge of Kám Bakhsh. Great division and contention arose in his army in consequence of this defection. Ahsan Khán, otherwise called Mír Sultán Hasan, supported by the sympathy and good feeling of many who remained, exerted himself and set off with the intention of taking possession of the fort of Bījápúr. On arriving near the place, he sent a kind and flattering message to Niyáz Khán, the commandant, to induce him to deliver up the fortress. Niyáz Khán refused, and set about putting the fortifications in order. Intrenchments were then thrown up opposite the gate. Rumours of the death of Aurangzeb had been floating in the air before the arrival of Kám Bakhsh, and were now confirmed. Negotiations were opened, and through the exertions and skilful management of Ahsan Khán, the keys of the fortress were given up by Saiyid Niyáz Khán, who waited on the Prince and made submission. At the end of two months the city and environs were brought into a state of order. Ahsan Khán was made *bakhshí*, and the portfolio of *wasír* was given to Hakím Muhsin, with the title Takarrub Khán. * * Other adherents were rewarded with jewels and titles. The Prince then assumed the throne. He was mentioned in the *khutba* under the title of *Din-pandh* (Asylum of the Faith), and coins also were issued with this title.

Prince Kám Bakhsh then assembled some seven or eight thousand horse, and marched to subdue the fort of Wákinkera. After a march or two, Saiyid Niyáz Khán left his tent standing, and fled in the night to Muhammad A'zam Khán. On reaching Kulbarga, the Prince took possession of the fort, and, on the recommendation of Ahsan Khán, placed it under the command of Saiyid Ja'far, one of the Saiyids of Bárha. He then marched on to Wákinkera, which, since the death of Aurangzeb, had again fallen into the hands of Paryá Náik. On arriving there, lines were formed, and the siege commenced under the direction of Ahsan Khán. Paryá Náik defended the place for fifteen or twenty

offerings and paid their homage. * * Directions were given that the new rupee should be increased half a *māshá* in weight, and *laes* were accordingly coined of that weight; but as in the payment of *tankhráh*, and in commercial transactions, it was received at only the old rate, the new rule was discontinued.

Prince Muhammad Mu'izzu-d dín and his son A'azzu-d dín now arrived. [*Great distribution of honours and mansabs.*] A letter was received from Prince Muhammad 'Azím, stating that * * he had raised more than twenty thousand horse, and was hastening to reach Ágra before Prince Bedár Bakht. News also arrived that Ágra had been secured, that Mukhtár Khán had been placed in confinement, and that Báki Khán, the commandant of the fort, put off surrendering the treasure with the excuse that he would wait till His Majesty arrived. Spies and news-writers reported that Báki Khán had written with great humility to Prince Muhammad A'zam, that although the fort and the treasures belonged to both the heirs to the crown, he would surrender them to whichever arrived first. There was not a single person who doubted that, comparing the distance of Pesháwar with the difficulties in the way of A'zam Sháh, Sháh 'Álam would arrive before him.

On Sháh 'Álam arriving at Delhi, * * the commandant sent the keys of the fortress with his offering, and many others made their allegiance. At the beginning of Rabí'u-l awwal he started for Ágra, and reached the environs of that city about the middle of the month, where he was met by his son, Muhammad 'Azím, and by Muhammad Karím, the son of Prince 'Azím. Báki Khán gave up the keys of the fortress, with the treasure, for which he received great favour and rewards. According to one account, there were nine *krors* of rupees, in rupees and *ashrafis*, besides vessels of gold and silver, which was what was left remaining of the twenty-four *krors* of rupees amassed by Sháh Jahán, after what had been expended by Aurangzeb during his reign; principally in his wars in the Dakhin. According to another account, including the presentation money, which con-

the management of Kábul. He had shown great devotion and fidelity to Sháh 'Álam, so that the Prince placed in his hands the management of his *jágrs* in the province of Láhore, and had recommended him for the *dicant* of the province to the Emperor, who appointed him to that office. When Mun'im Khán received intelligence of the continued illness of the Emperor, in his faithfulness to Sháh 'Álam, he busied himself in making preparations in the countries lying between Láhore and Pesháwar, finding means of transport, collecting camels and bullocks, and providing things necessary for carrying on a campaign, so as to be ready at the time of need.

On the 7th Zí-l hijja the news of Aurangzeb's death reached Pesháwar, and the Prince immediately prepared to set out. Next day a letter came from Mun'im Khán, offering congratulations upon the Prince's accession to royalty, and urging him to come quickly. Orders were given for the march, and next day the Prince started, making no delay, accompanied by his nobles, except Fathu-llah Khán, a man of great bravery lately appointed to Kábul, who declined to accompany him. Orders were given that Ján-nisár Khán, who was only second in courage to Fathu-llah Khán, should go with five or six thousand horse to the neighbourhood of Ágra, to join Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán. Orders also were sent calling Prince Mu'izzu-d dín from his government of Thatta, and A'azzu-d dín from Multán, where he was acting as the deputy of his father. Other presumed adherents were also sent for.

Sháh 'Álam proceeded by regular marches to Láhore. Mun'im Khán came forth to meet him, paid his homage, offered forty *laes* of rupees, and presented the soldiers, artillery and equipments that he had busied himself in collecting directly he had heard of the death of Aurangzeb. Sháh 'Álam appointed him *wasir*. At the end of Muharram, 1119 (April, 1707), the Prince encamped at Láhore. There he remained over the new moon of Safar, and gave orders for the coining of money and reading the *khutba* in his name. The nobles in his retinue presented their

Release of Sâhû.

[vol. II. p. 582.] Zâd fikâr Khân *Nurât Jang* was very intimate with Sâhû, grandson of Sivaji, and had long been interested in his affairs. He now persuaded A'zam Shâh to set this Sâhû at liberty, along with several persons who were his friends and companions. Sâhû, with fifty or sixty men, who were able to accompany him, went off to Mohan Singh, a noted rebellious *rajdâr*, in the difficult mountain country of Bijagarh, Sultânpûr, and Nandurîâr. He supplied Sâhû with some necessary equipments, and Sâhû then went on to a Mahratta named Ambû, but more famous under the name of Pând, who was an active rebel. This man held the fort of Kokarmanda¹ in Sultânpûr, and ravaged the whole country from Surat to Burhânpûr. He furnished Sâhû with a body of men, and sent him to his native country and to the lofty fortresses, of which several that had been reduced by Aurangzeb had again fallen into the hands of the rebels during the days of contention for the Empire. Many Mahratta *sardârs*, who through necessity had deceitfully joined themselves to the party of Râni Târâ Bâi, widow of Râm Râja, now came and joined Râja Sâhû.

Having collected a large army, Sâhû proceeded to the neighbourhood of Ahmadnagar, and then, according to a report at the time, he put off his journey, and went to the place where Aurangzeb died. He paid a mourning visit to the place, and distributed money and food to the poor. Then, with his large army, which numbered nearly 20,000 Mahratta horse, he marched with the intention of showing his respect to the tomb of Aurangzeb, near Daulatâbâd, at a place now called Khuldâbâd.² When

¹ On the north bank of the Tâptî.

² Aurangzeb had treated Sâhû, his boy prisoner, with great familiarity and kindness. It was he who gave the child the name of Sâhû, which he afterwards preferred and retained. Aurangzeb was called "Khuld-makân," hence the name Khuldâbâd.

sisted of *ashrafis* and rupees of 100 to 300 *tolas* weight, specially coined for presents,¹ and the *ashrafis* of twelve *máshás* and thirteen *máshás* of the reign of Akbar, the whole amounted to thirteen *krors*. An order was given for bringing out directly four *krors* of rupees. Three *lacs* were to be given to each of the royal Princes, altogether nine *lacs*, three *lacs* to Khán-zamán and his sons, one *lac* to the Saiyids of Bárha, one *lac* to Aghar Khán and his Mughals. In the same way the officers in his retinue, and the old servants, soldiers, [and others, received gratuitous additions of pay and donations]. Altogether two *krors* were distributed. * *

March of Prince A'zam.

[vol. ii. p. 581.] Prince A'zam Sháh, with his artillery, and a force of nearly thirty-five thousand horse actually present (*maujúdi*), which according to military reckoning means an army of more than eighty or ninety thousand men, and with his *amirs* and adherents, marched forth for war. * * He endeavoured, by augmentations of *mansabs* and promotions in rank, to secure the good will of the nobles; but in providing for advances and pay to the army, and in giving assistance and presents of money, he, through want of treasure, was very sparing. If any of his most attached nobles spoke to him on this subject, he, in his proud and haughty way, gave sharp answers that there was no real necessity in his army, but fear of the opposite party.² In fact, he had not money to be liberal with; but his bitter words, and the ill temper which he occasionally showed, pained and disgusted many of his followers. After he departed from Burhánpúr, Chín Kalich Khán, who had been created *Khán-daurán*, went off with several noted men and returned to Aurangábád. Muhammad Amín also, with many Mughals, plundered the *banjáras* of the army, and fell back to Aurangábád. When the Prince was told

¹ See Thomas's "Chronicles of the Pathán Kings," p. 423.

² *The Tazkira-i Chaghatai* adds that the army suffered greatly on the march from the heat of the weather and want of water.

A'zam Sháh also prepared for battle, and, without heeding the superior force of his brother, or settling any plan of action, went boldly forward like a fierce lion dashes upon a flock of sheep. * * His leading forces made a sudden attack upon the most advanced camp of Sháh 'Álam. The officers and men in charge resisted for a time, and killed some of the assailants,

¹ Irádat Khán says that Bahádur Sháh proposed an equal division of the Empire. — *Scott's History of the Decan*, vol. ii. p. 19.

² The Prince has reversed the order of the clauses of this proverb from the *Gulistán*.

³ About half way on the road from Ágra to Dholpúr.

his advance party approached Aurangábád, although Sháhú and his brothers in his company had no intention of ravaging, the old habit prevailed, and some of his men began plundering in the vicinity of Aurangábád. Mansúr Khán and the other officers in the city bestirred themselves, put the fortifications in order, and endeavoured to repress these outrages. Rájá Sháhú also forbade his men to plunder, and after visiting the tombs of the great men, and of Aurangzeb, he went his way to his forts.

Defeat and Death of A'zam Sháh.

[vol. ii. p. 583.] A'zam Sháh passed the Nerbadda, and arrived at Gwálior. There he heard of the arrival at Ágra of Sháh 'Álam, and of Prince 'Azím, with his powerful army. * * He left *Amíru-l umará* Asad Khán at Gwálior with the ladies and unnecessary equipments and jewels and treasure, * * and having distributed a little money among the soldiers, he sent Prince Bedár Bakht forward in command of the advanced guard, and he sent with him Zú-l fikár Khán and [*many others*], * * and the march to Ágra began, his force amounting to nearly twenty-five thousand horse. It is said that although he had collected an army of nearly fifty thousand horse, want of money had stinted the pay of the men; and they having heard of the profuse liberality of the opposing party, many men of name and reputation parted from him and went over to Prince Muhammad 'Azím and Sháh 'Álam.

It is related that when intelligence of Prince A'zam's arrival at Gwálior reached Sháh 'Álam, he wrote him a letter of expostulation, rehearsing the particulars of the will written by their father with his own hand respecting the division of the kingdom, and said, "Of all the six *súbas* of the Dakhin, I will surrender to you four *súbas*, as well as the *súba* of Ahmadábád, and besides these I will present you with one or two other *súbas*, for I do not wish that the blood of Musulmán's should be shed. * * You ought therefore to be content with the will of your father, accept

balls from his side, being-resisted by the contrary wind, failed to reach the ranks of the enemy, and fell upon the ground. It is said that Tarbiyat Khán twice discharged a musket from the army of A'zam Sháh against Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán. Both shots failed; but a musket-ball from the other side reached the Khán's breast, and at the same moment an arrow pierced him and he died.

Matters now looked ill in every way for A'zam Sháh. * * On the side of Sháh 'Álam fourteen or fifteen nobles of distinction were killed, * * and a great number on the side of A'zam Sháh were slain. Zú-l fikár Khán received a slight wound upon the lip. When he saw that the day was lost, that many of his valiant companions in arms were slain, and that A'zam Sháh's army was pressed so hard that there was no hope of deliverance, he went to the Prince and said, "Your ancestors have had to endure the same kind of reverse, and have been deprived of their armies; but they did not refuse to do what the necessities of the case required. The best course for you now is to leave the field of battle, and to remove to a distance, when fortune may perhaps assist you, and you may retrieve your reverse." A'zam Sháh flew into a rage, and said, "Go with your bravery, and save your life wherever you can; it is impossible for me to leave this field: for princes there is (only the choice of) a throne or a bier" (*takht yá takhta*). Zú-l fikár Khán, accompanied by Hámidu-d dín Khán, then went off to Gwálior.

The ill-fated Prince now found himself left with only two or three hundred horsemen among thousands of enemies, and amid a rain of arrows and balls. In this extremity he exclaimed, "It is not Sháh 'Álam who fights against me; God has abandoned me, and fortune has turned against me." He had an infant son with him in his *howda*, whom he endeavoured to shield from the balls and arrows. That brave young Prince desired to show the valour of his race, but his father forbade him, and tried still more to protect him. Two or three drivers fell wounded from the elephant, and the animal itself was pierced with many wounds,

but were put to flight. All their baggage was plundered, their camp was set on fire, and the commander of the artillery was made prisoner, and carried before Prince A'zam Sháh. The Prince asked him who he was. He said, "I was commander of the artillery; I am a Saiyid." The Prince ordered his release. Prince Muhammad 'Azím, who had ridden forward rashly to explore, got intelligence of what was passing, and with a strong force hastened into action, and fell upon the advanced forces of A'zam Sháh.

The check which had been received caused great discouragement to the forces of Sháh 'Álam. Zú-l fikár Khán and other nobles in attendance upon A'zam Sháh advised him that he should proclaim the success he had achieved, order his camp to be pitched upon the spot, and to put off the general action to the morrow, because the victory that had been gained and the superior prowess of his men would strike terror into the enemy's army, and bring over many of the leading men from his opponent's ranks. Many also of the half-hearted would certainly desert, and the probability was that Sháh 'Álam would be so much discouraged that he would retreat. A'zam Sháh got angry, and said with warmth and bitterness, "This is the counsel of women." In short, although a great portion of A'zam Sháh's army was busy in destroying and plundering, strict and precise orders were issued to the leading forces, and on the 18th Rabí'u-l'awwal, 1119 A.H. (10th June, 1707 A.D.), the two armies joined battle at Jájú, seven or eight kos from Ágra. [*Long details of the action.*]

Prince Bedár Bakht, after rendering splendid service, which shed a halo round him, was killed by a cannon-ball, and many of his followers also fell. * * His younger brother Wálájáh was killed by a ball from a *sambúrak*. * * A strong wind arose, which blew straight from the side of Sháh 'Álam against the army of A'zam Sháh, so that every arrow, with the help of the wind of fate, reached the army of A'zam Sháh, and pierced through armour; * * but the rockets and the arrows and the

received two *krors* of *dāms* as *in'ām*, and he was confirmed in the office of *wazir*. Of the ten *lacs* of rupees which he offered as *peshka-l*, one was accepted. Na'im Khān, his eldest son, received the title of Khān-zamān Bahādur, with an increase to 5000 and 5000 horse, and a robe of the third rank. The younger son was entitled Khāna-zād Khān Bahādur, and his *manab* was

and became impatient. Death was threatening, and A'zam Sháh felt that his foot was in the stirrup for his last journey; but he bravely got out of the *howda*, and endeavoured to control the elephant and drive him forward, but he was unable. The sun of his life was near its setting—an arrow struck him in the forehead and ended his existence. Rustam 'Alí Khán, who had got near to the elephant, hearing what had happened, mounted the animal, and cut off the head of the Prince with his pitiless sword. He carried it to the army of Sháh 'Álam, and the shouts of victory rose high. * * When Sháh 'Álam saw the gory head of his brother, he looked fiercely at that dog Rustam 'Alí Khán, and burst into tears.

All the four Princes, Khán-khánán and his sons, and the other *amirs*, came to congratulate the victor. The jewels and *ashrafis* which were in the *howda* of A'zam Sháh were plundered; all else, tents, elephants, guns and equipments were secured. Sháh 'Álam caused a small tent to be pitched, in which he offered up his thanks for the victory. He then had the sons of A'zam Sháh brought to his presence, the eldest son and the Princes Bedár-dil and Sa'id-bakht. He received them most kindly, embraced them, and stroked their heads with paternal gentleness. He promised them safety and every attention and care, and he did his best to console and comfort the ladies. He embraced Khán-khánán, and avowed that all the success was owing to his exertions and devotion. Lastly, he ordered the corpses of A'zam Sháh, Bedár Bakht, and his brother, to be properly tended, and to be carried for interment near the tomb of the Emperor Humáyún.

Next day Sháh 'Álam went to visit Khán-khánán, and raised him to the highest rank, with the title of *Khán-khánán Bahádur Zafar Jang* and *Yár-i wafádár* (faithful friend). He presented him with a *kror* of rupees in cash and goods, a larger bounty than had ever been bestowed on any individual since the rise of the House of Tímúr. His *mansab* was increased to 7000 and 7000 horse, five thousand being *do-aspas* and *sih-aspas*. He also

tegrity and impartiality, and he exerted himself so earnestly in the performance of his work, that when he took his seat, he appointed officers to see that no petitions or letters of the day before remained unnoticed. One of the most acceptable and beneficial of the measures of Khán-khánán was the relief he afforded in that oppressive grievance, the feed of the cattle of the *mansabdárs*. To explain this matter briefly, it may be said that in the late reign the *ákhta-begís* and other rapacious officials had so contrived that the responsibility of providing food for the cattle had been fixed on the *mansabdárs*. Notwithstanding the *mansabdárs*, through the smallness of their surplus rents, had been for a long time in want of a loaf for supper,¹ (the officials), after great perseverance and pressure, got something out of the small total of (each) *jágir*. Although a *jágir* might be lying waste, and its total income would not suffice for a half or a third of the expense of the animals, and leave a little to supply the necessaries of life to the holder's wife and family, the officials imprisoned his *rakíls*, and with violence and insult demanded contributions for the food of the cattle. The *rakíls* complained of this tyranny to the Emperor, but the *dárogha* of the elephant stables and the *ákhta-begí* made protestations which satisfied His Majesty, so that the complaints met with no redress. This oppression reached such a height that the *rakíls* resigned their offices. In the present reign Khán-khánán made an arrangement by which *tankhwáh* (cash) was to be given to the *mansabdárs* of *jágirs*. Money sufficient for the keep of the animals being deducted from the total rent (of the *jágirs*), the balance remaining was to be paid in cash. By these means the grievance of the animal's keep was entirely removed from the *mansabdárs* and the *rakíls*. Indeed it may be said that an order was given remitting the contributions for the food of the animals.²

¹ Here comes a parenthetical sentence :

که پادشاه خود دستخط یکت انار و صد بیمار نموده بودند

which means th. "the Emperor (on some representation about this matter) had written (the proverb): 'There is (but) one pomegranate and a hundred sick men (requiring it).'"—Roebuck's Proverbs, No. 2211.

² Parts of this passage are involved and the meaning is not always clear.

the appointment and removal of *wazirs* and other officials used to be in this grandee's hands. He was also presented with four stallions, five horses with accoutrements, etc., etc., and was allowed the privilege of having his drums beaten in the royal presence. Some envious spirits privately observed that the *Amiru-l umará* had been the close friend and trusted adviser of A'zam Sháh; but the Emperor answered that if his own sons had been in the Dakhin, the exigencies of the position would have compelled them to join their uncle. Zú-l fikár Khán's *mansab* was increased to 7000 and 7000 horse. He received the title of *Samsámu-d daula Amiru-l Bahádur Nusrat Jang*, and was reinstated in his office of *Mír-bakhshi*. [Other promotions and rewards.] In short, all the adherents, great and small, of the King and Princes, received *lacs* of rupees in *in'am*, fourfold and sixfold augmentations of their *mansabs*, and presents of jewels and elephants.

Although the office of *wazir* had been given to Khán-khánán, it was deemed expedient, in order to conciliate Asad Khán *Amiru-l umará* and Zú-l fikár Khán, to elevate Asad Khán to the position of *wazir*. To outward appearance he was raised to this dignity; but whenever any ministerial business of importance arose, Khán-khánán did not communicate it to Ásafu-d daula. On the day that Ásafu-d daula acted as *diwán*, it became incumbent upon Khán-khánán to wait upon him as other ministers did, and to obtain his signature to documents; but this was disagreeable to him. Ásafu-d daula was desirous of rest, for his continual activity during the reign of Aurangzeb had allowed him little enjoyment of life. So it was arranged that Samsámu-d daula should act as deputy for his father in the office of minister, and that his father should take charge of Nawáb Pádsháh Begam, and repair to the capital to pass his old age in comfort. With the exception that the seal of Ásafu-d daula was placed upon revenue and civil *parwānas* and *sanads*, he had no part in the administration of the government.

An order was issued that the late Emperor Aurangzeb should be styled *Khuld-makán*.

Khán-khánán discharged his duties as *wazir* with repute, in-

warmly supported and assisted the army of the Ráná of Uḍipúr, and was closely allied with Rájá Jai Singh, whose son-in-law he was. He had carried his disaffection so far that he had not attended at Court since the accession. On the 8th Sha'bán the Emperor marched to punish this rebel and his tribe, by way of Ámber, the native land of Jai Singh, between Ajmir and Chitor. * *

Ajit Singh and his allied Rájás knew that submission and obedience alone could save them and their families and property; so he addressed himself to Khán-ḡhánán and his son Khán-zamán, expressing his sorrow, humility, and obedience; and he sent a message humbly asking that Khán-zamán and the *Házin-i Kuzál* might come into Jodpúr, to rebuild the mosques, destroy the idol-temples, enforce the provisions of the law about the summons to prayer and the killing of cows, to appoint magistrates and to commission officers to collect the *jizya*. His submission was graciously accepted, and his requests granted.¹ Officers of justice, *kázis*, *mufftis*, *imáms*, and *muazzins* (criers to prayer) were appointed in Jodpúr and other towns in the country. Ajit Singh and Jai Singh, with the concurrence of Durgá Dás, who was the very soul of the opposition, came to Court in hope of receiving pardon for their offences, and each was honoured with the gift of a robe, elephant, etc.

SECOND YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1119 A.H. (1707-8 A.D.).

Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 608.] A kind and admonitory letter was addressed by the Emperor to his brother Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh to the following effect: "Our father entrusted you with the government of the *súba* of Bijápúr; we now relinquish to you the government of the two *súbas* of Bijápúr and Haidar-

¹ The *Tazkira-i Chaghatái* adds that Amar Singh, Ráná of Uḍipúr, sent a present of jewels (in token of submission).

Khán-khánán had a strong partiality for Súfí-ism, and had a knowledge of science. He wrote a book called *Al Hámiya*, upon the spiritual life and Súfí mysticism, which in the opinion of controversialists passes beyond the bounds of the Law upon some points.

Orders were given that in the coinage of rupees and *ashrafis* no verse should be used, but that the name "Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh" and the name of the (mint) city should be impressed in prose. It was also ordered that in the *khutba* the name "Sháh 'Álam" should be embellished by the title "Saiyid." It appears from history that from the rise of the House of Tímúr—nay, even from the foundation of the Ghorí dynasty—no one of the monarchs had ever used the title of Saiyid in the *khutba*, or in his pedigree, with the exception of Khizr Khán. He (Khizr Khán) was by origin and by the names of his ancestors an Afghán, as is apparent by the title Malik; but after he came to the throne of Dehlí, the historians of his reign, upon very weak proofs, applied to him in a loose way the title of Saiyid.

Ajit Singh and other Rájputs.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 605.] Towards the end of the year 1119 the Emperor marched from Ágra, with the intention of chastising the *Rájputs* in the vicinity of U'dípúr and Jodpúr. From the reports of the news-writers of the province of Ajmír, and the *parganas* around Jodpúr, the following matters became known to His Majesty. Rája Ajit Singh, who was called the son of Rája Jaswant, had been brought up by the wiles of Durgá Dás, and other evil-disposed infidels, as the son of the deceased Rája.¹ He had cast off his allegiance to the late Emperor, and done many improper things. After the death of Aurangzeb he again showed his disobedience and rebellion by oppressing Musulmáns, forbidding the killing of cows, preventing the summons to prayer, razing the mosques which had been built after the destruction of the idol-temples in the late reign, and repairing and building anew idol-temples. Ho

¹ See *supra*, p. 206.

and repeatedly urged Khán-khánán to attack. Kám Bakhsh, with a heart full of fear and hope, stood firm, expecting the onslaught. At length Zú-l fikár Khán, awaiting no longer the consent of the Emperor or the co-operation of Khán-khánán, advanced to the attack. This movement compelled Khán-khánán to advance also with his fourteen or fifteen thousand horse. * * Two or three of the companions of Kám Bakhsh were killed or wounded, but he stood firm, fighting desperately. He received three or four wounds, but he used his bow so well in the face of three thousand foes, that a terror fell upon them, and they were near upon taking flight. He emptied two quivers and wounded and brought many men down; but loss of blood from his many wounds prevailed; he lost his strength, and the enemy surrounded his elephant and made him prisoner. His youngest son, who was on the same elephant, was also made prisoner after receiving four or five severe wounds. Muhín-s Sunnat, the eldest son, fought bravely. The drivers and others on his elephant fell wounded one after the other. He then drove the animal himself, but fell in the *horda* wounded with balls and arrows. * * The elephant ran off into the country, but was caught by a party of Mahrattas, and the Prince became a prisoner. * * All the men of Kám Bakhsh who fought near his elephant were killed, and were found to be sixty-two in number. * *

Kám Bakhsh and his two sons, all desperately wounded, were taken to Khuld-manzil, and placed near the royal tent. European and Greek surgeons were appointed to attend them. Kám Bakhsh rejected all treatment, and refused to take the broth prepared for his food. In the evening the King went to see his brother. He sat down by his side, and took the cloak from his own back, and covered him who lay dejected and despairing, fallen from throne and fortune. He showed him the greatest kindness, asked him about his state, and said, "I never wished to see you in this condition." Kám Bakhsh replied, "Neither did I wish that one of the race of Tímúr should be made prisoner with the imputation of cowardice and want of spirit." The King

abád, with all their subjects and belongings, upon the condition, according to the old rule of the Dakhin, that the coins shall be struck and the *khutba* read in our name. The tribute which has hitherto been paid by the governors of these two provinces we remit." * *

A few words shall now be written about Prince Muhammad Kám Bakhsh and his proceedings. [*Cruel punishments and execution of Ahsan Khán and others.*] In answer to the kind letter which Kám Bakhsh received from his brother Bahádur Sháh, he wrote a provoking reply.¹ Kám Bakhsh arrived at Burhánpúr at the beginning of Jumáda-l awwal, where he was detained some time by the swollen state of the Taptí. * * Marching from thence by way of Malkápúr and Nander, he had got within two or three marches of Haidarábád at the end of Shawwál. His whole army had dwindled away through his violent bloodthirsty madness; five or six hundred horse were all that remained with him, and they were sorely distressed by harsh treatment, hunger, and sight of bloodshed. Bahádur Sháh had with him nearly 8000 horse. * * Kám Bakhsh advanced until he was only two or three *kos* from Haidarábád. His small force now consisted only of * * a few bold companions who would not leave him and three or four hundred horse. * * The orders given to Bahádur Sháh's commanders were that they were not to bring on a fight, but to surround Kám Bakhsh so that he should not be killed, and the blood of Musulmán's should not be spilt. * * Khán-khánán and Zú-l fikár Khán, with their respective forces, were about a cannon-shot distant from the enemy, expecting the order to attack. As they had been ordered not to begin the battle, they waited until noon, but sent repeated messages to the Emperor for leave to begin. They were told that he was taking his usual nap. Whether it were so, or whether this evasion was connived at, the generals received no reply.

Zú-l fikár Khán had an old-standing aversion to Kám Bakhsh,

¹ The *Tazkira-i Chaghatái* gives both letters at length.

Dakhin, in accordance with the arrangement which obtained under the Fárúkí-dynasty and under the Emperor Akbar; and he had included these among the *súbas* dependent on Dehlí, which by universal accord is the capital (*asl*) of Hindústán. He was desirous that the civil and revenue affairs (of these *súbas*) and the appointment and dismissal of officers should be under the direction of his eldest son Mahábat Khán. This caused a disagreement between Zú-l fikár Khán and Mun'im Khán, for the *Bakhshí-ul Mulk* was not at all desirous that any one else should have any authority or control in the civil and revenue affairs of the Dakhin.

Tará Báí was widow of Rám Rája, that is, she was the widow of the uncle of Rája Sáhú, and Rám Rája left two sons by her of tender years. In the reign of the late Emperor Aurangzeb, after a warfare of ten years, she sued for peace, on condition of being allowed to levy nine rupees per cent. as *sar-deshmukhí*. As has been stated in the proper place, Aurangzeb declined for various reasons. Now, by the intervention of Jumlatu-l Mulk, she asked for a *farmán* in the name of her son, granting the nine rupees of the *sar-deshmukhí*, without any reference to the *chauth*,¹ for which he would suppress other insurgents and restore order in the country. Samsámu-d daulat Zú-l fikár Khán took

gave him two or three spoonfuls of broth with his own hands, and then departed with his eyes full of tears. Three or four watches afterwards, Kám Bakhsh and one of his sons named Fírozmand died.¹ Both corpses were sent to Dehlí, to be interred near the tomb of Humáyún.

Nímá Sindhiá. The Mahrattas.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 625.] Nímá Sindhiá had been one of the most renowned of all the "*Ná-sardárs*" (i.e. *Mahratta sardárs*), and one of the greatest leaders of the accursed armies of the Dakhin. His plundering and destructive raids had extended as far as the province of Málwá. Now, under the patronage and advice of Zú-l fikár Khán, he had turned the face of repentance to the Imperial throne, with the hope of forgiveness. He had taken part in the battle against Kám Bakhsh, and having thus won the Imperial favour, he and his sons and relations had received the honour of being presented to His Majesty. He received a *mansab* of 7000 and 5000 horse, two lacs of rupees, a robe, an elephant, a drum, etc. His sons and grandsons each received *mansabs* of 5000 and 4000—altogether 40,000 and 25,000 horse. * *

Rája Sáhú's *rakíl* was introduced by Zú-l fikár Khán Bahádúr Nusrat Jang, who was *Súbadár* of the whole Dakhin, and held as well the office of *Mír-bakhshí*. The *rakíl* presented an application for a *farmán* conferring on Sáhú the *sar-deshmukhi* and the *chauth* of the six *súbas* of the Dakhin, on condition of restoring prosperity to the ruined land. Jumlatu-l Mulk Mun'im Khán Khán-khánán had separated the *súba* of Burhánpúr and half the *súba* of Birár (which in the revenue records and in common language is called Birár Páyín-ghát) from the six *súbas* of the

¹ According to the *Tazkira-i Chaghatái*, the names of the three sons were Sultán Mubín-s Sunnat, Fírozmand, and Bárikullah, and it was the latter who died.

² The Text calls him "*Níbá*," but a variant reading (p. 621) gives "*Nímá*," and this agrees with Grant Duff, who calls him "*Neemajee Sindia*."

cruelly, burnt her limbs, and took from her all her money and jewels. He enlisted a lot of footmen, and having made himself a stronghold on the top of a little hill, he began to rob travellers and pillage the neighbourhood.

The *faujldárs* and *zamindárs* resolved to make him prisoner; but he got intelligence of their intention, and fled to Venkat Ráo, *Zamindár* of Kolás, and entered his service. After a little while he joined another man in the same service, and they began to plunder on their own account. Venkat Ráo seized them and kept them in rigorous confinement. But the Ráo's son fell ill, and his wife, as a means of saving her son's life, obtained the release of all the Ráo's prisoners. Páp Rái went to the village of Sháhpúr, in the *pargana* of Narganda, *sarkár* of Bhúngír,¹ and there joined another noted ruffian named Sarwá. He gathered round him a party of men, and raised a mud fort in a rocky position at Sháhpúr, which is a place of considerable strength. He then plundered all the country round. * *

The *faujldár* of *pargana* Kulpák, which is seven or eight *kos* from Sháhpúr, sent Kásim Khán Afghán with a suitable force to apprehend him. * * Páp Rái from time to time confronted this force, and, seizing his opportunity, attacked one of the villages of Kulpák; but Kásim Khán fell upon him, killed a number of his men, and put him to flight. He proceeded to another hill of refuge, and Kásim Khán, while following him, was killed by a musket-ball, and his force was then driven back. * * Another force besieged him and Sarwá in Sháhpúr for two months, but he escaped. The fort of Sháhpúr was then destroyed; but after the withdrawal of the forces, Páp Rái and Sarwá returned, and instead of the old mud fort, built a new one of stone and *chunam*, which they furnished with cannon and implements of war. * *

Páp Rái now extended his operations, and plundered all the country from fifteen to twenty *kos* round. * * He was attacked by Pur Dil Khán, who, after mortally wounding Sarwá, was him-

¹ Bhúngír lies upon a line drawn from Warangal to Haidarábád, and the other places named are north of that line.

Titles. Character of Bahádur Sháh.

[vol. ii. p. 627.] Since the rise of the House of Tímúr it had been the rule that one and the same title should not be given to two persons. * * But now the ugly practice arose of giving the same title to two or more persons, and in the same way the grants of *mansabs*, *naubat* and *nakára*, elephants, the *jigha* and *sar-pesh* were no longer regulated by the rank and dignity of the recipient.

For generosity, munificence, boundless good nature, extenuation of faults, and forgiveness of offences, very few monarchs have been found equal to Bahádur Sháh in the histories of past times, and especially in the race of Tímúr. But though he had no vice in his character, such complacency and such negligence were exhibited in the protection of the state and in the government and management of the country, that witty sarcastic people found the date of his accession in the words, *Sháh-i be-khabr*, "Heedless King." He often sat up all night, and used to sleep to the middle of the day; so in marching his people had to suffer great inconvenience; for many poor fellows were unable to find their tents in dark nights when the army and baggage were scattered about, and had to pass the night in front of the royal tent, or the drum room or offices or the *bázárs*.

The Freebooter Páp Rái.¹

[Text, vol. ii. p. 630.] The *Kázi* of Warangal and many of the chief men of that country came to Court with grievous complaints of a man named Páp Rái. This infamous man was by birth a toddy-seller. He had a sister, a widow possessing some property. He went to see her, and after four or five days' stay with her, he cast his eyes upon her money and effects. He got some fellows to join him. He then tortured his sister most

¹ The story of this man is told at great length, and a summary of it is here given, as an illustration of the condition of the Dakhín at this time.

THIRD YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1120 A.H. (1708-9 A.D.).

The Sikhs.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 651.] There is a sect of infidels called *Gurú*, more commonly known as *Sikhs*. Their chief, who dresses as a *fakir*, has a fixed residence near Láhore. From old times he has built temples in all the towns and populous places, and has appointed one of his followers to preside in each temple as his deputy. When any one of the sect brought presents or offerings for the *Gurú* to the temple, the deputy had to collect them, and, after deducting sufficient for his own food and expenses, his duty was to send the balance faithfully to the *Gurú*. This sect consists principally of *Játs* and *Khatris* of the Panjáb and of other tribes of infidels. When Aurangzeb got knowledge of these matters, he ordered these deputy *Gurús* to be removed and the temples to be pulled down.

At the time that Bahádur Sháh marched towards Haidarábád, Gobind, the chief *Gurú* of the sect, came to join him with two or three hundred horsemen bearing spears and some footmen. After two or three months, he died from the wounds of a dagger, and his murderer was not discovered. When the news of his death reached the Panjáb, where the bulk of the Sikhs were living, an obscure member of the sect, about the name¹ given to whom there are various statements, gave out that in the course of transmigration, which the Sikhs believe in and call *avatár*, he had taken the place of the murdered Gobind, who had come to life again as a bearded man in his body, for the purpose of taking revenge. This worthless dog, having published this statement, stirred up disaffection in the sect, and raised the standard of rebellion. By jugglery, charms, and sorcery, he pretended to perform miracles before credulous people, and gave himself the name of *Sachá Pádsháh* "True King."

He began to plunder in the Panjáb and the country about

¹ He is known by the name of "Banda."

self killed. * * Páp Rái increased his forces and materials of war, and now turned his efforts to the reduction of forts. Parties were frequently sent out against him, and he was besieged for two months in Sháhpúr, but without result. * * In Muharram, 1120, he attacked and plundered the flourishing town of Warangal, and killed from twelve to thirteen thousand men, women and children. * * He next attacked and was near upon capturing the fort of Bhúngír, sixteen *kos* from Haidarábád, and he plundered the town and *petta*, * * carrying off two or three thousand men and women as prisoners. * * Afterwards he built another fort near Táríkandá, four *kos* from Sháhpúr, which he furnished with all requirements and a strong garrison. * * *

His depredations were so great that the King was petitioned to march against him in person. * * Yúsuf Khán was appointed to the *súbadárí*, and was ordered to suppress this rebel. * * Before any force was sent against him, he laid siege to the town of Kulpák, eight *kos* from Sháhpúr. * * On a force coming up, he was driven with loss to Sháhpúr. * * During a short absence from Sháhpúr some of his prisoners broke loose and seized upon the fort, * * and he had to return and besiege it, but failed to take it, as a detachment came from Kulpák, and fought him. * * * He then fled to Táríkandá, * * whither he was pursued. * * * After a siege of nine months, many of his men were induced to desert, * * his provisions ran short, * * and the *petta* and part of the works were taken in repeated assaults. * * He again fled, and his absence did not become known for two days. He went alone to Hasanábád, a place which he had founded two stages from Táríkandá, where he was betrayed. He was wounded, captured, and executed. His head was sent to Court, and his limbs were exposed over the gate of Haidarábád.

Money and baggage, horses and elephants, fell into the hands of the infidels, and not a man of the army of Islām escaped with more than his life and the clothes he stood in. Horsemen and footmen in great numbers fell under the swords of the infidels, who pursued them as far as Sihrind.

Sihrind was an opulent town, with wealthy merchants, bankers, and tradesmen, men of money, and gentlemen of every class; and there were especially learned and religious men in great numbers residing there. No one found the opportunity of saving his life, or wealth, or family. When they heard of the death of Wazír Khán, and the rout of his army, they were seized with panic. They were shut up in the town, and for one or two days made some ineffectual resistance, but were obliged to bow to fate. The evil dogs fell to plundering, murdering, and making prisoners of the children and families of high and low, and carried on their atrocities for three or four days with such violence that they tore open the wombs of pregnant women, dashed every living child upon the ground, set fire to the houses, and involved rich and poor in one common ruin. Wherever they found a mosque, a tomb, or a gravestone of a respected Musulmán, they broke it to pieces, dug it up, and made no sin of scattering the bones of the dead. When they had done with the pillage of Sihrind, they appointed officers to collect the rents and taxes in all the dependent districts.

Sihhind, and in the course of three or four months he gathered round him four or five thousand pony (*yábú*) riders and seven or eight thousand motley footmen. His numbers daily increased, and much plunder fell into his hands, until he had eighteen or nineteen thousand men under arms, and carried on a predatory and cruel warfare. He fought with two or three *faujdar*s who went out to punish him, defeated them and killed them. In many villages which he plundered he appointed *thánádars* and *tahsildars* to collect the revenues of the neighbourhood for him, and matters came to such a pass that with three or four thousand infidels who were leagued with him, he wrote orders to the Imperial officials and the managers of the *jágirdars*, calling upon them to submit to him, and to relinquish their posts.

Wazír Khán, *Faujdar* of Sihhind, had held the charge of the civil and revenue affairs of that district for a long time. He had some troops and treasure, and had obtained a reputation by his firm management. When he heard how districts in his charge had been ravaged and plundered, he set about collecting troops and warlike equipments. He joined with him four or five *faujdar*s and *samindars* of name, prepared lead and gunpowder, mustered five or six thousand horse and seven or eight thousand musketeers (*barkandás*) and archers, and with these and some artillery and elephants he marched out to give battle and to punish that perverse sect. After marching three or four *kos*, he came up with the enemy.

The accursed wretches had got warning of the movement of Wazír Khán, and advanced to meet him. All his followers kept shouting "*Sachá Pádsháh*" and "*Fath daras.*" The battle began, and great bravery was shown on both sides, but especially by the confederate sectarians. They advanced sword in hand against the elephants, and brought two of them down. Many Musulmán's found martyrdom, and many of the infidels went to the sink of perdition. The Musulmán forces were hardly able to endure the repeated attacks of the infidels, when a musket-ball made a martyr of Wazír Khán, and they were put to flight.

noble and respectable families fell fighting bravely, and obtained the honour of martyrdom. The property and the families of numbers of the inhabitants fell into the hands of the enemy, and numerous women, seeing that their honour was at stake, and captivity before them, threw themselves into wells. A party of brave gentlemen collected their wives and families in one spot, and kept up such a manful resistance that they saved the lives, the property, and the honour of their families.

After a large booty of money, jewels, and goods of Sárangpúr had fallen into the hands of the enemy, they took measures to secure the surrounding country, and they sent severe orders to Jalál Khán, *Faujdár* of Jalálábád, who had founded the town and built the fort, and was famed for his boldness and valour throughout the country. When the letter of the accursed wretches reached him, he ordered the bearers to be exposed to derision and turned out of the place. He set his defences in order, collected materials of war, and did his best to protect the name and honour of those around him, and to get together a force sufficient to oppose the infidels. Intelligence was brought in that the enemy were only three or four *kos* distant, and they had attacked and surrounded two villages dependent on Jalálábád, the forts and houses of which were full of property belonging to merchants.

Jalál Khán sent out three or four hundred Afghán horse, and nearly a thousand musketeers and archers, under the command of Ghulám Muhammad Khán, his own grandson, and Hizbar Khán, to relieve the besieged places and drive off the infidels. Their arrival greatly encouraged the people who were assailed. Four or five hundred brave musketeers and bowmen and numbers of peasants, armed with all sorts of weapons, and with slings, came forward boldly to oppose the enemy, and the battle grew warm. Although the enemy fought with great courage and daring, and Hizbar Khán with a great many Musulmáns and peasants were killed, the repeated attacks of the Afgháns and other Musulmáns of name and station routed the

and provisions when they evacuated it, and of these the infidels took possession and stood firm in the fort. They were invested for some days ; but at night parties of them came out, and attacked the forces of Islám, killing men and horses. Both sides were in difficulty, but especially the enemy. They evacuated the fort at night and fled. Shams Khán pursued them for some *kos*, and took from them a gun and some baggage, camels and bullocks, with which he returned to Sultánpúr.

Next day about a thousand of the enemy attacked the garrison which Shams Khán had placed in Ráhún, drove them out and occupied it themselves. The enemy then proceeded to plunder the neighbourhood of Láhore, and great alarm was felt in that city and all around. Islám Khán, the Prince's *diwán*, and *náib* of the *súba* of Láhore, in concert with Kázim Khán, the royal *diwán*, and other officials, after setting in order the fortifications of the city, went out with a large muster of Musulmáns and Hindús, and encamped four or five *kos* from the city, where he busied himself in cutting off the patrolling parties of the enemy. The people in Láhore were safe from danger to life and property, but the outskirts up to the garden of Shálímár, which is situated two *kos* from the city, were very much ravaged.

For eight or nine months, and from two or three days' march of Dehlí to the environs of Láhore, all the towns and places of note were pillaged by these unclean wretches, and trodden under foot and destroyed. Men in countless numbers were slain, the whole country was wasted, and mosques and tombs were razed. After leaving Láhore, they returned to the towns and villages of Shádhúra and Karnál, the *faujdar* of which place was slain after resisting to the best of his ability. Now especially great havoc was made. A hundred or two hundred Hindús and Musulmáns who had been made prisoners were made to sit down in one place, and were slaughtered. These infidels had set up a new rule, and had forbidden the shaving of the hair of the head and beard. Many of the ill-disposed low-caste Hindús joined themselves to them, and placing their lives at the disposal of these evil-minded

great display. The infidels, on hearing of these bold proceedings of Shams Khán, and of his coming forth with such an army and implements of war, moved with their whole force, amounting to seventy or eighty thousand horse and foot. They had with them the guns they had brought from Sihhind, their plank constructions, bags full of sand for making lines, and lead and gunpowder. Plundering everywhere as they went, they came to Ráhún,¹ seven *kos* from Sultánpúr. There they had halted, and took post by a brick-kiln, all the bricks of which they used for making a sort of fort; and having thrown up lines all round, they made ready for battle. They sent out patrols in all directions, and they wrote threatening orders to the *chaudharis* and *kánúngos* calling upon them to submit.

Shams Khán had many thousands of brave Musulmáns on his right hand and his left, all animated with desire for a holy war and hope of martyrdom, who encouraged each other and said, "If Shams Khán is defeated and killed, our lives and property and families are all lost." Vying with and inspiring each other, they advanced boldly to within cannon-shot of the enemy. At the close of the first watch of the day, the battle began with a discharge of guns and muskets. Ten or twelve thousand balls and stones from slings came rattling like hail upon the forces of Islám, but by God's mercy produced no great effect, and no man of note was killed. Shams Khán forbade haste and a useless discharge of ammunition. He went steadily forward, and after a volley or two from the infidels, he sent forward an elephant supported by forty or fifty thousand Musulmáns who had come together from all parts. They raised their war-cry, charged the infidels, and killed and wounded great numbers.

The infidels, after fruitless struggles, were overpowered, and being discouraged, they took refuge in the fort of Ráhún, of which they had obtained possession before the battle. This was invested, and a general fire of muskets and rockets began. The garrison of the fort of Ráhún had left in it their warlike stores

¹ In the Jálándhar Doáb.

When this order reached Láhore, Ján Muhammad and Háji Yár Muhammad, the most eminent learned men in that city, in accord with many other good and learned men, went in a crowd to the houses of the *Kāzi* and the *Sadr*, to forbid the reading of the word *vasi* in the *khutba*. In the same way the learned men and elders of Ágra, supported by a large number of Musulmáns, raised a disturbance and forbade the reading of the *khutba* in the form directed. Similar reports were sent by the news-writers of other cities. From Ahmadábád it was reported that a party of *Sunnis* with a crowd killed the *khatib*¹ of the chief mosque, who had read the word *vasi* in the *khutba*.

After the order for the insertion of the word *vasi* in the *khutba* reached Ahmadábád, the *Sadr* wrote to Fíroz Jang, the *Sibadár*, for official directions as to the course he was to pursue, and in reply received an autograph letter, directing him to act in obedience to the orders of the *Khalífa* (the Emperor). On the following Friday the *khatib* used the word *vasi* in the *khutba*. Some men of the Panjáb and some notables of Túrán came noisily forward, and harshly addressing the *khatib*, said, "We excuse you this Friday for using the word, but next Friday you must not pronounce it." He replied that he would act in obedience to the orders of the Emperor, the *Názim* (viceroy), and the *Sadr*. On the following Friday, when the *khatib* ascended the pulpit, one of the Mughals said to him, "You must not use the word *vasi*." The doomed *khatib* would not be restrained; but the moment the word *vasi* fell from his tongue, a Panjábí rose, seized him by his skirt, dragged him from the top of the pulpit, and treated him with harsh scorn. A Túrání Mughal jumped up, drew his knife, stuck it into the stomach of the *khatib*, and threw him down under the pulpit. A general disturbance followed, and all the people started up. The *khatib*, half dead, was dragged out into the forecourt of the mosque, and there he received so many stabs from daggers and

¹ The *khatib* is the officiating minister who pronounces the *khutba*.

people, they found their own advantage in professing belief and obedience, and they were very active in persecuting and killing other castes of Hindús.

The revolt and the ravages of this perverse sect were brought under the notice of His Majesty, and greatly troubled him; but he did not deem its suppression so urgent as the putting down of the *Rájpút* rebellion, so the royal armies were not sent against them at present. Giving the *Rájpút* difficulty his first attention, the royal army marched from Ujjain towards the homes of the *Rájpúts*.

The Rájpúts.

[vol. ii. p. 661.] The march of the royal army to lay waste the land of the *Rájpúts* awakened these rebellious people to a sense of their danger. They sent representatives to make friends of Khán-khánán Mu'azzam Khán and Mahábat Khán, and through their intervention to obtain peace. The Emperor was in some points unwilling to concede this; but the troubles near Láhore and Dehli disturbed him, and he yielded to the representations of the *rakits* for the sake of being at liberty to punish these infidel rebels. It was settled that Rája Jai Singh, Rája Ajit Singh, and the *rakits* of the Ráurá and other *Rájpúts*, should make their homage, put on the robes presented to them, and accompany the royal train. All the *Rájpúts* of name and station, forming a body of thirty or forty thousand horse, passed in review; they tied their hands with handkerchiefs, and paid homage in front of the cavalcade. Robes, horses, and elephants were then distributed.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1121 A.H. (1709-10 A.D.).

[vol. ii. p. 663.] An order was given (near the end of the previous year of the reign) that the word *wasí* (heir) should be inserted among the attributes of the Khalif 'Alí in the *khutba*.¹

¹ This was a Shi'a innovation, and signified that 'Alí came next in succession after the Prophet. According to the *Siyaru-l Muta-akhhirin*, the formula was, "And 'Alí is the saint of God and the heir of the Prophet of God."—Briggs, p. 26.

was left alone fighting with the enemy, received several wounds, and fell from his horse; but he dragged himself half dead under a tree, and obtained martyrdom.

The Sikhs.

[vol. ii. p. 669.] The Emperor came near to Dehlí, and then sent Muhammad Amin Khán and * * * with a strong force against the Sikhs. His instructions were to destroy the *thánas* (military posts) established by the enemy, to re-establish the Imperial posts, and to restore the impoverished people of Sháhábád, Mustafa-ábád, Shádhúra, and other old seats of population, which had been plundered and occupied by the enemy. Forgetful of former defeat, the enemy had resumed his predatory warfare, and was very daring. On the 10th Shawwál, 1121 (5th Dec., 1709), the royal army was four or five *kos* from Shádhúra, and a party was sent forward to select ground for the camp, when the enemy, with thirty or forty thousand horse and countless numbers of foot, shouting their cry of "*Fath daras*," attacked the royal army.

I cannot describe the fight which followed. The enemy in their *fakír* clothing struck terror into the royal troops, and matters were going hard with them, when a party of them dismounted from their elephants and horses, charged the enemy on foot, and put them to flight. The royal commander then went and took post in Shádhúra, with the intention of sending out forces to punish and drive off the enemy. * * But rain fell for four or five days, and the weather became very cold. * * * Thousands of soldiers, especially the Dakhinís, who were unaccustomed to the cold of those parts, fell ill, and so many horses died that the stench arising from them became intolerable. The men attributed it to the witchcraft and sorcery of the enemy, and uttered words unfit to be spoken. News also was brought in of the daring attacks made by the enemy on the convoys and detachments of the royal army, in which two or three *faujdhárs*

blows from slippers that he died ignominiously. For a night and a day his heirs had not the courage to remove his corpse and bury it. On the second day the parents of the deceased petitioned Fíroz Jang for permission to inter him. He gave them some rupees of Government money and his authority for the burial.

Mahratta Attack on Burhánpúr.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 666.] A Mahratta woman named Tulasi Báí, with fifteen or sixteen thousand horse, came demanding payment of the *chauth* to the town of Ránwír, seven *kos* from Burhánpúr. Having surrounded the *sarái* of Ránwír, in which a great number of travellers and villagers had taken refuge, she sent a message to Mír Ahmad Khán *Sibadár*, demanding payment of eleven *lacs* as *chauth* to save the town and the men who were besieged in the *sarái*. Mír Ahmad, in his contempt for a female warrior, having got together a force of eight or nine thousand horse, part his own, and part obtained from the *faujdar*s of the vicinity, and with all the officials of Burhánpúr, marched out of that place on the 9th Muharram. * *

The enemy having got intelligence of his approach, left three or four thousand men in charge of their baggage, and marched to meet Mír Ahmad Khán with four or five thousand veteran horse. The remainder of the Mahratta force was sent to invest and plunder the suburbs of Burhánpúr. Mír Ahmad Khán was severely wounded in the sharp encounters which he had with the enemy in the course of two or three days; but hearing of the investment of Burhánpúr, he turned to succour the besieged. Wherever he went, the enemy hovered round him and kept up a continuous fight. Zafar Khán was wounded fighting bravely, and finding that the enemy's force was increasing, he deemed it necessary for saving his life to take a son of Ahmad Khán with him, and go to the city. The men of his rear guard were nearly all killed, and his remaining men endeavoured to save their lives by flight. Many were made prisoners. Mír Ahmad Khán, who

of the *Gurú*. Clever smiths were then ordered to make an iron cage. This cage became the lot of Barfi Rája and of that Sikh who so devotedly sacrificed himself for his *Gurú*; for they were placed in it, and were sent to the fort of Dehlí.

In this sect it is deemed a great sin to shave the hair of the head or beard. Many of the secret adherents of the sect belonging to the castes of Khatri and Ját were employed in service with the army, at the Court, and in public offices. A proclamation was issued requiring Hindús in general to shave off their beards. A great many of them thus had to submit to what they considered the disgrace of being shaved, and for a few days the barbers were very busy. Some men of name and position committed suicide to save the honour of their beards.

Death of Mun'im Khán, Khán-khánán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 674.] Khán-khánán now fell ill. Since the day he incurred the shame of allowing the real *Gurú* to escape, he pined with vexation, and he was attacked with a variety of diseases, which neither Greek nor European physicians could cure, and he died. He was a man inclined to Súfi-ism, and was a friend to the poor. During all the time of his power he gave pain to no one. * * * But the best intentions are often perverted into wrong deeds. It entered the mind of Khán-khánán that he would build in every city a *sarái*, a mosque, or a monastery, to bear his name. So he wrote to the *súbadárs* and *dicáns* of different places about the purchase of ground and the building of *saráis*, mosques, and colleges. He gave strict injunctions and also sent bills for large sums of money. When his order reached the place, all the officials had regard to his high dignity, and looking upon his order as a mandate from heaven, they directed their attention to the building of the *saráis* in their respective cities. In some places ground fit for the purpose was freely sold by the owners; but it happened in other places that although the officials were desirous

of repute were killed. Jumlatu-l Mulk Khán-khánán, with one son, and * *, were sent under the command of Prince Rafi'u-sh Shán to repress the enemy.

After repeated battles, in which many men were killed on both sides, the infidels were defeated, and retreated to a fastness in the hills called Lohgarh, which is near the hills belonging to the Barfi Rája (Icy King),¹ and fortified themselves. * The *Gurú* of the sect incited and encouraged his followers to action by assuring them that those who should fall fighting bravely on the field of battle would rise in a state of youth to an everlasting existence in a more exalted position. * Continual fighting went on, and numbers fell. * * The provisions in their fortress now failed, and the infidels bought what they could from the grain-dealers with the royal army, and pulled it up with ropes. * * The infidels were in extremity, when one of them, a man of the *Khatrí* tribe, and a tobacco-seller by trade, resolved to sacrifice his life for the good of his religion. He dressed himself in the fine garments of the *Gurú*, and went and seated himself in the *Gurú's* house. Then the *Gurú* went forth with his forces, broke through the royal lines, and made off to the mountains of the Barfi Rája.

The royal troops entered the fort, and, finding the false *Gurú* sitting in stato, they made him prisoner, and carried him to Khán-khánán. Great was the rejoicing that followed; the men who took the news to the Emperor received presents, and great commendation was bestowed on Khán-khánán. The prisoner was taken before Khán-khánán, and the truth was then discovered—the hawk had flown and an owl had been caught. Khán-khánán was greatly vexed. He severely reprimanded his officers, and ordered them all to dismount and march on foot into the hills of the Barfi Rája. If they caught the *Gurú*, they were to take him prisoner alive; if they could not, they were to take the Barfi Rája and bring him to the presence. So the Rája was made prisoner and brought to the royal camp, instead

¹ "The Rája of Sirmor is so called."—*Khuldsatu-t Tawdrikh*.

ábád, in Gujarát. It was also reported that Amánat Khán, *mutasaddi* of the port of Surat, on hearing of his death, and that he, in prospect of death, had ordered his troops and officers to be paid and discharged, hastened to Ahmadábád, and took charge of the treasure and stores. Gházíu-d dín Khán was a man born to victory, and a disciplinarian who always prevailed over his enemy. A nobleman of such rank and power, and yet so gentle and pleasant spoken, has rarely been seen or heard of among the men of Túrán. It is said that the Government officials took nearly nine *lacs* of rupees out of his treasury. * *

The Khutba.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 681.] The insertion of the word *wasí* in the *khutba* had given great offence to the religious leaders¹ of Láhore, and the order for it had remained a dead letter. An order was now given that these religious men should be brought into the royal presence. Hájí Yár Muhammad, Muhammad Murád Khán, and three or four other learned men of repute, waited upon His Majesty in the oratory. They were told to be seated. The Emperor, and some learned men whom he had to support him, brought forward proofs that the word *wasí* should be used. * * After much disputation Hájí Yár Muhammad grew warm in replying to the Emperor, and spoke in a presumptuous, unseemly manner. The Emperor got angry, and asked him if he was not afraid to speak in this bold and unmannerly way in the audience of a king. The Hájí replied, "I hope for four things from my bounteous Creator. 1. Acquisition of knowledge. 2. Preservation of the Word of God. 3. The Pilgrimage. 4. Martyrdom. Thanks be to God that of his bounty I enjoy the first three. Martyrdom remains, and I am hopeful that by the kindness of the just king I may obtain that." The disputation went on for several days. A great many of the

¹ The word used is *fuzald*, meaning religious men learned in religious matters.

of buying suitable land, they could not obtain it with the consent of the owners. Considering only their own authority, and the necessity of satisfying Khán-khánán, the officials forcibly seized upon many houses which had been occupied by the owners and their ancestors for generations, and drove the proprietors out of their hereditary property. Numbers of Musulmáns, *Saigids* and Hindús were thus driven, sighing and cursing, out of their old homes, as it happened at Buthánpúr and at Surat. * *

Upon the death of Khán-khánán there were various opinions as to who should be appointed to his office of *razir* and the *súbadár* of the Dakhín. It was the desire of Prince 'Azimu-sh Shán, who had a leading part in the government of the country, and of Sa'du-llah Khán, the *dirán*, that Zú-l fikár Khán should be appointed *razir*, and that the two sons of Khán-khánán should be respectively appointed *Bekhlá-Mulk* and *Súbadár* of the Dakhín. But Zú-l fikár Khán was unwilling to retire from his position as *Bekhlá* of the Empire and *Súladár* of the Dakhín for the sake of being made minister. He said, "When Your Majesty made Khán-khánán your minister, I could make no objection; but now, until my father has been raised to that dignity in the usual way, I cannot presume to accept the office." A long discussion followed. Prince 'Azimu-sh Shán said that Zú-l fikár wanted to have his father appointed minister, and to hold all the other offices himself. The Emperor could not make up his mind to act in opposition to the wishes of any one. * * It was finally arranged that until the appointment of a permanent *razir*, Sa'du-llah Khán, son of 'Ináyatu-llah Khán, *dirán* of the person and the *khálisa*, should be appointed to act as deputy, and to carry on affairs in communication with Prince Muhammad 'Azím.

Death of Gháziu-d din Khán Firoz Jang.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 681.] Intelligence now arrived of the death of Gháziu-d din Khán Bahádur Firoz Jang, *Súbadár* of Ahmad-

ment establishments, but especially in the royal household, so much so that money was received every day from the treasure of Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán to keep things going.

REIGN OF JAHÁNDÁR SHÁH, THIRTEENTH IN DESCENT FROM
AMÍR TIMÚR SÁHIB KIRÁN.

[vol. ii. p. 685.] One week after the death of Bahádur Sháh was passed in amicable communications and correspondence between the four brothers (his sons) about the division of the kingdom and property. Zú-l fikár Khán, who really inclined to Jahándár Sháh, was the negociator among them. Some of the friends and associates of Jahán Sháh advised him to seize Zú-l fikár Khán when he came to wait upon him, and so to clip the wings of Jahándár Sháh. But Jahán Sháh had not the courage to take this step. An opportunity was found for firing the arsenal of Jahán Sháh, so that all his powder and rockets were exploded. The patrols of each of the four brothers were constantly moving about. While things were in this state, two or three camels loaded with property and stuffs, including perhaps also some bags of *ashrafis*, belonging to Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán, fell into the hands of the patrols of Jahán Sháh, and a contention arose about the division of them.¹

It was settled that the Dakhin should fall to Jahán Sháh; Multán, Thatta, and Kashmír, to Rafi'u-sh Shán; and that 'Azímu-sh Shán and Jahándár Sháh should divide the remaining *súbas* of Hindústán between them. But the agreement about the division of the kingdom and treasure all turned into discord, and the partition of the realm was never effected. Mirzá Sadru-d dín Muhammad Khán Safawí *Bakhshi* deserted Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán, and joined the party of Prince Jahán Sháh; but the men of this Prince held the Mirzá in such suspicion and distrust, that by constant opposition they got him removed before the war began.

¹ Something seems to be wanting here. As it stands, the dispute about the camel-loads appears to have been settled by an agreement as to the division of the Empire.

inhabitants of the city, in agreement with a party of Afgháns, formed a league of more than a hundred thousand persons, who secretly supported Hájí Yár Muhammad. Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán also secretly gave his countenance to this party. At the end of Shawwál, the *Sadr* presented a petition on the subject of the *khutba*, and on this His Majesty wrote with his own hand that the *khutba* should be read in the form used during the reign of Aurangzeb. * * After this concession the agitation ceased, but I have heard that Hájí Yár Muhammad and two other learned men, whom the Emperor was angry with, were sent to one of the fortresses.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE REIGN, 1122 A.H. (1710 A.D.).

Death of Bahádur Sháh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 683.] The festival of His Majesty's accession was celebrated as usual. * * * About the 20th Muharram, 1123¹ (Feb. 18, 1711 A.D.), when the Emperor had passed his seventieth lunar year, there was a great change perceptible in him, and in twenty-four hours it was evident that he was marked for death. Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán, who had come to visit his father, when he heard that all the (other) three Princes had suddenly arrived, was so alarmed that he gave no thought to the condition of his father; but, not seeing how to secure himself, he thought it advisable to go away. On the night of the 8th of the month the Emperor died, and was buried near the tomb of Kutbu-d dín, four or five *kos* from Dehlí. He had reigned four years and two months. At the end of the four years the treasure of thirteen *lacs* of rupees, to which he succeeded, had all been given away. The income of the Empire during his reign was insufficient to meet the expenses, and consequently there was great parsimony shown in the Govern-

¹ The *Tazkira-i Chaghatái* makes it 1124, and gives Bahádur Sháh a reign of six years. The *Siyaru-l Muta-akhhirín* agrees; see Briggs, p. 29. But our author is consistent in his dates, and places the beginning of Farrukh Siyar's reign in 1123; see *post*, p. 446.

shedding of each other's blood. A battle followed between the armies of the two brothers, and raged from the beginning of the day to the third watch. Farkhanda Akhtar, son of Jahán Sháh, and several *amirs* of reputation, were killed. On the side of Jahándár Sháh, also, some *amirs* and many men were killed. At length Jahán Sháh, mounted on an elephant, made an impetuous charge upon the army of Jahándár, and bore all before him, and matters went so ill with Jahándár that he was parted from Lál Kunwar, his favourite charmer, and had to seek refuge among some stacks of bricks. Jahán Sháh beat the drums of victory. The letters of the *Rájput saráfs* carried the news of his victory to many parts, and the *khutba* was read with his name in several places. After the victory had been proclaimed, and the soldiers were dispersed in all directions hunting for Jahán Sháh, a cannon-ball directed by fate killed him, and his army fled. Zú-l fikár Khán's men hearing of this, attacked the elephant of Jahán Sháh, and brought it with his corpse, and the corpse of his son Farkhanda, to Jahándár Sháh. Khujista Akhtar, another son of Jahán Sháh, with a younger brother, were brought prisoners to Jahándár Sháh, who then proclaimed his victory.

Death of Ráfi'u-sh Shán.

[vol. ii. p. 688.] There remained Prince Ráfi'u-sh Shán, with whom also Jahándár proposed friendly negotiations about the division of the kingdom. Having put the Prince off his guard, Jahándár sent a detachment of horse against him by night. Ráfi'u-sh Shán fought bravely. He and his two sons saved themselves from their enemies, and fought bravely on foot; but he and several of his companions were killed. Three of his sons remained alive, but were wounded, *Muhammad Ibrahim Ráfi'u-sh Daula*, and Ráfi'u-sh Daula.

Defeat and Death of 'Azímu-sh Shán.

[vol. ii. p. 686.] Prince Rafi'u-sh Shán having taken offence against Hakímu-l Mulk, son of Hakím Muhsin Khán, for some fault, extorted from him a sum of money and some jewels by torture and ignominious treatment. Having then changed his post, he went near to the village of Budána, three or four *kos* from the city (of Láhore), and there took up a position against Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán. He was protected by the river (on one side), and on the other two sides he ordered intrenchments to be thrown up. 'Azímu-sh Shán held the other side of the river. The three brothers agreed together in opposition to 'Azímu-sh Shán. All three, in accord with each other, mounted their horses, and for four or five days selected positions from which to fire guns and rockets upon the army of 'Azímu-sh Shán. The artillery of 'Azímu-sh Shán replied to that of the three brothers, and many horses and men were killed. About the 20th of Safar the sound of battle rose high on every side, and the fight was begun. * * 'Azímu-sh Shán, who was mounted on an elephant, disappeared. Some said he had been killed by a cannon-ball: others, that when he saw his enemies closing around him on all sides, and that there was no escape from the surging armies around him, he cast himself into the waves of the river, and no trace of him was afterwards found. The ruffians of the neighbourhood and the soldiers of all the four princes fell upon Prince 'Azím's treasure, and the vast sums which he had extorted by tyranny and violence in and about the *súba* of Bengal were plundered in the twinkling of an eye, and dispersed into many hands. The three princes caused the drums of victory to be beaten, and then retired to their own dwellings.

Defeat and Death of Jahán Sháh.

[vol. ii. p. 687.] Next day many messages passed between Jahándár Sháh and Jahán Sháh respecting an arrangement, but, without result, and the course of affairs tended to the

honours, but he became the ally and companion of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán.

Nizámu-l Mulk and Sarbuland Khán were at first led to expect the appointments of *wazir* and *mir-bakhshi*. The Emperor spoke to them both about removing the obnoxious minister Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán from office, and they replied, "Your Majesty can give the portfolio of *wazir* to whichever of us you deem most capable; and if Saiyid 'Abdu-llah shows any resistance after his removal, he shall be brought to punishment." The Emperor replied, "I know of no person more fit for the post of *wazir* than I'tikád Khán." Every exalted noble of Írán and of Túrán, when he heard that it was the Emperor's design to bestow the important office of *wazir*, with every sign of partiality, upon such a prating, base-born, infamous person, felt the greatest disgust. They were heart-broken, but they were not disposed to obey and submit to I'tikád Khán.

In the midst of this uneasy feeling the '*I'd-i fitr*' occurred, and nearly seventy thousand horse and foot went in the royal procession to the '*I'd-gáh*'. There was great apprehension among all classes, in expectation that Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán was about to be made prisoner. On that day Saiyid 'Abdu-llah had not with him more than four or five thousand horse. * * After this Saiyid 'Abdu-llah began to enlist soldiers. In former days he entertained few except Saiyids of Bárha, because he had full reliance on their courage and devotion; but he now gave orders for the enlistment of twenty thousand men of all tribes.

When this disturbing intelligence reached *Amiru-l umará* Husain 'Alí in the Dakhin, his apprehensions were aroused, and he resolved to proceed to Court. But before doing so he resolved upon another plan, and * * wrote to Court for information. Afterwards he received intelligence that peace had been made between the Emperor and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah; that Rájá Ajít Singh, who had been called to Court, had received the hereditary title of *Mahárája* and other royal favours, through the help and countenance of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah; that, although

of money, inability to pay his soldiers, and pressing demands, had retired from service, resigned his *mansab*, and had given up his elephants, horses, and household effects to his creditors, with the intention of becoming a religious mendicant. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, having heard of this, went to him and endeavoured to console him. He furnished him with money, elephants, and horses, and appointed him *Súbadár* of Kábul, thus binding him to him by the obligations of kindness. Nizámu-l Mulk also, through the hard usage of times favourable only to the base, was called from Murádábád, with the expectation of being made *wasír*, but his office and his *jágír* were given to I'tikád Khán. He was disgusted and burnt with rage against the worthless (favourite). Saiyid 'Abdu-llah did his best to console him, and promised him the *súbadári* of Málwá. I'timádu-d daula, who had come to Court without leave or order, fell into disgrace, and was deprived of his *mansab*. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah consoled him also. He likewise won over fortune-seekers by rendering them assistance, and inquiring about their affairs. Khán-daurán, who from the beginning had been reckoned as an associate of Mír Jumla, and one of the Emperor's friends, was also brought over to the side of the minister.

It was now announced that the Emperor was going out hunting on a certain day, and that as he returned he would pay a visit to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. Mahárája Ajít Singh, although he was father-in-law to the Emperor, had become a firm ally of the minister. His house was situated in the road leading to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah's, and the Emperor had determined that, when his escort reached the Mahárája's house, he would make him prisoner, although he might come out to offer his *nazar* and pay his respects. But although this resolve was confined to the Emperor's own heart, Ajít Singh was alarmed and suspicious, for "traitors are fearful," and before the Emperor returned he took refuge in the house of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah.

The Emperor was returning in a boat, and was about to proceed to the house of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, as he had determined.

At the end of Zí-l hijja, he left Aurangábád, and, after halting a week for making necessary arrangements, at the beginning of Muharram, 1131¹ Hijra, having put his artillery in order, and done his best to secure the good-will of the *amírs* and the Mahrattas, he with * * * commenced his march upon Dehlí. * * He placed the fort of Malhír, * * the fort of Sálír, and two or three other forts, in charge of men of his own. * * Nearly sixteen thousand Mahrattas marched with him under the command of Khandú Dapháriya, who was one of the best generals of Rája Sáhú, and was his *Súbadár* of Khándesh. Santá, and several other Mahratta chiefs, went with him. * * On the 22nd Muharram he marched from Burhánpúr, and went on until he crossed the Nerbadda at Akbarpúr, where he met Ikhlás Khán, who had been sent from Court to re-assure him, and prevent his march. * * They had an interview near the fort of Mándú, * * and Husain 'Alí became more eager than before to reach the capital. * * On the 14th Safar he reached Ujjain. Here he heard, from the *Faujdar* of Gwálíor, [*of the pacification and oaths of amity between the Emperor and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah*]. Then, in open *darbár*, he said, "If the Emperor no longer retains any animosity and rancour against us, and will deal with us kindly and without malice, we have no other desire but to prove our obedience and loyalty. After paying my homage, and re-assuring myself about sundry matters, I will quickly return to the Dakhin." * * But on the second or third day after, Husain 'Alí Khán heard from trustworthy and confidential correspondents how the private talk was that the Emperor's proceedings were merely devices and snares that he was weaving to catch fools.

Other letters also informed Saiyid Husain 'Alí that Sarbuland Khán, in consequence of the resumption of his *jághír*, and the transfer of his prosperous lands to Mír Jumla, and through want

¹ Scott agrees with this date, but the *Siyaru-l Muta-ahhhkhírin* makes it 1132; see Briggs, p. 164.

drums of war and bloodshed, and this was particularly the case with the Mughals, who knew all about the matter. No one had the force to speak a friendly word to him whose head was muffled. At the sight of this change of fortune, of the progress of the rebellion of the two ministers, and of the supineness and want of perception in the Emperor, men lost all heart, and many, taking their cue from him, went to wait upon Saiyid Husain 'Alí.

Four or five days after the arrival of Husain 'Alí, his brother Saiyid 'Abdu-llah made a statement of his brother's grievances, and said that if Rájá Jai Singh, the disturbing spirit, were sent home to his country, and if the nominations to the artillery, and to the office of President of the Privy Council, and the appointments of the Emperor's personal attendants, were made in favour of Husain 'Alí's adherents, and if the fortress were placed under his control, then he would come without any apprehension to pay his homage, and all might be settled to the satisfaction of the two brothers. The poor dull-witted Emperor, unmindful of the deceitfulness of delusive fortune, granted the demands of the Saiyids. He consented to give over the entire control of the appointments to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, the other Saiyids of Bárha, and their supporters; I'tikád Khán and other of his favourites were to be dismissed.

On the 3rd Rabí'u-l ákhir, Rájádhíráj, under an order which did not allow of a day's delay, left Dehlí for Amber, his home. * * On the 5th, Saiyid 'Abdu-llah and Mahárája Ajít Singh, with their followers, entered the citadel, and, removing the Emperor's men from the gates, they made their own dispositions, and placed their own men in charge. Of all the great men near the Emperor, none were left near him or near the gates of the fortress, except I'tikád Khán, Imtiyáz Khán, registrar (*mushrif*) of the Privy Council, whose absence or presence made no difference, Zafar Khán, who, for his complaisance and time-serving, was called, "the pea in every soup," and some helpless attendants and eunuchs.

But he learned of Ajít Singh's having sought protection in the house of that noble, which greatly annoyed him; and when he came near the house, he changed his intention, and ordered the boat to be rowed quickly onwards. His suite and equipage went to the house, and the *wazir* went forth as far as the bank of the river to meet him, but he repaired to his palace in the fort.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 804.] [*March of Husain 'Alí Khán.*] At the end of the month Rabí'u-l awwal, at the beginning of the eighth year of the reign, Husain 'Alí Khán approached Dehlí and encamped near the *lât* of Fíroz Sháh, two or three *kos* from the city. There he showed his rebellious designs by ordering his drums to be beaten loudly in defiance; for it is contrary to all rule for (a subject's) drums to be beaten near the residence of the Emperor. Complaining of the Emperor, he entered his tents, and repeatedly said that he no longer reckoned himself among the servants of the monarch. "I will maintain the honour of my race, and care neither for loss of my *mansab*, nor for royal censure."

But the strangest thing was that the heedless Emperor—although he heard the sounds of the hostile drums and trumpets, which rose so boldly and publicly—and although at the sound of the drum other drums in every street and market beat to arms—even then he did not come to his senses. All resolution and prudence was cast aside. Now raging with anger, he rolled up his sleeves (for action), threatening vengeance against the two brothers; now taking a conciliatory turn, he sat behind the curtain of dissimulation, and opened the door of amity upon the face of enmity.

Rájádhíráj (Jai Singh), who raised his voice in favour of unanimous action and the punishment of the rebels, met with no success. The devoted nobles, of the stocks of 'Arab and of 'Ajám,¹ felt that they had no power of themselves to beat the

¹ The author, and other writers of his time, are fond of referring to the lands to which many of the nobles owed their origin, "*Írân o Túrán*," "*'Arab o 'Ajám*."

ordered him to be turned out of the fortress. * * All round and about the fortress the cries of strife arose, and the Emperor, feeling his reverse of fortune, went into the female apartments. * *

That night all the city was full of dread and helplessness. The soldiers of the two brothers were posted fully armed in all the streets and markets, and no one knew what was passing in the fort, or what would happen. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, Rája Ajít Singh, and their chief supporters, held counsel together, not knowing what the morn would bring forth; but they took such precautions everywhere as seemed necessary. The Mahratta chiefs, Khandú Dapháriya, Báláji Bishwanáth, Santá, and others, with their ten or eleven thousand men, passed the night under arms, not knowing what would happen, but ready for disturbance and plunder. * *

Reports of all kinds, false and true, spread abroad. One was that Saiyid 'Abdu-llah had been killed. Other alarming rumours flew about. I'tikád Khán and some other nobles, reckless as to the consequences, were about to take horse and proceed to oppose *Amiru-l umará*, when the news came of the approach of his cavalcade, and of the banners of I'timádu-d daula Muhammad Amín Khán and Chín Kalích Khán being in sight; for the latter, in his crafty politic way, had left his house to join *Amtru-l umará*. There was no conflict or struggle with the Mahrattas; for, before things had come to that pass, fourteen or fifteen horsemen, in the service of Khán-daurán, who were called "Blanket-wearers," shot a few arrows against the Mahrattas, when the whole of their force was seized with panic and took to flight. * * The idlers and vagabonds of the *básár* and the unemployed Mughals, hearing of this flight, drew their swords and fell to killing and plundering. * * A thousand to fifteen hundred Mahrattas, horse and foot, were killed, including Santá, a chief of note, and two or three other leaders. * * I'tikád Khán, with some of his companions, went into the *chawk* of Sa'du-llah near *own*.

Amir-i umarā Husain 'Alí, with regal pomp and display, mounted his horse, and entered the fort, around which his army, and that of the Mahrattas, had taken post. He paid his homage. After that, a few sad and admonitory words were exchanged. The *Amir* received the usual presents of robes, etc., with an unwilling heart, and, showing scant ceremony, returned to his abode. On the 8th day of the month the Saiyids for the second time took measures to secure the fort. *Kutbu-l-Mulk* Saiyid 'Abdu-llah and the Mahárāja, with their trusted followers and a select force, entered the fortress, and, as before, they removed the royal servants, placed the charge of the gates under their own trusty men, and demanded the keys of the *diwán-i kháss*, the sleeping apartment and the hall of justice. * *

Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán went to the distracted Emperor Farrukh Siyar, along with Ajit Singh, and poured forth his grievances. He said,¹ "In return for all our services to you and your ancestors, we have received nothing from you, ungrateful King, but evil thoughts and suspicions and treacherous designs. We have, as proofs of our words, the *farmáns* which you sent to the irreligious Dáúd Khán Afghán, and other miscreants in the Dakhin, directing them to oppose and slay your faithful servant (Husain 'Alí Khán). * * Our fears and suspicions will not be removed until the control over all the great offices shall be placed in our hands." The bewildered Emperor made some excuses and promises; but the talk went on to a great length, and many bitter and offensive things were said. The Emperor got angry and was unable to restrain himself further. He first said a few words condemning I'tikád Khán, who was in fact the prime cause of the mischief, and then he censured Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. I'tikád Khán made some foolish statements, excusing himself; but both he and the Emperor had lost all control over themselves. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah then interfered, and, abusing I'tikád Khán, he allowed him no retort, but

¹ Abridged translation.

THE SHORT REIGN OF A FEW DAYS OF ABÚ-L BARAKÁT
RAFI'U-D DARAJÁT, FOURTEENTH IN DESCENT FROM AMÍR
TIMÚR.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 816.] After the poor injured Emperor had been set aside, the same confusion and trouble prevailed, both inside and outside the palace. On the 9th Rabí'u-l ákhir, 1131¹ A.H., (18th Feb., 1719) Shamsu-d dín Abú-l Barakát Rafi'u-d Daraját, younger son of Rafi'u-sh Shán, and grandson of Bahá-dur Sháh, the eldest son of Aurangzeb, was made Emperor. He was twenty years of age when he was brought out of confinement, and the noise and confusion was so great and general, that there was not even time to send him to the bath, or change his clothes. In the same garments he was wearing, with only a pearl necklace thrown upon his neck for ornament, he was placed upon the throne. His accession and a general amnesty were proclaimed to stay the tumult. *Kutbu-l Mulk* Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, after offering his congratulations, placed his partisans and faithful servants inside the fortress. Over the doors of the public and private council chambers, and in every place, he stationed men of his own party. The eunuchs, the personal attendants, and all the servants of any importance, were men of his own.

In the council of the first day, in accordance with the desire of Rája Ajít Singh, and of the bigoted Rája Ratan Chand, an order was passed for the abolition of the *jizya*, and assurances of security and protection were circulated all over the country. I'tikád Khán was sent to prison with every mark of ignominy; his *jágir* was taken away, and his house was seized. Notwithstanding it had been disturbed, it was found to be full of jewels, cash, gold, objects of art, and vessels of silver; and an investi-

¹ The *Siyaru-l Muta-akhhirín* makes the date 1132, and is generally a year in advance.—Briggs, p. 182.

made some attacks, and threw up barricades. But his movement was ill-timed, and, being alarmed at what he had done, he went and surrendered himself prisoner.

The tumult was still high when the drums proclaimed the accession of Abú-l Barakát Rafi'u-d Daraját, and a declaration of amnesty was also published. * * The people were desirous to get a message sent in by artifice to Farrukh Siyar, and to bring him out of the palace, but they were unsuccessful. The women, the Abyssinians and the Turks, all prepared to fight. At length some Afgháns and attendants (*chelas*), backed up by Najmu-d dín 'Alí Khán, younger brother of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and * * some other traitors, entered the palace. After much search, Farrukh Siyar was found hidden in a corner of the roof, to which they got a hint from some of the women. They dragged him out with great indignity. His mother, wife, sister, and other ladies who were near the unfortunate monarch, cried and wailed, and threw themselves at the feet of the Afgháns and *chelas*, beseeching and entreating them. * * At length the conspirators dragged him away from the women, and, having blinded him, they placed him in confinement in a room at the top of the *tirpauliya* in the fort.¹ This was a small and narrow room like a grave, which had been used for keeping prisoners destined for the torture. In this corner of sorrow and grief they left him, with nothing but a ewer, a vessel for the necessities of nature, and a glass to drink out of.

The troublous reign of the late Farrukh Siyar the *Shahid* (martyr) lasted for six years and four months, without counting the eleven months of the reign of Jahándár, which were reckoned as part of his reign, and so entered in the royal records.²

¹ The *Tazkira-i Chaghatái* is in general accord with this. It adds that the room was the same as that in which Jahándár Sháh was murdered.

² A note in the printed text says that eight MSS. agree in this.—See *post*, p. 481.

that desperate struggle, but from what the author has heard no such weapons were used.¹

The coffin was borne to the tomb of Humáyún, and was accompanied by two or three thousand men and women, chiefly the vagabonds and mendicants of the city who had partaken of his bounty. They cried and groaned, tore their clothes, threw dust upon their heads, and scattered their abuse. The *bakhshis* of Husain 'Alí Khán and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán were ordered to attend the funeral, and did so with several principal men of the city. Stones were cast at them. No one would take the bread or copper coins which were offered in charity. On the third day some vagabonds and beggars met, cooked food, and distributed it among the poor, and remained assembled all night.²

Report says that the two brothers took possession of, and selected for themselves, whatever they pleased of the royal treasure, jewels, works of art, elephants and horses. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán was very fond of women, and the common talk was that two or three of the late King's beauties pleased him, and he took them to himself, although, for the gratification of his lust and desires, he had seventy or eighty beautiful women.

The brotherly love which had existed between the two brothers now turned to hatred and to jealousy of each other's power. Although the reins of power in civil matters pertaining to the office of *nazir* were in the hands of the elder brother, the younger, *Amiru-l umará* Husain 'Alí, was a brave, experienced, generous and proud man, whose equal it was hard to find. He had drawn to himself, by his kindness and generosity, most of the brave and able nobles, and he was getting into his hands a control over all the government of the country. So it was said that there were contentions between the brothers. * *

¹ "He was 38 years of age; and the period of his reign, reckoning from his assumption of royalty at Patna, was seven years one month and nine days; from his victory over Jahándár Sháh it was six years three months and twenty-four days."—*Tazkira-i Chaghatái*.

² Scott quotes this passage in his *History of the Dekkan*.

gation was ordered for the discovery and recovery of the jewels and pearls he had received as presents. * * I'timádu-d daula Amín Khán was confirmed as *Bakhsh*. The *súbadári* of Patna was given to Nizámu-l Mulk Bahádur Fath Jang. * *

Two months had passed since the late Emperor had been placed in confinement. In that room he had endured all kinds of tortures, and passed his days in the deepest trouble. It is reported that the blinding operation had not entirely destroyed his sight, and in his stupidity and love of power, which destroys the lives and integrity of so many thousands, he sent messages to the rulers of the State, excusing himself for the actions of past days, and spoke of again sitting upon the throne and of directing the affairs of State with the two brothers. An Afghán, named 'Abdu-llah Khán, had been placed as a guard over him in his living tomb. He ingratiated himself with this Afghán, promised him a *mansab* of 7000, and consulted with him as to the way of escaping to Mahárájádhiráj Jai Singh, which he looked upon as the only means of safety. The Afghán having discovered the captive's intentions, made them known to the ministers, and the Saiyids, urged on by their friends, determined to take away his life. Poison was twice administered without effect. On the second or third occasion, when it affected him, and for all the cruelty death did not come quickly, he thought upon the harshness of the two brothers, and how they had acted in defiance of the solemn oaths they had given to him. Unable to control himself, he used bitter words against them, and asked how it was that no punishment had fallen upon these two faithless oath-breakers. Words were uttered which ought not to have been spoken. The two brothers were told of this, and they ordered that he should be got rid of quickly by strangling. When the thong was thrown upon his neck, he seized it with both his hands, and struggled violently with hands and feet; but the executioners beat his hands with sticks, and made him leave go his hold. There is a common report that daggers and knives were used in

throne with the title of Sháh Jahán the Second. Matters went on just as before, for, excepting that the coins were struck and the *khutba* read in his name, he had no part in the government of the country. He was surrounded by creatures of *Kutbu-l Mulk*, and, as to going out or staying at home, holding a court, or choosing his food and raiment, he was under the direction of Himmát Khán. He was not allowed to go to the mosque on Friday, or to go hunting, or to talk to any of the *amirs*, without the presence of one of the Saiyids or his guardian.

[vol. ii. p. 832.] *Amiru-l umará* Husain 'Alí sent Haidar Kulí Khán with a force in advance against Ágra, and on the 7th Sha'bán he himself set out for that city with * * an army of about 25,000 men. * * Rájádhíráj Jai Singh, with a force of nine or ten thousand horse, and others whom he had collected, was waiting one march from Amber for Rájá Chhabílá Rám [to go and join *Nekú Siyar*]. *Kutbu-l Mulk* Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, in consequence of the rumours that were afloat, taking the Emperor with him, marched, at the end of Sha'bán, with Mahárája Ajít Singh, and other *amirs*, and an army of upwards of thirty thousand horse, from Dehlí towards Ágra, and against Jai Singh.

At this time Mahárája Ajít Singh took back the Mahárání, his daughter, who had been married to Farrukh Siyar, with all her jewels and treasure and valuables, amounting to a *kror* of rupees in value. According to report he made her throw off her Musulmán dress, dismissed her Muhammadan attendants, and sent her to her native country. * * In the reign of no former Emperor had any Rájá been so presumptuous as to take his daughter after she had been married to a King and admitted to the honour of Islám.

The fort of Ágra was invested, lines of approach were formed, and batteries raised. When Husain 'Alí Khán arrived, the cannonade began, and many houses inside and outside the fort were destroyed. The siege went on for three months. * *

The rainy season caused Saiyid 'Abdu-llah to delay in his march against Jai Singh; but he reached Mathurá, within ten

On the 9th Jumáda-l ákhir, 1131, the soldiers at Ágra brought out of confinement in the fort, and raised to the sovereignty, a person named Nekú Siyar,¹ a son of Prince Muhammad Akbar, and grandson of Aurangzeb. His accession was announced by peals of cannon, and coins of gold and silver were struck in his name.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 829.] The Emperor Rafi'u-d Daraját was suffering from consumption (*dikk*). The physicians, under the orders of the Saiyids, did all they could to cure him, but without success. This monarch had not the slightest control in matters of government.² * * Sorrow increased his illness, and he became so helpless that the two brothers considered as to which of the imprisoned princes should be named successor. Rafi'u-d Daraját said that if, in his lifetime, the *khutba* were read, and coins struck in the name of his elder brother, Rafi'u-d Daula, it would be a great kindness, and very acceptable to him. The Saiyids consented. Three days after Rafi'u-d Daula ascended the throne, Rafi'u-d Daraját died. He had reigned six months and ten days.

RAFI'U-D DAULA, ENTITLED SHÁH JAHÁN THE SECOND, FOURTEENTH IN DESCENT FROM, AND SEVENTEENTH KING IN SUCCESSION TO, AMÍR TÍMÚR.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 831.] On the 20th Rajab, 1131³ A.H. (May 27, 1719 A.D.), Rafi'u-d Daula, who was one year and a half older than his brother Rafi'u-d Daraját, was raised to the

¹ The text goes on to explain that when Prince Akbar quarrelled with his father Aurangzeb, this young Prince and two of his sisters were detained. The daughters were married to two sons of Bahádur Sháh; but Nekú Siyar was kept in prison forty years. Maharájádhiráj Jai Singh and Nizámu-l Mulk were said to have favoured this attempt to make Nekú Siyar Emperor; but Kháfi Khán, in contradiction, says that Nizámu-l Mulk strove to hinder it.

² "Rafi'u-d Daraja took no part in State business, the entire authority was in the hands of his cruel *wazir* and his brother."—*Tazkira-i Chaghatái*.

³ The *Tazkira-i Chaghatái* is in accord; the *Siyaru-l Muta-ahhkhírín* makes it a year later.

Rājādhirāj (Jai Singh) sent his *rakits* to offer his apologies and make peace. * * It was eventually arranged that the *faujdarī* of Surat, in the *sūba* of Ahmadābād, should be held by Jai Singh, and the *sūbadārīs* of Ahmadābād and Ajmīr, including Jodpūr, should continue under Rāja Ajīt Singh. Under this arrangement the two *rājās* held all the country from thirty *kos* of Dehlī, where the native land of Jai Singh begins, to the shores of the sea at Surat.

Shāh Jahān the Second died of dysentery and mental disorder, after a reign of three months and some days.

MUHAMMAD SHĀH BĀDSHĀH, FORMERLY CALLED ROSHAN AKHTAR, FOURTEENTH IN DESCENT AND SIXTEENTH¹ IN SUCCESSION TO AMIR TIMŪR.

[Text. vol. ii. p. 839.] Rafī'u-d Daula had reigned only three months and two days when it became known that his death was near at hand. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah was in despair, and he sent from Fathpūr to bring Prince Muhammad Roshan Akhtar, son of the late Jahān Shāh, and grandson of Aurangzeb, then only eighteen years of age. * * Since the death of Jahāndār Shāh he had lived with his noble mother in the fort of Dehlī. He was a good-looking young man, with many good qualities, and of excellent intelligence. Rafī'u-d Daula had been dead nearly a week before the young Prince arrived: but the fact was kept secret, and the defunct was buried soon after the arrival. On the 11th Zī-l ka'da, 1131² A.H. (Sept. 1719 A.D.), he reached Fathpūr, and on the 15th of that month he ascended the throne. * * * Money was struck in the name of Abū-l Muzaffar Nāṣir-u-d dīn Muhammad Shāh Bād-shāh-i Ghāzī, and his name was read in the *khutba* as Emperor of Hindūstān in the mosques. His mother was well acquainted with State business, and was a woman of much intelligence and tact. * *

kos of which place Jai Singh was awaiting the arrival of Rája Chhabilá Rám and other allies. When the Rája found that none of his expected supporters arrived, he sent *rakils* to beg forgiveness for the offence he had committed.

Nekú Siyar had a *munshi* named Nath Mal. At the invitation of some crafty men among the besiegers, he came out of the fort to conduct them to Nekú Siyar. But these men made him prisoner, and took him to *Amiru-l umará*. In his portfolio were found several letters addressed by *amirs* in the besieging army to Nekú Siyar, * * but the *Amir* thought it desirable to hush this matter up. * * The provisions in the fort were falling short, and the defenders were in despair. A proposal to surrender was accepted, and an assurance of safety to life and honour was given. The keys were given up, Ágra was secured on the 27th Ramazán, and Nekú Siyar and his supporters were made prisoners. Mitr Sen, who had set this revolt on foot, knowing that there was no hope of mercy for him, but that he would be put to death with ignominy, killed himself with a dagger.

After the fall of the fortress, *Amiru-l umará* Husain 'Alí took possession of the treasure, jewels, and valuables which had accumulated there in the course of three or four hundred years from the days of Sikandar Lodí and Bábar Bádsháh, and were stowed away in the store-rooms. There were the effects of Núr Jahán Begam and Mumtáz Mahal, * * amounting in value, according to various reports, to two or three *krors* of rupees. * * There was in particular the sheet of pearls which Sháh Jahán had caused to be made for the tomb of Mumtáz Mahal, which was spread over it upon the anniversary of her marriage, and on Friday nights. There was the ewer of Núr Jahán, and her cushion of woven gold and rich pearls, with a border of valuable garnets and emeralds. The elder brother, 'Abdu-llah Khán, got nothing of all this, till, after four months, twenty-one *lacs* of rupees were grudgingly surrendered to him.¹

¹ "The quarrel between the two brothers about the treasures of Ágra was settled by the intervention of Ratan Chand *bakkál*."—*Tazkira-i Chaghatái*.

The fort of Alláhábád is protected on three sides by the rivers Ganges and Jumna, and Giridhar had worked hard in strengthening the defences, and in collecting provisions and stores of war. The report of his rebellion had caused great excitement in all the exchequer territories and among the great *jágirdárs*. Taking these facts into consideration, it was feared that the protraction of the siege might lead to serious derangements in civil and revenue matters, and the condition of the people in all the *súbas*. The promise of surrendering the fortress had induced Saiyid 'Abdu-llah to return with the Emperor towards Dehlí; * * but when it was known that the promise had not been kept, contrary to all usage, they turned back. * * Giridhar had written repeatedly to say that if Ratan Chand were sent to him, some settlement consistent with safety and honour might be made, so that he might leave the fort. The two brothers decided upon deputing Ratan Chand, and he proceeded thither with a suitable escort at the end of Rabí'u-l ákhir, in the second year of the reign.

When Ratan Chand and Giridhar met, an arrangement was made and confirmed by an oath upon the water of the Ganges—a very solemn oath among Hindús. It was agreed that Giridhar should receive, in addition to the *súbadári* of Oudh and the *faujdarí* dependent thereon, two or three other important *faujdarís* which he desired to possess. At the beginning of Jumáda-l ákhir he withdrew from the fortress, and proceeded towards Oudh. It has been said that “Laughter ends with weeping, and rejoicing with sorrow.” The surrender of Alláh-ábád was not generally known, * * before Fate brought forth another serious matter.

*Decline of the Saiyids and Rise of Nizámu-l Mulk Bahádur
Fíroz Jang.*

[Text, vol. ii. p. 847.] Husain 'Alí Khán deemed himself superior in military and government matters to his brother. In

It was settled that the beginning of his reign should date from the deposition of Farrukh Siyar, and should be so entered in the Government records. Fifteen thousand rupees a month were allotted to his mother. The *názirs* and * * all the officers and servants around the Emperor were, as before, the servants of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. When the young Emperor went out for a ride, he was surrounded, as with a halo, by numbers of the Saiyid's trusted adherents; and when occasionally, in the course of two or three months, he went out hunting, or for an excursion into the country, they went with him and brought him back.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 843.] ¹ Mír Jumla was appointed to the office of chief judge, and Ratan Chand held firm his position. His authority extended over all civil, revenue, and legal matters, even to the appointment of *kázis* in the cities and other judicial officers. All the other Government officials were put in the background, and no one would undertake any business but under a document with his seal.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 842.] Chhabílá Rám Nágár, *Súbadár* of Alláhábád, had given uneasiness by his insubordination, and Husain 'Alí Khán prepared to march against him and bring him to order; but news arrived that he was dead. * * After Chhabílá's death, his brother's son Giridhar, who was called his swordsman, set about collecting forces and strengthening the fortifications. When this became known, they (the Saiyids) took Muhammad Sháh from Fathpúr to Ágra, and, in preparation for the siege of Alláhábád, orders were given for throwing a bridge over the Jumna, and for the march of a force in advance. * * Giridhar hearing of the preparations for the siege of Alláhábád, sent his *rakils* to make propositions, * * which ended in his being promised the *súbadári* of Oudh, with other favours, and the title of *Bahádur*. * * * But Giridhar placed no reliance on the words and promises of the Saiyids. * * So the fortress was invested, and the siege dragged on a long time. At length Husain 'Alí Khán crossed the Jumna [*to press the siege*].

¹ This paragraph is taken a little in advance to avoid a break in the narrative.

Giridhar, to get rid of Nizámu-l Mulk, and then to do as they pleased ; that they (Muhammad Sháh and his mother) had full reliance on Nizámu-l Mulk, that he would not fail in the loyalty which his ancestors had ever exhibited.

When Nekú Siyar had been taken prisoner, and peace had been made with Giridhar, Husain 'Alí Khán set other springs of disturbance in action. He made a compact with Maháráo Bhím Singh Hada, that after chastising Sálím Singh, *Zamindár* of Búndí, and settling matters with Nizámu-l Mulk, he would raise Bhím Singh to the high dignity of Mahárája ; so that, after Mahárája Ajit Singh, he would be higher in rank than all other Rájás ; and that he should receive a *mansab* of 7000 and 7000 horse, with the Fish banner. He appointed him, Rája Gaj Singh of Narwar, Diláwar 'Alí Khán, and others, with an army of 15,000 horse, first to punish and expel Sálím Singh of Búndí, and then to direct their attention to Nizámu-l Mulk, and be ready to act upon the directions they might receive.

Husain 'Alí Khán, throwing aside the veil, wrote to Nizámu-l Mulk, * * bringing complaints and charges against him. Nizámu-l Mulk in his honesty wrote clear answers to every charge ; but they did not satisfy Husain 'Alí, and he wrote in plain terms to Nizámu-l Mulk, saying, that for the purpose of arranging the affairs of the Dakhin, he wished to hold the *súba* of Malwá himself, and that he would give Nizámu-l Mulk his choice of the *súbas* of Ágra, Alláhábád, Multán, or Burhánpúr.

Nizámu-l Mulk had employed the interval of eight or nine months in collecting seven or eight thousand horse and materials of war. He was cautious and watchful, and he had formed the design of conquering the Dakhin, and of setting free that land of treasure and of soldiers. He now received notice from his *vaktls* that the Saiyids had sent officers to summon him to the presence. But before these he had received letters from the Emperor and from private friends, telling him there was no time to be lost, and that what he had to do he must do quickly.

his judgment it seemed that, as there were sufficient administrators with him and his brother, and as his adopted son 'Alam 'Alí was acting (as *súbadár*) in the Dakhin with a sufficient army, it would be well to send Nizámu-l Mulk to be *Súbadár* of Málwá, half-way between Delhí and the Dakhin. * * * Nizámu-l Mulk accepted the appointment, and received his robe and dismissal to his government on the third day after the accession of Rafi'u-d Daraját. He took with him his wives and children, and there accompanied him more than a thousand companions, *mansabdárs* and *jágirdárs*, who were poor and sick at heart with the unkindness shown by the Saiyids, and through pay being in arrear. Nizámu-l Mulk busied himself in collecting soldiers and artillery, which are necessary for governing the world and keeping it in order. He gave 500 horses with accoutrements and arms to Muhammad Ghiyás Khán for his Mughal fraternity, and turned them into horsemen. He lent large sums of money to * * and others, binding them to himself by the bonds of debt and kindness.

When Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán was marching from the Dakhin against Farrukh Siyar, on coming to the Nerbadda, Marhamat Khán, who was in the fort of Shádíábád at Mándú, made an excuse of illness, and did not go out to meet him. * * After the death of Farrukh Siyar, the Saiyid appointed Khwája Kulí Khán to succeed him. * * Marhamat Khán resisted. * * Then Husain 'Alí wrote to Nizámu-l Mulk, desiring him to turn Marhamat Khán out of the fort. * * After some negotiation, Marhamat Khán came out and joined Nizámu-l Mulk.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 850.] After the accession of Muhammad Sháh, letters were often sent by him and by his mother, Maryam Makání, through the medium of I'timádu-d daula Muhammad Amín Khán, to Nizámu-l Mulk, informing him that the constraint used by the Saiyids was so strict that he had only liberty to go to service on the Sabbath, and that he had no power of giving any orders; that the Saiyids, in their futile scheming, proposed, after settling the affairs of Nekú Siyar and

Defeat and Death of Husain Khán Afghán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 861.] Husain Khán Afghán was one of the proud and bold Afgháns of the *sarkár* of Kasúr.¹ For some years past he had occupied himself in rebellion and violence. He had taken possession of some prosperous districts about Kasúr and Láhore, and had raised the standard of revolt. He had several times defeated the armies of the *súbadárs* and the princes; and since the time that 'Abdu-s Samad Khán Diler Jang had been made *Súbadár* of the Panjáb, he had further overstepped the limits of a subject, had turned the officials of the *jáگیردار*s and *súbadárs* out, and had seized upon the revenues in a most defiant manner. The author has heard from trustworthy persons that he received letters from the Saiyids at the head of the Government, inciting him to embarrass the *súbadár*, and encouraging the hope of his obtaining for himself the *súbadári* of Láhore. At any rate, he grew bolder. He fought with Kutbu-dín, the '*ámil*' of the *súbadár*, killed him, and plundered his army and treasure. With eight or nine thousand horse he then set out on a plundering expedition. 'Abdu-s Samad Khán, who had begun to raise an army, marched with seven or eight thousand men to attack him, and the armies approached the village of Jhúní, about thirty *kos* from Láhore. [*Long and hard-contested battle.*] An arrow at length struck Husain Khán, inflicting a severe wound. His elephant had no driver, and ran about in all directions—a mark for arrows and bullets from every side. Flames burst forth from the *howda*, the cause of which could not be discovered; but in that condition Husain Khán fell under the swords of the brave warriors with a large number of Afgháns. * * On the news of the victory reaching Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, much against his will, but to avoid censure, he lauded the services of 'Abdu-s Samad Khán, and gave him the title of *Saifu-d Daula*.

Letters from Burhánpúr reached the Court with details about

¹ South of Láhore.

Nizámu-l Mulk perceived that the brothers had the fixed intention of overthrowing the royal house and removing the *Khalifa* of the world. Seeing that there were no other means of safety, he consulted with his friends, and setting out from Ujjain, he made three marches towards Ágra, and then turned to the Dakhin. On the 1st of Rajab he crossed the Nerbadda, where he was joined by Rustam Beg Khán, *Faujdar* of Bijágarh,¹ also called Kahargáon. * * On the same day he crossed the Nerbadda an envoy came from 'Usmán Khán, a soldier (*hasári*) of the fort of Ásír, proposing to surrender the fortress, * * and on the 16th Rajab he took possession of this important stronghold. * * He next sent Muhammad Ghiyás Khán to reduce Burhánpúr. * * * Saiyid 'Álam 'Alí Khán (the acting *súbadár*) sent Muhammad Anwar Khán to defend Burhánpúr; * * but this man was wanting in courage, and gave up in despair. Nizámu-l Mulk entered the town on the 17th.

Just before he got possession of Burhánpúr, the children and dependents of Saifu-d dín 'Alí Khán, brother of Husain 'Alí Khán, had come to that place on their way to Dehlí. They were greatly alarmed when Nizámu-l Mulk became master of the city. Some of his friends counselled him to seize upon their valuables, [*but he refused*] * * and sent an escort to guard them as far as the Nerbadda. He was joined at Burhánpúr by 'Iwaz Khán, Názim of the *súba* of Birár, and by troop after troop of adherents, and he remained there for some time to get his artillery in order.

Diláwar 'Alí Khán, after subjugating Búndí, under the direction of Husain 'Alí Khán, as above narrated, marched into Málwá with his army, accompanied by Rája Bhím and Rája Gaj Singh, causing great injury to the country and distress to the inhabitants.

¹ Between the Nerbadda and Tápti, about sixty miles north-west of Burhánpúr.

that they would act upon the rules laid down by the Emperor, and by the chief lawyers, in respect of the treatment of *shayks* (protected unbelievers) throughout the provinces of the Empire. Mahbúb Khán was greatly offended, and, being supported by a party of Musulmáns, he annoyed and insulted Hindús wherever he met them. A Hindú could not pass through any market or street without being subjected to indignity.

One day Majlis Rái, a respected Hindú of Kashmir, went out with a party to ramble in the fields and gardens, and they feasted Brahmans. Mahbúb Khán collected ten or twelve thousand Musulmáns, came upon them unawares, and began to beat, blind and kill them. Majlis Rái escaped, and fled with some others to Ahmad Khán. Mahbúb Khán, with all his followers, went to the house of Majlis Rái and the Hindú quarter, and began

the fort of Ásír. It appeared that Khusrú, a servant of Nizámu-l Mulk, had introduced himself to the soldiers of the fortress, and carried on a correspondence about its surrender. *Nolens volens*, the soldiers coerced Tálíb Khán, the commandant appointed by the Saiyids, who was in a great state of dismay, and made him surrender the fortress to Nizámu-l Mulk, and give two years' pay to the soldiers. * * Further letters informed them that Anwar Khán, *Súbadár* of Burhánpúr, had joined Nizámu-l Mulk, and that Rambhá Nimbálkar,¹ a famous Mahratta chieftain, had also joined him, both bringing their followers. All the officials of Burhánpúr and many of the *samindárs* of the neighbourhood had taken the same course. This information greatly disturbed the Saiyids. They wrote pressing letters to Diláwar Khán and Maháráo Bhím Singh, directing them to engage Nizámu-l Mulk. Every day and every week Saiyid Husain 'Alí brought forward new plans for proceeding to the Dakhin, and he waited anxiously for letters from Diláwar Khán. Ratan Chand, seeing how matters were tending, advised a peace and the surrender of the *súbas* of the Dakhin to Nizámu-l Mulk, for he saw that war would end in the Saiyids' death. But Husain 'Alí would not consent to any peace with Nizámu-l Mulk.

Religious Troubles in Kashmír.

[vol. ii. p. 867.] Mahbúb Khán, otherwise called 'Abdu-n Nabí Kashmírí, had a long-standing enmity against the Hindús in Kashmír. He had gathered round him many restless Muhammadans, with whom he went to the deputy of the *súbadár* and to the *kázi*, and, presenting certain legal opinions, he demanded that the Hindús should be interdicted from riding on horses, from wearing coats (*jáma*), from putting on turbans and armour (*chíra o yarák*), from going out for excursions in the fields and gardens, and from bathing on certain days. Upon this matter he was very virulent. The officials, in answer, said

¹ " Binálkar " in the Text.

Khán, and fell upon him unawares. First, before his eyes, they ripped up the bellies of his two young boys, who always accompanied him, and they killed him with great cruelty.

Next day the Musulmáns went to the Charbelí quarter, to exact retaliation for blood. This quarter was inhabited by *Shi'as*. There they began to beat, to bind, to kill, and to burn the houses. For two days the fight was kept up, but the assailants then prevailed. Two or three thousand people who were in that quarter, including a large number of Mughal travellers, were killed with their wives and families. Property to the value of *lacs* was plundered, and the war raged for two or three days. It is impossible to commit to writing all that I have heard about this outbreak. After this destruction, the rioters went to the houses of the *kási* and the *bakhshi*. Sháhúr Khán concealed himself and the *kási* escaped in disguise. They pulled down the *kási's* house to the foundations, and carried the bricks of it away in their hands. Múmin Khán, after entering the city, sent Mír Ahmad Khán under an escort to Ímanábád, and then had to take severe measures with the people of Kashmír.

Nizámu-l Mulk.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 873.] Diláwar 'Alí Khán, *bakhshi* of Husain 'Alí Khán, who had been sent with six or seven thousand horse against the Rája of Búndí, having hastily increased them to twelve or thirteen thousand, crossed the Nerbadda. Various rumours reached Nizámu-l Mulk, and according to one, Diláwar 'Alí Khán had reached Hándiyá. Nizámu-l Mulk prepared to encounter him. The plan of 'Álam 'Alí Khán (the acting *súbadár*) was to enlist as many Mahrattas as he could, to gather together the great *faujdhárs*, and to march from Aurangábád as soon as he heard of the near approach of Diláwar 'Alí Khán. Nizámu-l Mulk would thus be placed between two armies. * *

[Text, vol. ii. p. 875.] Nizámu-l Mulk, on receiving intelligence that 'Álam 'Alí Khán had taken the field, marched from Burhánpúr to oppose him. He crossed the Táptí and encamped

was obliged to ask for mercy, and escaped from his dangerous position amid volleys of gibes and insults.

Mahbúb Khán proceeded to the Hindú quarter, and burnt and gutted the houses which remained. Again he proceeded to the house of Mír Ahmad Khán, and dragged out of it with insult Majlis Rái and a number of other persons who had taken refuge there. He and his followers cut off their ears and noses, circumcised them, and in some instances cut off the organ of generation. Another day they went tumultuously to the great mosque, degraded Mír Ahmad Khán from his office of deputy of the *súbadár*, and, having given the prime cause of the disturbance the title of Díndár Khán, they appointed him to act as ruler of the Musulmáns, and to enforce the commands of the law and the decisions of the *kázis* until a new deputy *súbadár* should come from the Court. For five months Mír Ahmad Khán was deprived of power, and remained in retirement. Díndár Khán acted as ruler, and, taking his seat in the mosque, discharged the Government business.

Upon intelligence of this outbreak reaching Court, Múmin Khán was sent to act as deputy of 'Ináyatu-llah Khán, the *Súbadár*. * * At the end of Shawwál he halted three *kos* from Kashmír. Mahbúb Khán was ashamed of his unrighteous deeds, so he went to Khwája 'Abdu-llah, who was highly respected in Kashmír, and begged him to go out with a number of the principal and most respectable Muhammadans to meet the new deputy, and bring him into the city with honour. * * Khwája 'Abdu-llah advised him in a friendly way to go to Mír Sháhúr Khán *Bakhshí*, and apologize for what had passed. If he did so, they would go out with him to meet the deputy. In accordance with this advice, Mahbúb Khán went to the house of Sháhúr Khán, and having made a statement to him, rose to depart, alleging he had some necessary business to attend to. The *bakhshí*, acting on the Khwája's advice, had called a number of the people from the Charbelí and Kahkarán quarters of the city, and concealed them about his house. They watched for Mahbúb

fearful earthquake was felt. A noise under the earth was heard, doors and walls shook and roofs rattled. During the day and night nine shocks were felt. It was reported that parts of the fort and many houses were thrown down, and that great numbers of persons were killed in Sháhjahánábád and old Dehli. The writer of these leaves went out on horseback to see and ascertain for himself. * * He found houses destroyed here and there, parts of the ramparts thrown down and damaged, two gates of the city injured, the parapets of the Fathpúrí mosque damaged, and ten or twelve persons killed and wounded. It was very wonderful that for a month and two days the shocks continued, and were felt four or five times in the twenty-four hours. Many persons were so alarmed that they would not sleep under a roof. After this time the force of the shocks decreased; but for four or five months the earth and the houses were found to shake occasionally, until the arrival of the blessed feet of His Majesty, when the shocks gradually ceased.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 885.] On the 1st Zí-l ka'da it was determined that His Majesty should go with Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán to Dehli, and that Husain 'Alí Khán should proceed with a number of warlike *amírs* to the Dakhin. It was now that a quarrel arose between the Saiyids and I'timádu-d daula. This caused a great feeling of alarm for some days, and it was so much talked about that I'timádu-d daula and the braves of Túrán remained under arms night and day.

Defeat and Death of 'A'lam Khán.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 885.] Intelligence now arrived that 'A'lam 'Alí Khán and many of his officers had been killed. The author has not obtained exact information of this matter; but he will relate what he has gathered from different accounts given to him by trustworthy men.

After the death of Diláwar 'Alí Khán two or three thousand

towards the east. When he heard of the advance of Diláwar 'Alí Khán, he resolved to meet him first. He sent his family to the fort of Ásir, and then began his march against the enemy. On arriving within two or three *kos* of Ratanpúr, and sixteen or seventeen from Burhánpúr, he encamped about two *kos* distance from his adversary. To avoid shedding the blood of Musulmánas, he sent conciliatory messages to Diláwar 'Alí, deprecating battle, but without effect. On the 16th Sha'bán, 1132 A.H. (11th May. 1720), both sides drew out their forces for the struggle. [*Dispositions for and progress of the battle.*] Diláwar 'Alí Khán, mounted on an elephant, fought resolutely, * * but he was struck by a musket-ball and killed. The army of the Bárhas then turned to flee; but the *Rájpúts*, Rája Bhím, and Rája Gaj Singh disdained to escape, and fought with great valour. They and three or four hundred other *Rájpúts*, many Bárha Saiyid officers and others, altogether four or five thousand men, were killed. The day after the battle, intelligence came that 'Álam 'Alí Khán had arrived at the tank of Hartála, seventeen *kos* from Burhánpúr. Nizámu-l Mulk sent Mutawasal Khán with a force of three thousand horse to protect the city and the people.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 882.] When the news of the defeat and death of Diláwar 'Alí Khán reached the Saiyid brothers, it greatly disturbed and perplexed them. Every day some new plan was formed. Now it was proposed that both should go to the Dakhin, and take the Emperor with them. Then that Saiyid Husain 'Alí should go to the Dakhin and that Saiyid 'Abdu-llah should proceed to Dehlí with the Emperor. * * Every week and every month the tents of the Emperor and of the two brothers moved in different directions, and their councils were distracted.

Earthquake.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 883.] On the 2nd of Ramazán, 1132 A.H. (27th June, 1720), on Friday, during prayers at the mosques, a

when he heard of the crossing ; but he set his forces in motion to meet his adversary. Nizámu-l Mulk waited a day to allow the rear of his army and his baggage to cross. In some places the water was up to the waist, in others to the breast, but all got over in safety without loss to life or property. Next day he marched to fix upon a position in which to give battle. He encamped at Síúgánw, in the *súba* of Burhánpúr [*where his army suffered greatly from heavy rain, want of provisions, and the skirmishing of the Mahrattas*]. At length the rain ceased awhile, and he marched to a ruined village three *kos* from Bálápúr.

The Mahrattas were very daring and troublesome, and 'Iwaz Khán, Muhammad Ghiyás Khán, and Rambhá Nimbálkar were sent to punish them. A fight ensued, in which the Mahrattas were put to flight, and a great spoil of mares, spears, etc., fell into the hands of the victors. Sufficiency of fodder and grain not being procurable, another march was necessary, and they had to bury some heavy guns, which the mud and the weakness of the bullocks prevented them from moving. After remaining three days to rest and recruit near Bálápúr, where sufficient grain was found, on the 5th Shawwál the army marched to the chosen battle-field, two or three *kos* distant.

Nizámu-l Mulk made his disposition of his forces. * * 'Álam Khán also made his arrangements. * * On his side were Santájí Sindhia, Khándují Dapháriya *Senápati*, Sankarájí Malhár, Kánújí, and other Mahrattas of repute, on the part of Rája Sáhú, with seventeen or eighteen thousand men, who all called themselves faithful adherents of Husain 'Alí Khán. * * On the 6th Shawwál, 1132 A.H. (1st August, 1720 A.D.), the battle was fought. * * 'Álam 'Alí Khán received a severe wound, but for all that he kept the field. * * The elephant which carried him, unable to bear any longer the arrows and sword-cuts that he received, turned tail. 'Álam 'Alí Khán, dripping with blood from his wounds, turned his face towards the army of Nizámu-l Mulk, and cried out that the elephant had turned his back, but he had not. All his own arrows were exhausted, but such of

Bārha horse * * were glad to make their escape to 'Ālam Khán. This officer, when he heard that Diláwar Khán was approaching, went out of Aurangábád (to join him) with thirty thousand horse. He had reached the pass of Fardápúr, half-way to Burhánpúr, and was engaged in getting his artillery through, when he received the unwelcome news. Several of the Mahratta *sardárs* and his own associates advised him to return to Aurangábád, or to go to Ahmadnagar, and await the coming of Husain 'Alí Khán. Under the protection of the walls he might enlist men, and carry on the war with discretion, while the Mahrattas might be sent out to ravage and plunder in the vicinity of Nizámu-l Mulk's army, and to carry on that Cossack warfare for which the people of the Dakhin are so famous.

'Ālam 'Alí Khán, in his pride, paid no heed to these counsels, but went down with his whole force. After the defeat of Diláwar 'Alí Khán, Nizámu-l Mulk went and encamped at Burhánpúr. When he heard of 'Ālam 'Alí Khán's approach, he sent to him the coffins of Diláwar 'Alí Khán and Saiyid Sher Khán; and he wrote a few words of noble advice for 'Ālam Khán to send to his two uncles, deprecating any further shedding of the blood of Musulmáns. But this had no effect. Nizámu-l Mulk then marched from Burhánpúr to the river Púrná, sixteen or seventeen *kos* west of that city. 'Ālam 'Alí Khán was encamped near the tank of Hartála, close to the Púrná. Continuous rain, mire and mud, the flood of waters and the want of boats, prevented both armies from crossing the river, and compelled them to wait awhile. Nizámu-l Mulk, to change his ground, escape the mire, and find a ford, made a move of two *kos* in the direction of Birár, and encamped on the bank of the river, until, through the guidance of the *samindárs*, and the exertions of 'Iwaz Khán, a ford was discovered fourteen or fifteen *kos* away in the direction of Bálápúr.

In the middle of Ramazán, Nizámu-l Mulk crossed the river with his whole army. This passage was looked upon as a good omen, and inspirited his men. 'Ālam 'Alí Khán was disturbed

soldiers and recruits, and Emperor's men, were raised, and they hoped also to assemble the men of Bárha, and the contingents of the *râjas* and the *zamindârs* of the provinces. With this army, with a powerful train of artillery, and many warlike *amîrs* and gentlemen, Husain 'Alî sent them on the march for the Dakhin at the end of Shawwâl. Having himself marched two *kos* out of Agra, on the 1st Zî-l ka'da he dismissed Saiyid Khân-Jahân from the command of the artillery, and appointed Haidar Kulî Khân in his place. * * Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khân proceeded towards Dehlî. * *

There was a number of persons, old servants, attendants and officials of the two brothers, especially of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, who through them had risen to great honour and prosperity. But the infamous murder of the martyr Emperor (Farrukh Siyar), the sight of the indignities which the Emperor, the representative of the House of Tîmûr, had to endure, and the fact of the administration being under the direction of a base-born shop-keeper (Ratan Chand), had, under the guidance of the Converter of Hearts, so changed their feelings, that some of them often said, "Although we know that we shall suffer many hardships through the downfall of the Bárhas, still we hope that, through the blindness of its ill-wishers, the House of Tîmûr may again acquire splendour." Some of the relations and officials of the two brothers often offered up their prayers to God, and said, "The end of the lives of the two brothers, who have no children, is evident; but woe to all Bárha Saiyids, for we know what evil awaits our children through the misdeeds of these two men!"

Death of Amîru-l umarâ Husain 'Alî Khân Bárha by the Sword of Retributive Justice.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 901.] When Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khân, on the 7th Zî-l hijja, had reached a stage forty *kos* from Dehlî, a camel express arrived, despatched by Ghairat Khân (*sic*), with a letter from Ratan Chand, announcing the slaughter of Husain

the enemy's arrows as struck his face, or his body, or his *howda*, he quickly pulled out and returned. He received so many wounds in succession that he sank under them, and sacrificed his life for his uncles. He was only twenty-two years of age, but he was distinguished by all the determination and bravery of the Bárha Saiyids. Seventeen or eighteen other men of renown, riders upon elephants, fell in the battle, with a large number of inferior men. After the defeat Amin Khán, * * and other men of standing came over and joined Nizámu-l Mulk. Sankarájí, one of Rája Sábú's ministers (*madár*), was wounded and made prisoner. The elephants and guns fell into the hands of Nizámu-l Mulk, the rest was all plundered. Of the victorious army * * very few were killed or wounded. * * The wives and dependents of Husain 'Alí Khán, who were at Aurangábád, went with their property and belongings into the fort of Aurangábád. * * Mubáriz Khán, *Súbadár* of Haidarábád, and Diláwar Khán, his fast friend, with six or seven thousand horse, joined Nizámu-l Mulk.

Ministerial Arrangements.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 897.] After much deliberation the two Saiyids determined that 'Abdu-llah Khán should proceed to Dehlí and stay there, and that Husain 'Alí Khán, in attendance upon the Emperor, and accompanied by a number of the chief *amirs* and an army, should go to the Dakhin and take revenge of Nizámu-l Mulk. The Saiyids determined upon raising one hundred thousand men, and they sent money with *paricánas* and contracts (*kaul*) to summon the muster-masters (*jamá'dárs*) of the Bárhas and the Afgháns. There was a strong disinclination to entering the service of the two brothers, and the *amirs* who were to accompany Husain 'Alí Khán had received orders to raise squadrons, so men and horses were very scarce. The *jamá'dárs* far and near had noticed the declining fortunes of the two Saiyids, and they were unwilling to go to the Dakhin, so the desired army was not raised. But nearly 50,000 horse, old

apartment, where the Emperor had retired. He got there just at the time when the partisans of the two brothers were raging with violent designs against His Majesty. The Nawáb Kudsiya (the Emperor's mother), in her motherly love, forbade the entrance of the brave Sa'adat Khán. Assuring the inmates against harm from their enemies, he threw a shawl over his face and went boldly in; then with the utmost devotion he took the hand of the Emperor and led him out. I'timádu-d daula mounted him on his own elephant, and sat behind him as his attendant.

On the arrival of the Emperor at the chief gate, the soldiers and guards and the *amirs* had gone to their own abodes, according to their custom every day. The noise of the struggle had frightened away many men well disposed and ill disposed; the royal elephants and horses and the *amirs* were dispersed. Muhammad Amin Khán Chín (I'timádu-d daula), Kamru-d dín Khán, forty or fifty Mughals, and some gunners, altogether amounting to a hundred or two hundred men, were all that were present to form the Emperor's retinue. Haider Kulí Khán sent for the elephants and horses of the royal equipage, and to summon the men of the artillery. With the limited band of devoted men who were round the royal presence, and with the aid of Kamru-d dín Khán and Sa'adat Khán, he awaited the onslaught of that raging lion of the Bárbas, 'Izzat Khán.

'Alí, had gone to his tent and had loosened his belt to eat bread. When he heard the startling news, he was roused to the highest pitch.¹ Without waiting to collect the scattered soldiers, but displaying all his resolution, he instantly mounted an elephant, and went with four or five hundred horsemen towards the royal quarters.

Haidar Kulí Khán Bahádúr, notwithstanding the information given to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, had not been from the first a participator in the conspiracy formed for taking revenge of Husain 'Alí, but he saw that the Emperor had no power in the government of the State, and that everything was directed by Ratan Singh, and other vile infidels. The two Saiyids, the real rulers, thought themselves masters of the pen and masters of the sword in Hindústán, and as opposed to their judgment and the swords of the Bárhas, the Mughals of Irán and of Túrán were as nobodies. They did not remember that these Mughals had come a thousand or two thousand miles from their native countries, and that by their courage and sound judgment the wide realm of Hindústán, with its great kings and famous *rájás*, had by hard fighting been won for the Emperor Bábar. For two hundred years they had lived in the favour of the House of Tímúr, and they now felt the ignominy of seeing their Emperor without any power in his own State. Pride, courage, and honour, continually spurred this lion-hearted noble to make an end of this state of things, and to take revenge. But he waited for the day to come.

Now that it had pleased Heaven to exact vengeance, and to befriend the young inheritor of the throne, he stepped boldly forward, ready to show his loyalty and devotion in vigorous action. When the noise of contention rose high in every quarter, Sa'ádat Khán, under the direction of Haidar Kulí Khán and the orders of I'timádu-d daula, obeyed them and the dictates of his own courage. He went boldly into the inner

¹ Lit. "the world became dark in his eyes."

pointed *wazir*, with the addition to his titles of *Waziru-l mamálik Zafar-Jang*. Samsámu-d daula was made *bakhshi*, with an increase to 7000 and 7000 horse, and the title of *Amiru-l umará*. Kamru-d din Khán was made second *bakhshi* and *dárogha* of the *ghusl-khána*. He was named to other offices, and he received an increase of 1000 with 1000 horse. Haidar Kulí Khán received an increase to 6000 and 6000 horse, *do-aspahs* and *yak-aspahs*, and he was entitled *Násir Jang*. Sa'ádat Khán was advanced to 5000 and 5000 horse, with the title of *Sa'ádat Khán Bahádur*, and the privilege of kettle-drums. Zafar Khán, and every one of the old adherents and of the new corps of *Wálá-sháhis*, received liberal rewards according to their services and deserts.

Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán was greatly distressed by the grievous news of his brother's death, and his eyes filled with tears; but he knew that there was no remedy but resignation. Thinking that there was nothing to be gained by delay, he proceeded on his journey to Dehli. On the arrival of the mournful news, some of his friends advised him to hasten with all speed and heat (against the Emperor), before he was joined by the provincial troops, and before the forces of Husain 'Alí were won over. But Saiyid 'Abdu-llah did not approve of this course. He knew the Emperor was firmly established, while his own army was dispirited, and it was very inexpedient to march against the enemy without *toras*.¹ He thought it best to proceed to Dehli, there to assemble soldiers and win the support of the *amirs*. So he went on to Dehli.

As the news (of Husain 'Alí's death) spread, the Mewáttís and the turbulent *zamindárs* rose up and gathered round Saiyid 'Abdu-llah on every side. They attacked the baggage and tents in the rear, and plundered whatever they could lay hands on. A

¹ This word here seems to have a more general meaning than that given to it by the dictionaries. See note in Vol. IV. p. 251. Pavet de Courteille, in his *Dictionnaire Turk Oriental*, says, "Piques de bois et de fer qu'on relie ensemble avec des chaînes et des crochets et derrière lesquelles s'abritent les soldats."

After His Majesty had returned, Haidar Kulí Khán sent for Muhkam Singh, promising him the royal pardon and favour, with a *mansab* of 6000, ultimately raised to 7000. I'timádu-d daula sent several kind messages to Ratan Chand, who, vainly hoping to save his life and honour, descended from his proud elephant and went off much frightened in a *pálki* towards the royal quarters. A mob of Mughals, vagabonds of the markets, and idlers, who were as full of fury at his oppressive actions as the seeds of a pomegranate are full of blood, fell upon him, dragged him from the *pálki*, beat him with sticks, punched him, kicked him, tore the clothes from his body, and stripped him stark naked. They then carried him to I'timádu-d daula, of whom he begged for protection, and that noble gave him some clothes, and ordered him to be put in a collar and in chains. Rái Siroman Dás, a Káyat by caste, and an old agent of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, made the best use of his opportunity in the strife, shaved off his beard and whiskers, marked his forehead with ashes, and assuming the appearance of a *fakir*, he left his furniture to be plundered, carried off some money and valuables and hid himself for some days in the tent of his friend, until he managed to escape and join Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. * *

The corpses of Husain 'Alí Khán, 'Izzat Khán, and Núru-llah Khán, were placed in coffins covered with gold brocade, and after the funeral service was read over them they were sent to be buried at Ajmír, near the tomb of 'Abdu-llah Khán.¹ The common report is that Saiyid 'Abdu-llah repeatedly stated in public that no bearers were found to carry the coffins, that the covers of the coffins were stolen, and that the coffins remained lying on the ground, and were not buried. Common report says that they were eventually buried at Ajmír. * *

[vol. ii. p. 911.] The *mansab* of I'timádu-d daula was increased to eight thousand and eight thousand *do-aspaḥs*. He received a *kror* and fifty *lacs* of rupees as *in'am*, and was ap-

¹ "Commonly called Mía Khán, the founder of the family."—*Siyaru-l Muta-akhhirin*.

Murtazá Khán and Shujá'atu-llah Khán; but after a good deal of pressing, they admitted them and asked the reason of their coming; and when they were informed of it, they gave a sharp answer, flatly refusing. It is reported that after the envoys returned unsuccessful, they went to Nekú Siyar, and received the same answer. Next they went to Sultán Ibráhím, son of Rafi'u-sh Shán, and urged him to accept the proposition, saying that his acceptance would save the lives of the party of the Saiyids. After some conversation he consented.

Elevation of Sultán Muhammad Ibráhím by way of loan¹ ('áriyat.)

[Text, vol. ii. p. 914.] On the 9th Zí-l hijja, 1132 (1st October, 1720 A.D.), Sultán Muhammad Ibráhím was raised to the throne with the title of Abú-l Fath Zahíru-d dín Muhammad Ibráhím. Two days afterwards Saiyid 'Abdu-llah arrived and paid his homage. He received the title of *Gháshtu-d dín Ghálib Jang*, the position of *Amiru-l umará* with the duties of *Mir-bakhshí*, and a *mansab* of 8000. Najmu-d dín Khán was made second *bakhshí*, Salábat Khán third *bakhshí*, and Bairam Khán fourth, each one obtaining an advance in rank. A number of courtiers of the time of Rafi'u-d Daraját, who were in confinement, or had no *mansabs*, or despaired of promotion, were sent for and received *mansabs* and sums of money for their expenses. They were directed to enlist horsemen at the rate of eighty rupees per month for each man, and a sum of thirty or forty thousand rupees was advanced for this purpose. Hámid Khán Bahádur, uncle of Nizámu-l Mulk, who was deprived of his *jágir* when the war with the latter broke out, was restored to it, and received a sum of money. I'tikád Khán and * * other nobles of Farrukh Siyar's days all received favours, and had expectations held out to them. [*Enlistment of horsemen.*]

[vol. ii. p. 917.] On the 17th Zí-l hijja Saiyid 'Abdu-llah came out of Dehlí with Sultán Ibráhím and went to the 'I'd-gáh.

¹ For a temporary purpose.

detachment of the discouraged army was sent against them, but without success. A party of men who were with the Saiyid's tent equipage were killed along with their commanding officers. A convoy that was coming from Delhi, with property belonging to Husain 'Alī Khān, was attacked at the *sarāi* of Jahāna, two or three *kos* from Saiyid 'Abdu-llah's army, and it and the property and the wives of the men all fell into the hands of the marauders.

In the *jāgirs* belonging to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and in those of all the Saiyids, and of the officials and collectors of the two brothers, wherever the news came, the rent-paying *raiya*ts and the turbulent *samūdārs* seized the opportunity and turned out the collectors of the *jāgirdārs*. Before order was restored in the State, the produce of the *kharīf* harvest had for the most part gone into the hands of the *raiya*ts.

Saiyid 'Abdu-llah sent Shujā'at 'Alī Khān and Murtazā Khān to the capital, and he also wrote to Najmu-d dīn 'Alī Khān, *Shibadār* of Delhi, for the purpose of raising soldiers. On the 8th Zi-l hijja the news reached Najmu-d dīn. But before the news became public, he first put forth a statement the opposite of the information he had received, and sent a body of men, horse and foot, under the Kotwāl, to the house of I'timādu-d daula, and the work of investing it went on for a watch or two of the night. The people in the house, who had received news beforehand, throw up defences and showed themselves resolved to defend it. The news spread and became the common talk in every street and market.

A letter now came from Saiyid 'Abdu-llah forbidding all injury to the family and establishment of I'timādu-d daula, or else the *Shibadār* thought better of his futile proceeding and recalled his men. On the day of the *'Id-i kurbān* Najmu-d dīn 'Alī Khān went in tears to the prayers, and when he returned he sent the envoys of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khān to the residence of the sons of Jahāndār Shāh, to make provision for the government of the State. The young men had the door shut against the envoys

the remainder were present. Afterwards there were the followers of the traitor Chúrámán, of Muhkam Singh, and sundry other of the adherents of Husain 'Alí Khán, and the *samíndárs* of the neighbourhood. According to report, the number exceeded 100,000 horse. All around as far as the eye could reach the earth seemed covered with horsemen.

Chúrámán Ját arrived with his brother, bringing three elephants and several camels, that he had cut off from the royal army. These were offered as an introduction to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, who gave them to that good-for-nothing fellow (Chúrámán). One matter of great discouragement to the old followers of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and of favourable influence on the fortunes of the Emperor, was this. Notwithstanding all the lavish distribution of the money, which had been collected by carts full from house to house, and which had been extorted in bribery or with violence by Ratan Chand from the wretched *raiya*ts, and laid up for a time like this, when it would be spent in vain ;—notwithstanding all this, the old soldiers wanted two months' pay in advance, that they might free themselves from their liabilities to the bankers, and provide themselves with warm clothing, arms, and harness. They were satisfied with the promise of one month's pay, and at last money for the pay of ten days of Muharram was somehow raised, but they could not get the balance. It was very different in the royal army, where Haidar Kulí Khán *Bahádur Násir Jang* had won the hearts of the artillerymen by exerting himself to the best of his ability to obtain the settlement of their pay.

On the 19th Muharram the royal army encamped at Sháhpúr.

* * The army was not half as numerous as that of the enemy, and it waited for the arrival of Saifu-d daula, 'Abdu-s Samad Khán Bahádur *Diler Jang*, and Rájádhíráj Jai Singh. But although intelligence of their approach was brought, distance and other obstacles delayed their arrival. Muhammad Khán Bangash came in with two or three thousand horse. 'Aziz Khán Rohilla, Sábit Khán, and Báyzíd Khán Mewáttí joined with their forces, and three or four thousand horse arrived from

Here he was joined by Ghulám 'Alí Khán from the royal army, by Tahawwur 'Alí Khán from Ágra, and by others. * * Intelligence arrived that the Emperor Muhammad Sháh, being freed from all trouble about Husain 'Alí Khán, was marching to the capital by the Rájput road. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah made his second and third march towards the *dargáh* of Kutbu-d dín; but when he heard of the Emperor's march from Ágra, he took the road to Farídábád, where he waited in expectation of Saifu-d dín 'Alí Khán and others with their Bárha soldiers. A very extraordinary fact was that, notwithstanding the large outlay of money, the royal domestics and officials in the train of Sultán Ibráhím rode horses with no saddles. At every stage parties of Bárha soldiers, Afgháns with their troops, and *samindárs* on elephants, joined the army of Sultán Ibráhím. Soldiers of Husain 'Alí Khán, who had entered the service of Muhammad Sháh and received a month's pay, deserted when they found an opportunity, and came over every day in parties of three or four hundred to join Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. Such was the eagerness to enter the service that one horse (*yábú*) would receive the *dágh* (brand) two or three times.

Sultán Ibráhím reached Niyúl, thirty-five *kos* from Dehlí. Here he was joined by Saifu-d dín 'Alí Khán, brother of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and others, who had been sent by Husain 'Alí Khán to raise forces in the neighbourhood of Bárha. They brought with them altogether ten or twelve thousand horse, also 150 carts full of Bárha Saiyids, each of whom thought himself equal to twenty well-accounted horsemen, and had come in the expectation of making himself an *amír*, an elephant-rider, and a general. Each of these demanded one year's pay, a horse, and a robe. * * On the 10th Muharram, 1133 (1st Nov. 1720 A.D.), as the author has ascertained from the rolls of the *Bakhshí*, and as he heard from the mouth of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, more than 90,000 horsemen had been entered in the lists. Of these fourteen or fifteen thousand perhaps were recruits, who rode ponies (*yábú*); some of the old soldiers were dispersed about the vicinity, and

soldiers took to flight. * * The Saiyids of Bárha charged many times most heroically, and towards the close of day they nearly won the battle, through a movement made by Najmu-d dín 'Alí Khán Bahádur. He advanced a battery of guns under the cover of some trees on a hill near a village, and made a bold charge with fourteen or fifteen thousand horse upon the royal artillery, when a fierce contest followed. * * At length some of the enemy's guns were taken by the Imperialists, and the Bárhas lost their battery. * * As night came on, Saiyid 'Abdu-llah ordered a small tent to be pitched for him to pass the night in on the field; but he afterwards directed it to be removed. * * When it grew dark, Haidar Kulí Khán pushed forward his guns, and opened so heavy a fire, * * that the enemy fell back, and some went off for refuge to the cities and towns, but most of these were plundered on their way by the *zambudáirs* and Mewáttis. * * Out of the 100,000 horsemen of the enemy's army, only seventeen or eighteen thousand held their ground through the terrible cannonade of that night. The chiefs and the old Bárha adherents passed all the night hungry and thirsty on the backs of their elephants and horses, for the water was in the possession of the Jáís, who plundered friend and foe alike, and no horsemen or footmen of either side could reach the water. No one slept, and all the chiefs looked with anxiety for the morning. Towards morning a cannon-ball struck the *howda* in which Múhkam Singh was seated, when he jumped upon a horse and fled precipitately. For some time afterwards no one knew whether he was alive or dead. * * When morning came, Muhamimad Sháh, who had been sitting on his elephant for eight or nine watches, gave the order to advance. On the other side, Najmu-d dín Khán, with some other brave and devoted Bárha chiefs, boldly came forward. They were met by the valiant and trusty men of the royal army, and a hard fight ensued. [*Names of killed and wounded.*] Najmu-d dín 'Alí, the leading spirit of the Bárha army, received three or four dangerous wounds, and was struck near the eyes by arrows and blinded. When Saiyid 'Abdu-llah saw the desperate position

Rája Jai Singh. Some *samindárs* of the country round also joined. * * Two or three leading men, who deemed it expedient to stay with the royal army, such as Muhkam Singh and other protégés of the two brothers, kept up a correspondence with Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, assuring him that they would join him at the proper time. The wretched Ohúráman Ját, who belonged to a race of traitors, * * communicated with Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, who urged him to set fire to the powder magazine, or to make a dash and bring the artillery bullocks over to him. The rascal did his best to accomplish this, but he was foiled by the vigilance of Haidar Kulí Khán.

Battle between Muhammad Sháh and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 921.] [*Dispositions made of the officers and forces on both sides.*] On the 12th Muharram 'Abdu-llah Khán's forces encamped at Husainpúr, three *kos* from the Imperial army, and made arrangements for battle. But there were such contentions among the officers, who were unwilling to serve under the orders of each other, that a proper disposition with right and left wings could not be made. Each chief raised his standard where he chose, and would not consent to obey any other. * * On the 17th of the month, during the night, Muhkam Singh, Khudádád Khán, and Khán Mirzá, with seven or eight hundred horse, deserted the Royal army, and joined that of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. * * Muhammad Sháh mounted his elephant to take the field; but as he did so, he ordered that the head of the vile Ratan Chand, who had been the chief cause of the unpopularity of the Saiyids, should be struck from his filthy body, so that the world might be gladdened by being cleansed from his polluting existence. So his head was cut off and thrown as a propitious omen before the feet of the Emperor's elephant. The royal forces were then set in motion. * * The deadly fire of the royal artillery so shook the new recruits in the enemy's army, that some of the pony-riders and some even of the old

they saw what was passing, fled with Saifu-d dín 'Alí Khán and * * towards Dehlí, leaving the brave Bárhas and Afgháns with the *bakhshi* to their fate.

Saiyid 'Abdu-llah received a sword-cut on his hand and a flesh wound from an arrow in the forehead, when Haidar Kulí and his companions, sword in hand, charged upon him. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, exclaiming that he was a *Saiyid*, called for quarter, and Haidar Kulí mercifully made him prisoner. Gházíu-d dín Khán kept up the fight for nearly two *gharis* after Saiyid 'Abdu-llah's capture, and then fell back with a portion of the baggage which had escaped the pillage of the Játs and Mughals.

The shouts of victory rose high from the army of Muhammad Sháh, and Haidar Kulí brought his prisoner on an elephant to the presence of Muhammad Sháh, who showed the clemency of the race of Tímúr, spared his life, and placed him under the charge of Haidar Kulí Khán. Saiyid Najmu-d dín, who was so severely wounded that there was no hope of his life; Saiyid 'Alí Khán *bakhshi*, and some others, were made prisoners. Hámid Khán and some others came over to the royal army in hope of receiving quarter. All the elephants and treasure and *matériel* which remained from the plunderers was searched for and collected.

The innocent Sultán Muhammad Ibráhím had sought refuge in the jungle, but he was made prisoner, and brought before the Emperor; but as he had had no choice in what he had done, he received the royal pardon.

On Friday, 14th Muharram, intelligence of the fall of the Bárha rule and of the captivity of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah reached Dehlí. His women, of whom he had gathered a large number around him, were in dismay; but a good many of them made the best of the time, and before the arrival of the royal guard, they seized whatever they could, and disguising themselves with old veils and sheets, they took their departure. Some, who were of noble Saiyid birth, threw the sheet of modesty over their heads, and remained in their places.

of his brother, he brought up a party of the Bárha braves to his rescue. Muhammad Sháh, hearing of the fierce struggle that was going on, wished to join in the fight, and give proofs of the hereditary courage of his race, but his attendants prevented him.

The villain Chúrámán Ját had several times attacked the (royal) baggage, and killed several men. He carried off nearly a thousand bullock and baggage camels, which had been collected on a sand-bank by the side of the Jumna, with no suspicion of the rascal's intention. He also plundered some other camels carrying provisions and official papers. Then he had the audacity to move up in support of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and attacked the royal forces. Muhammad Sháh himself shot three or four arrows at him. Itimádu-d daula and Hádi Khán, commander of the royal musketeers, discharged their arrows at the accursed wretch.

When Saiyid 'Abdu-llah charged with his brave companions to the support of the remaining Bárha Saiyids, they recovered their powers, and fought so fiercely that, notwithstanding the exertions of Samsámu-d daula and other brave chiefs, the royal army began to waver. Haidar Kulí Khán and * * seeing how matters stood, staked their lives upon the venture, and charged upon the flank of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. The Saiyid, on becoming aware of what was passing, drove his elephant against Haidar Kulí. * * The attack of Haidar Kulí was overwhelming. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah had often, at the critical point of a battle, followed the practice of the braves of Hindústán, and had descended from his elephant and fought bravely on foot in the sight of many; but on this fated day, when he fought against the Imperial army, he so lost command of himself that, without showing his prowess, he was flurried, and dismounted from his elephant in the hope that the Bárha braves would dismount from their horses and join him (in a charge). Some two or three thousand horse, under the *bakhshi* of the army and other commanders, remained firm, more or less near to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah; but the rest of the army, when

Rája Ajít Singh, *Súbadár* of Ahmadábád and Ajmír, had exceeded his authority by prohibiting the slaughter of cows in his jurisdiction; so Sa'ádat Khán, *Súbadár* of Ágra, was summoned to Court, and sent to punish him; but he begged to be excused. Afterwards Samsámu-d daula, Kamru-d dín Khán Bahádúr, and Haidar Kulí Khán, were ordered to discharge this duty. Each one accepted the duty reposed in him, and even sent on his travelling equipage; but they all retracted, and did not think it advisable to proceed; especially Samsámu-d daula, who was afraid that it would be a tedious undertaking, and that the royal funds would not suffice. It might even cause disturbances in other parts, where men were ill disposed. So not one of these *amírs* was willing to go. At this time intelligence arrived that Nizámu-l Mulk had given Rája Ajít Singh a sharp warning. So the Rája sent a message professing obedience, announcing his withdrawal from Ahmadábád, and praying for his retention in the *súba* of Ajmír. * * Haidar Kulí Khán was appointed to succeed him at Ahmadábád.

Nizámu-l Mulk Minister.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 939.] In the latter days of Rabí'u-l ákhir, 1133 A.H. (February, 1721 A.D.), Muhammad Amín Khán Chín died, after a four or five days' illness. Ináyatu-llah Khán was directed to perform the duties of *razár* as deputy. Letters had repeatedly been written to Nizámu-l Mulk, calling him to Court; for several affairs of State required settlement and the matter of the office of *razár* waited for the counsel of that master of the sword and pen. Nizámu-l Mulk, having settled the affairs of the Afgháns at Bījápúr, returned to Aurangábád, and setting out from thence at the end Zí-l hijja, he reached Dehlí in the latter part of Rabí'u-l ákhir. Envious detractors had cast aspersions upon him; but the Emperor acted as if he had never heard them, and sent Samsámu-d daula in state to meet him. On the 22nd Rabí'u-l ákhir, he entered the city, and paid his

On the 17th Muharram Muhammad Sháh began his march from the battle-field to Dehlí, before even he rewarded his supporters by augmentations of their *mansabs* or promotions in rank. Ghulám 'Alí Khán had been left in Dehlí with Najábat 'Alí Khán as representative of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah. Whatever they could get together of *ashrafis* and jewels, they took with them, and went out of the citadel and fortifications, now that the position was changed. Ghulám 'Alí saw that the times were too dangerous for one man to trouble himself about another; so he saved himself and such property as he was able to carry off. Najábat 'Alí was a youth of thirteen or fourteen; he was the adopted son of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, and brother's son of him and of Ghulám 'Alí. He was made prisoner by some of Muhammad Sháh's men, and conducted to the presence, when he was ordered to be confined with Saiyid 'Abdu-llah.

On the 19th, Muhammad Sháh reached the outskirts of the city, and halted there two days for arranging sundry affairs of State. He paid a visit to the *dargáh* of Khwája Kutbu-d dín, and gave a sum of money to the attendants. * * The chiefs and officers who had shown their gallantry and devotion in the battle now received augmentations, and gifts of robes and elephants and jewels, the detail of which would exceed due limits. Haidar Kulí Khán Bahádúr Násir Jang received an addition of a thousand to his six thousand, and was advanced to the title of *Mu'izzu-d daula*. On the 22nd, Muhammad Sháh entered the capital. * * *Saifu-d daula* 'Abdu-s Samad Khán Bahádúr *Diler Jang* and *Aghar Khán* came from Láhore to pay their homage. * * In the month of Safar Rája Jai Singh Dhíráj came from his native land, and Rája Giridhar Bahádúr from the *súba* of Oude, * * and on the representations of these two, the order which had been given for the collection of the *jizya* from the *zimmi*s was recalled, on account of the distress which had been suffered from the operations of the armies, and because grain was dear, and the collection was deferred until the recovery of the prosperity of the *raiyats*, and the settlement of the country.

Death of Saiyid 'Abdu-llah.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 941.] Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán died on the last day of Zí-l hijja in this year (1134 A.H., 30th September, 1722 A.D.). It is said that he was poisoned. If so, it is extraordinary that I should have heard from the mouths of credible men the statement that when Muhammad Sháh started on his march against Sultán Ibráhím and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, he vowed to God, that in the event of his gaining the victory and securing his throne, he would not kill or

homage to the Emperor. In consequence of the charges brought against him, to record which would be a perversion of language, some days were passed in deliberation; but on the 5th Jumáda-l-awwal, 1134 A.H. (8th February, 1722 A.D.), in the fourth year of the reign, he was appointed *wazir*, and received the usual robe, a dagger, an ornamental pen-case, and a diamond ring of great value.

Nizámu-l Mulk was anxious to carry out the duties of his office, to maintain the character of the Emperor, and to accumulate funds, without which a sovereign falls into disrepute. But he was unable to accomplish his wishes through the interference of adversaries, who maligned him to the Emperor, and obstructed his authority as *wazir*. In particular, Kokí Pádsháh, a woman of great charms and intelligence, colluded with Khwája Khidmatgár Khán, who was said to be one of the Emperor's close companions, and, under the show of providing means and raising funds, they levied large sums under the name of *peshkash* for the Emperor and for themselves. This was a great difficulty in the *wazir's* way. Other associates of the Emperor made ridiculous insinuations against Nizámu-l Mulk, which the weak-minded Emperor believed. Haidar Kulí Khán, who had firmly established himself in the command of the artillery, meddled with plausible talk in revenue and civil affairs. When Nizámu-l Mulk spoke about it to the Emperor, and he, in a prudent and gentle way, prohibited Haidar Kulí Khán from pursuing that course, the Khán was offended, and asked to be sent to his *súba*. Leave being granted, he left a deputy at Court, and set off for Ahmadábád in the middle of Jumáda-l ákhir. On arriving there, he seized upon the *jágírs* of several royal servants and courtiers. When this was complained of repeatedly, an admonitory *farmán* was sent to him, prohibiting the sequestration of *jágírs*. But this had no effect. At length his *jágírs* in the neighbourhood of Dehlí were seized in compensation for those he had resumed at Ahmadábád.

with the covetousness which the wealth of 'Abdu-l Ghafûr had excited in his heart, but that he had prevailed over his temptation, and had thrown off all desire for the money. The *duân* therefore was to send for 'Abdu-l Hai, and to remove all claim to the property, and to present him with a robe and a horse, without his having to spend a *dâm* or a *diram*, and without having to apply to any other person. [*Other anecdotes.*]

Dakhin Muhkam Singh and other of his officials perverted his nature. But both the brothers were distinguished in their day for their generosity and leniency towards all mankind. The inhabitants of those countries which were innocent of contumacy and selfishness made no complaints of the rule of the Saiyids. In liberality and kindness to learned men and to the needy, and in the protection of men of merit, Husain 'Alí Khán excelled his elder brother, and was the Hátim suited to his day. Numbers owed their comfort to the cooked food and raw grain which he gave away. At the time of the scarcity at Aurangábád, he appropriated a large sum of money and a great quantity of grain to supply the wants of the poor and of widows. The reservoir at Aurangábád was begun by him, and although A'azzu-d daula 'Iwaz Khán enlarged and made higher the buildings and the mosque, still he was the originator of that extensive reservoir, which, in summer when water is scarce, relieves the sufferings of the inhabitants. In their native country of Bárha they built *saráis*, bridges, and other buildings for the public benefit. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah was remarkable for his patience, endurance, and wide sympathy.

Mullá 'Abdu-l Ghafúr Bhora, chief of the merchants in the port of Surat, died leaving a *kror* and several *lacs* of rupees in cash and effects. Although he left heirs, Haidar Kulí Khán, who was then *mutasaddi* of the port, in order to show his zeal and his desire to please the Emperor Farrukh Siyar, seized upon all the property, and made a report to Court. Just at this time the change of government occurred which has been related, and 'Abdu-l Hai, one of the sons, went to Court to complain, and he stated the case to the two brothers. He offered to pay fifteen *lacs* of rupees for the release of the property, besides the sums which he promised Ratan Chhand and other of the officials. The port of Surat was under the jurisdiction of Husain 'Alí Khán. One morning, before the rising of the sun, he sent for Diyánat Khán, who had just been appointed *dirán* of the *khálisá*, and told him that he had gone through a sharp conflict in the night

announced his intention of waiting upon His Majesty. Accordingly he set off for Dehli by way of Ajmír. Nizámu-l Mulk ascertained this fact when he was near the Nerbadda, seven or eight *kos* from Ahmadábád. He appointed Hámid Khán to act as deputy *súbadár* of Ahmadábád, and at the beginning of Jumáda-l ákhir turned back towards the capital.

*Return of Nizámu-l Mulk to the Dakhin for the second time.*¹

[Text, vol. ii. p. 947.] When Nizámu-l Mulk arrived at Court, he was anxious, as a prudent minister, to show his devotion and competency in the service of the Emperor, by settling affairs of State, accumulating funds, and putting down disturbances. But there was the envy and opposition of the courtiers, especially of Kokí Pádsháh, who would interfere in ministerial affairs, and by receiving bribes and improper gifts, was bringing the Emperor into bad odour. She was strongly opposed to Nizámu-l Mulk. Lastly there was the indifference of the Emperor himself, who made no resistance to the ill repute he was falling into. For these reasons, it appeared to Nizámu-l Mulk that he could not accomplish what was right by continuing to act as *razár*.

Various reasons have been assigned for Nizámu-l Mulk's second departure for the Dakhin; but I will relate the explanation which I have heard from credible sources.

At this time intelligence came to Muhammad Sháh from Persia, of the success of Mahmúd Khán Afghán over Sultán Husain Sháh, the sovereign of Írán. It appeared that the territory from Isfahán to Shíráz had passed into his hands; that the people of Isfahán had suffered great hardships; that Sultán Husain had been made prisoner, and that Prince Tahmásp, with the brothers and sons of Sultán Husain, had left the fortress of Isfahán, with the object of raising forces.

¹ This heading from the Text has been here thrown back one paragraph.

hold in the night, having set fire to the houses, blown up the powder magazine, and carried off with them all the money and valuables that were portable. They left their guns and grain, which, with the fort, were taken possession of by the royal forces. There was a strong report of there being treasure in the fort; but although great search was made, and several places were dug up, not a trace of it was found.

Haidar Kulí Khán.

[vol. ii. p. 946.] When Haidar Kulí Khán heard of the confiscation of his *jágirs* around Dehlí, he represented to His Majesty, through some of the *amirs* at Court, that although his *jágirs* had been seized, he would not fail in his duty and fidelity. As stated above, censures of these proceedings were repeatedly sent to Haidar Kulí Khán without any effect. At last the complaints of the *jágirdárs* and the insubordination of Haidar Kulí passed all bounds, so the *súbadárí* of Ahmadábád was taken away from him and given to Gházíu-d dín Khán Bahádur, eldest son of Nizámu-l Mulk.

After the Ját affair was settled, Nizámu-l Mulk left Court on the 2nd Safar, in the fifth year of the reign, to provide for the government of Ahmadábád, and to coerce Haidar Kulí Khán, if he made any resistance. When he reached Ágra, some deceitful plausible letters arrived from Haidar Kulí, making all sorts of excuses. Nizámu-l Mulk continued his march till he reached the confines of Málwá. From letters which he then received from Ahmadábád, it appeared that Haidar Kulí Khán was very ill, and that he had shown some signs of insanity. According to other accounts, it appears that when Haidar Kulí Khán heard of the approach of Nizámu-l Mulk, of his being joined by 'Iwaz Khán and the armies of the Dakhin, and by Bájí Ráo, and other Mahrattas of Rájá Sáhú, and of the readiness of his associates in Ahmadábád to recognize Nizámu-l Mulk, he, for the purpose of defeating that general, feigned to be sick, and gave out that symptoms of madness had appeared. Haidar Kulí sent his son to the Emperor with a letter, in which he offered his excuses, and

name of hunting, and left Dehlí. Upon the excuse of needing change of air, he went thirty or forty *kos* from the capital to the side of the Ganges. There he hunted and recruited his health.

While he was so engaged, bad news arrived of the disorders caused by the Mahrattas and other insurgents in Ahmadábád and Málwá, the first of these two provinces being held in the name of Nizámu-l Mulk himself, and the other in the name of his son, Gházíu-d dín Khán Bahádur. This became the common talk, and Nizámu-l Mulk having written on the subject to the Emperor, received permission to go and restore order in his two provinces. * * Before he arrived at Ujjain, the Mahrattas heard of his approach, and taking warning departed from the river Nerbadda towards the Dakhin. The other insurgents also put a stop to their outrages.

Nizámu-l Mulk followed them to the neighbourhood of Ujjain; but when he heard that they had crossed the Nerbadda, he gave up the pursuit and fell back to the *pargana* of Sahúr, near Sironj, in Málwá, intending to return to Court after he had set in order the affairs of that province. While he was thus occupied, important intelligence came from the Dakhin. Mubáriz Khán, *názim* of the *súba* of Haidarábád, two years before, at the close of the war with 'Ālam 'Alí Khán, came to Nizámu-l Mulk, and made great professions of zeal and devotion. Nizámu-l Mulk took an interest in him, and obtained for him from the Emperor an addition of 2000 to his former 4000, the title of '*Imádu-l Mulk Mubáriz Khán Bahádur Hizbar Jang*, [and other distinctions for himself and his sons]. Mubáriz Khán had served Nizámu-l Mulk faithfully. He now gave out that he had been appointed *Súbadár* of the whole Dakhin, and leaving Haidarábád, he went to take possession of Aurangábád. * *

The letters which Nizámu-l Mulk received from Court informed him that his son Gházíu-d dín, whom he had left as his deputy in the office of *wasír*, had been removed, that I'timádu-d daula Kamru-d dín Khán had been appointed *wasír*, and that under the influence of Kokí, bribery had increased.

One day Nizámu-l Mulk, with the best intentions, told the Emperor that the system of farming the *kháid* lands was very injurious to the country, and ought to be set aside; secondly, that the bribes which were received, under the name of *pushkash*, were disgraceful to the Emperor and adverse to good policy; thirdly, that the *jizya* upon infidels ought to be collected as in the days of Aurangzeb; fourthly, he recalled the fact that in the days of the rebellion against the Emperor Humáyún, when the realm of Hindústán passed into the hands of Sher Sháh Afghán, the Sháh of Persia had rendered great help and service, and had shown hospitality to Humáyún, when he went towards Persia. If the Emperor Muhammad Sháh were now to help the ruler of Persia in repelling the domination of the Afgháns, it would be recorded in history as a lasting honour to the House of Timúr. The Emperor said, "Whom have I got to send on such a service?" Nizámu-l Mulk replied, "Any one of your enterprising officers whom you might send on this service would carry out your orders; or if it should please you to name me for the duty, I would strive heart and soul to accomplish it," and he added some more professions of his loyalty and devotion.

When the Emperor consulted with other nobles of his Court on this subject, a party of them perverted the good opinion which the Emperor entertained of Nizámu-l Mulk, and set him against his wise and excellent minister. The etiquette of the Court and the discipline of the State had fallen entirely away from the proper dignified standard of royalty, and Nizámu-l Mulk desired that orders should be issued to restore it to a suitable style. This greatly irritated the courtiers—and day by day they made statements about Nizámu-l Mulk which were entirely opposed to his thoughts, and by envious malicious insinuations they poisoned the mind of the Emperor against his devoted servant. They put such injurious designs into the head of the inexperienced Emperor against Nizámu-l Mulk, that for the sake of prudence and to save his honour, he at the end of Rabí'u-l awwal, in the sixth year of the reign, got a few days' leave of absence in the

many wounds he received. Shouts of victory then rose high from the successful army. * * Nizámu-l Mulk next day provided for the burial of the dead, and took especial care that the wounds of Mubáriz Khán's two sons should be carefully attended to. * * He afterwards gave them a large amount in goods, jewels, and stuffs, to set them up in life again.

For these reasons, and for others which cannot be committed to writing, he proceeded from Málwá towards the Dakhin, which country indeed was the conquest of that illustrious general and his ancestors. * * At the end of the month of Ramazán he arrived at Aurangábád. He repeatedly wrote to Mubáriz Khán, but the answers which he received were proud and haughty, and made no profession of giving up his designs. Nizámu-l Mulk was very calm and forgiving. He again sent several admonitory letters, reminding Mubáriz of old obligations, and he waited at Aurangábád for two months to see what time would bring forth. But the destroying angel had lain his hands upon Mubáriz Khán, and led him towards Aurangábád.

Mubáriz Khán was joined by Bahádur Khán, brother of Dáúd Khán Paní, and by others with considerable bodies of men. He had collected large numbers of infantry, and his army was daily increasing. This was a great injury to the country, and encouraged the restless Mahrattas. At the end of Zí-l ka'da Nizámu-l Mulk marched out of Aurangábád, and encamped by the tank of Jaswant, near the city. He still wrote letters to Mubáriz, to prevent a war, and save the lives of Musulmán's; but his adversary was deluded with the prospect of being *Súbadár* of the Dakhin, and remonstrances were of no avail. Mubáriz took counsel with his adherents. First he proposed to make a rapid march and fall unawares on Nizámu-l Mulk. Then he proposed to threaten his opponent's flanks, and by a rapid march in another direction throw himself into Aurangábád, and make himself master of the city. This plan he endeavoured to carry out. * * On the 23rd Muharram a battle was fought near the town of Shakar-Khera, in Birár, about forty *kos* from Aurangábád. [*Long account of the plan and progress of the battle.*] Two sons of Mubáriz Khán were killed, and two were wounded and made prisoners. Mubáriz Khán's elephant-driver received a number of wounds, and fell off the elephant. The Khán himself then wrapped a garment soaked with his own blood around him, and drove the animal himself, until he fell dead under the

prepared to resist. The forces of Pílúji now fell on Rustam 'Alí's baggage, and after some sharp fighting Rustam 'Alí's force was routed, and he himself was killed. The Mahrattas on both sides fell to plundering, and carried off whatever they could from the *bázárs* and shops of Ahmadábád and the districts round Baroda.

The Emperor Muhammad Sháh, on being informed of these events, sent Sarbuland Khán to be governor of Ahmadábád. Nizámu-l Mulk recalled Hámid Khán. But although Sarbuland Khán had an army of seven or eight thousand horse, most of whom were veterans, and a strong force of artillery, the Mahratta forces so swarmed in the province that he was unable to settle its affairs or to punish the enemy. Their power increased from day to day, and the price of grain rose high. Sarbuland Khán was as it were besieged in the city; all that he could do was to wink at and rail against the Mahrattas, for as they numbered nearly 30,000 horse, he was unable to fight and chastise them. They ravaged the country round Ahmadábád up to its very gates. Many merchants and traders and artisans were so ill-treated and oppressed, that they left their native land, and wandered into foreign parts. The country could not repel the ravagers, and in its desolation it was unable to pay the sum required of it for the support of the soldiers, whose numbers were excessive. The officers with parties of men demanded their pay, and used violence and insolence in extorting it. At length it was arranged that, for the sake of quietness and to stop disturbances, the officers should obtain orders drawn upon bankers and merchants for the pay. With these drafts they went to the bankers, seized them, put them in prison, and tortured them until they got the money. Bír-nagar was a flourishing town full of merchants of the famous Nágár class, who carried on there a trade amounting to *lacs* of rupees. That district, beyond all the flourishing places of Hindústán, abounded in every sort of wealth, gold, cash, and every production of nature; but it was ransacked by the enemy because the *súbadárs* were unable to answer the cries of the inhabitants for protection.

hearing of his approach, Shujá'at 'Alí and Ibráhím Kulí desired to go into the city and oppose his entry, or, according to another account, to obtain promises of safety, and then to submit. There was a continual state of hostility and war between these three brothers and the Mahrattas, and they did not pay the *chauth*. Safdar Khán Bání had a bitter hatred of Haidar Kulí Khán. With seven or eight thousand horse he joined the enemy, and went to meet Hámid Khán, and persuaded him that the three brothers were resolved upon resistance. It happened that Shujá'at Khán, riding on an elephant, met Hámid Khán as he was entering, and he drove his elephant towards that of Hámid Khán. A struggle then began, in which Shujá'at Khán was killed. Ibráhím Kulí Khán hid himself in his house, * * but he was soon afterwards killed in a party fight. * * Rustam 'Alí Khán heard at Surat of the death of his brothers, and his fraternal blood boiled to avenge them. He immediately began his preparations for exacting vengeance.

Between Rustam 'Alí Khán and Pílújí, a Mahratta chieftain at the head of ten or eleven thousand men, there had been for a year past a continual state of war, in consequence of a refusal to pay the *chauth*. There had been repeated conflicts, but no decisive action. Rustam 'Alí, under pressure of events, made friendly overtures to Pílújí, and after a peace was settled he united the Mahratta's forces with his own. Pílújí, on his side, thought that fortune was in his favour, and joined him with his forces. * * Hámid Khán, hearing of Rustam 'Alí's preparations, prepared his army and artillery, and he was joined by a Mahratta chief named Kantha, with 12,000 horse. On reaching the banks of the Mahí, a great battle was fought, with a heavy loss of killed and wounded on both sides. Hámid Khán was defeated, and his tents and baggage were plundered. He fled from the field to the river-side. Rustam 'Alí, having gained the victory, encamped a *kos* or two farther on. Hámid Khán won over the crafty Pílújí, and on the next day gave battle again. Rustam 'Alí had lost most of his brave veterans in the fight, but he

which was levied from the *raiya*s at the rate of ten per cent., should be abandoned. He thus got rid of the presence of the *kamátsh-dárs* of the *chauth*, and the *gumáshtas* of the *sar-desh-mukhi* and the *ráhdári*, from which latter impost great annoyance had fallen upon travellers and traders.

Events up to the Fourteenth Year of the Reign of Muhammad Sháh.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 973.] When Nizámu-l Mulk was removed from the office of *cazir*, Kamru-d dín Khán Bahádur was appointed his successor, but a gracious *farmán* was sent to Nizámu-l Mulk, with a robe and other presents, appointing him to the *icakalat*.¹

After losing two or three children which were born to him in his *harem* and soon died, a son was born of his wife, the daughter of Farrukh Siyar, who received the name of Ahmad Sháh.

Haider Kulí Khán *Mir-i álash* was sleeping with his wife in his *khas-khána*,² when it caught fire. His wife was burnt to death, and he was so injured before he was rescued, that medical treatment was of no avail, and he died. [*Political changes in Persia.*]

Conclusion of the Work.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 978.] The history of the reign of the Emperor Muhammad Sháh has thus been briefly written up to the beginning of the fourteenth year. If by the mercy of God life and leisure are spared to me, the history shall be continued.

Játs.

[The following are the passages referred to *suprà*, p. 521.]

[vol. ii. p. 316.] Aurangzeb (in the year 1095 A.H., 1684 A.D.) sent Khán-Jahán to punish and put down the Játs, and to

¹ "*Wakl-i mutlak*, Lieutenant of the Emperor, or Procurator General."—Briggs's *Siyaru-l Muta-ahhkhiri*, p. 337.

² *خس خانه* A hut made of *khas* grass for the sake of coolness?

When a report of this state of things reached the Emperor Muhammad Sháh, he removed Sarbuland Khán, and appointed Rája Dúngar Singh in his place. On his arriving at Ahmad-ábád, Sarbuland Khán refused to admit him, and prepared to resist him by force of arms. So he fled, and for some days no trace was found of him. He did not go to Court, and the Emperor was much displeased with him, so he remained for a long time in disgrace.

This rich province, which no other province of Hindústán could equal, * * was reduced to such a state of wretchedness, that merchants and traders left their native land, abandoned their hereditary dwelling places, and dispersed over distant countries. But thanks to the mercy of God, the cries of the oppressed were heard, and the beneficent shade of Nizámu-l Mulk Bahádur Fath Jang Ásaf Jáh was to fall upon it, and to be the cause of its restoration to prosperity.

Administration of Nizámu-l Mulk.

[Text, vol. ii. p. 972.] In a short time the country was brought under the control of Musulmán authorities—it was scourged from the abominations of infidelity and tyranny. Under former *súbadárs* the roads had been infested with the ruffianism of highway robbers, and the rapacity of the Mahrattas and rebellious *samindárs*, so that traffic and travelling were stopped; but now the highways were safe and secure. The Mahrattas exacted the *chauth* with all sorts of tyranny from the *jágirdárs*; and in addition to it, ten per cent. under the name of *sar-desh-mukhi* was collected from the *samindárs* and *raiya*ts. By these means odious *kamátsh-dárs* were removed and changed every week and month; orders beyond all the endurance of the *raiya*ts were issued, and annoyances and insults were heaped upon the collectors of the *jágirdárs*. Nizámu-l Mulk so arranged that instead of the *chauth* of the *súba* of Haidarábád, a sum of money should be paid from his treasury; and that the *sar-deshmukhi*,

several months near the city; but Rájá Jai Singh marched against the enemy, opened trenches, and invested Chúráman's fort. The struggle went on for more than a year. There were frequent fights, and many men fell on both sides. When Saiyid Khán arrived, the siege was pressed more vigorously, and the trenches were carried closer to the fort. Chúráman, being hard pressed, sent his *takl* direct to Kutbu-l Mulk Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, promising to pay tribute, and to wait in person on the Emperor, if his offences were forgiven and a *mansab* granted to him. Rájá Jai Singh knew nothing whatever of this; but the Emperor reluctantly agreed to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah's proposals. This was done against the Emperor's will, and greatly to the annoyance of Rájá Jai Singh. The Rájá, greatly vexed, came to Court, and when Chúráman arrived, he was reluctantly allowed to wait upon the Emperor once; but the latter was so displeased with the peace that had been made, that he would not consent to see him again.

destroy the fort of Sansí, which those infidels had built, under the protection of which fort they every month attacked and plundered several caravans, and ravaged the neighbourhood of Ágra.

[vol. ii. p. 394.] It was reported from Ágra (in 1102 A.H., 1691 A.D.), that under the royal command Ághar Khán was coming from Kábul to the presence. On approaching Ágra, the Játs fell upon his train, and carried off some bullocks and carts, and made prisoners of some women. Ághar Khán, on being informed of this, pursued them and followed them to their fortress. After a display of great resolution, he rescued the women and sent them on their way. He then boldly determined to invest and besiege the fort of the Játs; but he was struck by a musket bullet, and he and his son-in-law were both killed. Khán-Jahán Bahádur Kokaltásh, who had been sent to punish the Játs and reduce their fort, went upon the service confided to him; but although he exerted himself strenuously, he did not succeed in reducing their fort of Sansí, or their other strongholds. His failure and some unseemly acts of his gave offence to the Emperor (Aurangzeb), who recalled him and appointed Prince Bedár Bakhsh to act against the Játs.

[vol. ii. p. 776.] Chúrámán the Ját was a notorious freebooter. His father, his grandfather, and his brothers had ravaged the neighbourhood of Ágra and Fathpúr since the days of Aurangzeb. Armies had frequently been sent against him under Prince Bedár Bakht, Khán-Jahán, and other *amirs*, with the object of chastising him, and reducing the fort of Sansí, which the Játs had built. In the days of the struggle between A'zam Sháh and Bahádur Sháh, also when Farrukh Siyar approached Ágra, Chúrámán was very bold and daring. He plundered the royal train, and carried off much treasure and jewels. Rája Jai Singh was sent against him, and Saiyid Khán Jahán Bahádur, uncle of Kutbu-l Mulk Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, was sent after him in command of a separate supporting force. Through sundry obstacles and want of supplies, Saiyid Khán remained inactive

In his Preface the author says, "During the short period of my age, which has this day arrived at the sixty-fourth year, and the 1126th of the holy Hijra (1714 A.D.), such vicissitudes in worldly affairs, the destruction of empires, the deaths of many princes, the ruin of ancient houses and noble families, the fall of worthy men and the rise of the unworthy, have been beheld by me, as have not been mentioned by history to have occurred in such number or succession for a thousand years.

"As, on account of my office, and being engaged in these transactions, I have obtained a perfect knowledge of the sources of most events, and what to others even information of must be difficult, was planned and executed in my sight; and as I was a sharer as well as spectator of all the dangers and troubles, I have therefore recorded them.

"My intention, however, not being to compile a history of kings or a flowery work, but only to relate such events as happened in my own knowledge, I have therefore, preferably to a display of learning in lofty phrases and pompous metaphors, chosen a plain style, such as a friend writing to a friend would use, for the purpose of information. Indeed, if propriety is consulted, loftiness of style is unfit for plain truth, which, pure in itself, requires only a simple delineation."

The author's account of his work is fair and accurate. The book is written in a plain straightforward style, and it never wanders beyond the sphere of the author's own observation; but it is full of spirit, and has all the vigour and vividness of a personal narrative. Irádat Khán was a good soldier, and was much trusted; and not without reason, for he evidently was clear-sighted, prompt, and energetic, and he possessed great common sense and unusual veracity. In his account of the battle between Jahándár Sháh and Farrukh Siyar he observes, "Every one knows that, after an engagement is once begun, it is impossible for a single person to see more of the operations than those on the immediate spot of his own post; how then, can I say, I distinctly viewed every change of two lines covering ground

LXXX.

TARÍKH-I IRÁDAT KHÁN.

THIS is a good history of the Mughal Empire from the close of Aurangzeb's reign to the commencement of Farrukh Siyar's. It has been well translated by Captain Jonathan Scott. It first appeared in a separate volume, and was subsequently incorporated in the second volume of his "History of the Deccan," of which the first portion was translated from Firishta.

We are told in the *Ma-ásiru-l umará* that the author, Mír Mubáruku-llah Irádat Khán Wáza, was the son of Is'hák Khán, son of 'Azím Khán. Both his grandfather and father were noblemen of high rank. The former was *Mír-bakhshí* to the Emperor Jahángír, and the latter held various offices of importance under Sháh Jahán and Aurangzeb. He died soon after his appointment to the government of Oudh. His title was also Irádat Khán. One of his sons (our author) had his title conferred on him, and in the thirty-third year of Aurangzeb was appointed *Faujdar* of Jagna, and at other periods of Aurangábád and Mándú. In the reign of Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh he was governor of the Doáb, and the intimate friend of Mu'azzam Khán *wazír*. He died in the time of Farrukh Siyar. His abilities as a poet were great, and he left a volume of poems behind him.¹

[The author opens his work with a statement of his removal from the command of the fort of Imtiyáz-garh (Adoni), and of his subsequent appointment to the government of Ahsanábád (Kulbarga), and afterwards to the *kila'dári* and *faujdarí* of Mándú. He left the latter place to follow the fortunes of Prince Bedár Bakht as detailed in the following pages.

¹ This is taken from the Preface to Scott's translation.

of Málwá, I paid my respects to him at Ujjain. In a short time such a friendship grew up between us, that a greater between a prince and subject cannot be conceived. He would not be an instant without me: he would not eat of anything but he sent me part of it: he did nothing of importance without asking my advice, and considered my opinion as religiously decisive. In short, the particulars of his favour are beyond relation; but on this account I became envied by all his dependents. * *

A'zam Sháh.

A'zam Sháh, being informed of the (death of Aurangzeb) by his agents and the nobles who affected to embrace his interest, arrived on the 3rd of Zí-l hijja at the camp at Ahmadnagar. * * Many of the chief Imperial servants, as * * had a real attachment to him. Some neither loved nor hated him, and a few, though they disliked, yet from inability to oppose prudently submitted to his authority. Three Mughal chiefs only delayed to come in to offer their allegiance—Fíroz Jang, his son Chín Kalích Khán, and Muhammad Amín Khán. .

On the 10th Zí-l hijja, 1118, A'zam Sháh ascended the throne of empire amidst the usual rejoicings, and conferred favours on the nobility according to their stations, but on few in a manner affording satisfaction. * * While he was only a prince, most of the nobility were attached to him, and regarded him as possessing every approved quality for empire; but almost immediately after his accession to the throne, the general opinion was altered, through his own conduct. He slighted the principal nobility, and betrayed great parsimony to the army, acting as if he had no occasion for their services. This proceeded from a vain belief that none dared to oppose him, and that his elder brother, Sháh 'Álam, relinquishing to him such a vast empire as Hindústán without a struggle, would fly for safety to another clime. At the same time he openly declared his jealousy of his own son, Bedár Bakht, whose favour with the late Emperor had displeased him.

of miles in extent? An author once read to Aurangzeb a long account of one of his battles. The Emperor observed at the conclusion, that he must certainly have been upon a high mountain during the engagement, which he had seen so minutely, as he himself, though commanding the line, and mounted on an elephant, did not perceive one-third of the particulars he had described."

The following Extracts are taken from Scott's translation, with only a slight change here and there of the wording. The original work is divided into many short chapters, but Scott did not maintain the divisions in his translation. At the end will be found two letters written by Aurangzeb. They were translated by Scott, and added as notes to his translation. It is not said from whence they were obtained, but they are very characteristic, and, no doubt, authentic.]

EXTRACTS.

My attachment and regard to His Majesty (Aurangzeb) were so great, that observing his life drawing to a close, I did not wish to quit the presence. * * On the evening before my departure, the Emperor, opening the window of his sleeping apartment, called me to him, and said, "Separation now takes place between us, and our meeting again is uncertain. Forgive then whatever, wittingly or unwittingly, I may have done against thee, and pronounce the words *I forgive!* three times with sincerity of heart. As thou hast served me long, I also forgive thee whatever knowingly or otherwise thou mayest have done against me." Upon hearing these expressions, sobs became like a knot in my throat, so that I had not power to speak. At last, after His Majesty had repeatedly pressed me, I made a shift to pronounce the words *I forgive!* three times, interrupted by heavy sobs. He shed many tears, repeated the words, and, after blessing me, ordered me to retire. * *

The Prince Bedár Bakht, being appointed to the government

boats in the Satlej, to prevent the approach of the enemy? Though he dare not face me, yet you have been guilty of high neglect."

Bedár Bakht, agreeably to the orders of his father, moved towards Ágra, and was joined from the presence by Zú-l fikár Khán, Rám Singh Háda *Zamindár* of Kota, and Dalpat Bundela, also by Amánu-llah Khán, who were sent by A'zam Sháh as much to watch the Prince's motions as to assist him. Mirzá Rája Jai Singh, Khán-'álam, a Dakhin chief, with his brother Munawwar Khán, and other officers, also joined from the presence with about 6000 horse.

Prince Muhammad A'zimu-sh Shán, who had by Aurangzeb's orders left his government of Bengal to proceed to the presence, had reached the vicinity of Ágra when he heard of the Emperor's decease; upon which he marched to secure that city for (his father) Sháh 'Álam. * * When Bedár Bakht approached the banks of the Chambal, and A'zam Sháh arrived near Gwálior, A'zimu-sh Shán detached a considerable body from Ágra, under Muhtasham Khán, to guard the fords. Bedár Bakht was fond of enterprise, jealous of his honour, and of high mind, tempered with prudence. A rivalry for glory had always subsisted between him and his father. A'zam Shah, who was of rash courage, never looked beyond the present in his conduct. Like the whisker-twisting vaunters of Hindústán, if his son made any delay on his march, he would jest and sneer, attributing it to cowardice and dread of the enemy. On this account Bedár Bakht resolved to cross the Chambal immediately, and attack the posts of Muhtasham Khán; but this proceeding was strongly opposed by Zú-l fikár Khán, an experienced general of approved conduct. * * As Zú-l fikár Khán, in the opinion of some, was suspected of treachery, they seized this opportunity to persuade the Prince that he corresponded with Sháh 'Álam, and wished to delay engaging till his approach, in order to complete his designs of desertion to his cause. * *

The day following, suddenly, before morning prayer, the

He treated the old nobility with contempt, and would say publicly that they were not fit for his service.

A'zam Sháh proceeded with the Imperial camp towards Ágra by regular stages, taking the route by the *ghát* of Túmri. * * * The route of Túmri was hilly, full of woods, and for many long spaces void of water; so that during two days' march, great numbers of men, women, children, and animals perished through want of water. * *

Bedár Bakht had the greatest and most sincere affection for his grandfather, who equally loved him. * * In obedience to the orders of his father, he departed from Gujarát without delay, at the head of only 3000 horse, his own dependents, and carried with him about thirty *lacs* of rupees in treasure, property of his own, not presuming to touch twenty *lacs* in the Imperial treasury, lest it should raise suspicions of his fidelity in the mind of his father. For the same reason, he made not any addition to his force, though he could with ease have raised a great army, and might have procured a *kror* of rupees from the bankers and renters. * * On the eve of his march he despatched a letter to me, and several others on his route; but the couriers brought none to hand in due time, the public roads being guarded by officers who had orders to search all messengers and inspect letters. * * At length, on the 1st Muharram, the Prince's letters were brought to me all at once, and immediately after I departed from Mándú. * * The Prince was moving into Ujjain when he perceived me at a distance, and said to his attendants, "Is not that Irádat Khán that I see?" He stopped his train, and opening wide his arms he cried, "Come, come, my friend! in expectation of whom my eyes have been strained even to dimness."

Bedár Bakht did not enter the city and palaces of Ujjain, but pitched his camp on the bank of the river, at about a *kos* distant. Here he was attended by 'Abdu-llah Khán, the *Súbadár* of Málwá, and continued one month and twenty days expecting the arrival of his father, when that rash prince wrote him the following *farmán*: "Why have you not hastened on, nor sunk the

a sacred oath rested on our family never to shed the blood of a prince unless by chance in battle, if engaged in the cause of a rival, when it would be excusable. I then said, "Your other opportunity will be thus. Should the enemy fly, an army will be sent in pursuit, and probably under your command, while your father, setting his mind at ease, will be employed, without suspicion, in pleasure and rejoicing. You may return suddenly upon him, and gain your wishes. Should this opportunity not occur, as you are his eldest son and have seen much service, he will certainly appoint you to the government of the Dakhin. You will then have a powerful army at your disposal. As your father's behaviour is offensive to the people, and many of the courtiers dislike him, they will aid your pretensions. Use open force and try for whom God will decide."

Bedár Bakht, having crossed the Chambal at an unobserved ford, the troops of 'Azímu-sh Shán, who were stationed on the banks of the river in another quarter, left their artillery at the various posts and fled to Ágra, happy to save their lives. Zú-l fikár, who had advised the Prince to remain on the other side, seeing he had crossed, now came up reluctantly, and congratulated him on the success of his march. * *

Some days after this, A'zam Sháh approaching near, Bedár Bakht moved a *kos* in front, the spot he was upon being chosen for his father's tents, and on the morning of his arrival he went forth two *kos* from the camp to meet him. A'zam Sháh loved him as a son, though from the attention shown him by Aurangzeb he had regarded him as a rival. When he now beheld him after a long absence, paternal fondness for the instant overcame his jealousy, and he received him with strong marks of affection, conferring upon him a princely *khi'at*, etc.

Empire having been decreed to Sháh 'Álam, from the agency of destiny, such vanity took possession of the mind of A'zam Sháh, that he was convinced his brother, though supported by the myriads of Túr and Sallam, durst not meet him in the field. Hence those who brought intelligence of his approach he

march for battle was sounded, and the Prince, completely armed, mounted the elephant which he always rode in the day of battle. I speeded to attend him. He had moved some distance from the tents before I came up. I found him with an angry countenance, uttering contemptuous exclamations and reproachful terms of Zú-l-fikár Khán as deceiver, traitor, false wretch and the like, to some servile attendants round his elephant. * *

In the difference between A'zam Sháh and his son Bedár Bakht, justice was on the side of the father; for Bedár Bakht was rival to his father, and waited opportunity to dethrone him. As for me, I was never in the service of A'zam Sháh, nor had ever made him professions of duty, being wholly devoted to his son. Being alone with Bedár Bakht one night, he suddenly throw his arms about my neck, and holding down his head upon my breast said, "If a sovereign and parent seeks the life of a son, and that son is truly informed of his intention, how should he act in self-defence? Have you a precedent for it?" I replied, "Such a question is unnecessary. The behaviour of your grandfather to his father is sufficient precedent; and sovereigns are forced to expedients which are not justifiable in other men." Conversation of this sort often passed between us; and one evening he asked me how he might gain an opportunity of seizing his father. I replied, "An opportunity will offer thus. When he has gained the victory over Sháh 'Álam, you will be the first to congratulate him. The troops will then be separated here and there in search of plunder, or looking after the dead and wounded; and as the tents will not be ready, your father will only be under a *shámiyána* (canopy), surrounded by a few *kanáts* (screens). You will be admitted to audience, attended by such of your followers as may have deserved notice for their gallant conduct in action; and at such a time they will be allowed their arms. It is probable that your father will not have many persons with him between the *kanáts*. Then is your time." The Prince eagerly exclaimed, "You have spoken well! Dare you at such a time strike the blow?" I replied that though the act was easy, yet

hot. Without order, without intelligence of the enemy's motions, where would he hasten? I remarked the scattered march of his followers; Zú-l fikár Khán obliques so far to the left as scarcely to be visible, and other chiefs were equally distant in every quarter. I observed that if he halted here till some news arrived of the enemy, there was sufficient water to refresh the troops; the artillery would come up; the Emperor would have time to join, and order would be restored in the line; also, that should the enemy advance upon him, he would have the advantage of good ground and plenty of water. He replied, "Your advice is just. Go and inform my father I shall follow it."

It happened also that Sháh 'Álam had no advice of the route of our army, and as there was but little water where he was encamped, he had this morning despatched his main body under Mun'im Khán, while he, with his sons and personal attendants, hunted along the bank of the river Jumna. His *push-sháh*, with the usual escort, under Rustam-dil Khán, was coming on in front of our army, in the same route as our line.

Upon delivery of my message to A'zam Sháh, he replied, "Very well. Go and inform my son I am coming up." I returned to the promised place of halt, but what did I behold? The Prince had marched on, and left the village ungarrisoned. I speeded after him, and upon gaining the line, saw a joyful scene of congratulation on victory. When the Prince saw me, he eagerly exclaimed, "I congratulate you on victory." I replied, "How comes victory without a battle?" Upon which His Highness, turning to a courier, said, "Tell Ibrahim Khán what you have seen." The foolish wretch then assured him he had seen the elephants of Sháh 'Álam without a rider, and with but few attendants, running off to Ágra. The Prince then with our left wing had defeated the enemy, and taken all their baggage. The cause of this imaginary victory was this. The advanced baggage of Sháh 'Álam, falling in with our left wing, was attacked, and the enemy being small, was soon slain. The elephant running away belonged to Rustam-dil Khán, the commander.

would abuse as fools and cowards, so that no one cared to speak the truth; as was formerly the case with the Emperor Humáyún during the rebellion of the Afghán Sher Sháh. Even his chief officers feared to disclose intelligence; so that he was ignorant of the successful progress of his rival.

At length Sháh 'Álam, having reached Mattra, sent by a celebrated *darwesh* the following message to A'zam Sháh: "By the divine auspices, we inherit from our ancestors an extensive empire, comprehending many kingdoms. It will be just and glorious not to draw the sword against each other, nor consent to shed the blood of the faithful. Let us equally divide the empire between us. Though I am the elder son, I will leave the choice in your power." A'zam Sháh, vain-glorious and haughty, replied that he would answer his brother on the morrow in the field, and upon this the messenger departed. A'zam Sháh marched the next morning, and encamped between Jájú and Ágra, on a barren plain, void of water, so that the army was much distressed. Intelligence arrived during this day, that Sháh 'Álam was encamped seven *kos* distant, and intended moving on the morrow, but to what quarter was not known.

I have already mentioned that my design is not to write the history of kings, but of myself and what I have seen. Accordingly, of the battle between the two brothers, I shall only relate such circumstances as I was an eye-witness of.

Prince Bedár Bakht, who commanded the advanced corps of the army, having given the necessary orders, began his march. * * The main body marched next, in the centre of which rode A'zam Sháh. * * We had not yet learned the position of the enemy, or what was the design of Sháh 'Álam. Bedár Bakht reached a village, near which was a stream of clear water, and there were some wells also around it. The troops at this time were much separated, and every chief, inattentive to order, moved as he chose. Seeing which, I represented to the Prince, that the main body was far behind, that the country in front was destitute of water for some miles, and the day promised to be distressingly

When A'zam Sháh saw me, he made a signal for me to advance; but such was the crowd I could scarce push through it. At length, having come near to his litter, I alighted from my horse, and said, "The Prince informs Your Majesty of the enemy's near approach. What shall I say?" A'zam Sháh, starting as if stung by a scorpion, with furious looks, eyes rolling, and, as was his custom when angry, pulling up his sleeve, exclaimed, "Comes an enemy to me!" Being vexed at his manner, I replied, "So it appears." He then called aloud for his war elephant, and, in a frantic manner, whirling a crooked staff, stood upright on his throne, and tauntingly said, "Be not alarmed, I am coming to my son." Hurt at this insult to the spirit of my prince, I said, "His Highness is son to yourself. Asylum of the World, and knoweth not fear. He only represents the enemy's approach, that Your Majesty may advance with the troops, and take the post usual for the Emperor in the day of battle." Having said this, I rode off to rejoin Bedár Bakht. * * Just as I reached him, a ball struck the breast of an attendant close to his person. * *

The two bodies of the enemy had now approached, and halted within a rocket's flight of our line. One of these was headed by the Prince 'Azímu-sh Shán; the other by Mun'im Khán, with whom also were the Princes Mu'izzu-d dín Jahándár Sháh and Jahán Sháh. Our line was so pressed upon each flank and in the rear by baggage elephants, cattle, and followers, as greatly to incommode the troops and render them useless. Sháh 'Álam's artillery played upon us incessantly, and did great execution, and his sons advancing, fired showers of musketry, which fell like hail. * * * At length our troops, grown impatient from the galling of the enemy's cannon, prepared to charge. * * I saw Khán 'Álam move towards the enemy with great rapidity. As he advanced nearer the enemy, his followers diminished, gradually lagging behind, and not above 300 stuck by him to the charge. When I saw this, I well knew that all was lost. The brave chief, however, penetrated to the elephant

The Prince, however, now ordered me to go and inform his father of the victory. * * I declined going, and observed I would not carry intelligence so very ridiculous and groundless. Upon which the Prince was angry, and exclaimed, "What do you mean?" I replied, * * "Accidents will happen to the baggage of armies, and this boasted victory is no more. Your troops have plundered his advanced tents, but woe to those who have been thus employed! If important work should now offer, they will be useless, confused as they are and encumbered with spoil." To these remarks the Prince angrily exclaimed, "You are always apprehensive and foreboding ill." He then ordered Kásim, the *dúrogha* of his *diwán*, to carry the intelligence of victory to A'zam Sháh.

Scarce half an hour after this had elapsed, when a great dust arose upon our right. Upon beholding this, I said to the Prince, "Behold the consequence of our victory, and the flight of Sháh 'Álam! Yon cloud precedes at least 50,000 horse." Just as I concluded, another dust arose, which certified a second body of troops approaching. I desired His Highness to prepare for action, while yet the enemy was at some distance. He then said, "Will you now go and inform my father of the enemy's approach?" To this I replied, "Though I wish not to quit Your Highness's person, yet as I am ordered I must obey," and having said this, I rode off with speed to A'zam Sháh. On my way I beheld strange disorder. Amánu-llah Khán, a reputed good officer, who acted as advanced guard to Prince Wálájáh, I met with only two or three hundred straggling horse. A'zam Sháh was a *kos* and a half farther in the rear, and his troops were separated into three divisions, so that I could not easily distinguish the royal post, for the train of artillery had been left in the Dakhin. For when the commander applied for orders respecting it to A'zam Sháh, he was much enraged, and passionately exclaimed, "Do men think that I will use cannon against a breeder of cattle? I will not even draw the sword, but will bruise his head with a staff."

Sháh. A'zam Sháh soon received a mortal wound from a musket-ball, and resigned his soul to the Creator of life. The Prince Wálájáh also sank down in the sleep of death. I now made my escape to Ágra, not choosing to go to the enemy's camp, where I had many friends who would have given me protection.

Rustam-dil Khán, who commanded the escort of Sháh 'Álam's advanced tents, when attacked in the morning by our troops, finding his escape cut off, paid his respects to A'zam Sháh, and had continued near his elephant during the battle till his death with great firmness. Seeing him dead, he ascended the elephant, and cutting off the head of the corpse, remounted his horse and hastened to the camp of Sháh 'Álam. With exulting hope of great reward, he laid his prize at the Prince's feet; but the compassionate Sháh 'Álam, seeing the head of his slaughtered brother in such disgrace, shed tears of affection, and gave Rustam-dil nothing but reproaches. He ordered the head to be buried with proper respect, and forbade the march of victory to be beaten. Mirám Khán took charge of the bodies of the unfortunate Princes, and treated the ladies of their harems with the utmost respect and tenderness. Though he had received a dangerous wound and suffered extreme pain, he concealed his situation, and continued on the field till late at night, to restore order and prevent plunder. * *

Sháh 'Álam Buried at ÁGRA.

of 'Azímu-sh Shán, and hurled his spear at the Prince; but it missed him, and struck the thigh of an attendant, when the Prince drew an arrow, which pierced the heart of Khán 'Álam, and he died on the instant. * * A body of the enemy, under Bázh Khán Afghán, now attacked Zú-l fikár Khán, but was repulsed with great loss, and the chief badly wounded; but by the decrees of Providence, Rám Singh Háda and Dalpat Ráo Bundela, on whose valour and conduct most depended, were killed at the same instant by a cannon-shot, upon which their *Rájputs* lost all confidence, and fled with the dead bodies of their chiefs. Zú-l fikár Khán, however, yet remained firm, with his own followers; but on being charged by the whole of 'Azímu-sh Shán's division, he left the conduct of the battle to Saiyid Muzaffar, and retired to the rear of A'zam Sháh's post, with Hamídu-d din Khán, and having dismounted from his elephant, fled on horseback to Gwálíor, where he was received by his father, Asad Khán. His flight determined the rout of our army.

The principal followers and personal attendants of A'zam Sháh now dismounted, and laying their quivers on the ground, sat down to await the charge of the enemy, and sell their lives in defence of their patron. Saiyid 'Abdu-llah and his brother, Husain 'Alí Khán, of the illustrious house of Bárha, ever celebrated for valour, whose ancestors had in every reign performed the most gallant actions, if possible superior to their sires, descended from their elephants, and prepared to engage on foot. The battle now raged hand to hand with sabres, and there was great slaughter on both sides. Husain 'Alí Khán received several wounds and fell down faint with the loss of blood. * * At last a musket-ball and several arrows struck the Prince Bedár Bakht, and he sank down dead on his elephant.

A'zam Sháh, though much wounded, was still alive, when a whirl of dust winded towards him from the army of Sháh 'Álam. From this now issued with a select band the Princes 'Azímu-sh Shán, Mu'izzu-d dín Jahándár Sháh, and Jahán

which I have so long maintained, and even kept from my own children, is now entrusted to your care. Be cautious that no instance of your conduct may betray it ! ”

When news of Aurangzeb's death reached Mun'im Khán at Láhore, he wrote immediately by express to Sháh 'Álam, conjuring him to march with the utmost expedition towards the capital, without anxiety or preparation, and he should find artillery and all supplies ready at Láhore. This wise minister then prepared bridges over the various rivers, so that not a day's delay was occasioned in crossing to the Prince's army, which at Láhore was joined by a powerful train of artillery with sufficient draft. He also paid up all the troops, and advanced large sums to new levies. Sháh 'Álam soon arrived in the neighbourhood of Dehlí, and Mun'im Khán entered the city with a select party. * * Muhammad Yár Khán, the commander of the palace, was so awed with the *razár's* gallantry, and the arrival of Sháh 'Álam, that he saw no security for himself but in resigning his charge. He accordingly gave up the palace, in which were the treasures of Hindústán collected from the days of Akbar. * * * Mun'im Khán then advanced with some chosen troops before the Prince to Ágra. * * Báki Khán, an old Imperial servant, and governor of the fortress which he had refused to resign to 'Azímu-sh Shán, being certified that Sháh 'Álam was approaching, did not choose to resist longer, but sent offers, that if Mun'im Khán would come first alone into the citadel, he would resign the command. Mun'im Khán accordingly, without the least distrust, entered over a narrow plank, only passable for a single person, which was placed over a deep ditch from a small wicket to admit him. * * After refreshment, he sealed up the treasury, posted his people at the different gates, and about midnight went to visit 'Azímu-sh Shán, who was encamped at the distance of six *kos*. * * Without doubt Sháh 'Álam's successes, and his attainment of the empire, were owing to the conduct and valour of this great minister.

arranged the Prince's affairs, which, before his coming into office, were always in confusion, owing to the ascendancy of unworthy favourites. * * A superfluous army was kept up, exceeding the ability of the revenue, and being consequently ill-paid, was ever mutinous and discontented. * * He diminished the Prince's army, but took care to pay that on foot regularly, so as to leave no room for discontent, or excuse for licentiousness. * * When he heard of Aurangzeb's illness, in order to prevent cabals in favour of A'zam Sháh, he circulated a report that Sháh 'Álam would not contend for empire, but seek protection from his brother by flight to Persia. Sháh 'Álam had himself indeed made this declaration long before, and with such apparent resolution that it was believed and dreaded even by his sons who resided with him. Mun'im Khán related to me afterwards the following anecdote in these words : " When I perceived that my attachment, sincerity, and abilities had properly impressed Sháh 'Álam's mind, and that he was convinced I was a prudent, faithful, and secret servant, being alone one day with him conversing on the affairs of the empire, I took the liberty of thus addressing him : ' It is reported that Your Highness intends flying to Persia, with so much confidence, that even the Princes, your sons, assure me by sacred oaths of its truth.' He replied, ' In this rumour there lies concealed a great design, to forward which I have spread it abroad and taken pains to make it believed. First, because my father, on a mere suspicion of disloyalty, kept me nine years in close confinement ; and should he even now think that I cherished the smallest ambition, he would immediately strive to accomplish my ruin. Secondly, my brother Muhammad A'zam Sháh, who is my powerful enemy, and valiant even to the extreme of rashness, would exert all his force against me. From this report my father is easy, and my brother lulled into self-security ; but, by the Almighty God who gave me life' (laying his hand on the Kurán by him), ' and on this holy book, I swear, though not one friend should join me, I will meet A'zam Sháh in single combat, wherever he may be. This secret,

exercise of power during the reigns of his grandfather and father, and been used to authority himself for the last fifty years. Time received a new lustre from his accession, and all ranks of people obtained favours equal to, if not above their merits; so that the public forgot the excellences and great qualities of Aurangzeb, which became absorbed in the bounties of his successor. Some narrow-hearted persons, however, out of ingratitude and envy, attributed his general liberality to ill-placed extravagance and profusion; but it is a fact that the deserving of every profession, and the worthy of all degrees, whether among the learned or the eloquent, the noble or the ignoble, received an attention from the throne, which prior to this the eye of time had never seen, nor had such been heard of before by the ears of fame. His personal qualities and perfections, speech is unable to relate. His valour was such that he had resolved on meeting A'zam Sháh, whose bravery was celebrated, in single combat. His four sons, possessed of great power and considerable force, he suffered to be constantly near his person, never giving himself a moment's suspicion regarding them, nor preventing them forming connexions with the prime nobility; upon which subject I, the humblest of his slaves, once ventured to present him a petition of a cautionary nature, thinking it my duty, as I had often done so to Aurangzeb. To what I represented he wrote a wise and just reply. He permitted the sons of those princes who had fallen in battle against him to appear at all times completely armed in his presence. The infant children he let remain unmolested with their mothers, while those arrived at manhood daily accompanied him to the chase unguarded, and shared in all his diversions.

His court was magnificent to a degree beyond that of Sháh Jahán. Seventeen Princes, his sons, grandsons and nephews, sat generally round his throne, in the manner following: On his right hand Jahándár Sháh, his eldest son, with his three sons; his third son, Raff'ah Sháh, with his three sons, and Bejár-dil, son to his nephew, Bejár Bahán. On his left Muhammed

The sons of Bahádur Sháh.

It is now necessary to say something of the four sons of Sháh 'Álam, their dispositions and behaviour, both in public and private. Mu'izzu-d dín Jahándár Sháh, the eldest, was a weak man, devoted to pleasure, who gave himself no trouble about State affairs, or to gain the attachment of any of the nobility, as will be seen when I come to narrate his reign. 'Azímu-sh Shán, the second son, was a statesman of winning manners. Aurangzeb had always pursued the policy of encouraging his grandsons and employing them in public affairs; for as his sons were ambitious of great power, and at the head of armies, he thus prudently controlled them by opposing to them enemies in their own families, as Bedár Bakht to A'zam Sháh, and 'Azímu-sh Shán to Sháh 'Álam. To the latter he had given the advantageous government of the three provinces of Bengal, Bihár, and Oriessa, from whence he had now come with a rich treasure and considerable army; and though in the late battle he had performed great service, yet he was suspected by his father and dreaded as a rival; but to relate the causes would be useless prolixity. Rafi'u-sh Shán, the private companion and favourite of his father, was a prince of quick parts, a great proficient in religious learning, a fine writer, and of much knowledge in the law, but at the same time addicted to pleasure, particularly fond of music and the pomp of courtly show. He paid no attention to public affairs or even those of his own household. Khujista-akhtar Jahán Sháh had the greatest share of all the Princes in the management of affairs, before his father's accession to the throne, and afterwards the whole administration of the empire was influenced by him. He had the closest friendship and connexion with Mun'im Khán, who, by his interest, was appointed *wazir*.

Character of Bahádur Sháh. His Court.

Sháh 'Álam was generous and merciful, of a great soul tempered with affability, discerning of merit. He had seen the strict

Prince Kām Bakhsh.

Glāziy-e dā Khān Firz Jang.

'Azímu-sh Shán, with his two sons, and Jahán Sháh with his son. 'Alí Tabbár, the only surviving son of A'zam Sháh, sat on the right hand of 'Azímu-sh Shán; and a little to the right, somewhat advanced, the two sons of Muhammad Kám Bakhsh. Behind the royal Princes, on the right, stood the sons of conquered sovereigns, as of Sikandar 'Alí Sháh of Bījápúr, and Kutb Sháh, King of Golkonda; also a vast crowd of the nobility, from the rank of seven to three thousand, such as were allowed to be on the platform between the silver rails. How can I mention every particular of the splendid scene?

On the 'ids and other festivals, His Majesty, with his own hands, gave the *betel* and perfumes to all in his presence, according to their ranks. His gifts of jewels, dresses, and other favours were truly royal. When in private he dressed plain and humbly, like a religious devotee, and daily, without fail, prayed with many in company. Frequently on holidays and Fridays, when travelling, he would read the prayers himself in the great tent of audience, and repeat portions of the Kurán, with a tone and sweetness which captivated the most eloquent Arabians. He never missed the devotions of the latter part of the night, and frequently employed the whole in prayer. In the early part of the evening he had generally an assembly of the religious or learned men. He himself related traditions (of the Prophet), in the number of which he excelled, as well as in a knowledge of the Holy Law. He had explored the different opinions of all sects, read the works of all free thinkers, and was well acquainted with the hypotheses of each. On this account some over-strict devotees accused him of heterodoxy in his religious opinions, through mere envy of his superior abilities. I heard most of his tenets, and lamented the ignorance of his vain critics; for it was as clear as the sun how just and orthodox he was in his opinions on religious points. But how can I enumerate all his perfections! It would fill volumes to recite but a small part, therefore I will desist.

this thought to prove his disinterestedness and independence by neglecting to frequent the *darbār*, and engage in business as usual. 'Azímu-sh Shán, who had reaped experience in office, and was well versed in the intrigues of a court, perceiving coolness taking place between Jahán Sháh and the Khán-khánán, paid so much flattering attention to the latter, that by degrees he gained his confidence. This gave still more offence to Jahán Sháh, who had too much pride to expostulate, but neglected the minister in return. He soon after fell sick, and his indisposition continuing a long time, gave 'Azímu-sh Shán ample opportunities of acquiring influence over Sháh 'Álam. * * * 'Azímu-sh Shán, having thus gained the credit he aimed at with his father and the minister, employed it in softening the rigour of government against those who laboured under its displeasure; thinking that, thus obliged by his mediation, they would readily return his favours, by embracing his cause, whenever the death of his father should give him a claim to the empire.

Death and Character of Khán-khánán.

The Khán-khánán [*having invested the fort to which the Sikhs had retreated*], sure of having the *Guru* in his power, gave orders for his troops to cease their attack till the morning should enable him to finish it with success. He had, however, unluckily neglected to block up a narrow path leading from the fort to the hills, either because he had not perceived it, or was satisfied that it could not lead but to where the Imperial troops were posted. * * During the night the *Guru* changed his dress, and left the fort undiscovered. The Khán-khánán about dawn renewed the attack, and gained the place after a short struggle, sword in hand, exulting in the certainty of carrying the *Guru* dead or alive to the Emperor, whose displeasure at his disobedience of orders¹ would by this service be changed to approbation; but who can relate his weight of grief and disappointment on finding that his

¹ He had been directed not to assault without orders.

ruinous and lost. * * Mun'im Khán Khán-khánán opened a correspondence with Gháziu-d dín, to whom he gave much consolation, assurances of favour, and friendly advice. That experienced statesman, opening his eyes on the vicissitudes of life, saw it was his interest, if His Majesty would forget the past and not molest him in his fortune, to bend his head in submission and retire from business to a life of devotion. His only son, Chín Kalich Khán, had long disagreed with him, and his brother, Hámid Khán, whom he had appointed his deputy in command of the troops, had separated from him and gone over to the presence. The Túrán chiefs of his household also, when they saw his fortunes on the decline, had left his service. All these events made him glad to embrace the promises of the minister and thankfully accept the *súbadári* of Ahmadábád in Gujarát.

Intrigues of the four Princes.

The four Princes were constantly intriguing against each other, to obtain influence in the management of public affairs, which occasioned much delay and confusion in business, so that the Khán-khánán thought it happy to steer his vessel safe through four such great seas, and could not act so independently as he wished, being obliged to attend to the capricious interests of others, among which he found it difficult to preserve his own.

Among the remarkable occurrences was the decline of Jahán Sháh's influence with his father, and the rise of that of 'Azímu-sh Shán, of whom till now the Emperor had ever been suspicious. The Prince Jahán Sháh was of haughty and independent spirit, ready to take fire on the smallest neglect. This, with the behaviour of his servants, alarmed and displeased the Khán-khánán, who for his own safety watched an opportunity to destroy the Prince's influence in public affairs: a task of no great difficulty to one well acquainted with the disposition of Sháh 'Álam, almost equally warm with his son, who had more than once displeased him by his behaviour. The Prince upon

to his tents with all the speed and hurry possible. This occasioned much alarm in the camp. I met the Prince with his attendants, pushing on his elephant with frantic haste, upon seeing which I endeavoured to pass unobserved; but he knew me, and sent a messenger to call me. As I had previously attached myself to 'Azimu-sh Shán, I did not obey the mandate, but passed on to the Emperor's tents. * * The *Amiru-l umará* called for me, and desired me to send my grandson 'Ináyatu-llah to 'Azimu-sh Shán, to ask him how he could serve him on the present occasion. I sent him, but he returned with a reply laconic and slight as if from a nobleman of high rank to the commander of a hundred, written in the hand of his confidant as follows: "As the Imperial servants can know no place of support but this Court, and most have already repaired to it, the *Amiru-l umará* must also pay his duty, with assurance of a gracious reception in the presence." When the *Amiru-l umará* read this, he shed tears, and said to me, with much emotion, "You see the manners of the Prince and his advisers. Alas! the errors of a favourite unacquainted with government often endanger the very existence of his master." * * After saying this, he collected his followers, and moved his tents and effects to the quarter of Prince Jahándár, where he thought his services most likely to answer his own interest. * * He had formerly been disgusted with 'Azímu-sh Shán, for preferring to himself the Khán-khánán and Mahábat Khán, and he now swore to assist the three brothers in effecting his destruction, and in making an equal division of the empire and treasures among them.

Jahándár Sháh.

When Jahándár Sháh, by the intrigues and support of the *Amiru-l umará* Zú-l fikár Khán, had triumphed over his three brothers, and ascended the throne of empire, without the fear or dread of a competitor, all the customs of time were changed. He was himself a weak man, effeminately careful of his person,

promised prize had escaped, without leaving a trace behind him? * * He for an instant lost almost the use of his faculties, which were absorbed in dread of the Emperor's anger, and not without reason. As he was, agreeably to custom after an important victory, beating the march of triumph on his way to the royal tents, orders arrived commanding him to stop the drums, and not dare to enter the presence. He retired, drowned in despair, to his own tents. * * * Sháh 'Álam, regarding his former services, received him again into favour after a few days; but this noble and faithful minister never recovered from the effects of the royal ingratitude. This grief, added to the pain of seeing three of the Princes and the *Amir-i umarâ* using all their arts to complete his ruin, stuck like a poisoned arrow in his breast. He lost all satisfaction in worldly enjoyments, the emptiness of which he now so fully experienced, and from the day of his disgrace declined in health, so that not long after he was reduced to keep his bed, where he lingered a few days, and then resigned his soul to the angel of death (1124 A.H., 1712 A.D.), who never in the uncounted ages of his office seized on a soul more pure and less defiled with the frailties of human nature.

Death of Bahádur Sháh.

Sháh 'Álam Bahádur Sháh died on the 21st Muharram, 1124 A.H. (18th February, 1712 A.D.). * *. It happened that one day as Jahándár Sháh and 'Azímu-sh Shán were sitting near his bed, the latter perceiving under a corner of his pillow a dagger of very exquisite workmanship, took it up to admire the jewels with which it was adorned and the water of the blade. Upon his drawing it from the scabbard, Jahándár Sháh, jealous of his brother, was seized with a panic. He started up, and retired with such precipitation, that he struck the turban from his head against the door of the tent, forgot his slippers at the entrance, and fell down over the ropes. Being assisted to rise and adjust his dress by his servants, he rode off

a great number of the nobility, distressed by the pride and rapacity of Zú-l fikár Khán, joined their party. They insinuated to the Emperor that the *Amíru-l umará* entertained designs too ambitious for a subject, to attain which he would dare to shed the blood of princes; that he had already determined on a revolution, and either to seize the throne for himself, or if he found that too dangerous, to bestow it on one of the confined princes more favourable to his will than His Majesty.

The weak Jahándár, unendowed with the least judgment or courage, was alarmed almost to madness with the frightful picture of his own situation; but he had not firmness to oppose the dreaded evils, nor sense to keep his fears secret. The intrigues of Kokaltásh Khán soon became evident to the whole Court, and only served to stimulate the vigilance of Zú-l fikár Khán, who took measures for his own safety by removing his enemies. Rustam-dil Khán, Mukhlis Khán, and some others were put to death, and a great number of the nobility cast into confinement on various pretences. The family of the late Khán-khánán (Mun'im Khán) was reduced so low as to want the common necessaries of life. In short, the disposition of the *Amíru-l umará* changed altogether from gentleness to the highest pitch of tyranny, so that he now punished with cruelty the persons who had years before, knowingly or otherwise, given him the slightest causes of offence. I, who had differed with him in opinions during the life of the late Bedár Bakht, and frequently warned the late Emperor against his aspiring views, had also been the friend and confidant of his late mortal enemy, the Khán-khánán, and of a different party in the late struggle, had not a hope of escaping from his hands, or those of Jahándár Sháh, who had commanded me to be searched for and put to death.

Thinking it vain to attempt concealment in Láhore, I wrote the following verses: "I am of the family of 'Alí, * * * of the family of which thou art head: look not on me, but upon our mutual ancestors," and sent them to him by my grandson, who

fond of ease, indolent, and totally ignorant of the arts of government. He had also blemishes and vices unworthy of royalty; and unknown among his illustrious ancestors. He made the vast empire of Hindústán an offering to the foolish whims of a courtesan. The relations, friends and minions of the mistress usurped absolute authority in the State; and high offices, great titles and unreasonable grants from the Imperial domains were showered profusely on beggarly musicians. Two *krors* of rupees annually were settled for only the household expenses of the mistress, exclusive of her clothes and jewels. * *

The *Amiru-l umará* Zú-l fikár Khán, seater, nay even creator of emperors, with such a puppet of humanity in his hands, became absolute and filled with pride. He studied to ruin the most ancient families, inventing pretences to put great men to death, or disgrace them that he might plunder their possessions. Unhappy was the person he suspected to be rich, as wealth and vexatious accusations always accompanied each other. He established such exactions and abuses as no prior age had beheld, and by which now he is alone remembered. He took enormous emoluments and revenues for himself, while he disposed of money to others with a hand so sparing that even his own creatures felt severe poverty with empty titles, for he never allowed *jágirs* to any. The minds of high and low, rich and poor, near and distant, friends and strangers, were turned against him and wished his destruction. Hindús and Musulmáns agreed in praying to Heaven for the fall of his power, night and day. Often does the midnight sigh of the widow ruin the riches of a hundred years.

Kokaltásh Khán, foster-brother of Jahándár Sháh, and brought up with him from his childhood, was honoured with the title of *Khán-Jahán*. His wife, daughter, and whole family also possessed great influence with Jahándár, and claimed from him the performance of a promise he had made of the office of *wazir*. At the same time they and their adherents combined to work the overthrow of Zú-l fikár Khán *Amiru-l umará*. With this view all their relations and dependents were raised to a high rank, and

must now go and answer the claims of his son for satisfaction." The other plans of an Emperor who was thus overcome by fear may easily be guessed, and need no explanation. The *Amru-umará*, offended at the distrust of his master, did not attend as he ought to business, but employed his time also in pleasure, and forwarding his own immediate interest.

Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán Bārha and his brother Husain 'Alī Khán had gained great honour by their behaviour in the service of A'zam Sháh, after whose death they attached themselves to 'Azímu-sh Shán, by whom they were honoured, the former with the government of Alláhábád, and the latter with that of the province of Bihár. * * 'Abdu-llah Khán pretended gratitude and obedience for the royal favours in order to avoid further trouble from the Court, but which he had resolved to serve no longer than he found necessary. When Farrukh Siyar arrived in Bihár, he was immediately joined by Saiyid Husain 'Alī Khán, who was faithfully attached to him as the son of his patron, 'Azímu-sh Shán.

was much in his favour. He invited me to see him, * * * and upon his solemn oath that he meant no injury to me, I went without dread. He received me in his private apartment, to which I was admitted armed as usual, and treated me in every way with much kindness, more than I had expected; after which he dismissed me with assurances of protection. He the same day asked the Emperor's pardon for me, which was immediately passed; but His Majesty observed, that though he forgave, he would not on any account employ me in his service. The *Amir-u-l umarâ*, too, made me promise that I would not accept any office in the State otherwise than through his patronage. I complied with this desire without regret, as, independent of the obligations I owed to him, there was no temptation left to court employment in a state which had in fact no head; for the ministry was a collection of petty tyrants and abusers of power.

In the height of his power and authority, all at once a report was heard that the Prince Farrukh Siyar, son to the martyred 'Azimu-sh Shan, had marched from Bengal towards Bihâr, intending to revenge his father's death and seize the throne. * * Great numbers of the Imperial servants wished secretly for the success of this rebellion. Zû-l fikâr Khân advised Jahândâr not to remain more than a week in Dehlî, but to proceed to Agra, and if necessary to the eastern provinces, as the dread of his power would not be impressed fully in the breasts of his subjects while Farrukh Siyar refused to pay allegiance. Jahândâr Shâh, on his arrival at Dehlî, fascinated by the various luxuries it afforded, forgot the advice of his minister, and chose to remain, indulging himself in low pleasures, moving only from palace to palace, and garden to garden. Kokaltâsh Khân and his party persuaded him that the *Amir-u-l umarâ* had excited this rebellion, and had engaged privately with Farrukh Siyar, to whom he would deliver His Majesty a prisoner, should he prevail upon him to march from the capital. These ideas served to increase the fears of the weak Jahândâr Shâh. He would often exclaim, "I did not kill 'Azimu-sh Shân; it was the *Amir-u-l umarâ*, who

I brought nothing into this world, and, except the infirmities of man, carry nothing out. I have a dread for my salvation, and with what torments I may be punished. Though I have strong reliance on the mercies and bounties of God, yet, regarding my actions, fear will not quit me; but when I am gone reflection will not remain. Come then what may, I have launched my vessel in the waves. Though Providence will protect the camp, yet, regarding appearances, the endeavours of my sons are indispensably incumbent. Give my last prayers to my grandson (Bedār Bakht), whom I cannot see, but the desire affects me. The Begam (his daughter) appears afflicted; but God is the only judge of hearts. The foolish thoughts of women produce nothing but disappointment. Farewell. Farewell. Farewell.

To the Prince Kām Bakhsh.

My son, nearest to my heart! Though in the height of my power, and by God's permission, I gave you advice, and took with you the greatest pains, yet, as it was not the Divine will, you did not attend with the ear of compliance. Now I depart a stranger, and lament my own insignificance, what does it profit me? I carry with me the fruits of my sins and imperfections. Surprising Providence! I came here alone, and alone I depart. The leader of this caravan hath deserted me. The fever, which troubled me for twelve days, has left me. Wherever I look I see nothing but the Divinity. My fears for the camp and followers are great; but, alas! I know not myself. My back is bent with weakness, and my feet have lost the power of motion. The breath which rose is gone, and has left not even hope behind it. I have committed numerous crimes, and know not with what punishments I may be seized. Though the Protector of mankind will guard the camp, yet care is incumbent also on the faithful and my sons. When I was alive, no care was taken; and now I am gone, the consequence may be guessed. The guardianship of a people is the trust by God

another became possessed of absolute authority. The robe of empire graced the august person of Farrukh Siyar, who sounded the joyful march of triumph.

Though I was not in the service of any one, I remained in the field till the *Amiru-l umará* had retired, when, thinking it best to provide for my own safety, I entered the city with about a hundred persons who sought my protection. * * In the morning I wrote to Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, with whom I was formerly on terms of friendship, expressing my desire of leave to visit him, and to be introduced to the new Emperor. He replied to my letter with kindness, * * and next morning, when Farrukh Siyar entered the city, I was allowed to pay him my respects.

LETTERS OF AURANGZEB.

To Sháh A'sam Sháh.

Health to thee! My heart is near thee. Old age is arrived: weakness subdues me, and strength has forsaken all my members. I came a stranger into this world, and a stranger I depart. I know nothing of myself, what I am, or for what I am destined. The instant which has passed in power hath left only sorrow behind it. I have not been the guardian and protector of the empire. My valuable time has been passed vainly. I had a patron in my own dwelling (conscience), but his glorious light was unseen by my dim sight. Life is not lasting; there is no vestige of departed breath, and all hopes from futurity are lost. The fever has left me; but nothing remains of me but skin and bone. My son (Kám Bakhsh), though gone towards Bijápúr, is still near; and thou my son are yet nearer. The worthy of esteem, Sháh 'Alam, is far distant; and my grandson ('Azímu-sh Shán), by the orders of God, is arrived near Hindústán. The camp and followers, helpless and alarmed, are like myself, full of alarms, restless as quicksilver. Separated from their lord, they know not if they have a master or not.

LXXXI.

TARÍKH-I BAHÁDUR SHÁHÍ.

[This is a small anonymous work extending from the death of Aurangzeb to the accession of Muhammad Sháh, written, as the author states, forty years after the death of Aurangzeb, and therefore in 1747 A.D. As its title indicates, Bahádur Sháh is its leading subject, and the history of the reign of that monarch takes up about half the volume. It is written in a prolix tedious style. The reign of Bahádur Sháh was translated for Sir H. M. Elliot by "Lt. Anderson, 25th Native Infantry," but there is very little in it which has not been told far better elsewhere. A few short Extracts follow. There are two copies of the work among the MSS. One is a small Svo. of 138 pages of nine lines each.]

EXTRACTS.

When the news of that "unavoidable event," the death of the Emperor Aurangzeb, reached Dehlí, an extraordinary commotion spread through Hindústán, and wonderful events followed. On the third day after it became known in Dehlí, on the 21st Zí-l ka'da, 1118 of the holy Hijra (18th February, 1707), after sunset and before the cry to evening prayer, such a noise arose on the west as might be taken as a sample of the noise there will be at the day of judgment. If hundreds of thousands of men were to collect together and simultaneously raise the most dreadful shouts, there would be no resemblance to that noise. It exceeds all my powers to describe it. Forty years have passed up to this time, but that strange

committed to my sons. A'zam Sháh is near. Be cautious that none of the faithful are slain, or that their miseries fall upon my head. I resign you, your mother and son to God, as I myself am going. The agonies of death come upon me fast. Bahádur Sháh is still where he was, and his son is arrived near Hindústán. Bodár Bakht is in Gujarát. Hayátu-n Nissa, who has beheld no afflictions of time till now, is full of sorrows. Regard the Begam as without concern. U'dípúr, your mother, was a partner in my illness, and wishes to accompany me in death; but every thing has its appointed time.

The domestics and courtiers, however deceitful, yet must not be ill-treated. It is necessary to gain your views by gentleness and art. Extend your feet no lower than your skirt. The complaints of the unpaid troops are as before. Dárá Shukoh, though of much judgment and good understanding, settled large pensions on his people, but paid them ill, and they were ever discontented. I am going. Whatever good or evil I have done, it was for you. Take it not amiss, nor remember what offences I have done unto yourself, that account may not be demanded of me hereafter. No one has seen the departure of his own soul, but I see that mine is departing.

ears of the faithful, fell from the tongue of the *Guru*. The Afghán was enraged, and regardless of the *Guru's* dignity and importance, he gave him two or three stabs with a knife and killed him.

The son of Jahándár Sháh was Sultán 'Azízu-d dín. The sons of 'Azímu-sh Shán were Sultán Farrukh Siyar, Sultán Karímu-d dín, and Sultán Humáyún Bakht. The sons of Khujista Akhtar Jahán Sháh were Sultán Farkhanda Akhtar the eldest; the second Roshan Akhtar, afterwards the Emperor Muhammad Sháh; the third son was Sultán Mubárák Akhtar, also called Achhi Miyán. The son of Prince Rafi'u-sh Shán was Rafi'-d Daraja. The son of 'Alí Jáh was 'Alí Tabár. The sons of Bedár Bakht were Bedár Dil, Sa'id Bakht, and Hayátu-llah. The sons of Prince Kám Bakhsh were Sultán Muhíu-s Sunnat, and Yahyau-s Sunnat. Of the grandsons of Sháh Jahán and sons of Dará Shukoh were Dará Bakhsh, Yazdán Bakhsh, and Sultán Sipíhr Shukoh.

noise is still in my ears, and whoever heard it must certainly remember it. The noise lasted for about half an hour, and then subsiding, nothing was heard of it after the lapse of two hours.

On account of the death of Aurangzeb, and in consequence of the confusion in Hindústán, the price of grain in all the provinces remained unsettled. In some places it was more, in others less. Thus in the first year after the death of His Majesty, in 1119 of the Hijra, the price of grain in Dehlí became known to Ásafu-d daula, viz. the rate at which it was sold for ready money. Wheat was twenty *sirs* per rupee; barley twenty-seven *sirs*; gram twenty-five *sirs*; *suhkdás* rice ten *sirs*; *dal mung* (a kind of vetch) fifteen *sirs*; *másh* (pulse) eighteen *sirs*; *moth* twenty *sirs*; *'adas* eighteen *sirs*; *ghí* two *sirs*; pungent oil (*raughan-i talkh*) seven *sirs*; red sugar twelve *sirs*.

When Bahádur Sháh arrived at Burhánpúr (on his march against Kám Bakhsh), a severe pestilence (*rabá*) broke out amongst the royal troops. Those attacked suffered from such unnatural heat that they generally died in the course of a week, and those who lived longer than a week, after undergoing great pain and torment, recovered. The army continued its march towards Haidarábád. Twenty rupees was the hire paid to the porters for carrying a sick man for a march of three *kos*. Pioneers were sent on ahead of the camp to dig graves, and when the army reached its new camping ground, the tents were filled on one side, and graves upon the other.

At the time the army was marching southwards towards Burhánpúr, Guru Gobind, one of the grandsons of Nának, had come into these districts to travel, and accompanied the royal camp. He was in the habit of constantly addressing assemblies of worldly persons, religious fanatics, and all sorts of people. One day an Afghán, who frequently attended these meetings, was sitting listening to him, when certain expressions, unfit for the

LXXXIII.

'I B R A T - N Á M A

OF

M U H A M M A D K Á S I M .

THIS work is sometimes called *Tárikh-i Bahádur-Sháhi*. It is a well-written history, composed by Muhammad Kásim, who describes himself as a dependent of *Amíru-l umará* Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán. It commences with the death of Aurangzeb, and terminates with the death of *Kutbu-l Mulk* Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, the author having accomplished his purpose of writing a history of the times of the two great Saiyids of Bárha. One copy I have in small octavo contains 224 pages of eighteen lines to a page. Another imperfect copy of a work of the same name, and by the same author, carries the history down to A.D. 1736. The language also occasionally varies, so that it is probable the latter may be a second edition of the former, especially as it seems to be more elaborately got up, and to be written in a more polished style. There are, however, several works known by this name, and there is a later history bearing this title.

The following is a list of the contents, with the number of pages occupied by each chapter :

Reason of writing the *'Ibrat-náma*, 2 pp.—Cause of the author's becoming an attendant in the Court of *Amíru-l umará* Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán the Martyr, 9 pp.—Account of the Death of Aurangzeb 'Álamgír, 11 pp.—Happy Accession of Bahádur

LXXXII.

TĀRĪKH-I SHĀH 'ĀLAM BAHĀDUR SHĀH

OF

DĀNISHMAND KHĀN.

[THIS is another history of Bahádur Sháh, but it reaches only to the month of Rajab, in the second year of his reign. It is the work of Dánishmand Khán, already noticed in No. LXXVI. (suprà, p. 200). The author is best known by his title *Ni'amat Khán*, but in the present volume he calls himself Dánishmand Khán, and tells us that he had received the title of *Mukarrab Khán* in the reign of Aurangzeb. It appears also from this work, that he wrote a book called *Bádsháh-náma*,¹ which was presented to the Emperor, and for which he received an augmentation of his *mansab*. The work is divided into months; and the two years and few months fill 262 leaves of fourteen lines to the page. It is written in an ambitious style, and abounds with quotations from the Arabic and of Persian verse.]

¹ [Probably the same as the *Sháh-náma* referred to in No. LXXVI.]

Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán's march to Ágra with Rafi'u-d Daula Sháh Jahán the Second. Reduction of the fort of Ágra, 14 pp.—Accession of Muhammad Ghází to the throne, by the aid of the Saiyids, at Fathpúr, 19 pp.—Disturbances at Alláhábád by Giridhar Bahádur, brother of Rája Ohhabílá; Haidar Kulí Khán sent against him; departure of Rája Ratan Bahádur, 4 pp.—Muhammad Sháh's departure towards the Dakhin; Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán killed by the treachery of a Mughal, 36 pp.—News of Saiyid Husain Khán being killed received by Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán, his elder brother; and his affliction, 23 pp.—War between Muhammad Amín Khán and Saiyid 'Abdu-llah Khán Kutbu-l Mulk; capture of the aforesaid Saiyid, 13 pp.

Size of one copy 9½ inches by 7—108 pages of 12 lines each.

[There are four copies of this work among Sir H. M. Elliot's MSS.]

EXTRACTS.

[The exaltation of the Saiyids ('Abdu-llah and Husain 'Alí Khán) exceeded all conception, and passed the bounds of description. They became envied by many of the nobles, and their names were upon every tongue. Mír Jumla on his part never lost an opportunity of making malicious insinuations and charges against Saiyid 'Abdu-llah, and he especially complained that the Saiyid, in pursuit of his own pleasure, had left all the control of business in the hands of Ratan Chand, who had a maw as insatiable as the nethermost hell for swallowing gold and silver. Against the younger brother *Amiru-l umará* Saiyid 'Alí Khán, it was alleged that his bearing was proud and haughty, unbecoming in a subject. By such insinuations the mind of the Emperor was poisoned. Khán-daurán was ostensibly intimate and friendly with the two brothers, but he considered himself one of the most trusted counsellors of the Emperor. He was never absent from Court night or day, and whatever entered his mind, whether exalted or low, pleasant or unpleasant, he imparted to the Emperor. * * It was often proposed that the two brothers

Sháh to the Imperial Throne, 11 pp.—March of Muhammad A'zam Sháh with the object of making war against Muhammad Mu'azzam Bahádur Sháh. The armies meet in the field of Haju in the vicinity of Ágra, 5 pp.—Battle between Muhammad A'zam Sháh and Muhammad Mu'azzam Bahádur Sháh and his sons. Victory gained by the latter, 4 pp.—Rejoicings at the victory of Muhammad Mu'azzam Bahádur Sháh. Rewards and gifts granted by him to his old and new servants, attendants and relations, 18 pp.—Departure of Bahádur Sháh towards the Dakhin against Muhammad Kám Bakhsh, 2 pp.—His return into Hindústán after gaining the victory over Kám Bakhsh, his younger brother, 13 pp.—Disturbances caused by the Sikhs in the Panjáb. Ruin of Sirhind. Eulogy of Nának Sháh Fakír, 2 pp.—War of the four Princes close to the garden of Shálímár in Láhore, 42 pp.—The two Princes Jahán Sháh and Rafi'u-Shán. War with Muhammad Mu'izzu-d dín Jahándár Sháh, 12 pp.—Happy accession of Muhammad Mu'izzu-d dín Jahándár Sháh to the Imperial Throne of Dehli, 11 pp.—Muhammad Farrukh Siyar, hearing the news of the battles of the four Princes at Láhore, prepares to take revenge for his father and brother, 7 pp.—The troops of Sultán 'Azzu-d dín, son of Jahándár Sháh, defeated by the two Saiyids. His flight, 10 pp.—Muhammad Farrukh Siyar's Accession to the Throne at Ágra, 12 pp.—Ísa Khán, *Zamíndár* of the Doáb, his family and relations, all killed by Sháhdad Khán, an Afghán of Kasor, 19 pp.—Cause of disturbance in the Government of Farrukh Siyar, 3 pp.—Nawáb Saiyid Husain 'Alí Khán appointed to superintend the affairs of the Rájputs of Ajmír and of the great *amirs*, and to bring Rája Ajít Singh's daughter to Farrukh Siyar, 6 pp.—Farrukh Siyar marries the daughter of Rája Ajít Singh Ráthor on the banks of the Ráví, 7 pp.—The *Súbadári* of the Dakhin committed to the charge of Husain 'Alí Khán, and that of the Eastern Division to Hamla Bahádur, 6 pp.—Muhammad Rafi'u-d Darajat raised to the throne; death of Muhammad Farrukh Siyar, 4 pp.—Tumults and seditions at Ágra. Prince Neku Siyar raised to the throne;

dead upon the ground beside his victim. The other Mughals attacked the youth, and slew him with many wounds. The murdered *Nawáb's* head was then cut off, and carried to Muhammad Amin Khán, and those who bore it expected great rewards in fulfilment of the promises made to them.]

Death of Kutbu-l Mulk Saiyid 'Abdu-llah.

[The Mughals at length so worked upon the Emperor by their importunities and artifices, that he consented to the poisoning of the Saiyid.]

END OF VOL. VII.

should be seized in the Emperor's private council chamber, and committed to close confinement.]

Murder of Husain 'Alí Khán.

[The chief nobles having, according to practice, attended the Emperor to his tents, were returning to their own quarters. *Amiru-l umará* Husain 'Alí, unmindful of the designs of his enemies, proceeded to his tents in a *pálki*, escorted by seven or eight of his attendants. Muhammad Amín Khán, Sa'ádat Khán, and some other of the conspirators, were with him. Muhammad Amín resorted to artifice, and pretending to be faint, he wished to lie down on the ground. He was brought round by means of rose-water and musk. Thereupon he directed that they should bring to him Haidar Kulí Khán, the commander of the artillery. They ran to fetch that crafty partner in the conspiracy. At this time there were only two or three of the attendants and valiant brothers of the Saiyid near his *pálki*. A man named Haidar Beg, from the station of Muhammad Amín, accompanied by several Mughals, came forward complaining of Muhammad Amín, and desiring to present a petition. * * The attendants wanted to take the petition from his hands, but he would not allow them. The *Amiru-l umará* kindly told them to let the man approach. Haidar Beg advanced to present the petition, and as the *Amir* took it, the assassin drew a dagger from his waist, and stuck the *Amir* in the side, so that he rolled out of the *pálki*, and his blood spurted over the bystanders. He called out, "Will no one come to my aid?" and as he lay with his bowels protruding, he cried, "Bring me a horse, I will ride." A youth of fourteen years of age, named Saiyid Mír Khán, son of the *Amir*'s elder brother Asadu-llah Khán Bahádur, was walking near the *pálki*, and as soon as he saw what was passing, he cried out, "Some rascals are killing the *Nawáb!*" Then he attacked Haidar Beg fiercely with his short sword, and wounded him in two or three places, stretching him